英语语法百科

ENGLISH GRAMMAR ENCYCLOPEDIA

编 著◎王惠宁
主 审◎张福勇



西南交通大学出版社

英语语法百科

English Grammar Encyclopedia

编　著　王惠宁
主　审　张福勇

西南交通大学出版社
·成　都·

图书在版编目（CIP）数据

英语语法百科 / 王惠宁编著. —成都：西南交通大学出版社，2018.11
ISBN 978-7-5643-6513-4

Ⅰ. ①英… Ⅱ. ①王… Ⅲ. ①英语－语法－自学参考资料 Ⅳ. ①H314

中国版本图书馆 CIP 数据核字（2018）第 242237 号

Yingyu Yufa Baike
英语语法百科

编　著 / 王惠宁

责任编辑 / 孟　媛
封面设计 / 严春艳

西南交通大学出版社出版发行
（四川省成都市金牛区二环路北一段 111 号西南交通大学创新大厦 21 楼　610031）
发行部电话：028-87600564
网址：http://www.xnjdcbs.com
印刷：成都中永印务有限责任公司

成品尺寸　210 mm × 285 mm
印张　32.5　　字数　1334 千
版次　2018 年 11 月第 1 版
印次　2018 年 11 月第 1 次

书号　ISBN 978-7-5643-6513-4
定价　88.00 元

《英语语法百科》

编委会

前言 | PREFACE

英语学习的基础是语法，掌握好语法可以减少语言学习的盲目性，提高语言运用的规范性，使口语表达更地道，阅读更顺畅，写作更准确。因此，学好英语语法可以为中学英语学习及以后的大学英语学习奠定坚实的基础。

语法知识是否扎实会直接影响中高考英语成绩的好坏。因此，无论是为了今后进一步的英语学习，还是为了在中高考中取得好成绩，我们都需要重视初高中英语语法的学习。

为了帮助广大中学生建立完善的英语语法知识网络，系统掌握英语语法，从而有效提高阅读和写作水平，准确解答各种英语考试题目，编者精心编写了本书。书中很多独特的语法视角是编者在多年的英语学习与教学实践过程中的经验积累和研究成果。本书的特点在于重难点突出，语言简练，并针对中国学生在英语学习中常见的语法问题做出针对性的解答。本书练习丰富，讲解准确精当，适合中学生、英语专业低年级大学生、其他英语学习者全面了解英语语法之用。

本书为实用英语语法，为了更符合我国学生实际，采用传统语法体系，但也吸收了不少现代语法的新成果。本书对初高中阶段应该掌握的重点项目、语法疑难点、语法易混淆点和语法常考点等内容进行了详尽深入的分析，对同类语法现象进行了总结归纳。本书还包括一些在其他语法书中有所涉及但语焉不详的语法问题，从而最大限度地满足中学生的需要。希望本书能帮助饱受语法困扰的中学生更加条理、系统地掌握语法知识，顺利走出语法学习过程中遇到的困境。

本书编者有二十多年高校和培训辅导学校英语教学方面的工作经验，对初高中英语教学及中高考命题均有深入研究。本书是编者研究成果与智慧的结晶，对于广大中学生、中学英语教师和英语爱好者来说是一本不可多得的语言学习和查阅的工具书。编者一直从事基础英语等课程的教学与研究，对英语语法教学有独到的见解，对于在教学中如何使用和处理教材有着多年的实践经验，相信本书的编写能为广大英语爱好者提供切实有效的帮助。

该书在编写过程中得到了不少同行、专家的大力支持。鲁东大学外国语学院张福勇教授为全书的整体设计提出了宝贵意见，并负责全书的审定工作。感谢美籍教师 Lisa Saunders 女士仔细审阅了全书英语部分。为此书编写做出重要贡献的还有孙琰玲、孙万茂、孟范英、崔晓燕、刘霞、孙千惠、宁丽红、路新鹏、王福胜等同志，同时，西南交通大学出版社祁素玲和孟媛女士为本书的出版付出了辛勤的劳动，在此一并表示衷心感谢。

在编写过程中，本书广泛参考了国内外英语语言学家、语法专家的语法工具书、各种中高考辅导书、各种权威字典，以及广泛的网络资源，从中引用了大量经典范例。部分引文因为各种原因，难以查明原作者，无法注明出处，敬请谅解。在此特别向所有的原作者表示诚挚的感谢。

最后，希望本书能成为广大中学生的良师益友，对中学生的英语语法学习有所帮助。

由于编者水平有限，书中疏漏之处在所难免，欢迎同行、专家和广大读者不吝赐教，批评指正。

编　者

2018 年 3 月于烟台

目录 | CONTENTS

1 绪　论 …… 1
1.1 英语概述 …… 1
1.2 英语词性的分类及用法 …… 1
1.3 句子成分 …… 2
1.4 短语 …… 6
1.5 英语基本句型 …… 6
2 名　词 …… 11
2.1 名词的语法意义 …… 11
2.2 名词的分类 …… 11
2.3 名词的数 …… 11
2.4 名词的主谓一致 …… 16
2.5 名词的所有格 …… 19
2.6 真题汇总 …… 19
3 冠　词 …… 33
3.1 概　述 …… 33
3.2 不定冠词的用法 …… 33
3.3 定冠词的用法 …… 34
3.4 零冠词的用法 …… 35
3.5 有些搭配有无冠词意义不同 …… 35
4 代　词 …… 42
4.1 定义与分类 …… 42
4.2 人称代词、物主代词、反身代词用法概述 …… 42
4.3 人称代词的用法 …… 43
4.4 物主代词的用法 …… 44
4.5 反身代词的用法 …… 46
4.6 相互代词的用法 …… 49
4.7 指示代词的用法 …… 49
4.8 关系代词的用法 …… 52
4.9 连接代词的用法 …… 52
4.10 不定代词的用法 …… 53
5 数　词 …… 67
5.1 基数词的构成及用法 …… 67
5.2 序数词的用法 …… 68
5.3 年、月、日和时间的表达法 …… 69

6 **动词概说** …… 76

6.1 动词的定义和特征 …… 76
6.2 动词的基本形式 …… 77
6.3 动词的分类 …… 78

7 **动词的时态** …… 86

7.1 概　说 …… 86
7.2 十六种时态的谓语形式 …… 86
7.3 一般现在时 …… 86
7.4 一般过去时 …… 90
7.5 现在进行时 …… 100
7.6 一般将来时 …… 104
7.7 现在完成时 …… 109
7.8 现在完成进行时 …… 117
7.9 过去进行时 …… 119
7.10 过去完成时 …… 125
7.11 过去完成进行时 …… 128
7.12 将来进行时 …… 130
7.13 将来完成时 …… 132
7.14 将来完成进行时 …… 135
7.15 过去将来时 …… 137
7.16 过去将来进行时 …… 139
7.17 过去将来完成时 …… 139
7.18 过去将来完成进行时 …… 141

8 **动词的语态** …… 145

8.1 语态的含义和种类 …… 145
8.2 被动语态的构成 …… 145
8.3 被动语态的用法 …… 146
8.4 主动语态如何改写为被动语态 …… 146
8.5 主动语态和被动语态的转换 …… 146
8.6 被动语态的一些特殊运用形式 …… 147
8.7 不用被动语态的情况 …… 148
8.8 被动语态与系表结构的区别 …… 149

9 **情态动词** …… 160

9.1 情态动词的含义和特征 …… 160
9.2 情态动词的分类 …… 160
9.3 情态动词的基本用法 …… 160
9.4 must 和 have to 的用法 …… 162
9.5 used to 的用法 …… 165
9.6 shall 的用法 …… 166
9.7 will 和 would 的用法 …… 167
9.8 need 的用法 …… 169
9.9 may 和 might 的用法 …… 170

9.10 should 的用法 …… 171
9.11 ought 的用法 …… 172
9.12 had better 的基本用法 …… 172
9.13 情态动词表示推测 …… 172
9.14 情态动词+have done 的用法 …… 173
9.15 情态动词易混点归纳 …… 174

10 动词的语气 …… 187

10.1 语气的定义和种类 …… 187
10.2 虚拟语气在条件从句中的用法 …… 188
10.3 虚拟语气在宾语从句中的用法 …… 190
10.4 虚拟语气在主语从句中的用法 …… 191
10.5 虚拟语气在表语从句和同位语从句中的用法 …… 192
10.6 虚拟语气在状语从句中的用法 …… 192
10.7 虚拟语气在定语从句中的用法 …… 193
10.8 用在由某些介词短语、连词、副词或上下文引起的含蓄条件句的主句中 …… 193
10.9 虚拟语气常用于某些表示祝愿的句子中 …… 194

11 非谓语动词 …… 200

11.1 概　说 …… 200
11.2 动词不定式 …… 203
11.3 动名词 …… 217
11.4 分　词 …… 224

12 句子的种类 …… 242

12.1 句子的种类 …… 242
12.2 陈述句的构成形式 …… 242
12.3 祈使句的构成形式及基本用法 …… 243
12.4 疑问句的构成形式及基本用法 …… 245
12.5 感叹句 …… 264
12.6 否定结构 …… 270

13 句子的类型 …… 274

13.1 句子的分类 …… 274
13.2 简单句 …… 274
13.2 并列句 …… 279
13.3 复合句 …… 282

14 形容词、副词 …… 289

14.1 形容词 …… 289
14.2 副　词 …… 305
14.3 形容词、副词的比较等级 …… 311

15 介　词 …… 328

15.1 概　述 …… 328
15.2 介词的分类 …… 328

15.3 介词的意义 …… 328
15.4 介词短语的句法作用 …… 334
15.5 介词短语在句子中的位置 …… 334
15.6 易混介词的用法辨析 …… 335

16 连　词 …… 349

16.1 概　述 …… 349
16.2 并列连词的用法 …… 349
16.3 从属连词的用法 …… 356
16.4 并列连词词组的用法 …… 365
16.5 连词总结 …… 368

17 感叹词 …… 377

17.1 感叹词的定义 …… 377
17.2 常用感叹词的用法 …… 377

18 主谓一致 …… 379

18.1 定　义 …… 379
18.2 主谓一致的三条原则 …… 379
18.3 主谓一致的运用 …… 379
18.4 技巧点拨 …… 386

19 名词性从句 …… 392

19.1 主语从句 …… 392
19.2 宾语从句 …… 393
19.3 表语从句 …… 400
19.4 同位语从句 …… 404

20 定语从句 …… 412

20.1 概　说 …… 412
20.2 定语从句的种类 …… 412
20.3 关系代词和关系副词的用法 …… 413
20.4 定语从句的特殊用法 …… 414
20.5 定语从句与同位语从句的区别 …… 417
20.6 定语从句与强调句型的区别 …… 418
20.7 介词+关系代词的用法 …… 418
20.8 “介词+关系代词”型定语从句五大考点 …… 419

21 状语从句 …… 428

21.1 时间状语从句 …… 428
21.2 地点状语从句 …… 430
21.3 原因状语从句 …… 431
21.4 条件状语从句 …… 431
21.5 目的状语从句 …… 431
21.6 结果状语从句 …… 432
21.7 让步状语从句 …… 432

21.8 比较状语从句 …… 432
21.9 方式状语从句 …… 433
21.10 状语从句的省略 …… 433
21.11 各种状语从句的简化方法 …… 433
21.12 as 引导的让步状语从句的倒装 …… 434

22 直接引语与间接引语 …… 440
22.1 直接引语与间接引语的转换 …… 440
22.2 引语转换时的各种相应变化 …… 442
22.3 引语转换应注意的事项 …… 446

23 强调、替代、省略和倒装 …… 453
23.1 强 调 …… 453
23.2 替 代 …… 456
23.3 省略句 …… 458
23.4 倒装句 …… 462

24 “there+be”结构和“it”的用法 …… 475
24.1 “there+be”结构 …… 475
24.2 “it”的用法 …… 479

25 标点符号 …… 489
25.1 概 述 …… 489
25.2 Full stop（美式英语称 period）句号（. ） …… 489
25.3 Comma 逗号（，） …… 490
25.4 Colon 冒号（：） …… 490
25.5 Semicolon 分号（；） …… 491
25.6 Question mark 问号（？） …… 491
25.7 Exclamation mark（美式英语亦称作 Exclamation point）感叹（！） …… 491
25.8 Dash 破折号（—） …… 491
25.9 Quotation marks（英式英语亦称作 Inverted commas）引号（‘ ’“ ”） …… 492
25.10 Hyphen 连接号（－） …… 492
25.11 Apostrophe 撇号，省略号，名词所有格符号（’） …… 492

附 录 …… 494
附录一 构词法 …… 494
附录二 常用传统语法术语 …… 498
附录三 英文字母大写规则 …… 502
附录四 不规则动词表 …… 503
附录五 单词移行规则 …… 507

参考文献 …… 509

1 绪 论

1.1 英语概述

英语（English）是印欧语系日耳曼语族下的语言，英语里有26个字母，英文字母渊源于拉丁字母，拉丁字母渊源于希腊字母，而希腊字母则是由腓尼基字母演变而来的。英语是世界上使用最广泛的语言之一，也是欧盟、许多国际组织以及英联邦国家的官方语言，拥有世界第三位的母语使用者人数，仅次于汉语和西班牙语母语使用者人数。

英语由古代从丹麦等斯堪的纳维亚半岛以及德国、荷兰及周边移民至不列颠群岛的盎格鲁、撒克逊以及朱特部落的白人所说的语言演变而来，并通过近现代英国的殖民活动传播到世界各地。由于在历史上曾和多种民族语言接触，它的词汇从一元变为多元，语法从“多屈折”变为“少屈折”，语音也发生了规律性的变化。如今，许多国际场合都使用英语作为沟通媒介。

1.2 英语词性的分类及用法

词类又叫词性，根据英语单词在句中的功能，可将其分为十大类，详见表1-1。

表 1-1 英语单词的分类

英语名称	缩写形式	汉语名称	意 义	例 词
Noun	*n.*	名词	表示人、事物或地点的名称	Alice，boy，book，car
Article	*art.*	冠词	用在名词前，帮助说明其所指对象	a（an），the
Pronoun	*pron.*	代词	代替名词、数词等	this，that，I，it，my，your
Adjective	*a.*或 *adj.*	形容词	表示人或事物的性质或特征	blue，big，beautiful
Numeral	*num.*	数词	表示数量或顺序	first，three
Verb	*v.*	动词	表示动作或状态	be，have，go
Adverb	*ad.*或 *adv.*	副词	表示动作的特征	often，usually
Preposition	*prep.*	介词	表示名词、代词和其他词之间的关系	in，on，at
Conjunction	*conj.*	连词	连接词与词、短语与短语或句与句	and，but
Interjection	*int.*或 *interj.*	感叹词	表示说话时的喜悦、惊讶等情感或语气	oh，hello

英语单词也可分为实词（notional word）与虚词（form word）两种。

实词都有实义，共有六类：

（1）名词，如book，water。

（2）代词，如I，you。

（3）形容词，如clear，happy。

（4）数词，如four，sixty。

（5）动词，如come，take。

（6）副词，如here，today。

虚词没有实义，共有四类：
（1）冠词，如 a，the。
（2）介词，如 of，to。
（3）连词，如 and，for。
（4）感叹词，如 oh，alas。
yes 和 no 可以列入副词一类，因为它们很像用作句子独立成分的副词。
英语里有不少词可属于几个不同词类，如 study 既可属于动词，亦可属于名词；fast 既可属于形容词，亦可属于副词；for 既可属于介词，亦可属于连词；after 既可是介词与连词，又可是副词。
还有三种由短语构成的词类：
（1）动词短语（verb phrase），如 get up，call on，take care of。
（2）介词短语（preposition phrase），如 because of，instead of，in front of。
（3）连词短语（conjunction phrase），如 as if，so that，as long as。
此外，还有一种叫作从属关联词（subordinate correlative）的词类，即引导从句的连词、疑问代词、疑问副词、关系代词、关系副词、缩合连接代词和缩合连接副词。

1.3　句子成分

一个句子由若干成分组成，这些成分叫作句子成分。依照在句中的作用，句子成分分为主语、谓语、宾语、定语、状语等。句子一般都必须有主语和谓语。主语表示所说的是谁或是什么，谓语对主语加以说明，表示它所做的动作或所处的状态。主语和谓语是句子的主要成分。

1. 主　语

主语表示“是什么”或“是谁”。在句首。一般由名词、代词、不定式或相当于名词的词或短语来充当，如：
（1）Lucy is a beautiful nurse.（名词作主语）
（2）He reads newspapers every day.（代词作主语）
（3）Smoking is harmful to the health.（动名词作主语）
（4）To swim in Kunming Lake is a great pleasure.（不定式作主语）
（5）What we should do is not yet decided.（主语从句作主语）

2. 谓　语

谓语表示“做什么”“是什么”或“怎么样”。在主语后面。谓语和主语在人称和数两方面必须一致，如：
（1）His parents are teachers.（系动词和表语一起作谓语）
（2）We study hard.（行为动词作谓语）
（3）We don’t finish reading the book.（助动词和行为动词一起作谓语）
（4）He can speak English.（情态动词和行为动词一起作谓语）

3. 宾　语

宾语表示动作、行为的对象。一般在谓语（及物动词）之后。由名词、代词、不定式或相当于名词的词、短语来担任，如：
（1）She is doing her homework now.（名词作宾语）

（2）She says（that）she is ill.（宾语从句作动词宾语）
（3）We often help him.（代词作宾语）
（4）He likes to play basketball.（不定式作宾语）
（5）We enjoy listening to the music. 我们喜欢听音乐。（动名词短语作宾语）
★宾语分直接宾语和间接宾语。（双宾）间接宾语指人，直接宾语指物。
（1）通常："前间后直"，可跟双宾语的动词有 give，show（给……看），bring，pass，buy 等，例：Your teacher tells us a story. The sun gives us light.
（2）"前直"+"to"或"for"+"后间"。
可使用"前直"+"to"+"后间"结构的有：give，show，send，bring，read，pass，lend，leave，hand，tell，return，write，throw，promise（答应），refuse（拒绝）等。
可使用"前直"+"for"+"后间"结构的有：make，buy，do，get，play，order（命令），sing，pay 等。
【练一练】
改写下列句子。
（1）I give him a book. 改成：________
（2）He passes me the book. 改成：________
（3）He writes me a letter. 改成：________
（4）He will buy me some books. 改成：________
（5）She is making me a cake. 改成：________

4. 表　语

表语表示"是什么"或者"怎么样"。在系动词后面。由名词、形容词、副词、介词、不定式及相当于名词、形容词、短语的词来担任，如：
（1）I am a teacher.（名词）
（2）He is always happy.（形容词）
（3）They are on the playground now.（介词短语）
（4）It gets cold.（形容词）
系动词：
- be 动词：am，is，are，was，were。
- 表保持：keep，stay，remain 等。
- 表改变：get，become，turn 等。
- 感官动词：feel，sound（听起来），seem/look（看起来），taste（尝起来），smell 等。

例：It sounds interesting.（sound 为系动词，interesting 为表语）
We should all remain careful.（remain 为系动词，careful 为表语）

5. 定　语

定语用来修饰名词或代词。形容词、代词、数词、名词、介词短语或相当于形容词的词或短语都可用作定语，如：
（1）一个词+需修饰的名词。
例：The black bike is mine.（形容词）
What's your name?（代词）
They make paper flowers.（名词）
（2）不定代词（nothing，anything，everything，something 等）+定语。
例：I tell him something interesting.
He has something to do.

（3）名词+短语或从句。

例：The boys in the room are in Class Four.

6. 状　语

状语修饰动词、形容词、副词，表示时间、地点、目的、方式、程度等，一般由副词、介词短语、不定式或相当于副词的词或短语来表示。

例：He did it carefully.（副词）

We often help him.（副词）

Her mother goes out to do some shopping on Sunday.（介词短语）

When I grow up，I am going to be a teacher.（从句作时间状语）

He sits there.（副词地点状语）

7. 宾语补足语

宾语补足语是补充说明宾语的动作、状态、特征的成分。名词、形容词、副词、介词短语以及动词不定式、分词等可用作宾语补足语。宾语+语补足语=复合宾语。

例：They make her happy.（形容词）

I see her dance.（不定式）

We'll help you to make the Olympics a success.（名词）

Please let him in.（副词）

表 1-2　不同句子成分的具体用法

成　分	充当词	例　句
主语（表示句子描述的是"谁"或"什么"，是谓语的陈述对象）	名词	Lang Ping was hired as a head coach.
		The boy began piano lessons at the age of three.
	人称代词	She turned down the offer.
	物主代词	Your idea is good，but mine is better.
	指示代词	Those who are tired of this may leave now.
	疑问代词	What is the most important thing?
	不定代词	Nothing is difficult if we work hard at it.
	基数词	Eight and three is eleven.
	序数词	The second is even more beautiful.
	形容词	The old are taken good care of in our country.
		The wounded have been rushed to the nearest hospital.
	不定式	To see is to believe.
		It is necessary for us to master a foreign language.
	动名词	Helping others can bring us happiness.
		It is no use arguing with him about this matter.
	主语从句	That you failed this game made me very disappointed.
		What is lost is the most valuable.

续表

成 分	充当词	例 句
谓语（表示主语的动作或状态）	行为动词	We planted many trees this spring.
		The young ought to respect the old.
	连系动词	We are Chinese.
		The musician became deaf later.
表语（说明主语的特征、类属、状态或身份）	名词	He became a famous actor.
	形容词	The mountains are green and the water is clean.
	副词	Time is up.
	指示代词	What I want is that，not this.
	疑问代词	I wonder who they are.
	不定代词	It is nothing serious.
	基数词	Two plus two is four.
	序数词	Mother is always the first to get up in the morning.
	不定式	My job is to clean the road.
	动名词	Her hobby is collecting stamps.
	介词短语	The watch is just under your nose.
	现在分词	The result was disappointing.
	过去分词	We were disappointed.
	表语从句	That is what EQ means.
宾语（表示及物动词或及物动词短语的对象或内容）	名词	Now many foreigners are learning Chinese.
	人称代词	He fooled us all.
	反身代词	Believe in yourselves.
	指示代词	I think you will like this.
	疑问代词	Who are you waiting for?
	不定代词	They got everything they wanted.
	物主代词	He is an old friend of hers.
	相互代词	You should learn to respect each other.
定语（用以修饰名词或者代词）	形容词	Now the world is just like a small village.
	副词	The natives there are very friendly.
	名词	He works in a car factory.
	物主代词	Their invention won the national prize.
	指示代词	These wild plants are well protected.
	疑问代词	Which river is the longest one in the world?
	不定代词	Both their parents are doctors.
	基数词	The organization contains eight countries.
	序数词	He was the fifth player to receive the honor.
	介词短语	Many secrets in space remain unknown.
	不定式	So I have nothing to say for myself.
	动名词	I bought a walking stick for my grandmother.
	现在分词	Tom got injured by a falling tree.
	过去分词	They reached an old house built 200 years ago.
	定语从句	Those who drink water will never forget the people who dig the well.

续表

成　分	充当词	例　句
宾语补足语（用于宾语之后，补充说明宾语的动作或状态）	形容词	That will make her mad.
	副词	Let me show you out.
	名词	We chose Paul our head.
	介词短语	Susan found herself in a strange world.
	不定式	Do not force me to do anything.
	现在分词	Don't keep me waiting too long.
	过去分词	They ran away and left the work unfinished.
状语（用以修饰动词、副词、形容词、从句及全句）	形容词	The travellers came back，safe and sound.
	副词	The son often writes to his parents.
	不定式	Mother went to buy something in the supermarket.
	名词	Li Ming is one year older than I.
	介词短语	From space the astronaut saw a blue globe.
	现在分词	He stood up，looking at the boss coldly.
	过去分词	Led by a native，we found the old castle.
	状语从句	Where there is smoke，there is fire.
	独立主格结构	Weather permitting，we'll go for a picnic.
同位语（说明前面名词或代词的具体内容）	名词	Miss Wu，our English teacher，is kind to us.
	代词	They each have a PC.
	数词	I've prepared a big dinner for you two.
	同位语从句	We've got the news that our team won the match.

1.4　短语

具有一定意义但不构成从句或句子的一组词，叫作短语。短语在句子里可以单独作为一个句子成分。短语的种类有：

（1）不定式短语（infinitive phrase）如：He likes to read newspapers after lunch（他喜欢在午饭后读报）中的 to read newspapers after lunch。

（2）动名词短语（gerundial phrase）如：Staying indoors all day is unhealthy（整天待在家里不利于健康）中的 staying indoors all day。

（3）分词短语（participial phrase）如：I saw many people walking along the lake（我看见许多人在湖边散步）中的 walking along the lake。

（4）介词短语（prepositional phrase）如：He came by bus（他乘公共汽车来）中的 by bus。

1.5　英语基本句型

（1）按使用目的分类，句子可分为陈述句、疑问句、祈使句和感叹句（见表 1-3）。

表 1-3　英语陈述句、疑问句、祈使句和感叹句

类　别		例　句
陈述句	肯定句	Youth is a state of mind. The ice cream was first invented in China.
	否定句	I can’t agree with you. /It doesn’t matter.
疑问句	一般疑问句	Did Italy win the World Cup?/Is there anything interesting?
	特殊疑问句	What’s on?/Who will be the MVP of 2007?
	选择疑问句	Are you a teacher or a student? Do you like football or basketball?
	反义疑问句	It is a fine day today，isn’t it? No one accepted your offer，did they?
祈使句		Don’t take everything for granted. /Follow me，please.
感叹句		What a beautiful lake it is!/How beautiful a lake it is!

（2）按结构分类，句子可分为简单句、并列句和复合句（见表 1-4）。

表 1-4　英语简单句、并列句和复合句

类　别	例　句	
简单句 （五种基本句型）	1. 主语+不及物动词，如： The sun rises in the east. A terrible accident happened just now. 2. 主语+及物动词+宾语，如： Many families keep pets. 3. 主语+连系动词+表语，如： China is a developing country. My favourite attraction is the Great Wall. 4. 主语+及物动词+间接宾语+直接宾语，如： Jane sent me an e-mail yesterday. Yesterday he told me the wonderful news. 5. 主语+及物动词+宾语+宾语补足语，如： The parents told the boy to come back early. Who left the window open? We all try to make our class a united and harmonious one.	
并列句	Marx was born in Germany and later he went to England. The medicine is bitter，but it is good for your health. The river was dry，so they had to move again.	
复合句	名词性从句	主语从句：What you said is true. 宾语从句：You know that beauty should be natural. 表语从句：That’s where I studied. 同位语从句：He made a promise that he would come on time.
	定语从句	Do you know the boy who is playing there? This is the result that I wanted. That’s the hotel where I stayed.

类　别		例　句
	状语从句	时间状语从句：We'd finished the work before they came. 条件状语从句：If it rains，we have to stay at home. 原因状语从句：She was absent because she was ill. 目的状语从句：He started out early in order that he could catch the first bus. 结果状语从句：Tom was so tired that he fell behind. 地点状语从句：Lucy found the MP3 where she lost it. 让步状语从句：Though I'm poor，I'm happy. 方式状语从句：Do it as I do. 比较状语从句：You are stronger than I（am）.

【训练导航】

一、按照要求，找出下列句子的成分。

1. 找出下列句中的宾语。

（1）My brother doesn't do his homework.

A B C D

（2）People all over the world speak English.

A B C D

2. 找出下列句中的表语。

（1）The old man is feeling very tired.

A B C D

② Why is he worried about Jim?

A B C D

3. 找出下列句中的定语。

（1）They use Mr. or Mrs. with the family name.

A B C D

（2）What is your given name?

A B C D

4. 找出下列句中的宾语补足语。

（1）She likes the children to read newspapers and books in the reading-room.

A B C D

（2）He asks her to take the boy out of school.

A B C D

5. 找出下列句中的状语。

（1）There is a big smile on her face.

A B C D

（2）Every night he heard the noise upstairs.

A B C D

6. 画出句中的直接宾语和间接宾语。

（1）Please tell us a story.

（2）My father bought a new bike for me last week.

二、分析下列句子中的双宾语，并试着用恰当的介词改写句子。

（1）Give a thief enough rope and he will hang himself. ____

（2）Can you recommend me a good novel?________________________________

（3）He built them a hut.________________________________

（4）He ordered himself a bottled of champagne.________________________________

（5）Will you choose me an interesting novel?________________________________

（6）Can you spare me a few minutes of your valuable time?________________________________

（7）Jack doesn't own me anything.________________________________

（8）May I ask you a favor?________________________________

（9）That will save you a lot of time.________________________________

（10）The novel won the author a Nobel Prize.________________________________

（11）It cost me three dollars.________________________________

三、分析下列句子中的宾语补足语。

（1）Absence makes the heart grow fonder. ________________________________

（2）The telescopes of the 1600's magnified objects thirty-three times their original size.

____

（3）The boy sharp remark left the teacher speechless. ________________________________

（4）The chairman has declared the meeting over. ________________________________

（5）I prefer my steak medium. ________________________________

（6）Dick set the caged animals free. ________________________________

（7）The pot calls the kettle black. ________________________________

四、将下列简单句合并成复合句或将复合句还原成简单句。

1. The water was so dirty that we couldn't drink it.（改为简单句）

   The water was _________ dirty for us _________ drink.

2. Does the shop close at six every day? Do you know?（改为复合句）

   Do you know _________ the shop _________ at six every day?

3. I think it my duty to write to you and thank you.（改为复合句）

   I think it _________ my duty ________ write to you and thank you.

4. The question isn't easy enough for them to answer.（改为复合句）

   The question is _________ _________ that they _________ _________ it.

5. The man is very strong and he can carry the heavy bag.（改为简单句）

   The man is _________ _________ to carry the heavy bag.

6. We didn't go out for a walk because it was raining.（改为简单句）

   We didn't go out for a walk _______ _______ the rain.

7. We won't have any lessons tomorrow because we'll have the sports meeting.（改为简单句）

   We won't have any lessons tomorrow ________ _________ the sports meeting.

8. If you don't work hard, you won't pass the exam next time.（改为并列句）

   _________ _________, _________ you will fail the exam next time.

9. Hurry up, and you'll catch the early bus.（改为复合句）

   _________ _________ _________ _________, you'll catch the early bus.

10. Jessica would like to rent a house with a kitchen.（改为复合句）

    Jessica would like to rent a house_________ _________ _________a kitchen.

11. She wants to help the children. They are ill in hospital. （合并为复合句）

    She wants to help the children_________ _________ill in hospital.

12. I love those cities. The cities are very enjoyable. （合并为一句）

    I love those cities __________ ________ enjoyable.

13. “Does the girl need any help?” he asked me.（改为复合句）

    He asked me _________ the girl _________ some help.

14. Now I will show you how to do the work.（改为复合句）

    Now I will show you ______ ______ ______ do the work.

2 名 词

2.1 名词的语法意义

名词是表示人、事物、地方、现象或抽象概念等的词。名词是一种实词，可以作主语、宾语、定语、同位语、宾补、状语、表语、独立成分等。

2.2 名词的分类

从形式上进行分类，英语名词可以划分成专有名词和普通名词两大类。从意义上划分，英语名词可分为个体名词、集体名词、物质名词和抽象名词四类（见表 2-1）。

表 2-1 英语名词的不同分类

类别			意义	例词
专有名词			表示具体的人名、事物、国家、地名、机构、团体等的专有名称	Jim，China，Qingdao，the UK，the Great Wall
普通名词	可数名词	个体名词	表示单个的人或事物	girl，student，factory，desk，cat，country
		集合名词	表示一群人或一些事物的总称	people，police，team，clothes，group，crew
	不可数名词	物质名词	表示无法分为个体的物质	water，ice，pork，cheese，cotton，broccoli
		抽象名词	表示抽象概念的词	fun，healthy，happiness，courage，love，care

注：

（1）专有名词是指人、地方、团体、机构等特有的名称。第一个字母必须大写。专有名词前一般不加冠词。

（2）由普通名词构成的专有名词前要用定冠词“the”，但它不大写。

（3）有些不可数名词有时表示具体的东西时，则变为可数名词，而且意思上也有了变化。例如：

beer—a beer 一杯啤酒　　work—a work 工厂、著作

glass—a glass 一个玻璃杯　　room 空间—a room 一个房间

2.3 名词的数

名词按其所表示的事物的性质可分为可数名词（个体名词和大多数集体名词）和不可数名词（物质名词和抽象名词）两种。表示可以计数的事物的名词叫可数名词，一般有单数和复数两种形式；表示不可以计数的事物的名词叫不可数名词，一般不分单数和复数（见表 2-2）。

表 2-2 可数名词和不可数名词

<table>
<tr><td></td><td colspan="3">可数名词 Countable Nouns[C]</td><td>不可数名词 Uncountable Nouns[U]</td></tr>
<tr><td>定义</td><td colspan="3">可数名词是可以计数的名词。可数名词有单数和复数形式。如：desk—desks，apple—apples 等</td><td>不可数名词是不可以直接计数的名词，是不可以分成个体的概念、状态、品质、感情或表示物质材料的东西。不可数名词没有复数形式，只有单数形式。比如：love，milk，juice，tea，meat，beef，mutton，news 等</td></tr>
<tr><td>a/an</td><td colspan="3">单数可数名词表示泛指时，前面要用不定冠词 a（an）；表示特指时，前面要用定冠词 the。如：He is a factory worker. 他是一名工人。</td><td>不可数名词前不能用 a（an）修饰，表示特指时，前面一定要用定冠词 the。如：No one can see air. 没有人能看见空气。</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">如何表示大概数量</td><td colspan="3">只能修饰可数名词的单词或词组，如 many 许多；a few 一些（肯定的意思）；few 几乎没有（有否定的意思）a number of 许多</td><td>只能修饰不可数名词的单词或词组，如 much 许多；a little 一点（有肯定的意思）；little 几乎没有（有否定的意思）</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4">既可修饰可数名词，又可以修饰不可数名词的单词或词组：some 一些，any 一些，任何（一个），a lot of 许多，lots of 许多</td></tr>
<tr><td>如何表示具体数量</td><td colspan="3">可数名词前可用具体的数词来表示具体的数量。如：two apples，four books 等</td><td>不可数名词的前面不能直接加 a/an 或数词，若要表示它的个体意义，要加表示数量单位的词，通常用“单位词+of”来表示数量。如：a bag of rice 一袋大米，two bags of rice 两袋大米</td></tr>
<tr><td>主谓一致</td><td colspan="3">可数名词作主语时，谓语动词的单复数与主语的单复数保持一致。如：This picture is very beautiful. 这幅画很美。</td><td>不可数名词作主语时，谓语动词要用单数形式。如：The beef is delicious.
但是不可数名词前有复数“单位词”时，谓语动词要用复数形式。如：There are two cups of tea on the table. 桌上有两杯茶。</td></tr>
<tr><td>提问</td><td colspan="3">对可数名词前的修饰语提问用 how many；如：How many apples in the box? 盒子里有多少个苹果？</td><td>对不可数名词前的修饰语提问用 how much。如：How much tea in the cup? 杯里有多少茶水？
注意：对不可数名词前的“单位词”的修饰语提问时，疑问词用 how many。如：How many bags of rice are there? 那儿有多少袋米？</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="7">既可以作可数名词又可作不可数名词的单词</td><td></td><td>可数</td><td>不可数</td><td rowspan="7">注：当 cabbage，salad，ice cream，onion 指一棵白菜、一份沙拉、一盒冰激淋、一个洋葱时是可数名词，如果表示吃的东西就是泛指，如洋葱切成丝看不出几颗，就是不可数名词。</td></tr>
<tr><td>fish</td><td>鱼，鱼的种类</td><td>鱼肉，鱼的条数</td></tr>
<tr><td>chicken</td><td>鸡</td><td>鸡肉</td></tr>
<tr><td>orange</td><td>橙子</td><td>橙汁</td></tr>
<tr><td>paper</td><td>论文，试卷</td><td>纸</td></tr>
<tr><td>glass</td><td>玻璃杯</td><td>玻璃</td></tr>
<tr><td>hair</td><td>头发（整体）</td><td>头发（根数）</td></tr>
</table>

可数名词有单、复数两种形式；名词复数形式有规则变化和不规则变化两种。

2.3.1 规则名词的复数形式

规则名词的复数形式，一般在单数形式后面加-s 或-es（详见表 2-3 和表 2-4）。

表 2-3 规则名词复数形式构成方法与读音规则

<table>
<tr><th>序号</th><th colspan="2">规 则</th><th>例 词</th></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td colspan="2">一般情况在词尾加-s</td><td>map—maps，girl—girls，day—days</td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td colspan="2">以 s，x，ch，sh 结尾的名词后加-es</td><td>class—classes，watch—watches，dish—dishes</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">3</td><td rowspan="2">以-f 或-fe 结尾的词</td><td>变—f 和—fe 为 v 再加—es</td><td>thief—thieves，knife—knives，wife—wives</td></tr>
<tr><td>加—s</td><td>belief—beliefs，roof—roofs，</td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td colspan="2">以辅音字母加 y 结尾的名词，变 y 为 i 加-es</td><td>party—parties，family—families，story—stories</td></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td colspan="2">以元音字母加 y 结尾的名词，或专有名词以 y 结尾的，加-s</td><td>toy—toys，boy—boys，day—days</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">6</td><td rowspan="2">以辅音字母加-o 结尾的名词</td><td>一般加—es</td><td>hero—heroes，potato—potatoes，tomato—tomatoes</td></tr>
<tr><td>不少外来词加—s</td><td>Piano—pianos，photo—photos</td></tr>
<tr><td>7</td><td colspan="2">以元音字母加-o 结尾的名词加-s</td><td>radio—radios，zoo—zoos</td></tr>
</table>

表 2-4 复数词尾 s（或 es）的读音方法

情 况	读法	例 词
在[p][t][k][f]等清辅音后	[s]	cups，hats，cakes
在[s][z][t][ʤ][F]等音后	[iz]	glasses，pages，oranges，buses，watches，faces
在[b][d][g][v]等浊辅音后	[z]	beds，dogs，cities，knives

（1）名词单数变复数的发音规则：清清浊浊元浊。

字母 s 在清辅音后读 s，在浊辅音后读 z，在元音后也读 z，s 即清，z 即浊，所以才有了“清清浊浊元浊”的说法。

（2）当名词是以 o 结尾，有生命的加 es，没有生命的加 s。如：potato—potatoes（土豆）tomato—tomatoes（西红柿）hero—heroes（英雄）photo—photos（相片）zoo—zoos（动物园）radio—radios（广播）piano—pianos（钢琴）。

（3）巧记以-o 结尾的名词变复数：黑人和英雄爱吃土豆，西红柿和杧果（加-es）negro—negroes；hero—heroes；potato—potatoes；tomato—tomatoes；mango—mangoes。

有的以 o 结尾的名词既可加-s 也可加-es。例如：volcano（火山）→volcanos/volcanoes 等。

（4）名词变复数规律。

规律 1：名词复数有规律，一般词尾加 s；辅音字母+y 型，变 y 为 i，加 es；ch，sh 真有趣，s，x 同把 es 加；f，fe 真小气，字母 v 来把它替，es 在后别忘记；字母 o 来真神奇，有生命来 es，没有生命+s。

规律 2（特殊规律）：中日友好来聚会，绵羊、鹿、鱼把家回（原形）；男士、女士 a 变 e；牙齿、脚双 o 变双 e；孩子们想去天安门，原形后面 ren；老鼠本来爱大米，mice，ice 和 rice。

2.3.2 不规则名词的复数形式

英语里有些名词的复数形式是不规则的，详见表 2-5。

表 2-5　不规则名词的复数形式

序号	规　则		例　词
1	改变名词中的元音字母或其他形式		man—men，woman—women，foot—feet，goose—geese，mouse—mice，tooth—teeth，child—children
2	单复数相同		sheep，deer，series，means，works，fish，species，li，yuan，jin
3	只有复数形式		ashes，trousers，clothes，thanks，goods，glasses，compasses，contents，chopsticks，scissors
4	一些集体名词总是用作复数		people，police，cattle，staff
5	部分集体名词既可以作单数（整体）也可以作复数（成员）		audience，class，family，crowd，couple，group，committee，government，population，crew，team，public，enemy，party
6	复数形式表示特别含义		customs（海关），forces（军队），times（时代），spirits（情绪），drinks（饮料），sands（沙滩），papers（文件报纸），manners（礼貌），looks（外表），brains（头脑智力），greens（青菜），ruins（废墟）
7	形似复数的单数名词		physics，mathematics/maths，bowls，Niagara Falls，news，falls
8	表示“某国人”	加-s	Americans，Australians，Germans，Greeks，Europeans
		单复数同形	Chinese，Japanese
		以-man 或-woman 结尾的改为-men，-women	Englishmen，Frenchwomen
9	合成名词	将主体名词变为复数	sons-in-law，lookers-on，passers-by，story-tellers，boy friends
		无主体名词时将最后一部分变为复数	grown-ups，housewives，stopwatches
		将两部分变为复数	women singers，men servants

注：

（1）单数和复数形式相同的名词：Chinese 中国人，sheep 羊，deer 鹿，fish 鱼，Japanese 日本人。除人民币元、角、分外，美元、英镑、法郎等都有复数形式。如 a dollar，two dollars；a meter，two meters。

（2）不规则的名词：foot 脚—feet，mouse 老鼠—mice，child 小孩—child，goose 鹅—geese，man 男人—men，woman 女人—women，tooth 牙—teeth。（注意：与 man 和 woman 构成的合成词，其复数形式也是-men 和-women。如 an Englishman，two Englishmen。但 German 不是合成词，故复数形式为 Germans）

（3）集体名词。以单数形式出现，但实为复数。如 people，police，cattle 等本身就是复数，不能说 a people，a police，a cattle，但可以说 a person，a policeman，a head of cattle。the English，the British，the French，the Chinese，the Japanese，the Swiss 等名词，表示国民总称时，作复数用。如：The Chinese are industries and brave.中国人民是勤劳勇敢的。

（4）以 s 结尾，仍为单数的名词，如：

① maths，politics，physics 等学科名词，为不可数名词，是单数。

② news 是不可数名词“新闻”。

③ the United States，the United Nations 应视为单数。例：

The United Nations was organized in 1945. 联合国是 1945 年组建起来的。

④ 以复数形式出现的书名、剧名、报纸、杂志名，也可视为单数。例：

The Arabian Nights is a very interesting story-book.《一千零一夜》是一本非常有趣的故事书。

（5）没有单数形式的名词：表示由两部分构成的东西，如 glasses 眼镜，shorts 短裤，trousers 裤子，scissors 剪刀。若表达具体数目，要借助数量词 pair（对，双）或 suit（套）。如：a pair of glasses；two pairs of trousers。

（6）另外还有一些名词，其复数形式有时可表示特别的意思，如：goods 货物，waters 水域，fishes（各种）鱼。这样的词还有：glass 玻璃→glasses 眼镜，stone 石头→a stone 一块石头，time 时间→two times 两次，wood 木头→woods 树林，clothes 衣服→cloth 布，sand 沙子→sands 沙滩。

（7）不同国家的人的单复数形式，详见表 2-6。（注：中日不变英法变，其余 s 加后面）

表 2-6 不同国家的人的单复数形式

名 称	总称（谓语用复数）	一个人	两个人
中国人	the Chinese	a Chinese	two Chinese
瑞士人	the Swiss	a Swiss	two Swiss
澳大利亚人	the Australians	an Australian	two Australians
俄国人	the Russians	a Russian	two Russians
意大利人	the Italians	an Italian	two Italians
希腊人	the Greek	a Greek	two Greeks
法国人	the French	a Frenchman	two Frenchmen
日本人	the Japanese	a Japanese	two Japanese
美国人	the Americans	an American	two Americans
印度人	the Indians	an Indian	two Indians
加拿大人	the Canadians	a Canadian	two Canadians
德国人	the Germans	a Germans	two Germans
英国人	the English	an Englishman	two Englishmen
瑞典人	the Swedish	a Swede	two Swedes

（8）复合名词的复数形式（名词+名词）：

① 通常只变后面的名词为复数，如：boy student→boy students，shoe shop→shoe shops。

② 当前面的名词是 man 和 woman 时，两个词都变为复数，如：man teacher→men teachers。

③ 一般组合名词变为复数形式时只将中心词变为复数，如：daughter-in-law→daughters-in-law 儿媳妇，man doctor→men doctors 男医生，half brother→half brothers 同父异母或同母异父的兄弟，man driver→men drivers 男司机，woman doctor→women doctors 女大夫，grown up→grown ups 成年人。

④“数词+名词+形容词”构成的复合形容词，中间的名词不能用复数形式而须用单数形式，如：She is a five-year-old girl. 她是一个五岁女孩。a ten-story-high building 一幢十层高的楼房。

（9）不可数名词：表示不能计算数目的人或物，称为不可数名词。他们前面不能用 a/an，且没有复数形式。物质名词和抽象名词都属于不可数名词。不可数名词一般只有单数形式，但有其特殊用法：

① 同一个词，变成复数形式，意义不同。如：food 食物→foods 各种食物，time 时间→times 时代，green 绿色→greens 青菜。

② 有些不可数名词用复数代指具体的事物。如：hope→hopes 希望，hardship→hardships 艰苦。

③ 不可数名词量的表达可以用 some，any，plenty of，（a）little，much，a lot of，a bit of 等，还可借助单位词表示一定的数量，即“数词+单位词（如 box，bottle，bag，kilo，pair，cup，glass，piece，bowl 等）+of”。单位词可以是单数也可以是复数，of 后面接不可数名词。例如：a bag of rice，a kilo of meat，a piece of bread，seven pieces of bread，several bags of rice 等。

（10）可数名词前应用 many，few，a few，a lot of 来修饰；不可数名词前可以用 a little，little，a lot of，some 来修饰。既可修饰可数名词又可修饰不可数名词的词有：some，any，a lot of，lots of，plenty of，a large/small quantity of，half 等。

【注意】a lot of，lots of，a number of（large numbers of），a great deal of，plenty of 的区别：

五个“名词+介词”短语都表示“大量，许多”，a lot of（或 lots of）既可以修饰不可数名词也可以修饰可数名词的复数形式，可以相应地换为 much 和 many。plenty of “足够、大量”，既可以修饰不可数名词也可以修饰可数名词的复数形式。a number of/large numbers of 只可以修饰可数名词复数形式（它修饰的词作主语时谓语用复数形式），可以换为 some，many，a lot of，plenty of。a great deal of 只可以修饰不可数名词（它修饰的词作主语时谓语用单数形式），可以换为 much（见表 2-7）。如：

A lot of people think that time is money.

I don't have to do it in a hurry because I have plenty of time.

I have a number of letters to write today.

I spend a great deal of time/money on shopping.

表 2-7　修饰不同词语的短语

修饰可数名词	修饰不可数名词	既可以修饰可数又可以修饰不可数
many, (a) few, several, a great number of, a large number of, a great many, a good many, many a, scores of	much, a great deal of, a large amount of, amounts of, (a) little, a bit of	some, a lot of, lots of, a large quantity of, a large supply of, a mass of, a pile of, plenty of

2.3.3　名词前修饰语的选择及顺序

当名词前有多个词修饰时，常按照“冠词—代词—数词—形容词—大小—新旧—颜色—国籍—材料”的顺序。如：Lily is the only one beautiful young American girl in our class.

2.3.4　名词作定语

（1）名词作定语一律用单数形式。如：a flower shop，a shoe shop，two apple trees，但当 man，woman 作定语修饰名词时，若被修饰的名词为单数，则用单数；若被修饰的名词为复数，则用复数。如：man/woman doctor，men/women doctors；sport 作定语时一般用复数，如：sports meeting，sports shoes。

（2）数词与名词连用作定语修饰另一名词时，可用连字符号连接构成复合形容词，且名词用单数；也可不用连字符号，但名词必须用相应的所有格。如：seven-day holiday（seven days' holiday），five-minute walk（five minutes' walk）。

（3）“数词—名词—形容词”构成的复合形容词作定语修饰名词，名词应用单数，且要有连字符号。如：a one-meter-long ruler，a 30-meter-high building。

2.4　名词的主谓一致

主谓一致是指谓语动词与主语在人称和数上保持一致。

2.4.1　主谓一致三原则

主谓一致是指谓语动词与主语在人称和数上保持一致，主谓一致必须遵循三原则：语法一致原则，意义一致原则，就近一致原则。

（1）语法一致原则：主语是单数形式，谓语动词就用单数形式；主语是复数形式，谓语就用复数形式。例如：

Tom is a good student. 汤姆是个好学生。

They often play football on the playground. 他们经常在操场上踢足球。

（2）意义一致：主语形式上为单数，但意义为复数，因此谓语动词用复数形式；或主语形式上为复数，但表示单数意义，这时谓语动词用单数形式。例如：

My family are having lunch now. 我们一家人现在正吃午饭。

Twenty dollars is too expensive for the book. 这本书 20 美元太贵了。

（3）就近一致：谓语动词用单数形式还是用复数形式，取决于最靠近它的主语。例如：

Not only the teacher but also his students like playing football.

不仅老师喜欢踢足球，而且他的学生也喜欢踢足球。

There is a pen and some books on the desk. 课桌上有一支钢笔和一些书。

2.4.2 主谓一致常考题型

（1）单数名词（代词），不可数名词作主语时，谓语用单数形式；复数名词（代词）作主语，谓语用复数形式。例如：

The desk is Tom's. 这张桌子是汤姆的。

Some water is in the bottle. 一些水在瓶子里。

The students are playing football on the playground. 这些学生正在操场上踢足球。

（2）many a+单数名词作主语，意义虽为“许多”，但谓语要用单数形式。例如：

Many a student has been to Shanghai. 许多学生到过上海。

（3）more than one+单数名词作主语，谓语用单数。例如：

More than one student has ever been to Beijing. 不止一个学生曾经去过北京。

（4）表示时间、价格、重量、数目、长度、数学运算等的词或短语作主语时，这些通常表示一个整体概念，谓语用单数形式。例如：

Two months is a long holiday. 两个月是一个长假。

Twenty pounds isn't so heavy. 20 英镑并不太重。

Ten miles isn't a long distance. 10 英里并不是一段很长的距离。

Five minus four is one. 5 减 4 等于 1。

（5）主语是 each/every+单数名词+and（each/every）+单数名词时，谓语动词用单数。例如：

Each boy and each girl has got a seat. 每个男孩和女孩都有一个座位。

Every man and every woman is at work. 每个男人和女人都在工作。

（6）one and a half+复数名词作主语，谓语动词用单数形式。例如：

One and a half hours is enough. 一个半小时足够了。

（7）动词不定式、动名词作主语时，谓语动词用单数形式。例如：

To see is to believe. 眼见为实。

Doing eye exercises is good for your eyes. 做眼睛保健操对你的眼睛十分有益。

（8）a/an+单数名词+or two 作主语，谓语动词用单数。例如：

A student or two has failed the exam. 一两个学生考试不及格。

（9）当主语部分含有 with，together with，along with，as well as，besides，except，but，like 等介词或介词短语时，谓语动词用单数形式。例如：

Mike with his father has been to England. 迈克同他的父亲去过英格兰。

Mike，like his brother，enjoys playing football. 迈克像他的哥哥一样喜欢踢足球。

（10）由 and 连接的两个单数名词作主语时，一般用复数形式，但 and 所连接的并列主语是同一个人、事物、概念时，谓语动词用单数。这两种情况区分如下：a/the+单数名词+and+单数名词，指的是同一个人或物；a/the+单数名词+and+a/the+单数名词，指两个人或物。例如：

The writer and teacher is coming. 那位作家兼教师来了。（作家和教师指同一个人）

The writer and the teacher are coming. 作家和老师来了。（作家和老师是两个人）

（11）people，police 等集体名词作主语，谓语动词用复数形式；family，class，group，team 等集体名词作主语，若指一个整体时，谓语动词用单数形式，若指一个具体成员时，谓语动词复数形式。例如：

People here are very friendly. 这儿的人很友好。

His family isn't large. 他家的人不多。

My family all like watching TV. 我们一家人都喜欢看电视。

（12）somebody，someone，something，anybody，anything，everybody，everyone，everything，nobody，no one，nothing 等不定代词作主语，谓语动词用单数，例如：

Is everyone here today? 今天大家到齐了吗？

Something is wrong with him. 他有毛病。

Nobody was in. 没有人在家。

（13）each，either，neither，another，the other 作主语，谓语动词用单数。例如：

Each of them has an English dictionary. 他们每人都有一本英语词典。

Neither answer is correct. 两个答案都不正确。

（14）以-s 结尾的名词本身不表示复数意义，谓语通常用单数形式，如 news，maths，physics 等，例如：

No news is good news. 没有消息就是好消息。

Maths is very popular in our class. 在我们班数学很受欢迎。

（15）由 both…and…连接两个单数名词作主语时，谓语动词用复数形式；由 or，either…or…，neither…nor…，not only…but also…，not…but…连接两个名词或代词作主语时，根据就近原则决定谓语动词形式。例如：

Both his father and his mother are both teachers. 他的爸爸和妈妈都是老师。

Either Tom or Jack is wrong. 不是汤姆就是杰克错了。

Either this one or that one is ok. 这一个或那一个都行。

（16）a number of…意思是“一些，若干”（= some），后接可数名词复数或代词，谓语动词用复数形式。a number of…词组中还可以加入形容词表示数量大或小等（例如：a large/small number of…许多/少数……）。the number of…意思是“……的数字/数目”，介词 of 同其后名词构成介词短语，修饰 the number。当它作主语时，谓语动词用单数。例如：

A number of famous people were invited to party. 许多名人都被邀请参加这个聚会。

The number of the students is over eight hundred. 我们学校的学生数超过 800 人。

（17）当 kind of，pair of，glass of 等表示确定数量的名词短语修饰主语时，谓语与 kind，pair，glass 等一致。例如：

This pair of shoes is Tom's. 这双鞋是汤姆的。

There are two glasses of water on the table. 桌上有两杯水。

（18）the+形容词表示一类人时，谓语动词用复数形式，表示抽象概念时，用单数形式。例如：

The poor are very happy，but the rich are sad. 穷人很快乐，富人却过得不快乐。

The beautiful lives forever. 美是永存的。

（19）以 here，there 开关的句子，若主语在两个或两个以上，谓语动词通常与临近的主语一致。例如：

There is a book and three pens on the desk. 桌子上有一本书，三支钢笔。

Here are some books and paper for you. 这是给你的书和纸。

2.5　名词的所有格

名词在句中表示所有关系的语法形式叫作名词所有格。所有格分两种：一是在名词词尾加’s 构成，二是由介词 of 加名词构成。前者多表示有生命的东西，后者多表示无生命的东西。

1. ’s 所有格的构成（见表 2-8）

表 2-8　’s 所有格的构成

单数名词在末尾加’s		the boy’s father，Jack’s book，her son-in-law’s photo
复数名词	一般在末尾加’	the teachers’ room，the twins’ mother
	不规则复数名词后加’s	the children’s toys，women’s rights
以 s 结尾的人名所有格加’s 或者’		Dickens’ novels，Charles’s job，the Smiths’ house
表示各自的所有关系时，各名词末尾均须加’s		Japan’s and America’s problems，Jane’s and Mary’s bikes
表示共有的所有关系时在最后一词末加’s		Japan and America’s problems，Jane and Mary’s father
表示“某人家”“店铺”，所有格后名词省略		the doctor’s，the barber’s，the tailor’s，my uncle’s

2. ’s 所有格的用法（见表 2-9）

表 2-9　’s 所有格的用法

1	表示时间	today’s newspaper，five weeks’ holiday
2	表示自然现象	the earth’s atmosphere，the tree’s branches
3	表示国家城市等地方的名词	the world’s population，China’s industry
4	表示工作群体	the ship’s crew，majority’s view，the team’s victory

3. of 所有格的用法

（1）没有生命的事物一般用 of 短语来表示所属关系。例如：the wall of the classroom，a picture of the bedroom。

（2）名词的定语较长时，有生命的事物也可用 of 短语表示。例如：along story of a 50-year-old man。

（3）双重所有格：a friend of his，the big nose of Tom’s。

双重所有格有两种形式：1）of+名词所有格；2）of+名词性物主代词，如：

He is a friend of my brother’s. 他是我哥哥的一个朋友。

Is she a daughter of yours? 她是你的女儿吗？

双重所有格与 of 的区别：

He is a friend of your father’s. 他是你父亲的一个朋友。（其中一个朋友，还有其他朋友）

He is a friend of your father. 他是你父亲的朋友。（强调友好，是朋友，不是同学）

（4）有些表示时间、距离、国家、城市等无生命的东西的名词，也可以加’s 来构成所有格。例如：ten minutes’ walk，today’s newspaper。

2.6　真题汇总

在英语中，名词的用法十分广泛，且在历年中考中，名词考点仍然具有升无降的趋势，就近几年的中考英语试题来看，对名词考查得较热的还是“名词的数”“名词的格”“名词作主语时和谓语一致关系”（名词的其他知识点是必要的基础）。

2.6.1 名词的数

1. 规则名词复数形式的构成

（1）大多数名词在词尾加-s。（在清辅音后读[s]，在浊辅音及元音后读[z]）

例：The teacher said we needed to choose three ______ for the school concert.

A. farmers　　B. doctors　　C. drivers　　D. singers（答案：D）

（2）以辅音字母+y 结尾的名词把 y 变成 i，加-es（读作[iz] city—cities），但专有名词例外，直接在 y 后加-s（读作[z] Germany—Germanys）。

例：Many _______ have been built in our city since 1987.

A. factorys　　B. factories　　C. factoryes　　D. factory（答案：B）

（3）以 s、x、ch、sh 结尾的名词在词尾加-es（读作[iz]）。

例 1：How many _______are there in the room?

A. boxes　　B. box　　C. boxes　　D. boxxes （答案：A）

例 2：His mother bought two _______yesterday.

A. brushs　　B. brushse　　C. brushes　　D. brush （答案：B）

（4）以辅音字母+o 结尾的名词一般直接加-es（读作[z]），某些外来词例外，加-s（如 zero，kilo，tobacco 等）；以元音字母+o 结尾的名词直接加-s（但读作[z]）。

例 1：There are lots of _______in the basket on the table.

A. tomatos　　B. tomato　　C. tomatoss　　D. tomatoes（答案：D）

例 2：Whose ______ are these?

A. photo　　B. photoes　　C. photos　　D. photoss（答案：C）

（5）以 f 或 fe 结尾的名词有的直接加-s（读作[z]）；大多数要将 f 或 fe 变为 v，再加-es（读作[z]）；有些词两种形式都可以 handkerchief—handkerchiefs—handkerchieves。

例：This tree has green ________ throughout the year.

A. leaf　　B. leafs　　C. leave　　D. leaves（答案：D）

2. 不规则变化

（1）单数、复数形式相同。如：deer—deer，sheep—sheep，fish—fish，Chinese—Chinese，people—people。

例：Look，five _________ are feeding on the hill.

A. sheeps　　B. sheep　　C. sheeps　　D. the sheep（答案：B）

（2）改变单数名词中的元音字母。如：foot—feet，man—men，tooth—teeth，woman—women。

例：Several ___ are talking under the tree. And their ___ are swimming in the lake.

A. woman；children　　B. woman；child

C. women；children　　D. women；child（答案：C）

（3）含有 man，woman 的复合名词的变化。如：Englishman—Englishmen，policewoman—policewomen，Frenchwoman—Frenchwomen，fisherman—fishermen.

（4）其他变化。如：child—children，mouse—mice。

例：The cat caught two _______last night.

A. mouses　　B. mice

C. mouse　　D. mices（答案：B）

（5）有些词只有复数形式：某些由两个部分构成的物体的名词。如：trousers 等；某些通常以复数形式出现的名词。如：arms，clothes，goods，stairs 等。

2.6.2 名词的格

英语中有些名词可以加's 来表示所有关系，带这种词尾的名词形式称为该名词的所有格，如：a teacher's book。名词所有格的规则如下：

（1）单数名词词尾加's，复数名词词尾没有 s，也要加's，如 the boy's bag 男孩的书包，men's room 男厕所。

例：—How soon shall we start the bicycle trip? — __________.

A. In five day's time　　B. In five days' time
C. In five days time　　D. For five days（答案：B）

（2）若名词已有复数词尾-s，只加“'”，如：the workers' struggle 工人的斗争。

例：—He may be back to the country in a few _______. — I hope the day to come!

A. month's time　　B. months time　　C. months' time　　D. month time（答案：C）

（3）凡不能加's 的名词，都可以用“名词+of+名词”的结构来表示所有关系，如：the title of the song 歌的名字。

例：—What do you know about the world's population?
　—I know China and India are the countries _______ more than one billion.

A. with a population of　　B. with populations
C. that have populations of　　D. which has a population of （答案：C）

（4）表示店铺或教堂的名字或某人的家时，名词所有格的后面常常不出现它所修饰的名词，如：the barber's 理发店。

例：—You needn't wait for Tom any longer. —He must be having supper at ______.

A. the Tell's　　B. the Tells'　　C. the Tells　　D. Tells（答案：B）

（5）如果两个名词并列，并且分别有's，则表示“分别有”；只有一个's，则表示“共有”。复合名词或短语，'s 加在最后一个词的词尾。例如：John's and Mary's rooms（两间）John and Mary's room（一间）。

例：Yesterday evening we had a lovely party at _______.

A. Peter and Helen's　　B. Peter and Helens
C. Peter and Helen　　D. Peter's and Helen's（答案：A）

2.6.3 名词作主语时和谓语的一致

（1）复数主语须用复数谓语，单数主语须用单数谓语。

例 1：A man of words and not of deeds _______ a garden full of weed.

A. like　　B. likes　　C. is like　　D. are like

解析：选 C。因主语是 A man（单数），“of words and not of deeds”是主语的定语。

例 2：A number of people in the developed cities _______ cars of their own.

A. has　　B. have　　C. there is　　D. there are

解析：选 B。因主语是 people（复数），a number of（许多）是主语的定语。

（2）如果名词主语是一个抽象概念，一般用单数谓语。

例 1：Smoking is bad for your health.

例 2：“Many years” ________a long time，I don't know how long________.

A. are；they are　　B. are；it is　　C. is；they are　　D. is；it is

解析：例 1 中，smoking 指事，谓语用单数；例 2 选 D，因为在英语里，表时间、距离等的名词作主语和表事件都是抽象概念，其谓语都要用单数。

（3）当主语是 and 连接的两个名词时，在指一样东西时用单数谓语，若指两样东西时则需用复数主语。

例 1：Talking about something and doing it are two different things.

例 2：I want bread and milk instead of bread and butter because bread and butter____not sold well before.

A. are　　B. is　　C. were　　D. was

解析：例 1 中“说”和“做”是两件事；例 2 中，bread and milk、bread and butter 分别是指“牛奶面包”和“黄油面包”，and 连接的表示一样东西，在 because 从句中，主语 bread and butter 当然是单数，所以选 D。

（4）如果名词主语后面跟有 with，together with，as well as，except 这类词引导的短语，谓语仍用单数，因为这种结构多为修饰语。

例：Mary with her parents______TV in the sitting-room at this time yesterday.

A. is　　B. are　　C. was　　D. were

解析：选 C。因为 with her parents 在此作伴随状语，主语（Mary）是单数。

（5）集体名词作主语的情况：

① 有些集体名词可跟单数谓语，也可跟复数谓语，视作整体时跟单数谓语，着重于所包含的成员时，则可跟复数谓语。

例 1：His family_____lunch at the table now.（have）

例 2：His family______very poor before.（be）

解析：例 1 中 family 指家中成员的活动，视为复数，填 are having；例 2 中 family 指“家”，视为整体，是单数，填 was。

② 有些集体名词指复数的人或动物，后面用复数谓语。

例：The police are going to question him. 警察审视他。

解析：在英语里，people，police，media（媒体），bacteria（细菌），cattle（牛群）等名词指复数的人或物。

③ 有些集体名词后面的谓语用单数或复数都可以，也有的集体名词通常只跟单数谓语。

2.6.4　例题选讲

例 1：There are__________in this river.

A. a great deal of fish　　B. a great number of fish

C. a great amount of fish　　D. huge amounts of fish（答案：B）

提示：根据题意应填入许多鱼，而 fish 是单复数同形的可数名词，如果要表示各种各样的鱼可以用 fishes 表示。fish 解释为鱼肉是不可数名词。本句表示河里有许多鱼，只有 a great number of 修饰可数名词。

例 2：He has done many___________.

A. work　　B. job　　C. works　　D. jobs（答案：D）

提示：job 是可数名词，在 many 后应填复数名词。work 作为“工作”是一个不可数名词。

例 3：___________father is a doctor.

A. The twin’s　　B. The twins’　　C. The twin　　D. Twin’s（答案：B）

提示：名词复数的所有格形式只需在词尾加“’”，不能再加“-s’”。

例 4：I take violin__________from Mr. Wang at school every day.

A. lesson　　B. lesson　　C. class　　D. course（答案：B）

提示：在英语中有些名词常以复数形式出现，lessons 表示课程。

例 5：There__________on the wall，they are very nice.

A. are photos　　B. are photos　　C. is a photo　　D. is photo（答案：A）

提示：photo 的复数形式是加-s。

例 6：The police________searching for a tall man with long hair.

A. is B. has been C. had been D. are（答案：D）

提示：police 代表整体，谓语要用复数。

【实例解析】

1.（上海徐汇区中考试题）These ________ have saved many children's lives.

A. woman doctors B. women doctor C. women doctors D. woman doctor

答案：C。该题考查的是名词作定语时的变化。woman 作定语时要和被修饰的名词保持数的一致。

2.（河北省中考试题）This is ________ bedroom. The twin sisters like it very much.

A. Anne and Jane B. Anne's and Jane's

C. Anne's and Jane D. Anne and Jane's

答案：D。该题考查的是并列名词的所有格。两人共有一个房间时，只在后面的名词后加's。

3.（吉林省中考试题）—Are there any ________ on the farm? —Yes，there are some.

A. horse B. duck C. chicken D. sheep

答案：D。该题考查的是特殊名词的复数形式。从谓语动词来判断，主语应该是复数名词。只有 sheep 可用作复数名词。

4.（佛山市中考试题）—What would you like to drink，________ or orange? —Orange，please.

A. hamburger B. chip C. tea

答案：C。该题考查的是名词的类别。三种东西中只有 tea 能喝。

【历年考点归纳】

名词是英语中一种重要的实词，同时也是每年中考英语试题考查的一个热点。

一、对可数名词与不可数名词的考查。

1. How many ________are there in the international village?（汕头市）

A. Chinese B. Russian C. American

2. The restaurant is so popular here. Look，there are so many________ here.（徐州市）

A. food B. dish C. people D. waiter

3. —Can I help you? —I'd like________ for my twin daughters.（滨州市）

A. two pair of shoes B. two pairs of shoe C. two pair of shoe D. two pairs of shoes

4. Mrs Jenny gives us________ on how to learn English well.（天津市）

A. some advices B. many advices C. some advice D. an advice

5. —Are there any________on the farm? —Yes，there are some.（吉林省）

A. horse B. duck C. chicken D. sheep

【考点归纳】这类试题要求考生区分可数名词与不可数名词以及修饰可数名词与不可数名词的常用词语，并掌握将可数名词由单数形式变为复数形式的基本方法，还要熟记 dear，sheep，Chinese，Japanese 等单复数形式相同的名词，以及一些不规则名词的单复数形式，如 man→men，woman→women，child→children，policeman→policemen，mouse→mice，foot→feet，tooth→teeth，stomach→stomachs 等。

二、对名词所有格的考查。

1. The computer on the desk is________.（孝感市）

A. twins B. the twin's C. the twins D. the twins'

2. Mrs Black is a friend of________.（资阳市）

A. Mary's mother's　　B. Mary's mother　　C. mother's of Mary　　D. Mary mother's

3. It is over________ from Shijiazhuang to Beijing.（河北省）

A. three hours' drive　　B. three hour's drive　　C. three hours' drives　　D. three hours drive

4. Today is September 10th. It is________Day.（常德市）

A. Teachers　　B. Teachers'　　C. the teachers'　　D. Teacher's

5. —Do you know the woman over there? —Yes. She's________aunt.（济南市）

A. Lily and Lucy　　B. Lily's and Lucy's　　C. Lily's and Lucy　　D. Lily and Lucy's

6. After playing football for more than half an hour，the students took________ rest.（天津市）

A. a few minute's　　B. a few minutes'　　C. a little minute's　　D. a little minutes'

【考点归纳】这类试题主要考查名词所有格的构成及其用法。名词的所有格一般在词尾加“'s”，这种形式的所有格主要用于有生命的名词以及表示时间、距离等名词的后面。注意：如果名词本身以表示复数意义的 s 结尾，构成所有格时直接在词尾加上“'”即可。另外，注意“A's and B's”型名词短语所有格表示两者分别拥有某物，而“A and B's”型名词短语所有格表示两者共同拥有某物。

三、对名词作定语的考查。

1. There are three________ assistants in that________ shop.（孝感市）

A. women；shoe　　B. woman；shoe　　C. woman；shoes　　D. women；shoes

2. —Where are the________? —They are playing________ football on the playground.（乌鲁木齐市）

A. boys students；the　　B. boy students；the　　C. boy students；/　　D. boy student；/

3. Bill said they would have________ holiday.（天津市）

A. a two-month　　B. two-months　　C. two-monthes　　D. two-month's

【考点归纳】一般情况下，名词作定语修饰主体名词时，常用单数形式；主体名词为复数形式时，作定语用的名词一般用单数形式，如 boy friends。但以 man，woman 等名词作定语修饰主体名词时，若主体名词为复数形式，man 和 woman 也要变为复数形式，如 men doctors。由“基数词+连词符号+名词”或“基数词+连词符号+名词+连词符号+形容词”构成的复合词作定语修饰主体名词时，复合词中的名词只能用单数形式。

四、对易混名词的考查。

1. At the foot of the hill you could hear nothing but the________ of the running water.（天津市）

A. shout　　B. noise　　C. voice　　D. sound

2. Beth has a beautiful________. Listen! She is singing very well.（杭州市）

A. voice　　B. look　　C. sound　　D. smell

3. —What happened to you this morning? —The teacher asked me for my________ when I was late again.（武汉市）

A. meaning　　B. idea　　C. excuse　　D. answer

4. —Oh，there isn't enough________ for us in the lift. —No hurry. Let's wait for the next.（黄冈市）

A. floor　　B. ground　　C. room　　D. place

5. Tom regards Nanjing as his second________ because he has been here for over ten years.（南京市）

A. family　　B. room　　C. house　　D. home

6. Football is a popular________around the world.（安徽省）

A. match　　B. goal　　C. game　　D. play

7. Excuse me，waiter. We're leaving. Can you bring me the________，please?（杭州市）

A. money　　B. note　　C. bill　　D. list

【考点归纳】这类试题主要考查一些语义相近而极易混淆的名词。考生平时要注意积累、掌握一些常

见易混名词的用法与区别，如：family，home，room，house；problem，question，match，game，note，bill；door，gate，entrance 等。

五、对名词所表示的相关意义的考查。

1. Once upon a time we Chinese made the first kite. People used kites to send________ to other places，because they didn't have telephones，computers，or even radios.（临沂市）

A. languages　B. newspapers　C. messages　D. magazines

2. Heilongjiang is in the________of China.（天津市）

A. northeast　B. northeastern　C. northwest　D. northwestern

3. Lao She is the________of *Tea House*（《茶馆》）.（陕西省）

A. doctor　B. actor　C. scientist　D. writer

4. —I want to go to different places，but I don't know the________. —A map is helpful，I think.（江西省）

A. price　B. way　C. time　D. ticket

5. Thomas Edison never gave up. During his lifetime，he had 1，093________.（盐城市）

A. instructions　B. competitions　C. inventions　D. injections

6. The TV________ on Channel Five are about sports.（天津市）

A. experiences　B. performances　C. programs　D. problems

7. —Please give me a________ when you get to Beijing. —All right. I'll tell you everything when I get there.（宁波市）

A. newspaper　B. ticket　C. present　D. ring

【考点归纳】这类试题常常涉及其他学科的知识和日常生活常识，主要考查考生的综合素质。只要考生能读懂句意，把握语境，一般不难做出正确的选择。

六、对含有名词的固定短语的考查。

1. —Sorry，Jane. I took your school bag by________. —It doesn't matter.（盐城市）

A. hand　B. mistake　C. bike　D. heart

2. Brian is so kind that he often gives me a________ when I'm in trouble.（安徽省）

A. reply　B. seat　C. hand　D. reason

3. There will be many kinds of shoes________ this Sunday. I'll go and buy a pair for my daughter.（南宁市）

A. on duty　B. on show　C. on business　D. on watch

4. We should have________ in ourselves and we will make it if we have a try.（大连市）

A. success　B. confidence　C. progress　D. knowledge

【考点归纳】这类试题主要考查考生对一些含有名词的固定短语的构成和意义的掌握情况，这就要求考生在日常的学习中熟记一些固定短语的结构和意义，如：by mistake“错误地”；on show“展览”；on business“因公”；on duty“值班”；give sb. a hand“帮助某人”；have confidence in oneself“相信自己”；after a while“过一会儿”；in the end“最后”；make room for“给……腾出空间“；make faces”做鬼脸“等。

【模拟训练】

一、写出下列名词的复数形式。

1. house ____________	2. village ____________	3. map ____________
4. orange ____________	5. bag ____________	6. exercise ____________
7. brush ____________	8. family ____________	9. bus ____________
10. city ____________	11. box ____________	12. baby ____________

13. class ________	14. factory ________	15. glass ________
16. dictionary ________	17. watch ________	18. woman ________
19. match ________	20. man ________	21. wish ________
22. German ________	23. tomato ________	24. policeman ________
25. kilo ________	26. human ________	27. potato ________
28. Chinese ________	29. shelf ________	30. Japanese ________
31. leaf ________	32. American ________	33. life ________
34. tooth ________	35. wife ________	36. foot ________
37. knife ________	38. sheep ________	39. half ________
40. child ________	41. mouse ________	42. goose ________

二、将下列单数意义的句子变为复数意义的句子。

1. That is my photo.________________________________
2. This is a pencil box.________________________________
3. Is this her key?________________________________
4. Is that boy your friend?________________________________
5. I am a boy. ________________________________
6. She is a teacher. ________________________________
7. It is a red apple. ________________________________

三、将下列复数意义的句子变为单数意义的句子。

1. Those are my friends. ________________________________
2. They are English girls. ________________________________
3. They are some umbrellas. ________________________________
4. These are dictionaries. ________________________________
5. We are students. ________________________________
6. What colour are your books? ________________________________

四、根据句子意思用所给单词的适当形式填空。

1. ____________ （this） are my English books.
2. The two boys are my____________ （cousin）.
3. —__________those your parents? —Yes, they__________.
4. —Who are the man and the woman in the picture? —They are my______________.
5. My aunt Jane and my mother are____________.
6. I have two _____ （watch）. They are on the desk.
7. I have some________ （photo） of my family.
9. Do you like these__________ （country）?
10. Are those your______ （bus）?

【典型例题】

一、名词的各种分类。

1. There is good_________ for you. I've found your lost watch.
   A. news　　B. ideas　　C. messages　　D. thoughts

2. My uncle will come to my house for dinner. I want to buy some ____ to make a vegetable salad for him.

A. meat B. tomatoes C. apple juice

3. The teacher said we needed to choose three________for the school concert.

A. farmers B. doctors C. drivers D. singers

4. At night the koala bear gets up and eats___________.

A. leaf B. leaves C. leafs

5. PLA man saved three ____lives in the accident.

A. children's B. children C. child D. childs'

6. Come on，children. Help yourselves to some_________ if you like.

A. fish and chicken B. fishes and chicken

C. fish and chickens D. fishes and chickens

7. All the ____teachers enjoyed themselves on March 8th，because it was their own holiday.

A. man B. men C. woman D. women

二、不可数名词数量的表达法。

1. Mr Smith always has _________to tell us.

A. some good pieces of news B. some pieces of good news

C. some good piece of newes D. some piece of good newes

2. —Would you like to have a look at some pants? They may fit you well.

—Well，I'd like to try those blue__________.

A. pairs B. one C. pant D. pair

3. —Would you like some drinks，boys? —Yes，_____，please.

A. some oranges B. two boxes of chocolates

C. some cakes D. two bottles of orange

4. _____________exciting news! We will have________long holiday after the exam.

A. What an；a B. What；a C. How an；the D. How；the

三、名词所有格及其用法。

1._________fathers are both scientists.

A. Jim's and Bob B. Jim's and Bob's C. Jim and Bob's D. Jim and Bob

2._____________exciting news! We will have________long holiday after the exam.

A. What an；a B. What；a C. How an；the D. How；the

四、表示时间、距离、国家、城市、团体、机构等无生命东西的名词所有格。

1. —Excuse me，is the supermarket far from here? —No，it's about _______.

A. 7 minutes walk B. 7 minute walk C. 7 minutes' walk D. 7 minute's walk

2. —Come and see me in____. —With pleasure. That's what I'm expecting.

A. two or three days' B. two or three day's time

C. two or three days' time

3. I'm going on holiday on the 12th. I have to be back at work on the 26th. So I've got two_____ holiday.

A. weeks B. week's C. weeks' D. week

【参考答案】

一、名词的各种分类。

1. A。四个选项都是以 s 结尾的名词，其中 A 为不可数名词，B、C、D 为名词的复数形式，句中用了连系动词 is。

2. B。下文说制作蔬菜沙拉，故选蔬菜类的 tomatoes。

3. D。可数名词的复数形式是在原形后加“s”。根据 school concert 可知，需要挑选的是 singers。

4. B。考查名词 leaf 的复数形式。以 f 或 fe 结尾的名词在变复数时，一般将 f 或 fe 变 v 后，加 es。

5. A。考查名词所有格的用法。three 后接复数 children，变名词所有格时直接加“'s”，故选 A。

6. A。fish（鱼肉）和 chicken（鸡肉）都是不可数名词。

7. D。由时间 on March 8th 可知是妇女节，“女教师”单数形式用 woman teacher，复数形式两个词都要变为复数。

二、不可数名词数量的表达法。

1. A。考查名词的数。news 意为“消息”，是不可数名词。

2. A。pants 要用 a pair of 来修饰，由 those blue 确定其后接 pairs 的复数形式，故选 A。

3. D。orange 是不可数名词。可用“数词或冠词＋量词＋of＋不可数名词”这样的结构来表示它的数量。量词（piece，bottle，glass，pair，cup 等）是可数名词，可根据情况用单数或复数，但 of 后面的名词只能用单数。

4. B。news 为不可数名词，其前面不能用 a/an 来修饰。不可数名词的确切数量可借助单位词组来表示，如 a piece of，a cup of，two glasses of three bottles of 等。

三、名词所有格及其用法。

1. B。当两个人分别拥有时，要在每个人后都加名词所有格的标志“'s”来表达。吉姆的父亲和鲍勃的父亲不是一个人，所以在其后都加“'s”，故选 B。

2. B。news 为不可数名词，其前面不能用 a/an 来修饰。不可数名词的确切数量可借助单位词组来表示，如 a piece of，a cup of，two glasses of three bottles of 等。

四、表示时间、距离、国家、城市、团体、机构等无生命东西的名词所有格。

1. C。考查名词所有格用法。当名词的复数以-s 结尾时，则只需要加“'”即可，则“7 分钟的距离”为“7 minutes' walk”。

2. C。in 后接一段时间，此处表示“两三天的时间”，要用名词所有格形式，因 two or three days 是复数，直接加“'”。

3. C。本题考查名词所有格的用法。“两周”是复数，用 two weeks，weeks 变名词所有格时，只需在后面加“'”。

【中考演练】

一、单项填空。

1. —Where have you been，Tim? —I've been to ______.

   A. the Henry house　　B. the Henry family　　C. the Henry's home　　D. Henry's

2. In England，if ____ is in the middle of the day，the evening meal is called supper.

   A. food　　B. lunch　　C. breakfast　　D. dinner

3. You looked for it twice，but you haven't found it. Why not try ____.

   A. three times　　B. a third time　　C. the third time　　D. once

4. —They are thirsty. Will you please give them ______ ? —Certainly.

   A. some bottles of waters　　B. some bottles of water

   C. some bottle of water　　D. some bottle of waters

5. Mike hurt one of his ______ in the accident yesterday.

   A. tooth　　B. feet　　C. hand　　D. ear

6. There is some _______ on the plate.

A. cakes　B. meat　C. potato　D. pears

7. In England，the last name is the ______.

A. family name　B. middle　C. given name　D. full name

8. The are going to fly _______ to Beijing.

A. Germen　B. Germany　C. Germanys　D. Germans

9. The____has two _____.

A. boys；watches　B. boy；watch　C. boy；watches　D. boys；watch

10. The little baby has two _______ already.

A. tooth　B. tooths　C. teeth　D. teeths

11. What's your _______ for being late again?

A. idea　B. key　C. excuse　D. news

12. —It's dangerous here. We'd better go out quickly. —But I think we should let ___go out first.

A. woman and children　B. women and child

C. woman and child　D. women and children

13. —You can see Mr. Smith if there is a sign "_______" on the door of his shop. —Thanks.

A. ENTRANCE　B. BUSINESS HOURS

C. THIS SIDE UP　D. NO SMOKING

14. Are they going to have a picnic on _______?

A. Children's Day　B. Childrens's Day　C. Childrens Day　D. Children Day

15. Where are the students? Are they in _______?

A. the Room 406　B. Room 406　C. the 406 Room　D. 406 Room

二、根据下列句子的情景及所给汉语注释，写出所缺单词。

1. We've got a lot of new ________ (杂志) in our school library.
2. Please turn to another _______ (频道)，I don't like this show.
3. Yesterday the _________ (航班) to London was put off because of the bad weather.
4. Autumn is my favourite______ (季节).
5. —How many _______ (小刀) do you have? —Three.
6. __________ are widely used in the modern world.
7. June 1st is __________ (儿童) Day.
8. Mary，would you please tell me your new ________ (地址) so that I can write to you.
9. —Does this piece of ______ (音乐) sound nice? —Yes. It's wonderful!
10. May 12th is the International _______ (护士) Day. Let's say "Thanks" to them for their work.

三、根据句意和所给首字母写出所缺的单词。

1. "What's your n_______?" "Li Lei."
2. How many d_______ does your uncle have?
3. Please close the w______. It's cold outside.
4. If you want study English well，you must pay attention to your p________.
5. A computer is one of the greatest i_________ in the world.
6. Zhang Hui is very excited. He will go to Japan with his p_______ during the Spring Festival.
7. At the a______ of seven，the lonely girl had to work to make living.
8. It's only about an h_____ flight from Qingdao to Beijing by air.
9. Health is more important to me than m_______.
10. Be careful! It's d__________ to run across the street now.

【练习答案】

一、1—5　DBBBB　　6—10　BADCC　　11—15　CDBAB

二、1. magazines	2. Channel	3. flight	4.season	5. knives
6. Computers	7. Children's	8. address	9. music	10. Nurses'
三、1. name	2. daughters	3. window	4. pronunciation	5. inventions
6. parents	7. age	8. hour's	9. money	10. dangerous

【历年高考英语名词试题】

名词是英语学习中的难点，同时也是高考的热点。名词的常见考点有：名词的可数与不可数；名词的格的使用和意义；名词作定语的用法及名词的一些习惯用法。

1.（2008 上海春卷 43）Every ton of this recycled paper uses 90 litres of water in its ______.

A. structure　　B. manufacture　　C. construction　　D. organization

2.（2008 天津卷 11）Most air pollution is caused by the burning of ____ like coal，gas and oil.

A. fuels　　B. articles　　C. goods　　D. products

3.（2008 山东卷 34）I bought a dress for only 10 dollars in a sale；it was a real _____.

A. exchange　　B. bargain　　C. trade　　D. business

4.（2008 江西卷 27）—Shall we go out for a walk? —Sorry. This is not the right ___ to invite me. I am too tired to walk.

A. moment　　B. situation　　C. place　　D. chance

5.（2008 安徽卷 24）To save some of the human languages before they are forgotten，the students in our school started a discussion "Save Our ______".

A. Sky　　B. Life　　C. Arts　　D. Voices

6.（2008 浙江卷 15）Dogs have a very good ____ of smell and are often used to search for survivors in an earthquake.

A. sense　　B. view　　C. means　　D. idea

7.（2008 湖北卷 21）The young man made a _______ to his parents that he would try to earn his own living after graduation.

A. prediction　　B. promise　　C. plan　　D. contribution

8.（2008 湖北卷 22）The top leaders of the two countries are holding talks in a friendly______.

A. atmosphere　　B. state　　C. situation　　D. phenomenon

9.（2008 福建卷 32）What's the _____ of having a public open space where you can't eat，drink or even simply hang out for a while?

A. sense　　B. matter　　C. case　　D. opinion

10.（2007 山东卷 27）I can't say which wine is best—it's a（n）___ of personal taste.

A. affair　　B. event　　C. matter　　D. variety

11.（2007 陕西卷 12）He and his wife are of the same________；they both want their son to go to college.

A. soul　　B. spirit　　C. heart　　D. mind

12.（2007 上海卷 43）My morning________includes jogging in the park and reading newspapers over breakfast.

A. drill　　B. action　　C. regulation　　D. routine

13.（2007 湖北卷 23）Despite such a big difference in__________towards what one eats，there is no doubt that people in the west regard the Chinese food as something special.

A. point　　B. idea　　C. attitude　　D. sight

14.（2007 天津卷 12）One thousand dollars a month is not a fortune but would help cover my living_____.

A. bills　　B. expenses　　C. prices　　D. charges

15.（2007 福建卷 31）—You are always full of____________. Can you tell me the secret? —Taking plenty of exercise every day.

A. power　　B. strength　　C. force　　D. energy

16.（2007 安徽卷 32）The practice of hanging clothes across the street is a common _____ in many parts of the city.

A. look　　B. sign　　C. sight　　D. appearance

17.（2007 浙江卷 12）Of the seven days in a week，Saturday is said to be the most popular ____ for a wedding in some country.

A. way　　B. situation　　C. event　　D. choice

18.（2007 辽宁卷 25）Health problems are closely connected with bad eating habits and a _____ of exercise.

A. limit　　B. lack　　C. need　　D. demand

19.（2006 辽宁 32）School children must be taught how to deal with dangerous _____.

A. states　　B. conditions　　C. situations　　D. positions

20.（2006 浙江 17）— If you like I can do some shopping for you. —That's a very kind _________.

A. offer　　B. service　　C. point　　D. suggestion

21.（2006 湖北 21）To make members of a team perform better，the trainer first of all has to know their _______ and weaknesses.

A. strengths　　B. benefits　　C. techniques　　D. values

22.（2006 湖北 23）The______ on his face told me that he was angry.

A. impression　　B. sight　　C. appearance　　D. expression

23.（2006 湖北 24）At the meeting they discussed three different ____ to the study of mathematics.

A. approaches　　B. means　　C. methods　　D. ways

24.（2006 福建 35）Always read the _______ on the bottle carefully and take the right amount of medicine.

A. explanations　　B. instructions　　C. descriptions　　D. introductions

25.（2006 江西 28）It is said that dogs will keep you_____for as long as you want when you are feeling lonely.

A. safety　　B. company　　C. house　　D. friend

26.（2006 天津 15）Finding information in today's world is easy. The _____ is how you can tell if the information you get is useful or not.

A. ability　　B. competition　　C. challenge　　D. knowledge

27.（2006 广东 34）You have been sitting on my hat and now it is badly out of _____.

A. date　　B. shape　　C. order　　D. balance

28.（2006 全国 III 16）It is no _____ arguing with Bill because he will never change his mind.

A. use　　B. help　　C. time　　D. way

29.（2005 浙江 16）I am sure David will be able to find the library—he has a pretty good _____of direction.

A. idea　　B. feeling　　C. experience　　D. sense

30.（2005 安徽 28）My ______of this weekend's activity is going out with some good friend.

A. idea　　B. opinion　　C. mind　　D. thought

31.（2005 辽宁 27）The head office of the bank is in Beijing，but it has _____ all over the country.

A. companies　　B. branches　　C. organizations　　D. businesses

32.（2005 上海 43）He proved himself a true gentleman and the beauty of his _______ was seen at best when he worked with others.

A. temper　　B. appearance　　C. talent　　D. character

33.（2004 全国 II 31）If you buy more than ten，they knock 20 pence off _______.

A. a price　　B. price　　C. the price　　D. prices

34.（2004 全国卷 IV28）The faces of four famous American presidents on Mount Rushmore can be seen from a _____of 60 miles.

A. length B. distance C. way D. space

35.（2004 上海卷 45）The environmentalists and wild goats' _____ on the vast grasslands was a good indication of the better environment.

A. escape B. absence C. attendance D. appearance

36.（2004 上海卷 52）In dealing with public relations，we should make every effort to prevent the _____ in personality.

A. contact B. contrast C. connection D. conflict

37.（2004 上海卷 53）Chinese arts have won the ______ of a lot of people outside China.

A. enjoyment B. appreciation C. entertainment D. reputation

38.（2004 天津卷 26）I keep medicines on the top shelf，out of the children's_______.

A. reach B. hand C. hold D. place

39.（2004 湖北卷 21）Don't leave matches or cigarettes on the table within________of little children.

A. hand B. reach C. space D. distance

40.（2003 北京卷 29）—I'm sorry I stepped outside for a smoke. I was very tired. —There is no____ for this while you are on duty.

A. reason B. excuse C. cause D. explanation

41.（2003 上海卷 46）"I don't think it's my _____ that the TV blew up. I just turned it on，that's all，" said the boy.

A. error B. mistake C. fault D. duty

42.（2003 上海卷 50）One of the consequences of our planet's being warming up is a(n)______ in the number of natural disasters.

A. result B. account C. reason D. increase

43.（2003 上海卷 52）Life is tough in the city. In order to lose their _____ some people drink alcohol.

A. temper B. mood C. consciousness D. pressures

44.（2003 北京春考 28）The manager has got a good business ____ so the company is doing well.

A. idea B. sense C. thought D. thinking

45.（2002 年 21）—I'm taking my driving test tomorrow. —_______!

A. Cheers B. Good luck C. Come on D. Congratulations

46.（2002 上海卷 45）To regain their________after an exhausting game，the players lay in the grass.

A. force B. energy C. power D. health

47.（2002 上海卷 46）According to the recent research，heavy coffee drinking and heart attack is not necessarily _____ and effect.

A. reason B. impact C. fact D. cause

48.（2002 上海卷 47）Every new_____has the possibility of making or losing money.

A. event B. venture C. adventure D. expectation

49.（1998 年 21）You'll find this map of great _____in helping you to get round London.

A. price B. cost C. value D. usefulness

50.（1997 年 18）If by any chance someone comes to see me，ask them to leave a_______.

A. message B. letter C. sentence D. notice

【参考答案】

1—5 BABAD 6—10ABAAC 11—15 DDCBD 16—20 CDBCA 21—25 ADABB

26—30CBADA 31—35 BDCBD 36—40 DBABB 41—45 CDDBB 46—50 BDBCA

3 冠 词

3.1 概 述

冠词是一种虚词，一种辅助性的词，不可在句中独立担当一个成分，要放在名词前，帮助说明名词的含义。冠词有不定冠词（a，an），定冠词（the）和零冠词三种。

3.2 不定冠词的用法

（1）不定冠词 an 用于以元音音素开头的单词前，而 a 用于以辅音音素开头的单词前。如：an apple 一个苹果，an hour 一小时，a book 一本书，a university 一所大学。

说明：不定冠词用于单数可数名词之前，其中 a 用于以辅音音素（辅音音素有 24 个：/p/、/b/、/t/、/d/、/m/、/l/、/r/等，不是辅音字母）开始的词前，而 an 是用于以元音音素（元音音素有 20 个：/iː/、/i/、/e/、/au/等，不是元音字母 a，e，i，o，u）开始的词前。a，e，i，o，u 五个元音字母处于词首时，未必都是元音音素，u 发[juː]或[ju]音时前面用冠词 a，u 读[ʌ]时前面用冠词 an。

为了读音的方便，在以元音音素开头的可数名词的单数名词前用 an 而不用 a。当使用 an 时，有三个条件：①这个名词的读音必须是以元音音素开头，即它音标的第一个音素是元音，而不是说它是以元音字母开头。②它必须是个可数名词。③它还必须是个单数名词。我们常常见到这类用法：a university 一所大学，an hour 一个小时，an orange 一只橙子，an engineer 一位工程师，an ordinary man 一个普通人，an honest person 一位诚实的人。

26 个字母中以开头为元音音素发音的辅音字母有:f[ef]，h [eitʃ]，l [el]，n [en]，r [aː]，s [es]，x [eks]。例如：

There is an “R” in the word.

This is a European country.

European 词首字母不发音，[j]是辅音音素。

This is a one-eyed dog. one [w]是辅音音素。

例：There is ____ “f ” and ____ “u” in the word “four” .

A. an；a　　B. a；a　　C. an；an　　D. a；an

【解析】在名词前使用 a 或 an 要取决于该名词的读音。如果首字母的读音是元音音素，应用 an；如果首字母的读音是辅音音素，应用 a。

（2）泛指某一类人或物。如：A horse is a useful animal. 马是有用的动物。

（3）表示数量“一”，但没有 one 强。如：I would like a cup of coffee. 我想要一杯咖啡。

（4）用在文中第一次提到某人或某物时。如：

—What’s this? 这是什么？

—It’s a bike. 这是一辆自行车。

（5）用于表示时间、速度、价格等意义的名词之前有“每一”的意思，相当于 every。如：three times a week。

（6）用于某些固定短语中。如：a lot of 许多，have a cold 感冒，have a good time 玩得高兴/过得愉快，in a hurry 匆忙，take a bus 乘坐公共汽车。

（7）在一些固定词组中要用 a/an，如：have a rest，have a break，take a walk，have a look，in a moment，in a minute，once upon a time，twice a month，four times an hour，a little，a few，a lot，a type of，a pile，a great many，many a，as a rule，in a hurry，in a word，in a short while，after a while，have a cold，have a try。

例 1：（2013，绍兴）—Who's that young man on the poster? —Justin Bieber，____excellent singer.

A. a　　B. an　　C. the　　D. /

解析：表泛指，且以元音音素开头。答案：B。

例 2：（2012，重庆）Lin is ________ good basketball player in the NBA.

A. a　　B. an　　C. the　　D. /

解析：表数量"一"。答案：A。

3.3　定冠词的用法

定冠词 the 与指示代词 this，that 同源，有"那（这）个"的意思，但较弱，可以和一个名词连用，来表示某个或某些特定的人或东西。

（1）特指双方都明白的人或物，如：Take the medicine. 把药吃了。

（2）上文提到过的人或事，如：He bought a house. I've been to the house. 他买了幢房子。我去过那幢房子。

（3）指世上独一物二的事物，如：the sun，the sky，the moon，the earth。

（4）单数名词连用表示一类事物，如：the dollar 美元，the fox 狐狸；或与形容词或分词连用，表示一类人：the rich 富人，the living 生者。

（5）用在序数词和形容词最高级及形容词 only，very，same 等前面，如：

Where do you live? I live on the second floor. 你住在哪？我住在二层。

That's the very thing I've been looking for. 那正是我要找的东西。

（6）与复数名词连用，指整个群体，如：

They are the teachers of this school.（指全体教师）

They are teachers of this school.（指部分教师）

（7）表示所有，相当于物主代词，用在表示身体部位的名词前，如

She caught me by the arm 她抓住了我的手臂。

（8）用在某些由普通名词构成的国家名称、机关团体、阶级、等专有名词前，如：the People's Republic of China 中华人民共和国，the United States of America 美国。

（9）用在表示乐器的名词之前，如：She plays the piano. 她会弹钢琴。

（10）用在姓氏的复数名词之前，表示一家人，如：the Greens 格林一家人（或格林夫妇）。

（11）用在江河、海洋、山脉、群岛的名称前，如 the Yellow River 黄河，the Red Sea 红海。

（12）用在某些建筑物名词前，如 the Summer Palace 颐和园。

（13）用在报纸、杂志、旅馆等名词前，如 *the People's Daily* 人民日报。

（14）用在某些固定短语中。如：at the age of 在……岁时，all the time 一直，by the way 顺便说一下，in the end 最后，终于，in the morning 在早上，on the right 在右边，in the middle of 在……中间。

例 1：（2013，重庆）—How do you like ____color of my dress?—Wonderful! I like it very much.

A. a　　B. an　　C. the　　D. /

解析：在特指的名词前用定冠词。答案：C。

例 2：（2013，内江）—How is ________ film you saw last night?

—You mean ________ one，*Lost in Thailand*? That's wonderful!

A. a；the　　B. the；the　　C. the；不填　　D. 不填；the

解析：本题两空都应用定冠词 the。第一空表示特指，第二空表示在上文中已提到的物。答案：B。

3.4 零冠词的用法

（1）复数名词和不可数名词表示一般意义而不特指具体的人或事物时前面不用冠词。如：

Blood is thicker than water. 血浓于水。

（2）在某些专有名词前不用冠词，如国名、人名等。如：

China has a long history. 中国拥有悠久的历史。

（3）在星期、日期、月份、季节、节日前不用冠词。如：

October 1st is National Day. 十月一日是国庆节。

注：若特指某年的某月或某季节时，则要在月份、季节前加定冠词 the。如：

In the winter of 2010，he moved to China. 在 2010 年的冬天，他搬到了中国。

（4）在三餐、球类运动及娱乐活动的名词之前不用冠词。如：

He went to school without breakfast this morning. 他今天早晨没有吃早饭就去上学了。

Davy likes playing basketball. 戴维喜欢打篮球。

（5）当名词前有 this，that，these，those，every，his，your，some，any 等限定词或名词所有格修饰时，不用冠词。如：

Jenny's sister is my friend. 珍妮的妹妹是我的朋友。

Those students often play football after school. 那些学生放学后经常踢足球。

（6）表示职位和称呼的名词前不用冠词。如：

He was elected manager of our company last year. 去年他当选为我们公司的经理。

（7）与 by 连用的表示交通工具的名词前不用冠词。如：by bus 坐公共汽车，by train 坐火车。

注：动词 take 或介词 in，on 后接表示交通工具的名词前要加冠词。如：take a bus 坐公共汽车，on a/the bus 坐公共汽车，in a/the car 乘小汽车。

（8）某些习惯用语中不加冠词。如：go to school 去上学，at home 在家，at once 立刻，马上，on time 按时，in trouble 陷入困境，watch TV 看电视，on foot 步行，by mistake 错误地，day and night 日日夜夜，at first 首先。

例 1：（2013，滨州）_____ man in a black hat is my PE teacher. He often plays _______ football with us.

A. A；the　　B. The；a　　C. The；/　　D. A；/

解析：第一个空表示特指，故应用冠词 the；球类名词前不能用任何冠词。答案：C。

例 2：（2013，丽水）It is a good habit to go to ________ bed early and get up early.

A. a　　B. an　　C. the　　D. /

解析：go to bed 意为“上床睡觉”，是固定搭配，不用冠词。答案：D。

3.5 有些搭配有无冠词意义不同

有些搭配有无冠词意义不同，详见表 3-1。

表 3-1 部分搭配有无冠词的不同意思

at table 在进餐	at the table 在桌旁
at school 在上学（是学生）	at the school 在学校里（不一定是学生）
at sea 在海上航行	at the sea 在海边
in prison 坐牢	in the prison 在监狱
go to bed 上床睡觉	go to the bed 到床边或床前
go to hospital 住院	go to the hospital 去医院
go to church 去教堂做礼拜	go to the church 去教堂
go to school 去上学	go to the school 到学校去
by car 乘小汽车	by the car 在小汽车旁

【强化练习】

一、在空格内填上 a 或 an。

1. _____ear
2. ______actor
3. ____hen
4. ______toy
5. ______university
6. ______elephant
7. ______hat
8. ______umbrella
9. ______rabbit
10. ______idea
11. ______hour
12. _______ honest boy
13. ______interesting book
14. ______easy question
15. ______orange dress
16. _______apple pie
17. _______X-ray machine
18. ______ice cream

二、冠词填空：在下列句中空白处填入适当冠词，不需用冠词处划/。

1. There is _______ picture of _______ elephant on _______ wall.
2. This is _______ useful book. I've read it for _______ hour.
3. _______ elephant is much heavier than _______ horse.
4. _______ doctor told him to take _______ medicine three times _______ day.
5. Let's go out for _______ walk.
6. It's too hot. Open _______ door，please.
7. There is _______ woman over there. _______ woman is Meimei's mother.
8. _______ sun rises in _______ east.
9. _______ Changjiang River is _______ longest river in _______ China.
10. Are you going to do it _______ second time?
11. Washington is _______ capital of _______ USA.
12. _______ Turners are living at the end of _______ Turner Street.
13. He joined the army in _______ spring of _______ 1995.
14. _______old man is ______teacher. He likes playing _______ basketball after _______ supper.
15. After I had _______ quick breakfast，I hurried to school.
16. Are _______ sheep kept by _______ farmers for producing _______ wool and _______ meat?
17. They went to _______People's Park，but we both went to_______ People's Cinema yesterday.
18. I often watch _______ TV in _______ evening.
19. _______ day of _______ December 20，1999 is Monday.
20. Tomorrow is_____Christmas Day and my father and I went to choose___Christmas tree today.
21. I think _______ maths is more important than any other subject.
22. He often goes to _______ school by _______ bike.
23. What does this _______ word mean，_______ Father?
24. What _______ important news!

【练习答案与详解】

二、冠词填空：在下列句中空白处填入适当冠词，不需用冠词处划/。

1. a；an；the。
2. a；an。第一个空的 a 是泛指，第二个空的 an 是指“一小时”。
3. An；a。这两个空都是泛指，故都用不定冠词。
4. The；the；a。前两个空都是特指，故填 the；后一个空中的 a 相当于 every 或 each，three times a day 意为“一天三次”。
5. a。go out for a walk 意为“出去散步”。
6. the。

7. a；The。前者泛指，后者特指。

8. The；the。第一个空用 the 表示太阳是世界上独一无二的物体；第二个空用 the 是因为在方位词的前面一般用定冠词。

9. The；the；/。第一空用 the 是因为在河流名称的前面用定冠词；第二空用 the 是因为在形容词最高级前面用定冠词；第三空"零"冠词是因为专有名词前一般不加冠词。

10. a。a second time 意为"再一次""另一次"。the second time 意为"第二次"。此句填 a 是表示动作的重复，而不能用 the（表顺序）。

11. the；the。第一个 the 是特指美国的首都。第二个 the 是在由普通名词构成的专有名词前应加定冠词。

12. The。"the ＋姓氏的复数"表示"一家人"或"夫妻二人"。由普通名词构成的专有名词前应加 the。

13. the；/。表示某一年的季节名称前应加定冠词。

14. The；a；/；/。在球类名称前不加冠词。泛指的三餐名称前不加冠词。

15. a。三餐名称前若有形容词，则可在形容词前加冠词，此处是泛指，故用 a。

16. /；/；/；/。此句意为"农民养羊是为了产毛和肉吗？"前两个空也可填定冠词，意为："那些农民养的那些羊是为了产毛和肉吗？"

17. the；the。普通名词构成的专有名词前应加 the。

18. /；the。TV 前不加冠词。"早、午、晚"名词前加冠词。

19. The；/；/。第一空是特指。日期名词前不加冠词。

20. /；a。

21. /。学科名称前一般不加冠词。

22. /；/。go to school 上学。by bike 骑自行车。

23. /；/。指示代词不能与定冠词连用。

24. /。注意 news 是不可数名词，故不能加 a。

【专项练习】

1. Is Sydney ______ capital of Australia?

A. the　　B. /　　C. a　　D. an

2. Best wishes to you for ______ Mother's Day.

A. the　　B. /　　C. a　　D. an

3. _____ plane goes fast than ______ train.

A. /；/　　B. A；a　　C. The；the　　D. The；a

4. He teaches math in ______ university. He is ______ unusual professor.

A. an；an　　B. a；a　　C. a；an　　D. an；a

5. My mother is fond of playing_____violin while my father likes listening to____classical music.

A. the；the　　B. a；the　　C. the；/　　D. /；the

6. It was my ______ first time to visit ______ Great Wall.

A. the；the　　B. the；/　　C. /；/　　D. /；the

7. —China has _______ population of 1.3 billion. —Oh，it is really _______ large number.

A. a；a　　B. /；a　　C. the；a　　D. the；the

8. _____ girl with _____ apple will try _____second time to finish the game.

A. A；an；a　　B. A；/；the　　C. The；an；the　　D. The；an；a

9. Running is ______ good exercise because it helps build ______ strong hearts and lungs.

A. a；the　　B. /；/　　C. the；/　　D. /；the

10. He is always living ______ simple life，although he has plenty of ______ money.

A. /；/　　B. a；the　　C. a；/　　D. the；/

【参考答案】

1—5　ABBCA　　6—10　DADBC

【中考例题精析】

1.（2010 三亚中考）In the united states，Father's Day falls on_____ third Sunday in______June.

A. the；不填　　B. the；a　　C. 不填；the　　D. a；不填

2.（2010 无锡中考）If you go by train，you can have quite____ comfortable journey，but make sure you take______ fast one.

A. a；a　　B. the；a　　C. the；the　　D. 不填；a

3.（2010 苏州中考）We can have____ bluer sky if we create____ less polluted world.

A. a；a　　B. a；the　　C. the；a　　D. the；the

4.（2010 滨州中考）— You've dropped _______ "s" in the word "necessary".

— Oh，________ letter "s" is doubled.

A. a；a　　B. a；the　　C. an；the　　D. the；the

5.（2010 常州中考）Beijing is ____capital of China and it is ___city with many places of interest.

A. a；a　　B. a；the　　C. the；a　　D. the；the

6.（2010 龙岩中考）—Is there _____ clock in your room? —Yes，there is.

A. a　　B. an　　C. the

7.（2010 广州中考）After school we usually play_____basketball for half an hour on_____playground.

A. the；the　　B. 不填；不填　　C. 不填；the　　D. the；不填

8.（2010 娄底中考）—Why do you like Mary?—Because she is ______ honest girl.

A. a　　B. an　　C. the

9.（2010 河北中考）Cindy is___________amazing singer. She has lots of fans.

A. a　　B. an　　C. the　　D. 不填

10.（2010 常州中考）Beijing is____capital of China and it is___city with many places of interest.

A. a；a　　B. a；the　　C. the；a　　D. the；the

11.（2010 眉山中考）— Lily is coming by_______plane tomorrow.

—Let's go to_______airport to meet her.

A. a；a　　B. /；a　　C. the；the　　D. /；the

12.（2009 临沂中考）I hope we can fly to _________ moon one day.

A. a　　B. an　　C. the　　D. /

13.（2009 绵阳中考）We can see ___full moon on the evening of ______August 15th every year.

A. the；a　　B. a；a　　C. a；the　　D. the；the

14.（2009 娄底中考）—Why do you like Mary?—Because she is___________honest girl.

A. a　　B. an　　C. the

15.（2009 长沙中考）Mary has a bad cold. She has to stay in _________ bed.

A. a　　B. /　　C. the

16.（2009 绍兴中考）—What should I buy for Tom's birthday?

—How about _______ camera? He loves taking photos.

A. a　　B. an　　C. the　　D. /

17.（2009 阜康中考）—Which one is your mother? —___one in a purple skirt under the big tree.

A. A　　B. An　　C. The　　D. /

18.（2009 山东中考）Jack started to work at ______ early age because his family was very poor.

A. a　　B. an　　C. the　　D. /

19.（2009 沈阳中考）I want to go to Paris where I can learn ___________French language.

A. 不填　　B. a　　C. an　　D. the

20.（2009 孝感中考）In Nanjing，we stayed at a very nice hotel. But I can’t remember ______ name of it.

A. the　　B. a　　C. an　　D. /

21.（2009 锦州中考）Jack likes playing _____soccer，but he doesn’t like playing _______piano.

A. /；/　　B. the；/　　C. the；the　　D. /；the

22.（2009 德州中考）—What do you like to do after school? —I like playing___chess with my father.

A. a　　B. an　　C. the　　D. /

23.（2009 深圳中考）—How do you go to _________ work? —I usually take _________ bus.

A. the；a　　B. /；a　　C. a；a　　D. the；/

24.（2009 济宁中考）—Which do you prefer，listening to _________ music or watching TV?

—Either is OK.

A. a　　B. an　　C. the　　D. /

25.（2009 兰州中考）There’s ________800-metre-long road behind ________hospital.

A. an；an　　B. a；a　　C. an；the　　D. a；the

26.（2009 陕西中考）On _____sunny afternoon，my parents and I had a good time on the beach.

A. the　　B. an　　C. a　　D. /

27.（2008 南京中考）More and more foreign students come to China to learn ________ Chinese.

A. a　　B. an　　C. the　　D. /

28.（2008 徐州中考）Look，Simon，_____Walkman that I bought last year isn’t working properly.

A. a　　B. an　　C. the　　D. /

29.（2008 河南中考）—How do you like your holiday in Mount Yuntai?

—We enjoyed it very much. _________ sight is very beautiful.

A. A　　B. An　　C. The　　D. /

30.（2008 温州中考）Jackie Chan is _________ great actor. I really like his movies.

A. a　　B. an　　C. the　　D. /

【参考答案与解析】

1—5　AAACC　　6-10　ACBBC　　11-15　DCCBB

16—20　ACBAA　　21—25　DDBDC　　26—30　CDCCA

13. 在日期前要加定冠词 the，先排除 A、B 二项；full 是以辅音音素开头的单词，故舍 D 选 C。

14. honest 是以元音音素开头的单词，且 girl 是单数名词，所以其前要加不定冠词 an，故正确答案为 B。

16. camera 是以辅音音素开头的单词，所以前面要用不定冠词 a，故正确答案为 A。

17. 由关键信息 in a purple skirt under the big tree 可知要用定冠词 the 表示特指，故排除 A、B、D 三项，选 C。

18. early 是以元音音素开头的单词，前面要用不定冠词 an，故选 B。at an early age 是固定搭配，意为“在很小的时候”。

19. 语言名词前不能用冠词，由关键词 French 可选出正确答案 A。

21. 在棋类名词前不能用任何冠词，故排除 A、B、C 三项，选 D。

25. 800-metre-long 中的 eight 是以元音音素开头的单词，所以要用不定冠词 an 表示“一”，先排除 B、

D 二项；另根据题意“在那家医院后有一条 800 米长的路”可舍 A 选 C。

30. 题意为“成龙是一个很棒的演员”。“一个”是泛指，用在 great 前用 a 而不用 an，故选 A。

【历年高考英语冠词试题】

1.（2008 全国卷Ⅱ08）It’s not _____ good idea to drive for four hours without _____ break.
A. a；a　　B. the；a　　C. the；the　　D. a；the

2.（2008 重庆卷 27）In many places in China，_____bicycle is still_____ poplar means of transportation.
A. a；the　　B. /；a　　C. the；a　　D. the；the

3.（2008 辽宁卷 24）My neighbor asked me to go for ____ walk，but I don’t think I’ve got ____ energy.
A. a；不填　　B. the；the　　C. 不填；the　　D. a；the

4.（2008 山东卷 21）Students should be encouraged to use ____ Internet as ____ resource.
A. 不填；a　　B. 不填；the　　C. the；the　　D. the；a

5.（2008 江苏卷 21）We went right round to the west coast by ____ sea instead of driving across ____ continent.
A. the；the　　B.不填；the　　C. the；不填　　D. 不填；不填

6.（2008 江西卷 30）—I am so sorry to have come late for the meeting. —It is not your fault. With ____ rush-hour traffic and ____ heavy rain，it is no wonder you were late.
A. a；a　　B. the；the　　C. /；/　　D. /；a

7.（2008 浙江 02）____ apple fell from the tree and hit him on ______ head.
A. An；the　　B. The；the　　C. An；不填　　D. The；不填

8.（2008 湖南卷 22）Have you heard ___ news? The price of ___ petrol is going up again!
A. the；the　　B. 不填；the　　C. the；不填　　D. 不填；不填

9.（2008 陕西卷 10）I ate________sandwich while I was waiting for_______20：08 train.
A. the；a　　B. the；the　　C. a；the　　D. a；a

10.（2008 四川卷 08）In the United States，there is always _____ flow of people to areas of ____ country where more jobs can be found.
A. a；the　　B. the；a　　C. the；the　　D. a；a

11.（2007 江西卷 26） Many people have come to realize that they should go on _______balanced diet and make________room in their day for exercise.
A. a；/　　B. the；a　　C. the；the　　D. /；a

12.（2007 山东卷 21）_____walk is expected to last all day，so bring_________packed lunch.
A. A；a　　B. The；不填　　C. The；a　　D. A；不填

13.（2007 陕西卷 17）In_______film Cast Away. Tom Hanks plays_______man named Chuck Noland.
A. a；the　　B the；a　　C. the；the　　D. a；a

14.（2007 北京卷 22）I looked under _____bed and found ______book I lost last week.
A. the；a　　B. the；the　　C. 不填；the　　D. the；不填

15.（2007 湖南卷 23）Polar bears live mostly on ___ sea ice，which they use as ___ platform for hunting seals.
A. a；a　　B. a；the　　C. 不填；a　　D. the；不填

16.（2007 江苏卷 21）We have every reason to believe that___2008 Beijing Olympic Games will be___success.
A. 不填；a　　B. the；不填　　C. the；a　　D. a；a

17.（2007 天津卷 3）I wanted to catch ___early train，but couldn’t get ___ride to the station.
A. an；the　　B. /；the　　C. an；/　　D. the；a

18.（2007 福建卷 22）—How about___Christmas evening party? —I should say it was_____success.
A. a；a　　B. The；a　　C. a；不填　　D. the；不填

19.（2007 四川卷 22）How about taking ______ short break? I want to make ______ call.

A. the；a　　B. a；the　　C. the；the　　D. a；a

20.（2007 浙江卷 4）I like ___ color of your skirt. It is ___ good match for your blouse.

A. a；the　　B. a；a　　C. the；a　　D. the；the

21.（2007 重庆卷 24）Gorge couldn't remember when he first met Mr. Anderson，but he was sure it was _____ Sunday because everybody was at _______ church.

A. /；the　　B. the；/　　C. a；/　　D. /；a

22.（2007 辽宁卷 21）Christmas is _____ special holiday when ____ whole family are supposed to get together.

A. the；the　　B. a；a　　C. the；a　　D. a；the

23.（2006 全国 I30）—Hello，could I speak to Mr. Smith? —Sorry，wrong number. There isn't_____Mr. Smith here.

A. 不填　　B. a　　C. the　　D. one

24.（2006 全国 II19）I know you don't like _____ music very much. But what do your think of ______ music in the film we saw yesterday?

A. 不填；不填　　B. the；the　　C. the；不填　　D. 不填；the

25.（2006 北京卷 26）—I knocked over my coffee cup. It went right over______keyboard. —You shouldn't put drinks near ________computer.

A. the；不填　　B. the；a　　C. a；不填　　D. a；a

26.（2006 重庆卷 25）Everywhere man has cut down _____ forests in order to grow crops，or to use _____wood as fuel or as building material.

A. the；the　　B. the；/　　C. /；the　　D. /；/

27.（2006 山东卷 21）For him ____ stage is just ___ means of making a living.

A. a；a　　B. the；a　　C. the；the　　D. a；the

28.（2006 浙江卷 3）—Don't worry if you can't come to ___ party. —I'll save ___ cake for you.

A. the；some　　B. a；much　　C. the；any　　D. a；little

29.（2006 陕西卷 15）According to ______ World Health Organization，health care plans are needed in all big cities to prevent __________ spread of AIDS.

A. the；不填　　B. the；the　　C. a；a　　D. 不填；the

30.（2006 辽宁卷 21）Of all______reasons for my decision to become a university professor，my father's advice was__________most important one.

A. the；a　　B. 不填；a　　C. 不填；the　　D. the；the

【参考答案】

1—5　ACADB　　6—10　BACCA　　11—15　ACBBC

16—20　CDBDC　　21—25　CDBDB　　26—30　CBABD

4 代 词

4.1 定义与分类

代词是代替名词及起名词作用的短语或句子的词。代词根据其意思和用法可分为人称代词、物主代词、反身代词、指示代词、相互代词、疑问代词、连接代词、关系代词、不定代词九类。

（1）人称代词：I，you，she，him。

（2）疑问代词：who，whom，whose，which，what（用于引出特殊疑问句的代词）。

注意：what 与 which 的用法区别：当选择的范围较明确时，用 which；不明确时用 what。

如：Which colour do you like，red，black or white?

What colour is your car?

（3）物主代词：my，your，hers。

（4）关系代词：which，that，who，whom。

（5）反身代词：myself，yourselves。

注意：反身代词用于 be，feel，seem，look 等后作表语表示身体或精神所处的状态。如：

I'll be myself again in no time. 我一会儿就会好的。

He doesn't feel himself today. 他今天感觉身体不舒服。

I'm not quite myself these days. 我近来身体不大舒服。

（6）连接代词：who，whom，what，which，whose，whoever，whatever，whichever 主要用于引导主语从句、宾语从句和表语从句等。

（7）相互代词：each other，one another。

（8）不定代词：one，each，another，neither。

（9）指示代词：this，that，those，these。

注意：① 为避免重复，可用 that 和 those 代替前面提到的名词。如：

The playground of this school is bigger than that of that school.（that=the playground）

My books are next to those of the monitor.

② 在打电话时，通常用 this 指自己，用 that 指对方：如：Hello. This is Jim. Is that John?

③ this 和 that 还可用作副词，用以修饰形容词或副词，意为“这么”“那么”，相当于 so。如：

I've done only that much. 我所做的就这么多。

Is he always this busy? 他总这么忙吗？

4.2 人称代词、物主代词、反身代词用法概述

人称代词、物主代词、反身代词三种代词都有人称（一、二、三人称）的变化、数（单、复数）的变化以及性（阴性、阳性、中性）的变化。其中，人称代词除了这三种变化外，还有格（主格、宾格）的变化。物主代词又包括两种形式：形容词性物主代词和名词性物主代词。需要特别注意的是：形容词

性物主代词 its 没有相应的名词性物主代词。

表 4-1 人称代词、物主代词、反身代词的形式变化

人 称	单复数	主 格	宾 格	形容词性物主代词	名词性物主代词	反身代词
第一人称	单 数	I	me	my	mine	myself
	复 数	we	us	our	ours	ourselves
第二人称	单 数	you	you	your	yours	yourself
	复 数	you	you	your	yours	yourselves
第三人称	单 数	he	him	his	his	himself
		she	her	her	hers	herself
		it	it	its	无	itself
	复 数	they	them	their	theirs	themselves

4.3 人称代词的用法

4.3.1 定 义

人称代词是用来指代人、动物或事物的代词。它必须在人称（第一人称、第二人称及第三人称）、数（单数、复数）以及性（阴性、阳性、中性）三方面与被指代的名词一致。人称代词代替人和事物的名称，分为主格和宾格两种形式（见表 4-2）。

表 4-2 人称代词的用法

	第一人称单数	第二人称单数	第三人称单数			第一人称复数	第二人称复数	第三人称复数
			阳性	阴性	中性			
主格	I（我）	you（你）	he（他）	she（她）	it（它）	we（我们）	you（你们）	they（他们，她们，它们）
宾格	me（我）	you（你）	him（他）	her（她）	it（她）	us（我们）	you（你们）	them（他们，她们，它们）

4.3.2 人称代词的句法功能

（1）主格用来作句子的主语、表语。如：

I often go shopping on Sundays. 星期天我常去购物。

That's it. 就那么回事。

（2）宾格用来作及物动词或者介词的宾语。如：

Who teaches you English this year? 今年谁教你们的英语？

We often write letters to her. 我们常给他写信

（3）三个不同人称同时出现，或者主语中包含“我”时，按照“you→he→I”（第二人称，第三人称和第一个人称）的顺序表达。如：

Both he and I are working at that computer company. 我和他都在那家电脑公司上班。

You, he and I are the only three lucky guys in our class. 我，你还有他，是我们班上仅有的三个幸运的家伙。

（4）人称代词 it 除了可以指人指物之外，还可以表示“时间、天气、温度、距离、情况”等含义，此外还可以作“非人称代词”使用，替代作主语或者宾语的不定式、动名词或者名词性从句。如：

—What's the weather like today? 今天天气怎样？—It's fine. 天气晴朗。

—What's the time? 几点啦？—It's 12:00. 12 点

It took him three days to clean his house. 打扫屋子花了他三天的时间。

It is very clear that the public want to know when these men can go into space. 很显然，公众想知道这些人什么时候能进入太空。

We found it very difficult to learn a foreign language well. 我们发觉要学好一门外语是非常困难的。

4.4 物主代词的用法

1. 两种物主代词

物主代词有形容词性物主代词和名词性物主代词两种。形容词性物主代词相当于一个形容词，在句子中只能作句子的定语，对名词进行修饰和限制；而名词性物主代词则相当于一个名词，在句子中可作主语、宾语、和表语两种。两种形式见表 4-3。

表 4-3 形容词性物主代词和名词性物主代词的形式

人 称	单复数	形容词性物主代词	名词性物主代词
第一人称	单 数	my	mine
	复 数	our	ours
第二人称	单 数	your	yours
	复 数	your	yours
第三人称	单 数	his	his
		her	hers
		its	无
	复 数	their	theirs

2. 物主代词的用法

（1）名词性物主代词。

① 名词性物主代词后不能跟名词或代词 one。它总是单独出现在句中。如：

The umbrella is mine.

He likes my pen. He doesn't like hers.

② 名词性物主代词=形容词性物主代词+名词。为避免重复使用名词，有时可用“名词性物主代词”来代替“形容词性物主代词+名词”的形式。如：My bag is yellow，her bag is red，his bag is blue and your bag is pink. 为避免重复使用 bag，可写成 My bag is yellow，hers is red，his is blue and yours is pink.

③ 名词性物主代词在用法上相当于省略了中心名词的-'s 属格结构。如：Jack's cap 意为 The cap is Jack's. His cap 意为 The cap is his.

④ 可以说 a friend of mine（ours，yours，hers，his，theirs），=one of my friends；但是不能说 a friend of me（us，you，her，him，them）。如：

Your English is better than my English. = Your English is better than mine. 你的英语比我的英语好。

（2）有时，汉语中用物主代词，而英语中却要用定冠词。如：

He hit her in the face. 他打在她的脸上。（其中的 the 不宜改为 her）

（3）英语中有许多习惯用语要用物主代词。如：

do one's best 尽力　　try one's best 尽力

earn one's bread 维持生活　　hold one's breath 屏息

eat one's words 收回前言　　in one's best 穿着节日盛装

注：有的习语用不用物主代词均可，且意义相同，如 save（one's）face（挽回面子）；而有的习语用不用物主代词均可，但意义不同，如 lose heart（灰心）与 lose one's heart（倾心于）。

3. 物主代词与 own 连用

（1）为了强调，有时可在物主代词后加上 own 一词。如：

Mind your own business. 别管闲事。

I saw it with my own eyes. 那是我亲眼看到的。

She had made her own tragedy. 她造成了自己的悲剧。

I'm a human being. I can stand on my own feet. 我是人，我可以自立。

He referred his wealth to his own hard work. 他把他的致富归功于他辛勤的工作。

I feel that I knew about the value of my own work. 我感觉我了解我自己工作的价值。

（2）one's own 的用法：可用 of one's own 置于名词后作定语。特别是强调所有关系时，可以在任何所有格形容词（而不是代词）后面加上 own，这样构成的词组可以起所有格形容词（如 my own room）或所有格代词（如 it is my own）的作用。还经常用 a/an+名词+of one's own 来代替 one's own+名词。如：

We have no children of our own. 我们没有自己的孩子。

I wish I had a little lab of my own. 但愿我有自己的一间小实验室。

We would be glad to have money of our own. 我们愿意有自己的钱。

These professors had opinions of their own. 这些教授们有自己的看法。

I hope to have a room of my own. /I hope to have my own house. 我希望有自己的房子。

Our cat has its own corner/a corner of its own in this room. 我们的小猫在这个房间里有它自己的一角。

如再进一步强调则可加上 very，如：

I'd love to have my very own room/a room of my very own. 我喜欢有一个完全属于我自己的房间。

可以说 one's own room 或者 a room of one's own，但不能用 one 作（my）own 之后的支撑词。如：

别用我的梳子，用你自己的。

正：Don't use my comb. Use your own.

误：Don't use my comb. Use your own one.

【巩固练习】

一、用适当的人称代词和物主代词填空。

1. This isn't ________knife. __________ is green.（she）

2. These are your books, Kate. Put ___________ in the desk, please.（they）

3. _______ must look after _________ things.（you）

4. Wei Fang, is that _________ ruler? Yes, it's.（you）

5. They want a football. Give __________ the green one, please.（they）
6. It's Lin Tao's bag. Give it to __________.（he）
7. Is this pencil-box Li Lei's? No, ___________ is very new.（he）
8. _________ is my brother. _________ name is Jack. Look! Those stamps are _________.（he）
9. _____ is a boy _____ name is Mike. Mike's friends like _____ very much.（he）
10. My sister is in _____ room. _____ is a teacher.（she）
11. Jane is a little girl. _____ mother is a nurse.（she）
12. Where are________? I can't find_________. Let's call_________parents.（they）
13. My father and mother are teachers. _____ are busy（them）
14. You are a pupil. Is _____ brother a pupil, too?（you）

二、用括号中单词的适当形式填空。

1. Are these ________（you）pencils? Yes, they are ________（our）.
2. —Whose is this pencil? —It's ________（I）.
3. I love ________（they）very much.
4. She is________（I）classmate.
5. Miss Li often looks after________（she）brother.
6. —Are these________（they）bags? —No, they aren't _____（their）. They are_______（we）.

三、选择填空。

1. —Who's singing over there ? —________ is Sandy's sister.
   A. That　　B. It　　C. She　　D. This
2. ________ will spend the summer holiday in Hawaii.
   A. She, you and I　　B. You, she and I
   C. I, you and she　　D. Her, me and you
3. My uncle bought a new bike for ________.
   A. theirs　　B. they　　C. me　　D. I
4. Here's a postcard for you, Jim! — Oh, ________ is from my friend, Mary.
   A. he　　B. it　　C. she　　D. it's

4.5　反身代词的用法

1. 反身代词的形式

反身代词用于指代某人或某物自己。第一人称和第二人称的反身代词由“形容词性物主代词+self/selves”构成；第三人称反身代词由“人称代词的宾格+self/selves”构成（详见表 4-4）。

表 4-4　反身代词的形式

人　称	单　数	复　数
第一人称	myself	ourselves
第二人称	yourself	yourselves
第三人称	himself/herself/itself	themselves

2. 反身代词的用法

（1）作动词或介词的宾语：经常在 enjoy，teach，hurt，buy，introduce，seat，dress，express，amuse，behave 等动词和 by，for，to，of 等介词后作宾语。如：

He is teaching herself English. 她在自学英语。

She was talking to herself. 她自言自语。

He lives by himself in the country. 他独自住在乡下。

（2）作主语或宾语的同位语：主要起加强语气的作用，译作“亲自，本身，本人”。如：

Did you make the cake yourself? 这蛋糕是你亲自做的吗?（yourself 作主语 you 的同位语）

The work itself is easy. 这工作本身很容易。（itself 作主语 the work 的同位语）

Did you see Mr. Wang himself? 你见过王先生本人吗？（himself 作宾语 Mr. Wang 的同位语）

（3）作表语：在 be，feel，look，seem 等系动词后作表语，表示身体或精神状态处于正常。如：

I’m not myself today. 今天我感觉不舒服。

I am feeling myself again. 我觉得健康如昔。

（4）用于一些简短的会话用语或固定说法中。如：

Help yourself! 请随便吃吧！/请自己去取吧!

Make yourself at home! 别客气!

Don’t upset yourself! 别自寻烦恼!

Make yourself heard/understood. 使你的话被人听得见/理解。

for oneself 给（为）自己，独自　　to oneself 对自己

say to oneself 心里想　　talk/speak to oneself 自言自语

come to oneself 苏醒过来　　absent oneself 缺席

beside oneself 失常，若狂　　by oneself 独自地，单独地

of oneself 独自，自发地

（5）用作主语。在现代英语中，反身代词一般不能独立用作主语，但是它却可以借助 and，or，nor 等连词与其他名词一起构成并列主语（且位于并列主语的后部），以及用于某些特殊结构（如 as...as 等）中，如：

My brother and myself went there yesterday. 昨天我兄弟和我一起去了那儿。

Jim’s sister and himself get up at six every day. 吉姆的妹妹和他每天 6 点起床。

He was as anxious as myself. 他和我一样担心。

【巩固练习】

一、用适当的反身代词填空。

1. —Did you have fun in the park yesterday? —Yes, we enjoyed______（our）.
2. The story______（it）is interesting, but it’s a little difficult for children.
3. She is proud of______（she）for not giving up easily.
4. Believe in______（you）, Tony, and you are sure to succeed.

二、单项选择。

1. Mr. Wang is very friendly, and_____like him very much.

A. we　　B. us　　C. our　　D. ours

2. —Do you know Alice? —Yes. I know_____very well.

A. she　　B. her　　C. herself　　D. hers

3. Millie gave______a baby cat yesterday that hurt______when it fell down from the tree.

A. me; it　B. myself; itself　C. me; itself　D. myself; it

4. Is there any difference between your idea and______?

A. he　B. his　C. she　D. her

5. —Is this your key, John? —No, it isn't.______ is over there.

A. I　B. Me　C. My　D. Mine

6. This isn't my skirt. It's______, I think.

A. me　B. her　C. hers　D. mine

7. Look at the photo. The girl beside______is Nancy.

A. I　B. my　C. me　D. mine

8. —Excuse me, are these books______? —No, they are______classmate's.

A. his; he　B. hers; hers

C. your; mine　D. yours; my

9. —Hi, Kitty, I have passed______exams!

—Oh, congratulations! I hope my sister has also passed______.

A. my; her　B. mine; her

C. my; hers　D. mine; hers

10. —Is Miss White______English teacher, Maria? —No, she teaches_____geography.

A. your; my　B. you; mine

C. you; us　D. your; us

11. The volunteers love______students in that small village in the west of China.

A. they　B. them　C. their　D. themselves

12. Look! The boy is making a toy plane by______.

A. itself　B. myself　C. yourself　D. himself

13. —I'm afraid I'll fail in the exam.

—Come on, Philip. You must believe in______. That's the secret of success.

A. yourself　B. himself　C. herself　D. myself

14. —Linda, help______to some fruit.

—Thank you.

A. you　B. yours　C. yourself　D. yourselves

15. —Is this kite______, Tom?

—Yes, it's mine. It's made by_____.

A. yours; myself　B. mine; myself　C. our; himself　D. my; him

16. I could look after______when I was six.

A. herself　B. myself　C. yourself　D. himself

17. Emma, can you introduce______to Alice? I want to meet her.

A. him　B. his　C. me　D. my

18. The book might be my sister's. Hemingway is______favourite author.

A. his　B. her　C. my　D. your

19. Tell Sally to call______, please.

A. my　B. me　C. mine　D. myself

20. If our parents do everything for us children, we won't learn to depend on______.

A. them　B. us　C. themselves　D. ourselves

4.6 相互代词的用法

1. 相互代词的形式与用法

英语的相互代词只有 each other 和 one another，它们在句中通常只用作宾语，不能用作主语或状语等。如：

We don't see much of each other. 我们不常见面。

We should help each other. 我们应该互相帮助。

We may never see each other again. 我们可能永远不会再见。

They soon fell in love with each other. 他们不久就互相爱上了。

The sea and the sky seem to melt into each other. 大海和蓝天似乎融为一体。

They respect one another. 他们互相尊重（对方）。

You look as though you know one another. 你们看起来像是互相认识。

They were very pleased with one another. 他们相互很喜欢。

2. 使用相互代词的注意点

（1）相互代词在句中通常只用作宾语，不可用作主语，所以以相互代词为宾语的句子不能变为被动语态。

（2）不要误认为相互代词是副词，将其用作状语，如可说 talk to each other，但不能说 talk each other。

（3）相互代词可以有所有格形式：each other's，one another's。如：

The students borrowed each other's notes. 学生们互相借笔记。

They often stay in one another's houses. 他们常常在彼此家里住。

I hope that you all enjoy each other's company. 我希望你们在一起过得愉快。

They looked into each other's eyes for a silent moment. 他们默默地对视了一会儿。

They'll sit for hours looking into each other's（one another's）eyes. 他们有时对坐几小时望着彼此的眼睛。

（4）有时相互代词可分开用，如：

We each know what the other thinks. 我们都知道对方的想法。

Each tried to persuade the other to stay at home. 每个人都设法想说服对方留在家里。

（5）有人认为，each other 用于两者，one another 用于三者，但在现代英语中两者常可换用（即均可用于两者或三者）。

4.7 指示代词的用法

1. 指示代词概说

在英语中表示"这（些），那（些）"的代词叫指示代词，主要包括 this，these，that，those 四个（详见表 4-5）。

表 4-5 指示代词

单 数	复 数	含 义
this（这个）	these（这些）	指较近的人和物
that（那个）	those（那些）	指较远的人和物
such（这样的人/物）		指上文提过的人和物
same（同样的人/物）		指和上文提过的相同的人和物
it（这人/这物）		指不太清楚是谁或者是什么时

（1）指示代词分单数（this/that）和复数（these/those）两种形式，既可作限定词又可作代词，见表 4-6。

表 4-6　指示代词的单复数形式

	单　数	复　数
限定词	This girl is Mary.	Those men are my teachers.
代　词	This is Mary.	Those are my teachers.

（2）指示代词的句法功能：它们在句中可作主语、宾语、表语、定语等。一般说来，this，these 表“近指”，而 that，those 则“远：指”。如：

This is my book.（主语）

I want that.（宾语）

My book is that.（表语）

I like that dress.（定语）

2. 指示代词的考点

（1）指示代词的替代用法：

① 为避免重复，可用 that 和 those 代替前面提到的名词。如：

The playground of this school is bigger than that of that school.（that=the playground）

My seat is next to that of the mayor. 我的座位在市长座位旁边。

The population of China is much larger that that of Japan. 中国人口比日本人口多得多。（that = the population）

His views are close to those of the Socialist Party. 他的观点接近社会党的观点。（those=the views）

A grandparent’s job is easier than that of a parent. 祖父母的任务比父母的任务要轻松一些。

The weather of Beijing is just as cold as that of Lanzhou，but colder than that of Shanghai.

北京的气候和兰州一样冷，但比上海冷。

A dog’s intelligence is much greater than that of a cat. 狗的智慧比猫的高得多。

The dialect in one town may he quite different from that of the next town.

一个城镇的方言可能与另一个城镇很不相同。

② 用来回指上文提到的事情时，可用 this 或 that，但是若要指下文叙述的事情，通常要用 this。如：

She married Jim，and this/that surprised me. 她嫁给了吉姆，这使我感到很吃惊。

—She is a beautiful girl.—Who said that? —她是一个漂亮的女孩。—那是谁说的?

I want to know this：Is she beautiful? 我想知道这一点：她美吗?

—He was nearly drowned once.

—When was ________?

—________was in 1998 when he was in middle school.

A. that；It　　B. this；This　　C. this；It　　D. that；This（答案：A）

③ 指示代词用作主语和定语时，可指人或物；用作宾语和表语时，只指物。而且只有 that，those 后面可以跟定语从句，而 those 作宾语后接定语从句时可以指人。this 和 these 两个指示代词习惯上不接定语从句。如：

（对）That is my teacher. 那是我的老师。（that 作主语，指人）

（对）He is going to marry this girl. 他要和这个姑娘结婚。（this 作限定词）

（错）He is going to marry this.（this 作宾语时不能指人）

（对）I bought this. 我买这个。（this 指物，可作宾语）

He admired those who looked beautiful. 他赞赏那些外表漂亮的人。（those 指人）

（错）He admired that who danced well.（that 作宾语时不能指人）

（对）He admired that which looked beautiful. 他赞赏外表漂亮的东西。

一般说来，that 后接 which 引导的定语从句，those 后接 who 引导的定语从句。注意 those who 的用法：those who 中的 who 为关系代词，用以引导定语从句，意为“……的那些人”。如：

Those who do not wish to go need not go. 不愿去的人不需要去。

We kept seats for those who might arrive late. 我们给可能来晚的人留了座位。

注意 that which 的用法：that which 中的 which 为关系代词，用以引导定语从句，其意为“……的事或物”，这是一种比较正式的用法，它通常可以用 what 代之。如：

That which（=What）many people say is not always true. 很多人说的话并不表示一定是真的。

That which（=What）I say and do is my own affair. 我说什么做什么是我自己的事。

They say the only real knowledge is that which can be measured. 据说唯一真实的知识是可以检验的知识。

（2）指示代词的电话指代：在打电话时，通常用 this 指自己，用 that 指对方，不用 I 或 you。如：

Hello. This is Jim. Is that John? 喂，我是吉姆，你是约翰吗?

“Who’s that?”“This is Mary speaking.”“你是哪位？”“我是玛丽。”

（3）可用作副词。除用作代词外，this 和 that 还可用作副词，用以修饰形容词或副词，意为“这么”“那么”，相当于 so。如：

I’ve done only that much. 我所做的就这么多。

Is he always this busy? 他总这么忙吗?

Is the problem that easy? 问题有那么简单吗?

The fish I caught was this big. 我捕到的那条鱼有这么大。

It isn’t all that cold. 还没冷到那种程度。

It’s about this high. 大概这样高。

Is it this hot every day? 每天都这样热吗?

I didn’t think it would be this easy. 我没想到会这样容易。

I didn’t realize she was that ill. 我没想到她病得那么重。

The book is about this thick. 那本书大约有这么厚。

When you pay that much for a meal，you expect the best. 当你为一顿饭花那么多钱时，你想吃到最好的东西。

（4）两个区别。

① 注意区分指示代词与形式主语（宾语）。对于选项中既有指示代词也有形式主语或形式宾语的考题，若要选形式主语或形式宾语，那么一定能从句中找到真正的主语（如动名词、不定式、从句等），否则就考虑选用指示代词。

例 1：__________ felt funny watching myself on TV.（全国 II）

A. One　　B. This　　C. It　　D. That（答案：C）

例 2：He didn’t make __________ clear when and where the meeting would be held.（天津卷）

A. this　　B. that　　C. it　　D. these（答案：C）

② 注意区分指示代词与关系代词。对于选项中既有指示代词又有关系代词的考题，若两个句子间有连词（尤其是并列连词 and 或 but）连接，则应考虑用指示代词，否则就应考虑使用关系代词。

例 1：He is always really rude，_________ is why people tend to avoid him.

A. that　　B. it　　C. this　　D. which（答案：D）

例 2：Tom’s mother always told him not to smoke again，but __________ didn’t help.

A. he　　B. it　　C. which　　D. as（答案：B）

（5）含 this 和 that 的习语和例句：

with this 说完这些话

that is to say 也就是说

at this 一看到或听到

That’s all right. 不用谢，没关系。

this and that 各式各样的
for all this 尽管如此
in this way 用这种方法
now that 既然
that rings the bell 答对了
that will do 够了，行了
this way and that 踌躇不决
this way 这样
not that 并不是说
that is 即，也，那就是
that is it 对啦
He will be in Paris this day next week. 下个星期的今天他将在巴黎了。
He will come here this day next month. 他将在下个月的今天来这儿。

4.8 关系代词的用法

（1）关系代词用来引导定语从句。它代表先行词，同时在从句中作一定的句子成分，例如：

The girl to whom I spoke is my cousin. 跟我讲话的姑娘是我表妹。（该句中 whom 既代表先行词 the girl，又在从句中作介词 to 的宾语。）

（2）关系代词有主格宾格和属格之分，并有指人与指物之分。在限定性定语从句中，that 可指人也可指物，详见表 4-7。

表 4-7 关系代词的主格、宾格和属格

	指 人	指 物	指人或物
主格	who	which	that
宾格	whom	that	that
属格	whose	whose/of which	of which/whose

This is the pencil whose point is broken. 这就是那个折了尖的铅笔。（whose 指物，在限定性定语从句中作定语）

He came back for the book which he had forgotten. 他回来取他丢下的书。（which 指物，在限定性定语从句中作宾语，可以省略）

（3）关系代词的用法。

① who 和 whom 的用法：二者都指人。who 在定语从句中作主语、宾语，whom 在定语从句中作宾语。whom 在从句中能作介词的宾语，而 who 则不能。例如：I happened to meet the professor（who/whom）I got to know at a party in the shopping center yesterday.

② whose 的用法：一般指人，有时也指物。在定语从句中作定语。例如：I have got a friend whose brother is training for the Olympics.

③ which 的用法：一般指物，在定语从句中作主语、宾语，偶尔作定语。例如：The photo which we liked best was taken by Zhao Min.

④ that 的用法：指人或物，指人时可与 who，whom 互换，指物时可与 that 互换。在从句中可作主语、宾语，还可作表语。例如：It is a book（that/which）no one really likes.

4.9 连接代词的用法

用来引导宾语从句、主语从句或表语从句的连接词称连接代词。

（1）连接代词主要包括 who，whom，what，which，whose，whoever，whatever，whichever，whosever

等，它们在句中可用作主语、宾语、表语、定语等（但 who，whom，whoever 等不用于名词前作定语），主要用于引导主语从句、宾语从句和表语从句等。如：

Ask him which he wants. 问他要哪一个。

The question is who can help us. 问题是谁能帮助我们。

What he says sounds reasonable. 他说的话听起来有道理。

（2）关系代词型 what 的用法。比较下列两句：

I don't know what you like. 我不知道你喜欢什么。

You can get what you like. 你想要什么就可得到什么。

第一句中的 what 表示"什么"；第二句中的 what 则具有关系代词的性质，相当于"先行词+关系代词"，表示"……所……的一切事或东西"，如上面第二句的 what 就相当于 everything that。这样用的 what 有时还可后接一个名词，如：We gave him what（little）help we could. 我们给了他我们力所能及的帮助。

（3）whatever，whoever 与 whichever 的用法：它们可用于引导主语从句和宾语从句，也可用于引导让步状语从句。如：

Whoever comes will be welcome. 任何人来都欢迎。

Whatever she did was right. 她做的一切都是对的。

Whoever you are，you can't enter. 不管你是谁，都不能进去。

Whichever side wins，I shall be happy. 不管哪边赢，我都会高兴。

4.10 不定代词的用法

代替或修饰不特指的人或事物的代词叫不定代词。

（1）不定代词大都可以代替名词和形容词，在句中作主语、宾语、表语和定语。

① 作主语，不定代词作主语都作单数看待，谓语动词一般用单数。如：

Someone is knocking at the door.

Nobody is absent.

Something is wrong with my watch.

Everything is all right.

② 作宾语，如：

I know nothing about it.

I didn't see anyone in the garden.

She didn't talk to anyone at the party.

She talked to nobody at the party.

③ 作表语，如：

He is somebody（重要人物）in the company.

I am nobody（小人物，什么也不是）. But I have a dream.

That's nothing. 那没什么。

（2）一般情况下，形容词修饰名词时，通常形容词放在名词前面，如 a beautiful bird。形容词修饰不定代词时，通常形容词放在不定代词之后，如 something good，anything wrong。动词不定式可以跟在不定代词之后做定语，如 something to do，nothing to eat。

例：You'd better not read today's newspaper because there is _______ in it.（2004 沈阳）

A. something interesting　　B. anything new

C. important thing　　D. nothing special

分析：考查形容词修饰不定代词的位置。something，anything，nothing 均是不定代词，当形容词修饰不定代词时，应将形容词放在不定代词的后面，去掉 C 项。根据句意“你最好不要读今天的报纸”可知报上没有任何新的、有趣的事。答案为 D。

（3）一些易混淆的不定代词的用法。

① some 和 any 的用法：

some 一般用于肯定句中，意思是“几个”“一些”“某个”，作定语时可修饰可数名词或不可数名词。如：I have some work to do today. /They will go there some day. some 用于疑问句时，表示建议、请求或希望得到肯定回答。如：Would you like some coffee with sugar?你要加糖的咖啡吗？

any 一般用于疑问句或否定句中，意思是“任何一些”“任何一个”，作定语时可修饰可数或不可数名词。如：They didn't have any friends here. 他们在这里没有朋友。Have you got any questions to ask? 你有问题要问吗？any 用于肯定句时，意思是“任何的”。如：Come here with any friend. 随便带什么朋友来吧。

② no 和 none 的用法：

no 是形容词，只能作定语表示“没有”，修饰可数名词（单数或复数）或不可数名词。如：There is no time left. Please hurry up. /They had no reading books to lend.

none 只能独立使用，在句子中可作主语、宾语和表语，意思是“没有一个人（或事物）”，表示复数或单数。如：None of them is/are in the classroom. /I have many books，but none is interesting.

③ all 和 both 的用法：

all 指三者或三者以上的人或物，用来代替或修饰可数名词；也可用来代替或修饰不可数名词。

both 指两个人或物，用来代替或修饰可数名词。all 和 both 在句子中作主语、宾语、表语、定语等。如：I know all of the four British students in their school. /—Would you like this one or that one? —Both.

all 和 both 既可以修饰名词 all/both+（the）+名词，也可以独立使用，采用“all/both+of the+名词（复数）”的形式，其中的 of 可以省略。如：All（of）（the）boys are naughty.

④ every 和 each 用法：

every 是形容词，只能作定语修饰单数名词，意思是“每一个”，表示整体概念。each 是形容词、代词，可用作主语、宾语、定语等，意思是“每个”或者“各个”，表示单个概念。each 可以放在名词前，可以后跟 of 短语，与动词同时出现时要放在“be 动词、助动词、情态动词”之后或者行为动词之前。

every 和 each 都用作单数，但是下文中既可以用单数的代词（如 he/him/his）也可以用复数的代词（如 they/them/their）替代。如：Every one of the students in his class studies very hard. /They are very busy. Each of them has something to do.

⑤ either 和 neither 的用法：

Either 表示“两个中间的任何一个”；neither 是 either 的否定形式，意思是“两个都不”。neither 和 either 在句子中可作主语、宾语和定语等，都用作单数。如：I don't care much for what to drink. Either of the two will do. /—Will you go there by bus or by car? —Neither. I will go there by train.

⑥ both/all/either/any/neither/none 的用法，详见表 4-8。

表 4-8　both/all/either/any/neither/none 的用法

	都	任何	都不
两者	both	either	neither
三者（以上）	all	any	none

注意：both...and...表示两者都……，如：

Both his father and his mother are teachers.

neither...nor...表示两者都不，如：

Neither his father nor his mother is a teacher.

either...or...表示或……或……，要么……要么……，如：

Either he or his brother goes to London.

either/neither of+名词（代词）的复数+谓语动词（第三人称单数），如：Neither of the books is good.

either...or... /neither...nor...连接两个主语时，采取就近原则。如：Neither you nor he is wrong.

⑦ other，the other 和 another 的用法，详见表 4-9。

表 4-9 other，the other 和 another 的用法

词 语	意 义	用 法
another	另一个	泛指三者或三者以上不定数目中的另一个
other	其他的；另外的	作前置定语表示泛指，用来修饰单数或复数名词
others	有些；其他人/事物	Some…others… 一些……另一些……
the other	另一个	表示两者中的“另一个”，one…the other…（两者中的）一个……，另一个……
the others	其余的（人或物）	指一个整体中除去一部分后的其余全部。Some…others…the others… 一些……，另一些……，其余的……

注：

other：other+复数名词（other students）。

another：another+单数名词，“另一个”（数目不清楚）。

the other：the other+复数名词= the others “其他的人或物”指确定范围内剩下的全部。

others（别人）：其后不能带名词，代换上文中提及的可数名词（复数，泛指）。

the others：代词，其后不能带名词，代换上文中提及的可数名词（复数，定指）。

【**考点要求**】注意两个句式、一个搭配和两个区别。

两个句式的用法：

（1）one…the other… 一个……另一个。

注意：使用该句式时，其前应出现说明具体数量的数词 two；如出现的数词大于 two，one 可以根据实际情况调整成其他数词；如出现的数词减去 one 或调整后的数词后仍大于“1”时，the other 应变为 the others 或“the other+数词”（两个数词相加应等于所给数词）。如：

There are two apples here. One is for you，the other is for your sister.

There are five apples here. Two are for you，the others are for your sister.

There are five apples here. Two are for you，the other three are for your sister.

（2）Some…others… 一些……另一些。

注意：使用该句式时，其前应出现说明不定数量的词语；如出现说明具体数量的数词，others 前应加上 the。如：

There are many people on the beach. Some are swimming，others are enjoying the sun.

Mrs. Smith bought 25 books. Some were for her daughter，the others were for her son.

一个搭配：any 同 other 连用时应注意几点。

any others：any 同单一的 other 连用，other 应使用 others。

any other+单数名词：any 后如还带有名词，用 other，名词用单数。

any of 结构：any of 后的 other 前应加 the，含名词用 other，名词用复数；如不含名词，用 others。如：

Of all the cities in China，Shanghai is bigger than any others.

Of all the cities in China，Shanghai is bigger than any other city.

Of all the cities in China，Shanghai is bigger than any of the others.

Of all the cities in China，Shanghai is bigger than any of the other cities.

两个区别。

（1）同数词连用时 another 和 more 的区别：another 用于数词前，more 用于数词后（鞍前马后）。如：

To finish the work in time，we need another two men.

To finish the work in time，we need two more men.

（2）other 和 else 的区别：other 用于名词前；else 用于 wh-词或复合不定代词后，其后不能带名词。如：

What other animals do you like?　Do you have anything else to tell us?

初中英语中除上述情况外，一般都用 another。如：

This pair of shoes doesn't fit me. Please show me another pair.

请看下面的题目：

Her lecture was hard to follow because she kept jumping from one subject to ______.

A. other　B. the other　C. the others　D. another

【陷阱】容易误选 B。选择依据可能是 one…the other…这一常用结构。

【分析】最佳答案为 D。使用 one…the other…时，我们通常是针对两者而言的，即指“两者中的一个……，另一个……”；如果所谈论的情况不是针对两者而言的，而是针对多者而言的，那么就不宜在 one 后使用 the other，而考虑用 another。

【代词易错考题分析】

1. I hear someone ________at the door. Please go and see who ________ is.

A. knock；he　B. knocking；he　C. knock；it　D. knocking；it

【解析】此题容易误选 A 或 B，这是由于汉语思维的影响引起的。大家都知道 hear sb. do sth. 意为“听见某人做某事”，hear sb. doing sth. 意为“听见某人正在做某事”，这样一来很多人就会选择 A 或 B，因为后面“去看看他是谁”从汉语的角度来看是没有错的。其实，在英语中常常用 it 来指代身份（姓名、职业等）不详的人。有人敲门时常常用英语问“Who is it?”正确答案为 D。

2. Lucy and I are classmates. We ________ in Class One.

A. all are　B. are all　C. both are　D. are both

【解析】此题容易误选 A 或 C，这是受到汉语思维的影响引起的，译成汉语正好是“我们都在一班”。表示两者都要用 both，both 一般放在 be 动词、情态动词或助动词之后，行为动词之前。正确答案为 D。

3. There is ________ egg at home. Will you please get ________ for me，please?

A. no；some　B. not；some　C. not any；any　D. not an；any

【解析】此题容易误选 C 或 D，这是由于死记语法条文引起的。因为 some 一般用于肯定句中，而 any 一般用于疑问句或否定句中，这样一来 A 和 B 首先就给排除了。其实，在表示请求或建议的疑问句，如 Would you like…?/What would you like…?/Could you/I…?/What about…?/How about…?/Would/will you please…? 等疑问句中习惯上用 some 而不用 any。又因为 no 可以直接修饰名词，而 not 必须加上 a/an 或 any 之后才可以接名词，因此正确答案为 A。

4. —A latest English newspaper，please! —Only one copy left. Would you like to have______，sir?

A. one　B. this　C. that　D. it

【解析】此题容易误选 A，这是由于忽略语境和思维定式造成的。这里是在询问是否有报纸卖，很多同学认为这里最后一句话的意思是“先生，你是否想要一份”。其实，由上文中的 Only one copy left 可知，只剩下一份报纸了，这暗示了购买者别无选择，只能买“它”了。正确答案为 D。

【巩固练习】

1. There's no _____ way to do it.

A. other　　B. the other　　C. another

2. Some people like to rest in their free time. ______ like to travel.

A. Other　　B. The others　　C. Others　　D. Another

3. This cake is delicious! Can I have _______ piece, please?

A. other　　B. another　　C. others　　D. the other

4. Where are ______ boys?

A. the other　　B. the others　　C. others　　D. another

5. The supermarket is on _____ side of the street.

A. other　　B. another　　C. the other　　D. others

6. There were three books on my table. One is here. Where are ___?

A. others　　B. the others　　C. the other　　D. another

7. Some of the speakers went straight to the conference room. ___speakers are still hanging around.

A. The other　　B. The others　　C. Another　　D. Others

8. This is not the only answer to the question. There are _____.

A. the others　　B. others　　C. another　　D. the other

9. Please give me ____ chance.

A. other　　B. the other　　C. another　　D. the others

10. He was a wonderful teacher. Everyone agreed it would be hard to find ____ like him.

A. another　　B. other　　C the other　　D. the others

11. I don't like those shoes. Please show me ______.

A. another　　B. other　　C. the other　　D. some others

12. Mary didn't want ____ of the two kinds and asked the shop assistant to show her ______.

A. both; the other　　B. all; the others　　C. either; another　　D. other; the others

13. Great changes have taken place in China. Who can tell ___it would be like in _____ five years?

A. how; other　　B. what; more　　C. how; another　　D. what; another

14. Mr. Turner bought two bikes. One was for his wife, and ____was for his son.

A. another　　B. other　　C. the other　　D. one

15. Tom, you should know how to get on well with _____.

A. another　　B. others　　C. the other　　D. other

16. He has two sons. One is a doctor, ____ is a student. He is now studying at _____ university.

A. another; a　　B. the other; an　　C. the other; a　　D. another; an

17. —What a hot day! Have you had a drink? —Yes. But I'd like to have _____ after work.

A. it　　B. one　　C. other　　D. another

18. —Would you like _____ apples? —______, please.

A. some more; Nother two　　B. any more; Two more

C. another; Two more　　D. some more; Other

19. We have ten foreign students in our school. One is from America, ____ is from Australia and all ______ students are from England.

A. another; the others　　B. one; another

C. another; the other　　D. one; other's

20. Students are usually interested in sports: some like running, some like swimming, and _____ like ball games.

A. the others B. others C. the other D. other

21. There are twenty-eight students in the class. Ten of them are girls and _____ are boys.

A. the other B. the others C. others D. other

22. I don't like this pen. Would you please show me ___ one?

A. another B. the other C. other D. others

23. These cups are ours. Those are ______.

A. others B. other's C. others' D. others's

24. I have six coloured pencils; one is blue, another is red, and _____ are green.

A. others B. another C. others D. the others

25. —Have you finished your report yet? —No. I'll finish it in ______ ten minutes.

A. another B. other C. more D. less

26. —Did all the students in your class pass the test? —Some of them did. ______ didn't.

A. Another B. The others C. Some other D. Others

【参考答案】

1—5 ACBAC 6—10 BABCA 11—15 ACDCB 16—20 CDACB 21—26 BAADAD

⑧ 复合不定代词。

复合不定代词有 12 个：something（某事），someone（某人），somebody（某人），anything（任何事），anyone（任何人），anybody（任何人），nothing（没事），nobody（没有人），no one（没有人），everything（一切），everyone（每个人），everybody（每个人），在句子中当单数使用。

somebody，something，someone 一般用于肯定句中；anything，anybody，anyone 一般用于疑问句、否定句和条件状语从句中。修饰复合不定代词的定语，应放在它们的后面。如：Hey，Lily. There is someone outside the door. Did you meet anyone when you came to school last Sunday? / He has nothing much to do today.

somebody（某人）	anybody（任何人）	nobody（没有人）	everybody（每人）
someone（某人）	anyone（任何人）	no one（没有人）	everyone（每人）
something（某事）	anything（任何事）	nothing（没有东西）	everything（每一件事）

当句子的主语是指人的复合不定代词，如 everybody，nobody，anyone 等时，其反义疑问句的主语通常用代词 they；当句子的主语是指物的复合不定代词，如 everything，anything，something，nothing 等时，其反义疑问句的主语通常用代词 it。如：

Everybody is here，aren't they? 大家都在这里，是吗？

Everything is ready，isn't it? 一切都准备好了，是吗？

当形容词或 else（另外）修饰复合不定代词 something，everything，everyone 等时，形容词或 else 必须放在复合不定代词的后面。如：

Xiao Ming，I have something important to tell you. 小明，我有重要的事情要告诉你。

We need one more helper. Can you find anyone else? 我们还需要一个助手。你能再给我们找一个吗？

everyone 的意思等同于 everybody，只能指人；every one 既可指人也可指物，还可以和 of 短语连用。如：

I would like everyone to be happy. 我希望人人都幸福。

Everyone/Every one likes Mary. 大家都喜欢玛丽。

I have kept every one of her letters. 我把她的每一封信都保存了下来。

She took my bottles of whisky and emptied every one down the sink.

她把我的威士忌酒一瓶一瓶全给倒进水池子里去了。

anyone 指任何人；any one 指任何人（或物）。anyone 常用于泛指，其后不接 of 短语作定语，并且

只能指人。如：Is anyone here today? 今天每个人都在这里吗？any one 常用于特指，其后可接 of 短语限定范围或提供语境暗示，并且可指物，也可指人。

如：You can take any one of them. 你可以拿走它们中的任何一个。

⑨ one 与 ones 用来代替上文的一个或多个人或事物，前面可以加冠词、形容词、指示代词、which 等。如：

Which jacket would you like，this one or that one?你要哪件夹克，这件还是那件？/I don't like the green ones. 我不喜欢绿色的那些。

⑩ so 可以代替一件事情，作句子的宾语或表语。如：

I don't think so. /He lost a book. So did I.

⑪ none，no one，nobody 的区别：no one 和 nobody 都表示"没有人"，仅指人，后面不跟 of 短语，作主语时谓语用单数形式；none 表示"没有一个人/物"，可指人也可以指物，后面可跟 of 短语，作主语时谓语可用单数也可用复数。如：

No one knows how he managed to get the ticket.

Nobody handed in his/their composition（s）yesterday.

None of my friends came to see me that day.

4.11 疑问代词的用法

用来提出问题的代词称为疑问代词，主要疑问代词及其用法见表 4-10。

表 4-10 主要的疑问代词及其用法

疑问代词	主要用法	例 句
who	谁，问人（主格）	Who wants to go with me?
whom	谁，问人（宾格）	To whom are you talking?
whose	谁的，所属关系	Whose book is this?
what	什么	What's your father?—He is a doctor.
which	哪一个，哪一些	Which one do you like best?

（1）who，whom，whose，what，which，whoever，whatever，whichever 主要用于特殊疑问句中，一般放在句首。口语中也常用 who 代替 whom 作宾语，但在介词后则只能用 whom。如：

Who/whom did you invite to your birthday party? 你都邀请了谁参加你的生日聚会的？

What does she want to be when she grows up? 她长大了想干什么？

（2）who 和 whom 只能独立使用，其中 who 可以作句子的主语、表语或动词的宾语，whom 只能作谓语动词的宾语；而 what，which，whose 等既可以独立使用作主语、表语和宾语，也可以与名词构成疑问短语。如：

Who is that man?

What colour are their hats?

Which car was made in Germany?（被动句）

（3）which 除了可以询问指代的情况之外，还可以针对说明人物的时间、地点、岁数、颜色、大小、状况等进行提问。如：

People there live a very sad life. →Which people live a sad life? —Which hotel have you booked for your holiday? —The biggest one in Haikou.

（4）疑问代词不分单复数，视它所替代的人或事物决定单复数，但是通常用单数；如果修饰名词，则以名词的单复数为准。如：Who is（are）in that playhouse?/What is that?/What are those?/What colours do they have?

【中考真题再现】

1. Lily and her sister look the same. I can't tell one from________.（2012 山东济宁）

A. other　　B. another　　C. the other　　D. others

2. There are many flowers and trees on ______sides of the Century Road.（2012 山东济南）

A. each　　B. every　　C. both　　D. all

3. It's polite to take _______ flowers as a gift when you go to visit a friend.（2012 贵州贵阳）

A. little　　B. any　　C. some

4. —Is your brother running in the park? —No，______ is swimming in the river.（2012 山东济南）

A. she　　B. his　　C. her　　D. he

5. The students are helping the old man clean ______ house now.（2011 湖南株洲）

A. her　　B. him　　C. his

6. —Where is my pen? —Oh，sorry，I have taken________ by mistake.（2012 贵州铜仁）

A. yours　　B. mine　　C. hers　　D. his

7. My English is so poor，please help________ to improve it.（2012 贵州铜仁）

A. me　　B. I　　C. my　　D. mine

8. Mrs. Brown is nice. Every day she tried to cook ____ for me during my stay in Canada.（2012 福建福州）

A. something different　　B. anything different　　C. noting different

【答案与解析】

1. C。考查代词辨析。the other 指的是两者中的另外一个。句意为“丽丽与她姐姐看起来相同，我不能分辨彼此”。

2. C。考查代词的用法。each 和 every“每一个”，后可接单数名词；both“两者都……”后接可数名词复数；all“三者（或三者以上）都……”。句意“在中心公路的两边有许多花和树”。

3. C。考查代词的用法。little 意为“一些，一点”，修饰不可数名词；any 意为“一些”，一般用在否定句中或疑问句中；some 意为“一些”，一般用在肯定句中。根据句意“当你去拜访朋友时，带着一些花作为礼物，这是很有礼貌的”。故选 C。

4. D。考查代词的用法。空格处在句中作主语，用人称代词的主格，代替前文中的“your brother”，须用人称代词 he，故选 D。

5. C。考查代词辨析。her 可以做宾格“她”，可以作形容词性物主代词“她的”；him 作宾格“他”；his 作名词性物主代词“他的（东西）”或形容词性物主代词“他的”。根据句意“学生在帮助老人打扫他的房间。”故选 C。

6. A。考查物主代词。yours“你的”，mine“我的”，hers“她的”，his“他的”，四个选项都是名词性物主代词。根据句意“我的钢笔在哪里？对不起。我错拿了你的”。空格中表示 your pen，故需要一个名词性物主代词。故选 A。

7. A。考查代词，me 是 I 的宾格形式，I 是主格，my 是形容词性物主代词，mine 是名词性物主代词。help sb. to do sth. 表示“帮助某人干某事”，此处需要人称代词，help 是动词，此处需要代词宾格形式。故选 A。

8. A。考查不定代词的用法。something 一般用于肯定句，anything 一般用于否定句。当形容词修饰不定代词时需后置。句意为：“布朗夫人很好，我待在加拿大期间她每天给我做不同的饭”。故选 A。

【巩固练习】

1. —Is the woman a teacher? —Yes. She teaches ________ English.

   A. you　　B. us　　C. our　　D. your

2. —We don't know _____ he is. —He is a doctor.

   A. what　　B. which　　C. who　　D. whom

3. —How was your visit to the World Park in Beijing? —Wonderful! We enjoyed _____very much.

   A. itself　　B. myself　　C. yourselves　　D. ourselves

4. Whatever you do, ____ is difficult if you put your heart into it.

   A. nothing　　B. anything　　C. something　　D. everything

5. —Excuse me, is this _______ new camera? —Yes, it's _______.

   A. your; my　　B. your; mine　　C. yours; my　　D. yours; mine

6. An old friend of my sister's always helps my brother and ______with ______English.

   A. I; our　　B. me; ourselves　　C. I; my　　D. me; our

7. —When shall we go to the museum, this afternoon or tomorrow morning?

   —_____ is OK. I'm free these days.

   A. Both　　B. All　　C. Either　　D. Neither

8. —Wow! You've got so many skirts. —But________ of them is in fashion now.

   A. all　　B. both　　C. neither　　D. none

9. Please give ______ English book to her.

   A. me　　B. I　　C. mine　　D. my

10. —Where is my notebook?

    —I don't know. It isn't here. Maybe _____ took it away by mistake.

    A. everybody　　B. nobody

    C. anybody　　D. somebody

11. ______ are all college students, so we can help the old man solve the problem.

    A. You; he and I　　B. He; you and I

    C. You; I and he　　D. I; he and you

12. Look at those red bags. ______ are all for _______.

    A. They; they　　B. We; you　　C. They; us　　D. We; them

13. —Can you take these apples to ______?

    —_______ are all in the box, too.

    A. your; Yours　　B. him; Him　　C. yours; Her　　D. her; Yours

14. —Could I talk to you for ______ minutes, Mike?

    —Sorry, I have ______ time.

    A. a few; little　　B. little; few　　C. few; little　　D. a little; a few

15. —Who is singing in the classroom?

    —______ must be my sister. She likes singing.

    A. It　　B. She　　C. This　　D. He

16. These sweaters are too small for me. Please show me _______ one.

    A. other　　B. others　　C. the others　　D. another

17. —Your English is very good. Who taught you?

    —Nobody. I taught ______.

    A. me　　B. him　　C. himself　　D. myself

18. I have two brothers. One is a teacher, and _______ is a doctor.

A. other　　B. the other　　C. another　　D. the others

19. There is ______ salt left, so you need to buy some this afternoon.

A. a few　　B. few　　C. a little　　D. little

20. —Do you know everyone from Class One?

—Er…, I know some of _______.

A. they　　B. their　　C. theirs　　D. them

【答案与解析】

1. B。本题是考查人称代词的用法，本句是双宾语句式，us 作间接宾语，English 作直接宾语。人称代词的宾格是作宾语的。

2. A。本题是考查疑问代词，这里的 what he is 作主句 I don't know 的宾语，用来表达问职业的句式。

3. D。本题考查反身代词的固定搭配，enjoy oneself 意为“玩得开心”。

4. A。本题考查不定代词的用法。句意为：只要你用心，没有什么是困难的。

5. B。本题考查形容词性物主代词和名词性物主代词的用法，形容词性物主代词后接名词，名词性物主代词可单独使用。

6. D。本题 me 作 help 的宾语，our 作 English 的定语。

7. C。本题考查不定代词的区别，both 指“两者都”，all 指“全部”，either 指“两者中的任何一个”，neither 指“两者都不”。

8. D。本题是考查不定代词的区别，all 指“全部”，both 指“两者都”，neither 指“两者都不”，none 指“三者以上不”，由句意可知“尽管裙子多，但是都不时尚了”。

9. D。考查代词的用法。根据句意“请把我的英语书给她”可知此处修饰 English book 应该使用形容词性的物主代词，故选 D。

10. D。somebody 意为“某人”，句意为“可能有人拿错了”。

11. A。本题考查多个人称代词并列时候的排列顺序。单数排列顺序是第二人称代词在前面，第三人称在中间，第一人称在后面。

12. C。本题考查代词的用法。第一个空用 they 的主格形式作主语，代替上文的 those red bags；第二个空在介词 for 的后面用宾格形式作宾语。所以选择 C。

13. D。第一个空在介词 to 的后面用代词的宾格，第二个空用名词性物主代词作主语。所以选择 D。

14. A。本题题意：“我能和你谈几分钟吗，麦克？”“对不起，我没有时间。”a few 修饰可数名词复数，表示肯定；little 修饰不可数名词，表示否定。

15. A。本题考查代词的用法，在表示猜测的时候用代词 it 代替所问的人。

16. D。根据句子意思应选 another，表示不定数目中的另一个，代替或修饰可数名词。B、C 后面不接名词或代词。other 表示其他的，接复数名词或前面加 the。

17. D。本题考查反身代词的用法。动词 taught 和反身代词连用表示“自学”的意思，反身代词和前面作主语的人称代词应该一致，所以选择 D。

18. B。one…the other…特指“两个中的一个和另一个”。句意为“我有两个弟弟（或哥哥），一个是老师，另一个是医生”。

19. D。本题考查不定代词的用法。修饰不可数名词用 little，a little；修饰可数名词用 few，a few；little 和 few 表示否定含义，a little 和 a few 表示肯定含义，从句意可知“没有多少盐了”是否定含义，而 salt 是不可数名词，所以选 D。

20. D。本题是考查人称代词，some of them 指他们中的一些，them 是宾格，作介词 of 的宾语。

【历年高考代词考题】

1.（2008 全国卷 I 30）—Which of the two computer games did you prefer?

—Actually I didn't like ______.

A. both of them　　B. either of them　　C. none of them　　D. neither of them

2.（2008 全国卷 I 33）The English spoken in the United States is only slightly different from ___ spoken in England.

A. which　　B. what　　C. that　　D. the one

3.（2008 北京卷 25）It was hard for him to learn English in a family，in which ___ of the parents spoke the language.

A. none　　B. neither　　C. both　　D. each

4.（2008 上海春卷 26）Many fast-growing countries are less concerned with protecting ___against climate change.

A. one　　B. oneself　　C. them　　D. themselves

5.（2008 上海卷 26）Do you want tea or coffee? ____，I really don't mind.

A. none　　B. neither　　C. either　　D. or

6.（2008 天津卷 05）To know more about the British Museum，you can use the Internet or go to the library，or ______.

A. neither　　B. some　　C. all　　D. both

7.（2008 重庆卷 24）—Could we see each other at 3 o'clock this afternoon? —Sorry，let's make it_____time.

A. other's　　B. the other　　C. another　　D. other

8.（2008 辽宁卷 26）—Could you tell me how to get to Victoria Street? —Victoria Street? ____ is where the Grand Theatre is.

A. Such　　B. There　　C.That　　D.This

9.（2008 山东卷 27）Make sure you've got the passports and tickets and ____before you leave.

A. something　　B. anything　　C. everything　　D. nothing

10.（2008 江西卷 23）Isn't it amazing how the human body heals ____ after an injury?

A. himself　　B. him　　C. itself　　D. it

11.（2008 安徽卷 21）The two girls are getting on very well and share _____ with each other.

A. little　　B. much　　C. some　　D none

12.（2008 浙江卷 09）—I'd like some more cheese. —Sorry，there's _______ left.

A. some　　B. none　　C. a little　　D. few

13.（2008 湖南卷 21）Our neighbors gave ___ a baby bird yesterday that hurt ___ when it fell from its nest.

A. us；it　　B. us；itself　　C. ourselves；itself　　D. ourselves；it

14.（2008 四川卷 11）The manager believes prices will not rise by more than ___ four percent.

A. any other　　B. the other　　C. another　　D. other

15.（2008 福建卷 21）—How do you find your new classmates? —Most of them are kind，but ___ is so good to me as Bruce.

A. none　　B. no one　　C. every one　　D. some one

16.（2007 江西卷 28）—What do you think of the performance today? —Great!________but a musical genius could perform so successfully.

A. All　　B. None　　C. Anybody　　D. Everybody

17.（2007 江西卷 34）I don't mind her criticizing me，but ___ is how she does it that I object to.

A. it　　B. that　　C. this　　D. which

18.（2007 山东卷 24）_______ worries me the way he keeps changing his mind.

A. This B. That C. What D. It

19.（2007 陕西卷 16）—There is still a copy of the book in the library. Will you go and borrow____?

—No，I'd rather buy _______ in the bookstore.

A. it；one B. one；one C. one；it D. it；it

20.（2007 上海卷 26）The mayor has offered a reward of $ 5,000 to___who can capture the tiger alive or dead.

A. both B. others C. anyone D. another

21.（2007 北京卷 27）He has made a lot of films，but ____ good ones.

A. any B. some C. few D. many

22.（2007 湖南卷 27）To save class time，our teacher has _____ students do half of the exercise in class and complete the other half for homework.

A. us B. we C. our D. ours

23.（2007（全国卷 II 7）____ felt funny watching myself on TV.

A. One B. This C. It D. That

24.（2007 天津卷 1）He didn't make ____ clear when and where the meeting would be held.

A. this B. that C. it D. these

25.（2007 福建卷 23）The book is of great value. ___________can be enjoyed unless you digest it.

A. Nothing B. Something C. Everything D. Anything

26.（2007 全国卷 I 21）—Have you heard the latest news? —No，what ________?

A. is it B. is there C. are they D. are those

27.（2007 安徽卷 28）The school's music group will be giving a big show tomorrow night and two on the weekend.

A. more B. other C. else D. another

28.（2007 安徽卷 34）Last week，only two people came to look at the house，_____ wanted to buy it.

A. none of them B. both of them C. none of whom D. neither of whom

29.（2007 四川卷 32）Little joy can equal ____ of a surprising ending when you read stories.

A. that B. those C. any D. some

30.（2007 浙江卷 10）It ____ we had stayed，together for a couple of weeks ____ I found we had a lot in common.

A. was until；when B. was until；that C. wasn't until；when D. wasn't until；that

31.（2007 浙江卷 16）—He got his first book published. It turned out to be a bestseller.

—When was___? —___ was in 2000 when he was still in college.

A. that；This B. this；It C. it；This D. that；It

32.（2007 重庆卷 21）Jim sold most of his things. He has hardly _______ left in the house.

A. anything B. everything C. nothing D. something

33.（2007 重庆卷 27）It is not who is right but what is right ______ is of importance.

A. which B. it C. that D. this

34.（2007 辽宁卷 27）The information on the Internet gets around much more rapidly than ____ in the newspaper.

A. it B. those C. one D. that

35.（2006 全国 II）Your story is perfect；I've never heard ______before.

A. the better one B. the best one C. a better one D. a good one

36.（2006 全国 I）If I can help ______，I don't like working late into the night.

A. so B. that C. it D. them

37.（2006 北京）—Which driver was to blame? —Why，______! It was the child's fault，clear and

simple. He suddenly came out between two parked cars.

A. both B. each C. either D. neither

38.（2006 重庆）My grandma still treats me like a child. She can't imagine____ grown up.

A. my B. mine C. myself D. me

39.（2006 四川）Of all the books on the desk，_______ is of any use for our study.

A. nothing B. no one C. neither D. none

40.（2006 浙江）_____ is our belief that improvements in health care will lead to a stronger，more prosperous economy.

A. As B. That C. This D. It

41.（2006 浙江）If you can't decide which of the two books to borrow，why don't you take ____? I won't read them this week.

A. all B. any C. either D. both

42.（2006 湖南）As the busiest woman in Norton，she made______ her duty to look after all the other people's affairs in that town.

A. this B. that C. one D. it

43.（2006 天津）We had a picnic last term and it was a lot of fun，so let's have _______ one this month.

A. the other B. some C. another D. other

44.（2006 福建）—Who called me this morning when I was out? —A man calling ___ Robert.

A. his B. himself C. his D. 不填

45.（2006 安徽）You may drop in or just give me a call. ______will do.

A. Either B. Each C. Neither D. All

46.（2006 安徽）Catherine bought a postcard of the place she was visiting，addressed _____to _____and then posted it at the nearby post office.

A. it；her B. it；herself C. herself；her D. herself；herself

47.（2006 江苏）My most famous relative of all，_______ who really left his mark on America，was Rob Sussel，my great-grandfather.

A.one B. the one C. he D. someone

48.（2006 山东）I'd appreciate ___if you would like to teach me how to use the computer.

A. that B. it C. this D. you

49.（2006 辽宁）I hear ______ boys in your school like playing football in their spare time，though others prefer basketball.

A. quite a lot B. quite a few C. quite a bit D. quite a little

50.（2005 北京春）We asked John and Jerry，but _____ of them could offer a satisfactory explanation.

A. either B. none C. both D. neither

51.（2005 全国）We haven't enough books for______；some of you will have to share.

A. somebody B. any body C. everybody D. nobody

52.（2005 全国 I）The chairman thought____ necessary to invite Professor Smith to speak at the meeting.

A. that B. it C. this D. him

53.（2005 全国 II）The doctor advised Vera strongly that she should take a holiday，but____ didn't help.

A. it B. she C. which D. he

54.（2005 天津）I prefer a flat in Inverness to _______ in Perth，because I want to live near my Mom's.

A. one B. that C. it D. this

55.（2005 上海）No progress was made in the trade talk as neither side would accept the conditions of ______.

A. others　　B. the other　　C. either　　D. another

56.（2005 重庆）—Victor certainly cares too much about himself. —Yes. He's never interested in what ______ is doing.

A. no one else　　B. anyone else　　C. someone else　　D. nobody else

57.（2005 广东）I think he's just going to deal with this problem ______ day.

A. next　　B. other　　C. following　　D. another

58.（2005 福建）I made a call to my parents yesterday. To my disappointment, _____ of them answered it.

A. either　　B. none　　C. neither　　D. nobody

59.（2005 湖南）You will find as you read this book that you just can't keep some of these stories to ______. You will want to share them with a friend.

A. itself　　B. yourself　　C. himself　　D. themselves

60.（2005 湖北）First, it is important to recognize what kind of person you are and which special qualities make you different from ______.

A. everyone else　　B. the other　　C. someone else　　D. the rest

61.（2005 江西 24）Cars do cause us some health problems—in fact far more serious ______ than mobile phones do.

A. one　　B. ones　　C. it　　D. them

62.（2005 浙江）We've been looking at houses but haven't found ______we like yet.

A. one　　B. ones　　C. it　　D. them

63.（2005 安徽）I don't think we've met before. You're taking me for ______.

A. some other　　B. someone else　　C. other person　　D. one other

64.（2005 江苏）I'm moving to the countryside because the air there is much fresher than ______ in the city.

A. ones　　B. one　　C. that　　D. those

65.（2004 全国 I 27）I like _______ in the autumn when the weather is clear and bright.

A. this　　B. that　　C. it　　D. one

【参考答案】

1—5　BCBDC　　6—10　DCCCC　　11—15　BBBCA　　16—20　BADAC

21—25　CACCA　　26—30　AADAD　　31—35　DACDC　　36—40　CDDDD

41—45　DDCBA　　46—50　BBBBD　　51—55　CBAAB　　56—60　BDCBA

61—65　BABCC

5 数 词

表示数目和顺序的词叫作数词。数词又分基数词和序数词，基数词表示数量，序数词表示顺序。

5.1 基数词的构成及用法

最基本的基数词如表 5-1 所示。

表 5-1 最基本的基数词

1 one	11 eleven		100 a hundred
2 two	12 twelve	20 twenty	1000 a thousand
3 three	13 thirteen	30 thirty	1,000,000 a million
4 four	14 fourteen	40 forty	10,000,000 ten million
5 five	15 fifteen	50 fifty	100,000,000 a hundred million
6 six	16 sixteen	60 sixty	1,000,000,000 a billion
7 seven	17 seventeen	70 seventy	
8 eight	18 eighteen	80 eighty	
9 nine	19 nineteen	90 ninety	
10 ten			

说明：

（1）13 ~ 19 是由个位数加后缀-teen 构成。注意其中 13、15 的拼写是 thirteen 和 fifteen。

（2）20 ~ 90 由个位数加后缀-ty 构成，注意其中 20 ~ 50 的拼写分别是 twenty，thirty，forty 和 fifty；80 的拼写是 eighty。

（3）其他非整十的两位数 21 ~ 99 是由整十位数加连字符“-”，再加个位数构成。如：81 eighty-one。

（4）101 ~ 999 的基数词先写百位数，后加 and 再写十位数和个位数。如：691 six hundred and ninety-one。

（5）1000 以上的基数词先写千位数，后写百位数，再加 and，最后写十位数和个位数。

如：5893 five thousand eight hundred and ninety-three。在基数词中只有表示“百”“千”的单位词，没有单独表示“万”“亿”的单位词，而是用 thousand（千）和 million（百万）来表达，其换算关系为：1 万=10 thousand；1 亿=100 million；10 亿=a thousand million=a billion。

（6）多位数的读法：

① 1000 以上的多位数，要使用计数间隔或逗号“,”。即从个位起，每隔三位加一个间隔或逗号。第一个间隔或逗号前是 thousand（千），第二个间隔或逗号前是 million（百万），第三个间隔或逗号前是 a thousand million 或 a billion（十亿）。

② 每隔三位分段以后就都成了 101 ~ 999。读的时候十位数（或个位数）的前面一般要加 and。如：888,000,000 读作：eight hundred and eighty-eight million。

基数词的用法如下：

（1）基数词的复数形式表示大量的数目。在这种情况下，表示单位的基数词（hundred，thousand，million，billion）不能在词尾加-s。例如：

two hundred students 二百个学生

five thousand years 五千年

（2）基数词的复数形式表示大量的数目，在这种情况下，表示单位的基数词词尾加-s，要与 of 短语连用。

（3）基数词在句中的作用：基数词相当于名词和形容词，它在句子中可充当主语、宾语、表语和定语。例如：

Three and five is eight. 3+5=8

主语　　表语

—How many oranges do you want? 你要多少橙子？

—I want eight. 我要八个。

宾语

There are eight boats in the lake. 湖里有八条小船。

定语

5.2 序数词的用法

表示顺序的词，叫序数词。序数词用来表示数词顺序。除特殊情况外，序数词一般都由相应的基数词加后缀-th 构成（见表 5-2）。

表 5-2 序数词

第一到第十	第十一到第十九	第二十以上
first	eleventh	twentieth
second	twelfth	thirtieth
third	thirteenth	fortieth
fourth	fourteenth	fiftieth
fifth	fifteenth	sixtieth
sixth	sixteenth	seventieth
seventh	seventeenth	eightieth
eighth	eighteenth	ninetieth
ninth	nineteenth	hundredth
tenth		thousandth

说明：

（1）英语中表示第一、第二、第三的序数词属特殊形式，要注意它们的拼写。

（2）表示“几十”的序数词通常是将基数词词尾 y 变成 i 再加上后缀-eth。

（3）其余的二位数序数词是以相应的整十基数词加个位序数词。如：fifty-first（第五十一）。

（4）少数序数词拼法不规则，如：fifth（第五）、eighth（第八）、ninth（第九）、twelfth（第十二）等。

注意：
（1）序数词可缩写为阿拉伯数字加序数词最后两个字母。例如：
第一：（the）first=1st
第二：（the）second=2nd
第三：（the）third=3rd
第五：（the）fifth=5th
第九十七：（the）ninety-seventh=97 th
第一百零一：（the）one hundred（and）first=101st
（2）编了号的事物要用基数词表示顺序，但是基数词要后置。例如：
第一课：Lesson One
第三十二页：Page 32
第 305 房间：Room 305
第 12 路公共汽车：Bus No. 12
序数词和基数词一样，也能起名词或形容词作用，在句子中作主语、表语、宾语和定语。例如：
The first is bigger than the second. 第一个比第二个大。
主语
Give me the first. 把第一个给我。
宾语
She's often the first to go to school. 她经常第一个去上学。
表语
We're going to learn the eighth lesson. 我们将要学习第八课。
定语

5.3 年、月、日和时间的表达法

1. 年份用基数词表达，分两位数一读，年份前用介词 in

例如：
1999 nineteen ninety-nine
2000 two thousand
2001 two thousand and one

2. 月份的第一个字母要大写，有些月份名称有缩写形式

例如：

一月 January（Jan.）	二月 February（Feb.）	三月 March（Mar.）
四月（Apr.）	五月 May	六月 June
七月 July	八月 August（Aug.）	九月 September（Sep.）
十月 October（Oct.）	十一月 November（Nov.）	十二月 December（Dec.）

3. 日期要用序数词表达，读时前面要加定冠词 the，介词要使用 on

例如：在 6 月 1 日 on June 1st，读作 on June the first。
年、月、日同时表达时，一般应先写月、日，后写年。例如：在 2001 年 5 月 4 日 on May 4 th，2001。

4. 年代用基数词的复数表示

例如：20 世纪 90 年代：nineteen nineties

21 世纪 20 年代：twenty twenties

5. 时间表达法

时间可用顺读法或倒读法两种方式表达（见表 5-3）。

表 5-3　时间表达法

顺读法	倒读法
5:00 five（o'clock）	
6:18 six eighteen	eighteen past six
12:15 twelve fifteen	（a quarter）past twelve
4:30 four thirty	half past four
5:50 five fifty	ten to six
6:45 six forty-five	a quarter to seven

注意：

（1）表示整点时间时，直接用基数词表达，后边可接 o'clock（也可不加）。表达“几点几分”时，绝不能用 o'clock。

（2）表达“15 分”或“45 分”时，常用 quarter（刻）。

（3）在倒读法中，如果钟点不过半，须用“分钟数+past+钟点数”的形式；如果钟点过半，则用“差多少分钟数+to+全钟点（下个钟点数）” 的形式。例如：8:20 twenty past eight；8:40 twenty to nine。

6. 分数的表达法

（1）分子用基数词，分母用序数词。分子大于 1 时，分母用复数。

例如：1/2→one half 或 a half　　1/4→one fourth 或 one（a）quarter

3/4→three quarters 或 three fourths　　4/5→four fifths

3-5/6→three and five sixths　　32-3/4→thirty-two and three quarters（three fourths）

（2）小数的读法：小数点前面的数按照基数词的读法，小数点后面的数按照数本身读，小数点读 point。例如：

0.38：zero point three eight

96.89：ninety-six point eight nine

（3）百分数，在数词后加 percent。例如：

15%：fifteen percent

60%：sixty percent

7. 表示倍数

（1）……几倍大小（长短，数量）=……几倍（或分数）+the size（length，amount）。例如：

The earth is forty-nine times the size of the moon. 地球是月球的 49 倍。

（2）……比……几倍=……倍数（或分数）+形容词（副词）比较级+than+被比部分。例如：

His house is three times bigger than mine. 他的房子比我的房子大三倍。

（3）……是……倍=……倍数（或分数）+as+形容词+as+被比部分。例如：

This factory is four times as big as that one. 这个工厂是那个工厂的四倍。

8. 表示约数

（1）“多于”用 more than 或 over。例如：

The street is over（more than）500 metres long. 这条街有 500 多米长。

（2）“小于”用 less than。例如：

There are less than 30 people in the classroom. 教室里不到 30 人。

（3）“或……以上”用 or more。例如：

The building can hold 5000 people or more. 那座建筑物可容纳 5000 人或 5000 人以上。

（4）“或……以下”用 or less。例如：

We can finish the work in two weeks or less. 我们可以在两周内或不到两周完成这件工作。

（5）“大约”用 about，around，nearly 等。例如：

The box weighs about 50 pounds. 这箱子重约 50 英镑。

（6）“左右”用 or so。例如：

In the past ten years or so，they have changed a lot. 在过去的十年里，他们改变了许多。

【例题解析】

典型例题 1：In _____，Mr. Li began to learn English.

A. his 1990　　B. the 1990s　　C. the 1990　　D. a 1990

解析：根据题意可判断出要表达时间，如果是 1990 年，那么直接就是 in 1990 就可以了，C 和 D 排除掉；人是不可能有 1990 岁的，排除 A；B 表达的是“20 世纪 90 年代”。

答案：B

典型例题 2：September is _________（九）month of the year.

解析：这是一道填空题，考查序数词的拼写。序数词前加 the，故用 the ninth。

典型例题 3：About _____ students went to the picture show that day.

A. hundreds of　　B. two hundreds　　C. two hundred of　　D. two hundred

解析：“about”意为“大约”，是指具体数量，因此，不能用表示不定数量的词语“hundreds of”（意为“成百个”）。在表示确定数量时，英语中的“hundred”不加“s”，即不变复数。再由于“students”前没有定冠词“the”，不是“其中”之意，因此，也不能加介词“of”。所以本题应该选 D。

典型例题 4：_____ of _____ Class Four students have joined the singing group.

A. Three-fifths；the　　B. Three-fifth；the　　C. Three-fifths；/　　D. Three-fifth；/

解析：英语中，“几分之几”的表达方式是分子用基数词、分母用序数词，中间用短横“-”连接。当分子大于“一”时，分母序数词要加“s”。由于本题句中数量用的是“of”词组，即意为“其中的五分之三”，因此后面的名词“students”必定是“确指”的，要加定冠词“the”。所以本题应该选 A。要特别注意的是：不要看到“students”前有修饰词“Class Four”就不敢加定冠词“the”，要懂得这里的“the”是修饰“students”的。同样，“the English language”词语的表达形式也类似于此种情况。

【习题操练】

一、请写出下列基数词的序数词。

three ___________　　nine ____________　　eight ______________

twelve __________　　twenty __________　　four _______________

twenty-one _______	six _______________	hundred _____________
fourteen___________	thirteen___________	five _________________

二、翻译下列数词短语。

第五课 ________________________	3:20 ______________________________
6:55 __________________________	四分之五 _________________________
在我 40 多岁时 _______________	两个半小时 _______________________
半个小时 ______________________	一个 16 岁的小男孩 ________________
两周的假期 ____________________	5 路公共汽车 ______________________
1949.10.1 _____________________	数千的学生 ________________________
九年级 2 班 ___________________	第 7 排 ___________________________
515 房间 ______________________	在二层楼___________________________
2009 年 2 月 14 日_______________	50 公里长的大桥_____________________
在第 46 页 _____________________	第一中学___________________________
四分之三 ______________________	49 _________________________________

【聚焦中考】

一、基数词。

1.（2015 重庆 B 卷）It's reported that over eight ______ people lost their lives in the earthquake in Nepal this year.

A. thousand　　B. thousands　　C. thousand of　　D. thousands of

2.（2015 重庆 A 卷）Helen loves reading. She has read _____ books this month.

A. five　　B. fifth　　C. five of　　D. fifth of

3.（2015 山东宾州）Two _______ students ______ to the opening ceremony last Friday.

A. hundreds；were invited　　B. hundred；were invited

C. hundreds of；invited　　D. hundred of；invited

4.（2015 贵州安顺）It took_________people three months to build this great building.

A. two hundreds　　B. hundred of　　C. hundreds of　　D. two hundred of

5.（2015 天津）Basketball is so exciting that ______ people play it for fun.

A. million　　B. two millions　　C. million of　　D. millions of

6.（2015 新疆克拉玛依）In our city，____ middle school students want to work as a teacher in the future.

A. thousand　　B. thousand of　　C. thousands of　　D. two thousand of

7.（2015 湖北孝感）Last year，three hundred English teachers took part in the _____ English Training.

A. two-month　　B. two-months　　C. two months　　D. two month

8.（2015 广东汕尾）—I'm going to take this summer holiday in Taiwan.

—Oh，really? Taiwan is_____a beautiful island that_____people in Guangdong go to visit it every year.

A. so；thousands　　B. so；thousands of　　C. such；many thousand　　D. much；thousands of

9.（2015 贵州黔西南州）______people died because of the earthquake.

A. two thousands　　B. Thousand of

C. Two thousands of　　D. Thousands of

10.（2015 山东东营）It's reported that nearly ______foreign kids joined a British boarding school last year，and third of them came from China.

A. nine thousand　　B. nine thousands

C. nine thousand of D. nine thousands of

11.（2015 湖南郴州）—The book *Journey to the West* is very popular.

—Yeah，more than__________ students in our school bought it.

A. three hundred B. three hundreds C. hundred of

12.（2015 湖北黄冈）—How many friend will come to your _____birthday? —About _________.

A. fifteen；fifteen B. fifteenth；fifteenth

C. fifteen；fifteenth D. fifteenth；fifteen

13.（2015 贵州六盘水）It is reported that people throw_____plastic bags along this street every week.

A. hundred B. hundreds C. hundreds of D. hundred of

14.（2015 江苏淮安）During May Day holiday，we stayed in a mountain village with ____ trees around.

A. thousand of B. thousand C. thousands D. thousands of

二、序数词。

1.（2105 成都）The_____biggest earthquakes in Nepal（尼泊尔）have killed more than 8,000 people.

A. two B. second C. twice

2.（2015 湖南株洲）December is _____ and last month of the year.

A. the twelfth B. twelfth C. the twelve

3.（2015 广东）I live in Room 403，Sam lives in the room right above mine，on the _____ floor.

A. third B. three C. fifth D. five

4.（2015 上海）Rose received a letter full of love from her parents on her ______ birthday.

A. sixteen B. sixteen’s C. sixteenth D. sixteenths

5.（2015 山西）—This is the_____________time that I come to Paris. I have been here twice.

—Me too. The world is so large that I want to see more of it.

A. first B. second C. third

6.（2015 湖南衡阳）Yesterday was his _______birthday. He enjoyed himself.

A. twelfth B. twelve C. the twelfth

7.（2015 甘肃兰州）______ of the land in that district is covered with trees and grass.

A. Fifth two B. Two fifth

C. Fifth second D. Two fifths

8.（2015 黑龙江黑河市）—Do you know the girls who are in the living room?

—Yes，they are my classmates. They are celebrating Lucy’s ______ birthday.

A. thirteen B. the thirteenth C. thirteenth

9.（2015 黑龙江哈尔滨）It’s my ______ time to come to the bookstore this month because most of the books in it are my favorite.

A. forth B. four C. fourth

10.（2015 吉林）We are going on holiday in the ______ week of July.

A. two B. twice C. second

11.（2015 湖南永州）Sunday is _______day of a week.

A. the sixth B. the first C. the seventh

12.（2015 辽宁丹东）—Excuse me，can you tell me the way to the nearest railway station?

—Sorry，I don’t know. I’m new，this is my _______ time here.

A. one B. once C. first D. two

13.（2015 辽宁营口）Father’s Day is on the _______ Sunday in June. It’s on June 21st this year.

A. first B. second C. third D. fourth

三、分数、百分数及小数。

1.（2015 四川自贡）It is said that _______ students like to talk with friends online.

A. two-thirds B. two-three C. two-third

2.（2015 四川资阳）Come on，baby. We have already done _________ of the work.

A. two-three B. two-third C. two-thirds D. second-three

3.（2015 黑龙江龙东）______ of the girls will join the summer camp to visit England.

A. Three fives B. Third fifths C. Three fifths

四、年龄；编号；时刻；长、宽、高、厚、薄等的表示法。

1.（2015 江苏苏州）Tony's mum looks young and beautiful. It's hard to imagine she is already in her_______.

A. fifties B. fifty C. fiftieths D. fiftieth

2.（2015 贵州黔西南州）A _____ woman was saved from the ship on June 2nd ，2015.

A. 65 year old B. 65-year-olds C. 65-year-old D. 65-years-old

3.（2015 贵州遵义）—No way! I don't think ____should be allowed to drive.

—I am worried about my safety.

A. fifteen years old B. fifteen-year-olds C. fifteen-years-old

4.（2015 黑龙江龙东）—How far is it from Beijing to Haikou?

—It's a______ flight from Beijing to Haikou.

A. 3-hour-long B. 3 hours long C. 3 hours' long

5.（2015 湖南张家界）A quarter to four is ______.

A. 3:15 B. 3:45 C. 4:15

6.（2015 内蒙古呼和浩特）Boys and girls，please turn to Page _____ and look at the _____ picture.

A. fifth；five B. five；five C. fifth；fifth D. five；fifth

【参考答案】

一、基数词。

1—5 AABCD 6—10 CABDA 11—16 BADDCD

二、序数词。

1—5 CACCC 6—10 ADCCC 11—13 BCC

三、分数、百分数及小数。

1—3 ACC

四、年龄；编号；时刻；长、宽、高、厚、薄等的表示法。

1—3 ACC

【高考典例精析】

1.（07 浙江 2）It is reported that the floods have left about________people homeless.

A. two thousand B. two-thousands C. two thousands D. two thousands of

答案：A

解析：本题考查数词的用法。hundred，thousand，million，billion，dozen，score 等指具体数字时，不用复数形式；指大约数字时，常用复数形式。如：one hundred，two thousand，three million，hundreds/thousands/millions/billions/dozens/scores of。

2.（06 北京 23）She went to the bookstore and bought_________.

A. dozen books B. dozens books C. dozen of books D. dozens of books

答案：D

解析：dozen 与数词或 many，several 连用时其后不加 s；dozen 前有基数词表示确切数字时，其后一般不与 of 连用。

3.（01 年上海春季高考卷）___people in the world are sending information by E-mail every day.

A. Several million　B. Many millions　C. Several millions　D. Many million

答案：A

解析：本题考查的是 million 表示确切数量的用法。million 前需用数表确切数量，而不用 many 这类词，但可说 many millions of（上百万的），故本题中用 Several million。

4.（NMET 92）Shortly after the accident，two ___________ police were sent to the sport to keep order.

A. dozens of　B. dozens　C. dozen　D. dozen of

答案：C

解析：此题考查的是数词 dozen 表示确切数量时的用法，dozen 表示确切数量时用其单数形式，当 dozens 的复数后接 of 时则表示不确切数量。

5.（07 陕西 9）As a result of the serious flood，two-thirds of the buildings in the area________.

A. need repairing　B. needs to repair　C. needs repairing　D. need to repair

答案：A

解析：分数、百分数修饰名词，谓语动词的单复数取决于名词，此处 two-thirds 修饰 buildings，故谓语动词取决于名词复数 buildings，排除 B、C 两项，need doing=need to be done 意为“需要被做”。

6.（06 浙江 7）The company had about 20 notebook computers but only one-third________used regularly. Now we have 60 working all day long.

A. is　B. are　C. was　D. were

答案：D

解析：当分数、百分数作主语时，要根据其后面的名词来决定其谓语动词的单复数。此处 one-third 应是 one-third of the notebook computers 的省略形式，因此谓语动词用复数，且句子的时态用了过去时，所以 D 项正确。

6　动词概说

6.1　动词的定义和特征

动词是构成英语句子的核心，它是英语语法中最重要一部分，除极少数句子外，动词是英语句子中的一个不可缺少的组成部分，用来表示动作或状态。

要把握英语语法，就要把握英语句子中动词的特点。英语句子最简单的结构就是“主谓结构”（当然，有时候可以省略主语，如祈使句），而其中的谓语就是动词了（当然，包括系动词，如 Be 动词）。因此，动词是每个句子中都应该存在的成分。

1. 英语的动词具有数的变化

动词的这一特点就是我们经常所说的“第三人称动词单数形式”。考察的是句子的主语数的问题。与之相对应的语法点是“名词数的形式”（可数名词和不可数名词；单数名词和复数名词）、“主谓一致”“人称代词的用法”（人称代词和物主代词；名词性的物主代词和形容词性的物主代词）等等。例如：He always reads books before sleeping.

2. 英语的动词具有时态的变化

首先，动词具有形态上的变化：是经常发生的，还是已经发生的，还是正在发生的。我们将其依次称为“一般式”“完成式”和“进行式”。其次，动词具有时间上的变化，即：“过去”“现在”“将来”。这样交叉之后即产生了不同的时态变化（应该是 9 种，但是一般常用的是 8 种，除去了一种将来完成式）。因此，要正确使用动词的不同时态，关键是把握上述两点。例如：Now，John is playing basketball.

3. 英语的动词具有语态的变化

这里考察的是动词动作的对象是句子的主语还是句子的宾语。如果是主语，则是“被动语态”，如果是宾语，则是“主动语态”（主动语态——主语是动作的发出者；被动语态——主语是动作的承受者）。例如：I found the film very interesting.（主动）The film was found very interesting.（被动）

4. 英语的动词具有语气的变化

相应的知识点有：情态动词的用法和虚拟语气。这也是英语句子动词用法中最复杂的一个知识点了。

5. 在一个英语句子中，仅存在一个主句动词

可能很多人会不同意这一点，但是只要我们稍微分析一下，我们会发现这是非常重要的一个特点。相延伸的知识点是“从句”“非谓语动词”“介宾结构的短语”等等。我们所看到的在一个句子主句中存在两个动词的唯一的一种情况是：用并列连词连接的两个动词（在并列句中，其实是两个主句）。

“从句”：在整个句子中处于从属地位，充当句子的某一个成分。我们可以根据从句在句子中充当的成分对从句进行分类。如：主语从句，充当主语；宾语从句，充当宾语；状语从句，充当状语等等。

6.2　动词的基本形式

英语动词的五种基本形式为：动词原形，第三人称单数，现在分词，过去分词和过去式。如：work—works—working—worked—worked。

表 6-1　动词五种基本形式的变化

形　式	构　成	例　词
动词原形	动词本身的状态，未加任何其他的形式	be，have，do，learn
第三人称单数	1. 在动词原形后加-s	runs，likes
	2. 以 ch，sh，s，o，x 结尾的动词，在词尾加-es	teach—teaches wash—washes go—goes
	3. 以辅音字母加 y 结尾的动词，先将 y 变 i 再加-es	study—studies try—tries
	4. 以元音字母加 y 结尾的动词，在词尾加-s	stay—stays play—plays
现在分词	1. 在动词原形后加-ing	read—reading
	2. 以不发音字母 e 结尾的动词，去掉 e 再加-ing	live—living write—writing
	3. 以重读闭音节结尾且末尾只有一个辅音字母的词，双写该辅音字母后再加-ing	sit—sitting run—running begin—beginning
	4. 少数几个以 ie 结尾动词要变 ie 为 y，再加-ing	die—dying lie—lying
过去式和过去分词（规则变化）	1. 在动词原形后加-ed	work—worked
	2. 以辅音字母加 y 结尾动词，先将 y 变为 i 再加-ed	carry—carried study—studied
	3. 以 e 结尾动词，直接加-d	live—lived
	4. 以重读闭音结尾且末尾只有一个辅音字母的，双写此辅音字母后再加-ed	stop—stopped plan—planned

表 6-2　一些特殊动词的形式变化

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">原形（三单）</th><th>过去式</th><th>过去分词</th><th>现在分词</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">be</td><td>am</td><td rowspan="3">was
were</td><td rowspan="3">been</td><td rowspan="3">being</td></tr>
<tr><td>is</td></tr>
<tr><td>are</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">have</td><td>has</td><td rowspan="2">had</td><td rowspan="2">had</td><td rowspan="2">having</td></tr>
<tr><td>have</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">do</td><td>do</td><td rowspan="2">did</td><td rowspan="2">done</td><td rowspan="2">doing</td></tr>
<tr><td>does</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">shall</td><td>should</td><td>/</td><td>/</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">will</td><td>would</td><td>/</td><td>/</td></tr>
</table>

说明：

（1）词尾-ed 在清辅音后读[t]；在浊辅音和元音后读[d]；在[t]和[d]后读[id]。

（2）词尾-es 或-s 在[s]、[z]、[t]、[d]后面读[iz]；在清辅音后读[s]；在浊辅音及元音后读[z]；在[t]，[d]后读[ts]、[dz]。

（3）不规则动词的过去式与过去分词则要根据不规则动词表逐渐记住。

6.3　动词的分类

6.3.1　连系动词

连系动词本身有一定的词义，但不能独立作谓语，必须与表语一起构成谓语，说明主语的状态、性质、特征、身份、结果等。常见的连系动词如下：

（1）状态系动词。用来表示主语状态，如：be（am，is，are，was，were）。

例如：He is a teacher. 他是一名教师。（is 与表语一起说明主语的身份）

（2）持续系动词。用来表示主语继续或保持一种状况或态度，主要有 keep，rest，remain，stay，lie，stand。

例如：He always keeps silent at meeting. 他开会时总保持沉默。

（3）表像系动词。用来表示“看起来像”这一概念，主要有 seem，appear，look。

例如：He looks tired. 他看起来很累。

He seems very sad. 他看起来很伤心。

（4）感官系动词。感官系动词主要有 feel，smell，sound，taste。

例如：This kind of cloth feels very soft. 这种布手感很软。

This flower smells very sweet. 这朵花闻起来很香。

（5）变化系动词。这些系动词表示主语变成什么样，变化系动词主要有 become，grow，turn，fall，get，go，come，run。

例如：He became mad after that. 自那之后，他疯了。

She grew rich within a short time. 她没多长时间就富了。

6.3.2　实义动词

实义动词与系动词是相对的，实义动词意思是完整的，能独立作谓语。

（1）就用法来说实义动词可分为及物动词和不及物动词。

及物动词：要求接宾语，否则意思不完整，及物动词有被动结构。

例如：I found the film very interesting.（主动）

The film was found very interesting.（被动）

不及物动词：自身意思完整，不需接宾语，不及物动词没有被动结构。

例如：You should plan carefully in advance.

（2）就实义动词的词汇意义来说，实义动词可分为动态动词和状态动词。

1. 动态动词

（1）动态动词：强调主语做的动作。动态动词是表示运动状态的动词，根据词汇意义又可分为三类：

第一类动态动词是表示持续动作的动词，如 eat，listen，read，run，walk，work，write 等。

第二类动态动词是表示转变和移动的动词，如 arrive，change，come，die，go，land，leave，go，join，leave，buy，see，finish，hear，appear，die 等。

第三类动态动词是表示短暂动作的动词（终止性动词），如 come，hit，jump，knock，start，die 等。

注：由于终止性动词发生或存在的时间很短，有时甚至只是一个概念，因此它不能与一段时间连用。表示一段时间的词有：five minutes，half an hour，three days，one week，two years 等。

如：他回来 10 天了。（翻译成英语）

误：He has come back for ten days.

误：He came back for ten days.

正：He has been back for ten days.

正：He came back ten days ago.

正：It has been ten days since he came back.

偶尔见到终止性动词与一段时间连用，那么它表示的一定是指终止性动词所表示的动作结束后所持续的一段时间。

如：He has come here for a week. 他已来了，准备待一个星期。

若要表示“他已来了一个星期”。则说：He has been here for a week.

（2）状态动词：强调主语所处的状态。状态动词指表示相对静止状态的动词。这一类动词通常只能用于非进行体，不能用于进行体。

2. 静态动词

根据词汇意义，静态动词又可分为四类：

第一类是动词 be（是）和动词 have（有）。

第二类静态动词是含有静态动词 be 和 have 意义的动词，如：belong to 含义是 be the property of（属于），contain 含义是 have（包含有），differ from 含义是 be different from（不同于）。这一类静态动词通常都不可以用于进行体。例如：The house belongs to me. 那是我的。不能说：The house is belonging to me.

第三类静态动词是表示五官感觉的动词，如 hear，see，feel，taste，smell 等。这一类动词通常用于非进行体。例如：She doesn't hear very well. 她听觉不太好。不能说：* She isn't hearing very well.

当 feel，smell，taste 用于表示被动意义时是静态动词，通常都不可用于进行体。例如可以说：

The soup tastes good. 这汤味道不错。

The pot feels hot. 这壶摸着是热的。

Roses smell sweet. 玫瑰花闻起来是香的。

而不可以说：

* The soup is tasting good.

* The pot is feeling hot.

*Roses are smelling sweet.

如果这些动词用于主动意义便是动态动词，从而可用于进行体。例如：

He is tasting the soup. 他在品尝这汤。

He is feeling the pot. 他在用手摸壶。

He is smelling the roses. 他在闻玫瑰花。

第四类静态动词是表示心理或情感状态的动词，如 believe，consider（=believe），expect（=suppose），feel（=think），forget，hate，hope，imagine，know，like，love，mean，notice，prefer，regret，remember，suggest，suppose，think，understand，want，wish 等。这类动词通常也都不用于进行体。例如：

I don't believe it. 这我不信。

不能说：* I'm not believing it.

I know he's clever. 我知道他聪明。

不能说：*I'm knowing he's clever.

6.3.3 助动词

助动词本身没有词义，不能单独作谓语，需与实义动词一起构成谓语，表示时态、语态以及否定和疑问等结构。助动词必须和主语保持人称和数的一致。常见的助动词有：be，do，have，shall，will，should，would 等。

1. 助动词 am，is，are 的用法

（1）be 的用法口诀：

be 动词好妈妈，生出 am，is，are。

我用 am，你用 are，is 连着他，她，它。

单数名词用 is，复数名词全用 are。

变疑问，往前提，句末问号莫丢弃。

变否定，更容易，be 后 not 莫忘记。

疑问否定任你变，句首大写莫迟疑。

（2）be 动词的用法及介绍。

"be"动词的意思是"是"，它随人称的变化而变化。be 动词属于系动词，在句子中主要表现为三种形式：am，is，are。后面往往接形容词或名词做表语。如：

I'm young.（young 形容词做表语）

He is a boy.（a boy 名词做表语）

含有 be 动词的句子在进行否定、疑问句变化时，都要在 be 动词上变化：

（1）变为否定句：主语+be+not+其他。即，直接在 be 后 not。例如：

① I'm a Chinese boy.（变为否定句）

② You are good.（变为否定句）

③ He is strict with us.（变为否定句）

④ She is from America.（变为否定句）

以上四个句子中都含有 am，is 或 are，变否定句时，直接在 am，is，are 后面加上 not。即：

① I'm not a Chinese boy.

② You are not good.

③ He is not strict with us.

④ She is not from America.

（2）变为一般疑问句：be+主语+其他？即把 be 动词提到主语的前面。注意：当肯定句主语为第一人称 I 和 we 时，变一般疑问句要变为第二人称，be 动词也要相应的变为 are。同样肯定句中的 my 和 our 也要变为 your。

① I am a boy.（变为一般疑问句）

→Are you a student?

② We are good friends.（变为一般疑问句）

→Are you good friends?

③ She is from America.（变为一般疑问句）

→Is she from America?

④ He is strict with us.（变为一般疑问句）

→Is he strict with us?

（3）变特殊疑问句：一般的要求为“对画线部分提问”，即用特殊疑问词代替划线的部分，后接省略画线部分的一般疑问句（一般不再出现画线部分）。如：

① I'm well.（对画线部分提问）

→How are you?

② She is from America.（对画线部分提问）

→Where is she from?

2. 助动词 have 的用法

（1）have+过去分词，构成完成时态。如：

He has left for Japan. 他已去了日本。

We've just done the washing-up. 我们刚洗完碗碟。

Poor Jim has just had an accident. 可怜的吉姆刚出了个事故。

I have had this car for three years. 这辆汽车我已用了 3 年了。

By the end of last month，they had finished the work. 上月末他们就已经完成了工作。

（2）have+been+现在分词，构成完成进行时。如：

I have been studying English for 8 years. 我学英语已达八年了。

The children have been having a lot of fun. 孩子们一直玩得很开心。

We had been doing business with each other for years before we quarreled.
在吵翻之前，我们多年来在业务上一直来往。

By this time next year，we will have been doing business with each other for 20 years.
到明年这时候，我们的业务往来就满 20 年了。

I woke up—I had been having a bad dream. 我醒了，我做了个噩梦。

（3）have+been+过去分词，构成完成式被动语态。如：

English has been taught in China for many years. 中国教英语已经多年。

I have been made redundant，so I'm going abroad. 我被定成了超编人员，所以我打算出国。

Thousands of pounds have been spent on the new hospital. 这家新医院花费了数千英镑。

None of my friends have been invited to the party. 我的朋友中没有一个被邀参加晚会。

All means have been used to get him to change his mind. 为了转变他的想法，所有的办法都用过了。

【have 的用法要点】

（1）表示状态（如表示拥有、患病等）或表示“必须”（即用于 have to）时，在用法上应注意以下几点：

① 不用于进行时态或被动语态。如：

误：We are having a piano. /A bad cold is had by him.

② 在否定句或疑问句中，可以不用助动词 do（在非正式文体中可在 have 之后加 got，主要见于英式英语中），也可用助动词 do（主要见于美式英语中）。如：

He hasn't（got）a computer.=He doesn't have a computer. 他没有电脑。

在非正式的美式英语中，有时也用 have got 的形式，且有时还可将 have 省去。如：

I（'ve）got a problem. 我有个问题。

③ 即使在英国英语中，若指经常性的现象，也通常用助动词 do 来构成疑问式和否定式，且不与 got 搭配；若指暂时现象，则不用助动词 do 来构成疑问式和否定式，且可以与 got 连用（注：在美式英语中则无此区别，一般都用 do 构成疑问式和否定式）。如：

Have you（got）a cold now? 你感冒了吗?

Do you often have colds? 你感冒了吗?

I haven't got to work tomorrow. 我明天不必上班。

I don't usually have to work on Sundays. 星期天我通常不必上班。

④ 表示"拥有"时，构成否定式有两种可能：若其后的名词没有限定词修饰，则通常用 have no；若有限定词（如 a，any，much，many，enough 等）修饰，则通常用 have not。如：

I have no friends. /I haven't any friends. 我没有朋友。

He hasn't much money. 他没有很多钱。

（2）表示动作，如表示"吃（=eat）""喝（=drink）""拿（=take）""收到（=receive）""度过（=spend）"等时，应注意以下几点：

① 可用于进行时态，但一般不用于被动语态。如：

误：Lunch is had by him.

正：He is having lunch. 他在吃中饭。

② 不与 got 连用。如：

误：I'd like to have got a look at it.

正：I'd like to have a look at it. 我想看看它。

③ 一般不用缩略式。如：

误：We'd a good time at the party.

正：We had a good time at the party. 我们在晚会上玩得很高兴。

④ 构成否定式和疑问式时，必须用助动词 do。如：

误：When had you breakfast?

正：When did you have breakfast? 你什么时候吃早餐?

3. 助动词 do 的用法

（1）构成一般疑问句。

例如：Do you want to pass the CET? 你想通过大学英语测试吗?

（2）do+not 构成否定句。

例如：He doesn't like to study. 他不想学习。

（3）构成否定祈使句。

例如：Don't go there. 不要去那里。

说明：构成否定祈使句只用 do，不用 did 和 does。

（4）放在动词原形前，加强该动词的语气。

例如：Do come to my birthday party. 一定来参加我的生日宴会。

I did go there. 我确实去那儿了。

（5）用于倒装句。
例如：Never did I hear of such a thing. 我从未听说过这样的事情。
（6）用作代动词，例如：
—Do you like Beijing? 你喜欢北京吗？
—Yes，I do. 是的，喜欢。（do 用作代动词，代替 like Beijing）

4. 助动词 shall 和 will 的用法

说明：在过去的语法中，语法学家说 shall 用于第一人称，will 只用于第二、第三人称。现在，尤其是在口语中，will 常用于第一人称，但 shall 只用于第一人称，如用于第二、第三人称，就失去助动词的意义，已变为情态动词，试比较：

He shall come. 他必须来。（shall 有命令的意味。）
He will come. 他要来。（will 只与动词原形构成一般将来时。）

6.3.4　情态动词

情态动词具有一定的词义，没有人称和数的变化，不能单独作谓语，必须和谓语动词连用才能构成谓语，给谓语动词增添情态色彩，表示说话人的态度、看法、语气、愿望或推测等。
情态动词有四类：
（1）只作情态动词：must，can（could），may（might），ought to。
（2）可作情态动词又可作实义动词：need，dare。
（3）可作情态动词又可作助动词：shall（should），will（would）。
（4）具有情态动词特征：have（had）to，used to。
用法是：情态动词+行为动词原形。
例句：I can read this sentence in English.

【实战演练】

一、用动词 be（am，are，is）填空。

1. I _____ a student.
2. Lucy and Lily ____ from USA.
3. —Who ___ they? —They ____ Jim，Mike and John.
4. The white shirts _____ on the chair.
5. Their bikes ____ under a big tree.
6. His father ___ at home.
7. How old _____ you?
8. ______ there any birds in the tree?

二、选择填空。

1. She ____to see documentaries（纪录片）.
   A. do want　　B. don't want　　C. doesn't want　　D. not want
2. Look at that picture on the wall. ___you like it?
   A. Do　　B. is　　C. Could　　D. are
3. He ______like pears.

A. do　B. doesn't　C. is　D. not

4. —Do you often go to the cinema ____Sunday? —No，we ______.

A. on；don't　B. on；aren't　C. in；do　D. in；don't

5. —Can you see a light on the table? —Yes，________.

A. I am　B. I'm not　C. I can　D. He isn't

6. —Does the boy want to be an actor? —__________.

A. Yes；he is　B. No；he does　C. Yes；he does　D. No；he isn't

7. ________he have any apples?

A. Do　B. Does　C. Is　D. Are

8. She _____want to be a policewoman，because she think it's kind of dangerous.

A. isn't　B. aren't　C. don't　D. doesn't

9. Why ____he have brown hair?

A. do　B. does　C. is　D. has

10. What time _______he get home every day?

A. is　B. does　C. do　D. am

11. What____you see in the picture?

A. is　B. are　C. can　D. have

12. Jack_____like flying kites _______throwing a frisby（飞碟/飞盘）.

A. don't；or　B. doesn't；and　C. don't；and　D. doesn't；or

13. —____Jim _____a ball? —No，he ____.

A. Do；have；don't　B. Does；has；doesn't

C. Is；have；isn't　D. Does；have；doesn't

14. I____have a watch.

A. am not　B. does　C. don't　D. doesn't

15. ______you_____a good time on your vacation?

A. Did；have　B. Did；had　C. Were；have　D. Were；had

16. Simon likes ______football，but he doesn't _____it well.

A. play；plays　B. to paly；plays　C. plays；playing　D. playing；play

17. She_____have to wash the dishes now.

A. don't　B. not　C. doesn't　D. can't

18. —_____Colin_____Chinese history? —Yes，he does.

A. Do；like　B. Does；like　C. Do；likes　D. Does；like

19. Li Lei_____lunch at home.

A. hasn't　B. haven't　C. don't have　D. doesn't have

20. —Who cleaned the blackboard yesterday，Dick? —John_____.

A. cleaned　B. does　C. did　D. is

21. ______you usually come to school by bike?

A. Don't　B. Doesn't　C. Aren't　D. Isn't

22. —Where____lions come from? —I think they come from Africa.

A. are　B. is　C. does　D. do

23. ______you on your vacation yesterday?

A. Are　B. Were　C. Was　D. Did

24. —Who____dinner last night? —My mother ____.

A. cooked；did　B. did；cooked　C. did；did　D. cooked；cooked

三、句型转换。

1. This is a backpack.（改为一般疑问句并作否定回答）
2. That is your eraser.（改为否定句）
3. Is this his pencil case?（肯定回答）
4. Are you a teacher?（否定回答）
5. This is an English book.（对画线部分提问）
6. He is ten.（改为一般疑问句）
7. I'm Eric.（改为一般疑问句并作肯定回答）
8. This key is yellow.（改为一般疑问句并作否定回答）
9. His telephone number is 422-1268.（改为一般疑问句）
10. Is this her dictionary?（改为肯定句）

四、请将下列句子改为否定句，每空一词。

1. Li Ming receives an e-mail. Li Ming ____ ____an e-mail.
2. My English will become very good. My English ____ ____very good.
3. He can come to our school. He ____ _____to our school.
4. They had a good time in Qingdao. They ____ _____a good time in Qingdao.
5. I wanted to go to the big store to buy anything. I____ ____to go to the big store to buy anything.
6. Sit here，please. ______ ______here，please.
7. My mother is washing the clothes. My mother ____ ______the clothes.
8. There are some desks in the classroom. ______ ______ _____desks in the classroom.

五、用适当的助动词或 be 动词填空。

1. Mike _______like apples，but he likes bananas.
2. —What ______your sister look like? —She ______medium height.
3. I like playing football but I _____like playing basketball.
4. —_____you usually get up at 6：00 in the morning? —No，I don't.
5. She ______a teacher and her brother ________a doctor.
6. —Where ______you look like? —I _______tall, and I _______thin.
7. —Where ______your father? —He _______at home.
8. —_______your brother do his homework in the evening? —Yes，he ______.
9. —_______she tall? —No，she _______short.
10. —_______that your friend? —No，it ________.

7 动词的时态

7.1 概 说

时态是英语谓语动词的一种形式，表示动作发生的时间和所处的状态。英语中的时态是通过动词形式本身的变化来实现的。英语有十六种时态（见表 7-1）。

表 7-1 英语的十六种时态

一般时	进行时	完成时	完成进行时
一般现在时	现在进行时	现在完成时	现在完成进行时
一般过去时	过去进行时	过去完成时	过去完成进行时
一般将来时	将来进行时	将来完成时	将来完成进行时
一般过去将来时	过去将来进行时	过去将来完成时	过去将来完成进行时

7.2 十六种时态的谓语形式

十六种时态的谓语形式见表 7-2。

表 7-2 十六种时态的谓语形式

	一般时态	进行时态	完成时态	完成进行时态
现在	do/does	am/is/are doing	have/has done	have/has been doing
过去	did	was/were doing	had done	had been doing
将来	shall/will do	shall/will be doing	shall/will have done	shall/will have been doing
过去将来	should/would do	should/would be doing	should/would have done	should/would have been doing

7.3 一般现在时

1. 一般现在时的定义

一般现在时表示现在经常反复发生的动作、存在的状态或习惯性的动作。

2. 一般现在时的用法

（1）表示经常的或者习惯性的动作，常与表示频度的时间状语连用。

时间状语：every morning，every night，every evening，every day/week/year，twice a week，once a month。

频度副词：always，usually，often，sometimes，seldom，never。

例句：Tom is always late for school.

What time do you usually get up every day?

（2）表示主语具备的性格、能力和特征。

例句：Wang Li writes good English but does not speak well.

（3）表示客观真理、客观存在、科学事实。在宾语从句中，即使主句为一般过去时，从句表示客观真理时也仍然用一般现在时。例如：

The earth moves around the sun.

Shanghai is in the east of China.

Summer follows spring.

Knowledge is power.

The teacher told us that the earth turns around the sun.

（4）时间、条件状语从句中代替一般将来时，即所谓的“主将从现”。常见引导时间状语从句的连词有：before，after，when，as soon as，until，till。常见引导条件状语从句的连词有：if，unless。例如：

If it doesn't rain，we'll go on a picnic.

I'll write to you as soon as I arrive there.

（5）表示按规定、时间表、计划或安排要发生的动作，在这些情况下也可表一般将来时。例如：

Are you on duty next weekend？下周末你上班吗？

The train leaves at 12:00. 火车 12 点开出。

Where do we go now？我们现在到哪里去？

3. 一般现在时的构成形式

（1）当句子中的谓语动词为 be 时，有三种不同的变化形式（见表 7-3）。

表 7-3　be 动词的三种变化形式

	单　数	复　数
第一人称	I am...	we are...
第二人称	you are...	you are...
第三人称	he/she/it is...	they are...

① be 的句型结构。

肯定句：主语+am/is/are+...

否定句：主语+am/is/are+not+...

疑问句：am/is/are+主语+...?

② be 的缩略形式。

be 与主语缩写：I am = I'm，he is = he's，she is = she's，it is = it's，we are = we're，you are = you're，they are = they're。

be 与 not 缩写：is not = isn't，are not = aren't。

注意：在肯定的简略答语中，一般不用缩写。this 不能与 is 缩写。am 不能与 not 缩写。

（2）当句子中的谓语动词是行为动词时，一般现在时用动词原形或第三人称单数形式。

肯定句：主语+*v.* /*v.*（e）s+其他。

否定句：主语+do/does+not+*v.*+其他。

一般疑问句：do/does+主语+*v.*+其他？

答语：Yes，主语+do/does.

No，主语+do/does not.

特殊疑问句：疑问句+do/does+主语+*v*+其他？

注意：当主语为单数第三人称，动词一般现在时使用第三人称单数形式，动词变单数第三人称的规则如下：

① 直接在动词结尾+s，例如：

help—helps　　play—plays　　write—writes

② 以-s，-x，-ch，-sh，-o 等结尾的，在词尾+es，例如：

guess—Guesses　　watch—watches　　go—goes

③ 以辅音字母+y 结尾的，变 y 为 i+es，例如：

carry—carries　　study—studies　　fly—flies

④ 特例：have—has。

4. 一般现在时的应用

（1）在实际应用中，一般现在时常与以下时间状语连用：always，usually，often，sometimes，every week（day，year，month…），once a week，on Sundays…

例句：He usually plays football on Sundays.

（2）没有时间状语，可以分以下四种类型：

① be 型：这一类型由 be 动词+名词、形容词、副词、代词、数词或介词短语等一起构成谓语，表示主语的个性、特征或状态。如：

I am a student.（主语+be 动词+名词）

They are hungry.（主语+be 动词+形容词）

He is out.（主语+be 动词+副词）

That pen is mine.（主语+be 动词+代词）

I am fifteen.（主语+be 动词+数词）

The bike is under the tree.（主语+be 动词+介词短语）

② do 型：do 型由行为动词充当谓语，表示经常性或习惯性的动作，其构成为“主语+动词原形或动词第三人称单数形式”。如：

I know it.

He believes me.

③ there be 型：there be 型句子表示“存在”，其构成为“there be+主语+其他”，表示客观事实。用法遵循“就近原则”，即主语是单数或并列主语中的第一个主语是单数，则用 there is；主语是复数或并列主语中的第一个主语是复数，则用 there are。如：

There is an eraser on the teacher’s desk.（主语 an eraser 是单数）

There is an orange，five apples and eight bananas in the bag.（并列主语中的第一个主语 an orange 是单数）

④ 情态动词型：情态动词型句子的构成为“主语+情态动词+动词原形”，情态动词和动词原形一起构成谓语，表示说话人对所叙述的动作或状态的看法。如：

He can speak a little English.（can+speak）

May I have a book，please?（may+have）

【专项练习】

一、单项选择题。

1. Where_______Lucy come from?

A. do　　B. does　　C. is　　D. are

2. Most of the students ________China.
   A. comes from B. is from C. are from D. come of
3. We speak English_______.
   A. every days B. everyday C. very day D. every day
4. My math teacher_______a big pair of glasses.
   A. wears B. put on C. wear D. puts on
5. What ______ your father and mother______?
   A. does；do B. do；do C. are；do D. do；does

二、用所给动词的适当形式填空。

1. His radio is broken. It _______ （sound） terrible.
2. Did somebody drop water on the rug? It_______ （look） wet.
3. Every year my parents_______ （give） me a present for my birthday.
4. The club______ （send） her a letter every month.
5. _______your dad ______ （wash） his car once a week? Yes，he does.
6. Lin Tao is a good student. He_______ （study） very hard.
7. They_______ （work） at the bank.
8. I often______ （help） my mother with housework.
9. Uncle Wang_______ （introduce） his daughter to us.
10. He _____ （have） music class in Mondays.
11. How_______ （do） he______ （get） there?
12. ______ （do） you ______ （agree） with me?
13. All of us______ （study） hard.
14. He always________ （forget） to close the window.
15. Grandma often _______ （cook） dinner for our family.

三、句型转换。

1. My living room has three windows.（改为否定句）

____

2. Jim and Jack like swimming on Sundays.（就画线部分提问）

____

3. We are in the same class.（改为一般疑问句）

____

4. He comes from England.（就画线部分提问）

____

四、用所给单词的正确形式填空。

Mrs. Black's Day

Mrs. Black often ________ （get） up at 7：00 on Sunday morning. She _______ （have） breakfast at 8：30. She _______ （have） a little dog. She________ （like） to go to the park with her dog. At 10：50，Mrs. Black sometimes_________(wash)her clothes. At 3:00 p.m. she usually______(go)shopping. She often_______(make) supper at 6：00 p.m. She doesn't_______ （watch） TV at night. She_______ （go） to bed at about 10：30 p.m.

五、连词组句。

1. tomorrow，give it back，please

____

2. is，it，today，what day

___

3. Uncle John，I，speak to，May，please

___

4. some money，borrow，I，from you，May

___

5. at this time of day，the shop，I think，is，closed

___

六、按照要求改写句子。

1. Daniel watches TV every evening.（改为否定句）

Daniel_____ _____TV every evening.

2. I do my homework every day.（改为一般疑问句并作否定回答）

—_____you _____ _____ homework every day? —No，I _____.

3. She likes milk.（改为一般疑问句并作肯定回答）

—_____ she_____milk? —Yes，she does.

4. Simon is from Beijing.（同义句改写）

Simon _____ _____Beijing.

5. Millie is clever at maths.（同义句改写）

Millie _____ _____ _____maths.

6. I buy the pants for only 50 Yuan.（用 she 改写句子）

the pants for only 50 Yuan.

七、改错。

1. Is your brother speak English?（　　）
A: Is; B: your brother; C: English?

2. Does he looks like his father?（　　）
A: Does; B: looks; C: his

3. He likes play games after class.（　　）
A: likes; B: play games; C: after class.

4. Mr. Wu teachs us English.（　　）
A: teachs; B: us; C: English.

5. She doesn't her homework on Sundays.（　　）
A: doesn't; B: her homework; C: on Sundays.

7.4　一般过去时

7.4.1　一般过去时的定义

一般过去时表示在过去某个特定时间发生，或过去习惯性、经常性的动作。一般过去时不强调动作对现在的影响，只说明过去的事情。

（1）表示过去发生的动作或存在的状态。

如：He bought the computer five years ago. 这电脑是他五年前买的。

It was then a small fishing village. 那时它只是一个小渔村。

（2）表示过去经常性或习惯性的动作。

如：We often played together when we were children.

注：表过去习惯性的动词，也可用 used to 或 would。

如：He used to go to work by bus. 他过去常乘公共汽车去上班。

（3）常与表示一般过去时的时间状语或从句连用。一般过去时最明显的现象就是常由表达过去时间的副词或副词短语来修饰它。如：

just now（刚才）　　yesterday（昨天）　　the day before yesterday（前天）

the other day = a few days ago（前几天）　　before　liberation

once upon a time（很久以前）　　in the old days（过去的日子里）

yesterday（morning，afternoon，evening）（昨天早上/下午/晚上）

that+时间：That day（那天）

时间+ago…：two days ago（两天前）

at+一个时间点：at the age of 10（过去年龄）

last+时间：last night/week/Sunday/weekend/month/winter/year/century

when 引导的状语从句（过去时）：When I was 8 years old，I once decided to run away from home.

7.4.2　一般过去时的构成

动词 be：第一人称单数和第三人称单数用 was，其余的人称一律用 were。

动词 have：一律用 had，没有人称和数的变化。

行为动词：一律用过去式，没有人称和数的变化，行为动词的过去式有两类，一类是规则动词，另一类是不规则动词。

1. 含有 be 动词的一般过去时的主结构：主语+was/were+表语

常用的四种结构如下：

（1）肯定句：主语+was/were+表语。

例如：His father was very busy last week. 他父亲上周很忙。

　　They were at home last night. 他们昨天晚上在家。

（2）否定句：主语+was/were+not+表语。

例如：His father was not very busy last week. 他父亲上周不是很忙。

　　They were not at home last night. 他们昨天晚上不在家。

（3）一般疑问句：Was/Were+主语+表语？

例如：Was his father very busy last week? 他父亲上周很忙吗？

　　Were they at home last night? 他们昨天晚上在家吗？

（4）特殊疑问句：特殊疑问词+was/were+主语+其他？

例如：How was his father last week? 他父亲上周怎么样？

　　Where were they last night? 他们昨天晚上在哪？

注意：

（1）主语为第一人称单数或第三人称单数时，用 was，其他人称一律用 were。

（2）变成否定句时，只需在 was/were 后直接加 not。

（3）变成一般疑问句时，只需把 was/were 提到主语前面即可。

（4）变成特殊疑问句时，一般是特殊疑问词后加一般疑问句，如果特殊疑问词是 who，不用改变原句的语序。

如：His father was very busy last week.（对画线部分提问）

→How was his father last week?(先选特殊疑问词 how，然后把剩下的部分变成一般疑问句语序，即把 His father was last week 变成 was his father last week）

His father was very busy last week.（对画线部分提问）

→Who was very busy last week?（只需用特殊疑问词 who 替换原句中的主语 his father 即可，不必考虑其他方面。）

2. 含有实义动词（行为动词）的一般过去时的主结构：主语+动词的过去式+其他

常用的四种结构如下：

（1）肯定句：主语+动词的过去式+其他。

例如：He played basketball yesterday. 他昨天打篮球。

I got up at 6:30 yesterday. 我昨天 6:30 起床。

（2）否定句：主语+did+not+动词原形+其他。（did not 缩写为 didn't）

例如：He didn't play basketball yesterday. 他昨天没打篮球。

I didn't get up at 6:30 yesterday. 我昨天 6:30 没起床。

（3）一般疑问句：Did+主语+动词原形+其他？

例如：Did he play basketball yesterday? 他昨天打篮球了吗？

Did you get up at 6:30 yesterday? 你昨天 6:30 起床是吗？

（4）特殊疑问句：特殊疑问词+did+主语+动词原形+其他？

例如：What did he play yesterday? 他昨天玩的是什么？

What time did you get up yesterday? 你昨天几点起床？

一般过去时动词的肯定、否定、一般疑问句和简略回答以及特殊疑问句的形式见表 7-4、7-5、7-6。

表 7-4　一般过去时动词的肯定、否定形式

<table>
<tr><th></th><th colspan="2">肯 定</th><th colspan="2">否 定</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="6">动词
be</td><td colspan="2">I was…</td><td colspan="2">I was not…</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">You were…</td><td colspan="2">You were not…</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">He/She/It was…</td><td colspan="2">He/She/It was not…</td></tr>
<tr><td>We</td><td rowspan="3">were…</td><td>We</td><td rowspan="3">were not…</td></tr>
<tr><td>You</td><td>You</td></tr>
<tr><td>They</td><td>They</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="6">动词
have</td><td>I</td><td rowspan="6">had…</td><td>I</td><td rowspan="6">had not…</td></tr>
<tr><td>You</td><td>You</td></tr>
<tr><td>He/She/It</td><td>He/She/It</td></tr>
<tr><td>We</td><td>We</td></tr>
<tr><td>You</td><td>You</td></tr>
<tr><td>They</td><td>They</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="6">行为动词
（study）</td><td>I</td><td rowspan="6">studied…</td><td>I</td><td rowspan="6">did not study…</td></tr>
<tr><td>You</td><td>You</td></tr>
<tr><td>He/She/It</td><td>He/She/It</td></tr>
<tr><td>We</td><td>We</td></tr>
<tr><td>You</td><td>You</td></tr>
<tr><td>They</td><td>They</td></tr>
</table>

行为动词的过去时的否定式，要使用助动词 do 的过去式 did，后面的谓语动词要还原为原形。注意：在非正式语如口语中，was not，were not，had not 和 did not 可以分别缩写成 wasn't，weren't，hadn't 和 didn't。

表 7-5　一般疑问句和简略回答

	一般疑问句	简略回答
动词 be	Were you ...? Was he ...? Were they ...?	Yes，I was.
		No，I wasn't.
		Yes，he was.
		No，he wasn't.
		Yes，they were.
		No，they weren't.
动词 have	Had you ...? Had he ...? Had they ...?	Yes，I had.
		No，I hadn't.
		Yes，he had.
		No，he hadn't.
		Yes，they had.
		No，they hadn't.
行为动词（study）	Did you study ...? Did he study ...? Did they study ...?	Yes，I did.
		No，I didn't.
		Yes，he did.
		No，he didn't.
		Yes，they did.
		No，they didn't.

表 7-6　特殊疑问句和简略回答

	特殊疑问句	回　答
动词 be	Where was she?	She was at home.
行为动词（study）	When did you study English?	I studied it last year.

7.4.3　行为动词的一般过去时的变化规则

行为动词的过去时有规则变化和不规则变化两种。

1. 规则变化（见表 7-7）

表 7-7　行为动词的规则过去时变化

构成法	例　词
一般加-ed	work—worked—worked
以 e 结尾的词加-d	live—lived—lived
以辅音字母+y 结尾的词，改 y 为 i，再加-ed	study—studied—studied cry—cried—cried
以元音字母+y 结尾的词，直接加-ed	play—played—played
以重读闭音节结尾（x 除外）的双写结尾字母再加-ed	stop—stopped—stopped fix—fixed—fixed

规则动词加-ed 的读音：
（1）清念/t/，即-ed 在清辅音后面念/t/，例：finished，helped，passed，cooked。
（2）元浊/d/，即-ed 在元音、浊辅音后面念/d/，例：borrowed，enjoyed，called，moved。
（3）/t/、/d/之后念/id/，即 ed 在/t/、/d/音后面念/id/，例：wanted，shouted，needed，counted。

2. 不规则变化（见表 7-8）

表 7-8　部分动词的不规则过去时变化

词　义	现在时（原形）	过去时
是	am，is（be）	was
是	are（be）	were
成为	become	became
开始	begin	began
弯曲	bend	bent
吹	blow	blew
买	buy	bought
能	can	could
捕捉	catch	caught
选择	choose	chose
来	come	came
切	cut	cut
做	do，does	did
画	draw	drew
饮	drink	drank
吃	eat	ate
感觉	feel	felt
发现	find	found
飞	fly	flew
忘记	forget	forgot
得到	get	got
给	give	gave
走	go	went
成长	grow	grew
有	have，has	had
听	hear	heard
受伤	hurt	hurt
保持	keep	kept
知道	know	knew
学习	learn	learned，learnt

续表

词 义	现在时（原形）	过去时
允许，让	let	let
躺	lie	lay
制造	make	made
可以	may	might
意味	mean	meant
会见	meet	met
必须	must	must
放置	put	put
读	read	read
骑、乘	ride	rode
响、鸣	ring	rang
跑	run	ran
说	say	said
看见	see	saw
将	shall	should
唱歌	sing	sang
坐下	sit	sat
睡觉	sleep	slept
说	speak	spoke
度过	spend	spent
扫	sweep	swept

7.4.4 一般过去时的判断标志词

一般过去时的判断标志词有：yesterday，the day before yesterday，last week/month/year，two days/months/years ago，just now，a moment ago，in+过去的时间，this morning/afternoon/evening ，today，this week，and so on。具体可归纳为以下四种时间状语：

（1）yesterday 及相关短语。

例如：yesterday morning/afternoon/evening 昨天上午/下午/晚上。

（2）“last+时间状语”构成的短语。

例如：last night/month/spring/year 昨晚/上个月/去年春天/去年。

（3）“一段时间+ago”组成的短语。

例如：three days ago 三天以前；four years ago 四年以前。

（4）“介词+时间名词”组成的短语。

例如：in 1999 在 1999 年；on the morning of December 25th 在 12 月 25 号早上。

7.4.5 一般现在时与一般过去时的区别（见表 7-9）

表 7-9 一般现在时与一般过去时的区别

	一般现在时	一般过去时
含义、用法	（1）现阶段经常性、反复性、习惯性发生的动作或者存在的状态；（2）表示主语具备的性格、能力特征；（3）客观事实真理	表示过去某个时间里发生的动作或者存在的状态
常用时间状语	sometimes，often，usually，always，every day…	yesterday，last night，lat week，last month，last year，in 2010…
句型构成	肯定句：主语+am/is/are+其他 主语+*v*. 原+其他 三单+*v*. -s+其他 否定句：主语+am/is/are+not+其他 主语+don't+*v*. 原+其他 三单+doesn't+*v*. 原+其他 一般疑问句：Am/Is/Are+主+其他？ 肯定回答：Yes，主+am/is/are. 否定回答：No，主+am/is/are not. Do+主+*v*. 原+其他？ Does+三单+*v*. 原+其他？ 肯定回答：Yes，主+do/does. 否定回答：No，主+do/does not. 特殊疑问句：特殊疑问词+am/is/are+主+其他？ 特殊疑问词+do+主+*v*. 原+其他？ 特殊疑问词+does+三单+*v*. 原+其他？	肯定句：主语+was/were+其他 主语+*v*. -ed+其他 否定句：主语+was/were not+其他 主语+didn't+*v*. 原+其他 一般疑问句：Was/Were+主+其他？ 肯定回答：Yes，主+was/were. 否定回答：No，主+was/were not. Did+主语+*v*. 原+其他？ 肯定回答：Yes，主+did. 否定回答：No，主+did not. 特殊疑问句： 特殊疑问词+was/were+主语+其他？ 特殊疑问词+did+主语+*v*. 原+其他？
单词构成	（1）一般在词尾加 s。 （2）以 s，x，ch，sh，o 结尾的单词，加 es。 （3）以辅音字母加 y 结尾的动词，变 y 为 i 加 es	（1）般在词尾加 ed。 （2）词尾是 e 直接加 d。 （3）末尾是辅音字母加 y 结尾，变 y 为 i 加 ed。 （4）辅元辅结构，双写辅音字母加 ed

【专项训练】

一、写出下列动词的第三人称单数、现在分词和过去式形式。

go ________ ________ __________　　enjoy __________ ________ ________
buy ________ ________ __________　　eat __________ ________ ________
get ________ ________ __________　　walk ___________ ________ ________
take ________ ________ ___________　　dance___________ ________ ________
write ________ ________ ___________　　run__________ ________ ________
swim ________ ________ ___________　　find___________ ________ ________
begin ________ ________ ___________　　eat__________ ________ ________
play ________ ________ ___________　　study___________ ________ ________

二、用所给动词的适当形式填空。

1. I _________ (have) an exciting party last weekend.
2. _________ she _________ (practice) her guitar yesterday? No, she _________.
3. What ________ Tom ________ (do) on Saturday evening?
He ________ (watch) TV and __________ (read) an interesting book.
4. She _________ (not visit) her aunt last weekend.
She ________ (stay) at home and _________ (do) some cleaning.
5. When ________ you _________ (write) this song? I __________ (write) it last year.
6. My friend, Carol, ______ (study) for the math test and ________ (practice) English last night.
7. ________ Mr. Li __________ (do) the project on Monday morning? Yes, he _________.
8. How _________ (be) Jim's weekend? It _________ (be not) bad.
9. ________ (be) your mother a sales assistant last year? No, she __________.

三、按要求变换句型。

1. Father bought me a new bike. (同义句)
Father bought _______ _______ ________ ________ me.
2. Frank read an interesting book about history. (一般疑问句)
_______ Frank _______ an interesting book about history?
3. Sally takes some medicine. (yesterday)
____
4. Why not go out for a walk? (同义句)
_______ ________ ________ out for a walk?
5. Thomas spent RMB 10 on this book. (否定句)
Thomas _______ _______ RMB 10 on this book.
6. My family went to the beach last week. (对画线部分提问)
________ ________ ________ family _______ last week?
7. The children had a good time in the park.
否定句: ____
一般疑问句: ____________________________________
对画线部分提问: ________________________________

四、单项选择：从下列各题后所给的四个选项中选择最佳答案填空。

1. My father______ill yesterday.
A. isn't B. aren't C. wasn't D. weren't
2. ______your parents at home last week?
A. Is B. Was C. Are D. Were
3. The twins____in Dalian last year. They_____here now.
A. are; were B. were; are C. was; are D. were; was
4.______your father at work the day______yesterday?
A. Was; before B. Is; before C. Was; after D. Is; after
5. —Who was on duty last Friday? —__________.
A. I am B. I was C. Yes, I was D. No, I wasn't
6. I cleaneD. my classroom ___________.
A . with three hours B. three hours ago C. in three hours D. three hours before

7. I came _______ my house two days ago.

A. back on　　B. back to　　C. to back　　D. back

8 . ___________? He did some reading at home.

A. What does your father do yesterday evening

B. What does your brother do in the school

C. What did your brother do over the weekend

D. Where did your brother go last Sunday

9. What did you do ________? I went to the movies.

A. next morning　　B. over the weekend　　C. in the weekend　　D. next Monday

【真题再现】

1.（2012 北京）—Where were you last Saturday? —I ____ in the Capital Museum.

A. am　　B. will be　　C. was　　D. have been

2.（2012 广西玉林）Last year，Shenzhou-8 _______ into the space. It made us proud.

A. is sent　　B. was sent　　C. sends　　D. sent

3.（2012 贵州安顺）The old man _____ in Shanghai，but he _____ in Haikou now.

A. be born；live　　B. was born；live　　C. is born；lives　　D. was born；lives

4.（2012 贵州毕节）Lucy ______ a student last year，but now she ______ a teacher.

A. is；is　　B. was；is　　C. was；will be　　D. is；was

5.（2011 湖北恩施）He _____go out with his parents，but now he _____staying at home alone.

A. used to；is used to　　B. is used to；used to　　C. use to；is used to

6.（2011 湖北恩施）—When did you buy the computer? —I have ______ this computer for 5 years，but it still works well.

A. bought　　B. have　　C. had

7.（2012 湖北十堰）I ____ little time to get ready for the test，so I wasn't confident at that time.

A. gave　　B. didn't give　　C. was given　　D. wasn't given

8.（2012 湖北随州）—I'v just got a new MP4.

—Where _____ you ____it?

—In a shopping mall near here.

A. have；bought　　B. did；buy　　C. are；bought　　D. were；getting

9.（2012 湖北随州）There ______ some flowers on the teacher's desk just now，but now there ______nothing on it.

A. have；has　　B. were；was　　C. were；is　　D. has；has

10.（2012 湖北武汉）I don't remember when and where I _____ this umbrella.

A. buy　　B. have bought　　C. will buy　　D. bought

11.（2012 湖北咸宁）Jack _____ dislike the weather in Beijing in spring，because there is so much wind and sand. But now he ____ it.

A. is used to；used to　　B. used to；is used to

C. was used to；is used to　　D. used to；uses to

12.（2012 湖北孝感）Tony___to take part in the talk show on CCTV-3 the day before yesterday.

A. invites　　B. invited　　C. is invited　　D. was invited

13.（2012 湖南怀化）The telephone _____by a well-known scientist，Edison.

A. invented B. inventing C. was invented

14.（2011 湖南株洲）—Have you ever been to Shanghai? —Yes. I______there with my father last year.

A. went B. have been C. have gone

15.（2012 江苏淮安）Alice________some advice on how to improve her listening skills，and she gladly accepted Miss Green's.

A. gave B. was given C. gives D. is given

16.（2012 江苏连云港）Jeremy Lin_________an unknown basketball player in New York Knicks（尼克斯队）for quite a long time.

A. used to be B. used to being C. is used to be D. was used to be

17.（2012 江苏南京）Yaxi，a quiet village in Gaochun，____China's first "Slow City" in November 2011.

A. names B. named C. is named D. was named

18.（2012 江苏苏州）The film made by Walt Disney ______ all over the world.

A. is used to show B. is used to showing C. used to show D. used to be shown

19.（2012 江苏徐州）I know a little about Thailand，as I________there three years ago.

A. have been B. have gone C. will go D. went

20.（2012 江苏盐城）—Have you ever been to Singapore?—Yes. I_______there last year with my parents.

A. go B. went C. have been D. was going

21.（2012 江西）—Hello，mum. Are you still on Lushan Mountain?—Oh，no. we are back home. We _________ a really good journey.

A. have B. had C. are having D. will have

22.（2012 江西）—Oh，my God! I can't find my key to the office. —Don't worry. Perhaps it ________ at your home.

A. left B. has left C. was left D. had left

23.（2012 内蒙古包头）—Haven't I told you that you should be home earlier? —Yes，but I_____home earlier than I usually do.

A. was coming B. will come C. came D. had come

24.（2012 广东省梅州市）Her son ________ Coke，but now he _________ milk.

A. used to drink；is used to drinking B. used to drinking；drinks

C. is used to drinking；used to drink D. is used to drink；is drinking

25.（2012 广东省梅州市）In the old days，they________ in the factory from morning to evening.

A. were made to work B. asked to work C. made to work D. were asked for work

26.（2012 湖北黄冈）—Hey，Molly. You ______ on the phone just now. But you weren't here and the man left a phone number. —Oh? I was in the library.

A. wanted B. are wanted C. were wanted D. have wanted

27.（2012 湖北黄冈）—What would you do if you ______ the traffic accident? —I would ______.

A. see；do my housework first B. saw；buy some fruit right away

C. see；call at I10 at once D. saw；call the police right away

28.（2012 山东泰安）—I hear Mr. Zhang has gone to Beijing for a meeting.

—Really? Do you know when he _______?

A. leaves B. was leaving C. has left D. left

29.（2012 烟台中考）The smile on Mother's face suggested she_____.

A. was glad B. was surprised C. is pleased D. was annoyed

30.（2012 陕西）A new club ____ in our school at the beginning of this year and now it has many members.

A. starts B. is started C. has started D. was started

31.（2011 河南）—Have you heard of Earth Day?

—Yes. The first Earth Day ______ in 1970 to educate us to protect our planet.

A. celebrates　B. celebrated　C. is celebrated　D. was celebrated

32.（2012 绵阳市）When I called the bus service，I ________ that there was no more bus.

A. was telling　B. was told　C. has told　D. had told

33.（2012 四川宜宾）My grandma ______ us stories when I was young.

A. was used to tell　B. is used to telling　C. used to tell　D. used to telling

34.（2012 四川宜宾）—Are you a soccer player in your school?

—Yes，I _____ the team two years ago. I ______ in the team for two years.

A. have joined；have been　B. was joined；am

C. joined；was　D. joined；have been

35.（2012 天津）I have been to Shanghai. I ____________ there last month.

A. go　B. went　C. have gone　D. will go

36.（2012 浙江杭州）Mark____in China for 10 years and now he teaches Chinese in Britain.

A. has worked　B. worked　C. had worked　D. is working

37.（2012 浙江宁波）—Why is your bedroom so dirty?

—Sorry，Mum. It ____________. I felt very tired after playing soccer.

A. isn't cleaned　B. didn't clean　C. doesn't clean　D. wasn't cleaned

38.（2012 浙江温州）—What did you do yesterday evening，Gina? —I ___*Titanic* 3D. in the City Cinema.

A. watch　B. watched　C. am watching　D. will watch

39.（2012 贵州黔东南州）I______to Rongjiang last year，but I________ never_________ to Chongjiang.

A. went；have；been　B. will go；have；been

C. went；have；gone　D. go；have；gone

40.（2012 湖南省岳阳）The car _____ by the policeman because the driver was drunk.

A. stopped　B. was stopped　C. were stopped

41.（2012 四川省乐山市）—Have you known Dr. Jackson for a long time? —Yes，since she_______the Chinese Society.

A. joined　B. joins　C. has joined

7.5　现在进行时

7.5.1　定　义

现在进行时表示现在正在发生的动作或存在的状态。

7.5.2　结　构

现在进行时的构成是：主语+be+*v*.ing（现在分词）形式，具体如下：

第一人称单数：I+am+doing+sth.

第一人称复数：We+are+doing+sth.

第二人称单（复）数：You+are+doing+sth.

第三人称单数：He/She/It+is+doing+sth.

第三人称复数：They+are+doing+sth.

肯定句：主语+be（is/am/are）+现在分词
否定句：主语+be（is/am/are）+not+现在分词
一般疑问句：be（is/am/are）+主语+现在分词

7.5.3　动词变现在分词的规则

（1）一般情况下直接在词后加- ing。如：

go—going	ask—asking	study—studying
do—doing	drink—drinking	fly—flying

（2）以不发音的“e”结尾的，去“e”加-ing。如：

ride—riding	make—making	have—having
give—giving	come—coming	live—living

注：see—seeing（ ee 是组合不去 e）

（3）以重读闭音节结尾的，双写后一个辅音字母再加-ing。如：

put—putting	sit—sitting	stop—stopping	shop—shopping
get—getting	swim—swimming	let—letting	cut—cutting
run—running	begin—beginning	hit—hitting	dig—digging

（4）注：特殊词：

lie—lying	tie—tying	die—dying

7.5.4　现在进行时的基本用法

（1）表示说话时正在进行的动作，常和 now 连用，有时用一个动词 look（看），listen（听）来表示 now（现在）这一时间概念。例如：

Look! A train is coming.

Listen! He is playing the piano.

（2）表示现阶段正在进行的动作，常和 at present（目前），this week（本周），these days（这几天）……等时间状语连用。例如：

What lesson are you studying this week?（说话时并没有在学）

注意：如果没有表示将来时间的状语，此类句子就可能指现在或现阶段的动作。例如：

Where are you going next week?（用现在进行时表示将来时，因为有 next week 这一时间状语）

（3）现在进行时有时可用来表示一个最近按计划或安排要进行的动作，即可以用来代替将来时，此时一般要与表示将来的时间状语连用，而且仅限于少量动词。如：go（去），come（来），leave（离开），start（开始），arrive（到达）……例如：

Are you going to Tianjing tomorrow?

How many of you are coming to the party next week?

（4）be going to+动词原形：这一句型表示即将发生的事或打算（准备）做的事，我们把它归在将来时里了。如：

She isn’t going to speak at the meeting.

（5）表示渐变的动词有：get，grow，become，turn，run，go 等。

例：The leaves are turning red.

　　It’s getting warmer and warmer.

（6）与 always，constantly，forever 等词连用，表示反复发生的动作或持续存在的状态，往往带有说话人的主观色彩。

例：You are always changing your mind.

7.5.5 没有进行时的动词

表示状态、思想、感情和感觉的动词不能表示正在进行的动作，因此一般不能用进行时。

（1）表示感觉的感官动词，例如：see（看见），hear（听见），notice（留意）等动词，不能用现在进行时。例如：

I'm hearing the sound.（错）

I hear the sound.（对）

Are you hearing the noise of a plane?（错）

Do you hear the noise of a plane?（对）

（2）表示态度和感情、心理状态、继续等意思的动词，如：like（喜欢），love（爱），know（知道），want（需要），hope（希望），hate（恨），think（认为），agree（同意），believe（相信）等。例如：

I'm liking dogs.（错）

I like dogs.（对）

（3）have（has）当"拥有"讲时，例如：

I'm having a lot of books.（错）

I have a lot of books.（对）

但当 have（has）当"吃饭、开会、玩得愉快"等意思时，可用进行时。例如：

We are having a good time.

7.5.6 现在进行时考查热点及应对方法

1. 考查现在进行时表目前这段时间正在进行的动作

考点说明：现在进行时可表目前这段时间正在进行，但此时此刻不在进行的动作。

1. Selecting a mobile phone for personal use is no easy task because technology ________ so rapidly.

A. is changing　　B. has changed　　C. will have changed　　D. will change

解析：答案为 A。认真分析语境可知，该句虽不强调科技此时此刻正在发展，但却强调现阶段正高速发展，因此应使用现在进行时。

2. Rainforests _____ and burned at such a speed that they will disappear from the earth in the near future.

A. cut　　B. are cut　　C. are being cut　　D. had been cut

解析：答案为 C。热带雨林之所以要消失，是因为现阶段正在被快速砍伐和烧毁，尽管此时此刻不一定有人在这样做，因此应用现在进行时的被动语态。

方法揭秘：认真分析语境，体会出动作此刻不在进行，但目前这段时间正在进行。

2. 考查现在进行时表一贯性动作的用法

考点说明：现在进行时与 always，constantly 等副词连用时，可表反复性、一贯性动作，常用来表示赞扬或厌恶的感情色彩。

3. He_______ of how he can do more for the people.

A. had always thought　　B. is always thinking

C. has always been thought　　D. thinking always

解析：答案为 B。由语境逻辑及 always 含义可知，该句表示他总是在考虑如何为人们多做点事，这

是一个一贯性、反复性动作，带有强烈的赞扬色彩，因此应用现在进行时。

方法揭秘：寻找 always，constantly 等频度副词；认真分析语境是否表示一贯性动作；分析讲话者是否对该动作含有赞扬或厌恶的感情色彩。

3. 考查现在进行时表即将发生动作的用法

考点说明：come，go，leave，arrive，start，fly，drive 等严格按照时间表发生的表“起、止”的动词可用现在进行时代替一般将来时。

4. I want to know when he _______ for New York tomorrow.

A. has left　　B. is leaving　　C. had left　　D. has been leaving

解析：答案为 B。分析语境逻辑可知，该空表将来动作，因为 leave 表“出发”，可用现在进行时代替一般将来时。

方法揭秘：分析语境是否表将来动作，动词是否表“起”“止”。

【实战演练】

一、写出下列动词的现在分词形式。

1. run __________　sit__________　shop__________　swim__________
2. lie __________　die__________　make__________　put__________

二、用动词的适当形式填空。

1. The boy __________________（draw）a picture now.
2. Listen. Some girls _______________（sing）in the classroom.
3. My mother _________________（cook）some nice food now.
4. What _____ you ______（do）now?
5. Look，they _______________（have）an English lesson.
6. They ____________（not，water）the flowers now.
7. Look，the girls ________________（dance）in the classroom.
8. What is our granddaughter doing? She _________（listen）to music.
9. It’s 5 o’clock now. We_____________（have）supper now.
10. ______Helen____________（wash）clothes? Yes，she is.

三、单项填空。

1. 我在照看孩子。____________

A. I am looking after the baby.　　B. I’m look aftering the baby.

C. I look am aftering the baby.　　D. I looking after the baby.

2. _____friend’s making ______a kite.

A. I；me　　B. My；my　　C. My；me　　D. His；his

3. Is the woman ______ yellow your teacher?

A. in　　B. putting on　　C. wearing　　D. having

4. Look! The twins_____ their mother do the housework.

A. are wanting　　B. help　　C. are helping　　D. are looking

5. _____ are the birds doing? They are singing in a tree.

A. Who　　B. What　　C. How　　D. Where

四、将下列句子改成否定句和一般疑问句，并做肯、否定两种回答。

Example：I am running. 否：I am not running. 一般疑问句：Are you running? 回答：Yes，I am. /No，I'm not.

1. He is reading English. 否：________________________________

一般疑问句：____________________________回答：________________

2. She is doing her homework in the study. 否：______________________

一般疑问句：____________________________回答：________________

3. They are having breakfast now. 否：____________________________

一般疑问句：____________________________回答：________________

4. Mike is swimming with David. 否：___________________________

一般疑问句：____________________________回答：________________

5. I am playing table tennis in the playground. 否：____________________

一般疑问句：____________________________回答：________________

五、改错。

1. Are Tom's parent singing now?____________________________

2. He isn't listen to music._________________________________

3. Look，he is skateing there.______________________________

4. Do you writing to your friend?_____________________________

5. Is he playing chess? Yes，he isn't.___________________________

六、根据上下文填空。

It is Saturday evening. Nancy and her family are ________ home. The telephone is ________. It is Tom. He is in China now. It is Sunday morning in China.（N＝Nancy，T＝Tom）

N：Hello!

T：Hello，Nancy! This is Tom from China.

N：Hi，Tom.

T：What are you doing?

N：I _______ making a model plane. My dad is ______ TV and my mother is _______ to music.

T：________ is your brother ________?

N：He is ________ the guitar. What are you doing，Tom?

T：I am ________ my breakfast. After breakfast I am ________ to the Great Wall!

N：How happy you are!

7.6 一般将来时

7.6.1 一般将来时的概念

一般将来时表示将来某一时刻的动作或状态，或将来某一段时间内经常的动作或状态。一般将来时由助动词 shall（第一人称），will（第二、三人称）+动词原形构成。美国英语则不管什么人称，一律用 will。

7.6.2 一般将来时常见的时间状语

- next Tuesday/week
- next year/week
- the coming Sunday
- this morning/afternoon/evening/weekend

• tomorrow
• tonight
• in a few minutes
• in the future
• in five years/in ten minutes
• soon

7.6.3　一般将来时的基本用法

（1）表示将来的动作或状态。

一般将来时常与一些表示将来的时间状语连用，如：tomorrow（明天），next week（下周），from now on（从现在开始），in the future（将来）等。

（2）表示将来经常发生的动作。

（3）“be going to+动词原形”表示即将发生的或最近打算进行的事。例如：

① It is going to rain. 要下雨了。

② We are going to have a meeting today. 今天我们开会。

（4）go，come，start，move，sail，leave，arrive，stay，live，fly 等可用进行时态表示按计划即将发生的动作，例如：I'm leaving for Beijing.

（5）“be to+动词原形”表示按计划要发生的事或征求对方意见。例如：

① Are we to go on with this work? 我们继续干吗？

② The boy is to go to school tomorrow.

（6）“be about to+动词原形”表示即将发生的动作，意为很快、马上。后面一般不跟时间状语。例如：We are about to leave.我们马上就走。

（7）某些词，如 come，go，leave，arrive，start，get，stay，live，fly 等的一般现在时也可表示将来。例如：

① The meeting starts at five o'clock. 会议五点开始。

② He gets off at the next stop. 他下一站下车。

注：一般将来时 be going to 与 will 的区别。

be going to 与 will 两者都可表示将要发生的事、将要去做某事，但它们有如下几点区别：

（1）be going to 表示近期、眼下就要发生的事情，will 表示的将来时间则较远一些，如：

He is going to write a letter tonight.

He will write a book one day.

（2）be going to 表示根据主观判断将来肯定发生的事情，will 表示客观上将来势必发生的事情。例如：

He is seriously ill. He is going to die.

He will be twenty years old.

这里的 be 实际上也是省略了 to 的不定式 to be（将是）。这里的 will 是助动词，本身无意义，只起语法作用。

（3）be going to 含有“计划，准备”的意思，而 will 则没有这个意思，如：

She is going to lend us her book.

He will be here in half an hour.

（4）在有条件从句的主句中，一般不用 be going to，而多用 will，如：

If any beasts come at you，I'll stay with you and help you.

这里的 will 是情态动词，stay 是 to stay 省略了 to。

7.6.4　一般将来时的基本结构

will/shall+动词原形：表示将来发生的动作或将来存在的状态；表示一种倾向或一种固有特性或经常发生的动作。

be going to+动词原形：表示即将发生的或最近打算进行的事。

1. 肯定句

在肯定句中，一般将来时的结构为：主语+be（am/is/are）+going to+动词原形+其他或主语+will+动词原形+其他。如：

① They are going to visit their teacher tomorrow. 他们明天要去看望他们的老师。
② Some day your dreams will come true. 有一天你的梦想会实现。
③ Shall I go with you? 我可以和你一起去吗？
④ Without air a living thing will die. 没有空气生物会死亡。（固有特性）
⑤ When it gets warmer the snow will start to melt. 当天气变得更暖和一点，雪将开始融化。（倾向）

2. 否定句

否定句中要在 be 后面加 not：主语+be（am/is/are）+not+going to+动词原形+其他或主语+will+not+动词原形+其他。如：

① I am not going to play football after school. 放学后我不打算踢足球。
② They won't use these books. 他们不打算用这些书。

3. 疑问句

一般疑问句结构为：be（am/is/are）+主语+going to+动词原形+其他？或 will+主语+动词原形+其他？如：

① Are you going to read books tonight? —Yes，I am. —No，I am not.
② Is he going to buy a comic book this morning? —Yes，he is. —No，he is not.
③ Will students go to school tomorrow? —Yes，they will. —No，they won't.

4. 特殊疑问句

特殊疑问句结构为：特殊疑问词+be（am/is/are）+主语+going to+动词原形+其他或特殊疑问词+will+主语+动词原形+其他？如：

① —What is she going to do this evening? —She is going to visit her grandparents.
② —Where will they go tomorrow? —They will go to the park.

【拓展】

There be 句型与 be going to 结构连用时，表示为：There is（are）going to be+名词+其他。例如：
There is going to be a sports meeting next week. 下周将举行一次运动会。
There are going to be two football matches this weekend. 这个周末将有两场足球比赛。

【考题链接】

1. —Let's discuss the plan，shall we? —Not now. I ____________ to an interview.

A. go B. went C. am going D. was going

答案：C

思路分析：根据答语“不是现在”可知“我要去参加一次面试”，故用一般将来时。选 C 项。

2. —Why are you in such a hurry，John? —There ______a basketball match between Class Three and our class in ten minutes.

A. is going to be B. is going to have C. will have D. will hold

答案：A

思路分析：根据 in ten minutes 可知用一般将来时；主语 a basketball match 是单数，故可用 There is going to be 或 There will be，浏览各选项可知 A 项正确。

3. Put your hands behind your back. Don’t speak. We’ll ___________ in ten minutes.

A. back　　B. be back　　C. are back　　D. are back to you

答案：B

思路分析：根据“’ll”可知后接动词原形，故选 B 项。

4. We’re glad to hear that the Greens ______________to a new flat next week.

A. move　　B. moved　　C. will move　　D. have moved

答案：C

思路分析：根据 next week 可知时态用一般将来时，故选 C 项。

5. There ____________ a talk by Yang Liwei tomorrow morning in our school.

A. was　　B. will be　　C. have　　D. has

答案：B

思路分析：根据 There 可知是考查 There be 的正确形式；tomorrow morning 表示将来，故用一般将来时，B 项正确。

【实战演练】

一、按照要求改写句子。

1. Nancy is going to go camping.（改为否定句）

Nancy ________ going to go camping.

2. I’ll go and join them.（改为否定句）

I _______ go ______ join them.

3. I’m going to get up at 6:30 tomorrow.（改为一般疑问句）

________ _______ ________ to get up at 6:30 tomorrow?

4. We will meet at the bus stop at 10:30.（改为一般疑问句）

_______ ________ meet at the bus stop at 10:30.

5. She is going to <u>listen to music</u> after school.（对画线部分提问）

________ _______ she ________ ________ _________ after school?

三、用所给词的适当形式填空。

1. Today is a sunny day. We ___________________（have）a picnic this afternoon.

2. My brother _______________（go）to Shanghai next week.

3. Tom often _________（go）to school on foot. But today is raining. He _______（go）to school by bike.

4. —What do you usually do at weekends?

—I usually ________（watch）TV and ________（catch）insects?

5. —It’s Friday today. What _____she _________（do）this weekend?

—She ______________（watch）TV and _____________（catch）insects.

6. What ___________（do）you do last Sunday? I ____________（pick）apples on a farm.

What ______________（do）next Sunday? I ______________（milk）cows.

7. Mary ____________（visit）her grandparents tomorrow.

8. Liu Tao ____________（fly）kites in the playground yesterday.

9. David ______________（give）a puppet show next Monday.

10. I ________________ （plan） for my study.

三、单选题。

1. There __________ a meeting tomorrow afternoon.

A. will be going to　B. will going to be　C. is going to be　D. will go to be

2. Charlie ________ here next month.

A. isn't working　B. doesn't working

C. isn't going to working　D. won't work

3. He ________ very busy this week，he ________ free next week.

A. will be；is　B. is；is　C. will be；will be　D. is；will be

4. There ________ a dolphin show in the zoo tomorrow evening.

A. was　B. is going to have　C. will have　D. is going to be

5. —_______ you ________free tomorrow? —No. I _______ free the day after tomorrow.

A. Are；going to；will　B. Are；going to be；will

C. Are；going to；will be　D. Are；going to be；will be

6. Mother ________ me a nice present on my next birthday.

A. will gives　B. will give　C. gives　D. give

7. —Shall I buy a cup of tea for you? —________.（不，不要。）

A. No，you won't.　B. No，you aren't.　C. No，please don't.　D. No，please.

8. —Where is the morning paper? —I ________ if for you at once.

A. get　B. am getting　C. to get　D. will get

9. ________ a concert next Saturday?

A. There will be　B. Will there be　C. There can be　D. There are

10. If they come，we ________ a meeting.

A. have　B. will have　C. had　D. would have

11. He ________ her a beautiful hat on her next birthday.

A. gives　B. gave　C. will giving　D. is going to giving

12. He ________ to us as soon as he gets there.

A. writes　B. has written　C. will write　D. wrote

13. He ________ in three days.

A. coming back　B. came back　C. will come back　D. is going to coming back

14. If it ________ tomorrow，we'll go roller-skating.

A. isn't rain　B. won't rain　C. doesn't rain　D. doesn't fine

15. —Will his parents go to see the Terra Cotta Warriors tomorrow? —No，_______.

A. they willn't　B. they won't　C. they aren't　D. they don't

16. Who ________ we ________ swimming with tomorrow afternoon?

A. will；go　B. do；go　C. will；going　D. shall；go

17. We ________ the work this way next time.

A. do　B. will do　C. going to do　D. will doing

18. Tomorrow he ________a kite in the open air first，and then ______boating in the park.

A. will fly；will go　B. will fly；go

C. is going to fly；will goes　D. flies；will go

19. The day after tomorrow they ________ a volleyball match.

A. will watching　B. watches　C. is watching　D. is going to watch

20. There ________ a birthday party this Sunday.
    A. shall be B. will be C. shall going to be D. will going to be
21. They ________ an English evening next Sunday.
    A. are having B. are going to have C. will having D. is going to have
22. ________ you ________ free next Sunday?
    A. Will；are B. Will；be C. Do；be D. Are；be
23. He ________ there at ten tomorrow morning.
    A. will B. is C. will be D. be
24. ________ your brother ________ a magazine from the library?
    A. Are；going to borrow B. Is；going to borrow
    C. Will；borrows D. Are；going to borrows
25. —Shall I come again tomorrow afternoon? —________（好的）.
    A. Yes，please B. Yes，you will C. No，please D. No，you won't
26. It ________ the year of the horse next year.
    A. is going to be B. is going to C. will be D. will is
27. ________ open the window?
    A. Will you please B. Please will you C. You please D. Do you
28. —Let's go out to play football，shall we? —OK. I ________.
    A. will coming B. be going to come C. come D. am coming
29. It ________ us a long time to learn English well.
    A. takes B. will take C. spends D. will spend
30. The train ________ at 11.
    A. going to arrive B. will be arrive C. is going to D. is arriving

7.7 现在完成时

7.7.1 现在完成时的构成

现在完成时由助动词 have（has）+动词的过去分词构成。has 用于第三人称单数，have 用于其他各种人称。

否定句：主语+have/has+not+过去分词+其他

一般疑问句：Have/Has+主语+过去分词+其他？

简略答语：Yes，主语+have/has.（肯定）No，主语+haven't/hasn't.（否定）

现在完成时的否定式直接在助动词后面加上 not，疑问式是把助动词提到主语之前。以 study 为例，其否定式、疑问式和简单回答形式见表 7-10 和表 7-11。

表 7-10 study 现在完成时的否定式、疑问式

否定式	疑问式
I have not（haven't）studied…	Have I studied…?
You have not（haven't）studied…	Have you studied…?
He has not（hasn't）studied…	Has he studied…?

表 7-11　study 现在完成时的否定疑问式、简单回答

否定疑问式	简单回答（肯定/否定）
Have I not（Haven't I）studied…?	Yes，you have. /No，you haven't.
Have you not（Haven't you）studied...?	Yes，I have. /No，I haven't.
Has he not（Hasn't he）studied…?	Yes，he has. /No，he hasn't.

7.7.2　现在完成时的基本用法

现在完成时的基本用法见表 7-12。

表 7-12　现在完成时的基本用法

形式	用法	意　义
have/has+过去分词	继续	表示从过去继续到现在的动作或状态
	经验	表示过去某一时刻到现在的经验
	完成	表示现在刚完成的动作
	成果	表示现在是“做了……”的结果

（1）现在完成时表示过去发生或已经完成的动作对现在造成的影响或结果。例如：

I have spent all of my money（so far）.（含义是：现在我没有钱花了。）

Guo zijun has（just/already）come.（含义是：郭子君现在在这儿。）

My father has gone to work.（含义是：我爸爸现在不在这儿。）

I have just cleaned my clothes. 我刚洗过衣服。(“洗衣服”是发生在过去的动作，对现在造成的结果是“衣服干净了”。)

（2）现在完成时可以用来表示发生在过去某一时刻的，持续到现在的动作（用行为动词表示）或状态（用 be 动词表示），常与 for+时间段或 since+时间点或过去时的句子连用。常见的搭配如下：

① for+时段

② since+过去一个时间点（译为：自从……以来）

③ since+时段+ago

④ since+从句（过去时）

⑤ It is+时段+since+从句（过去时）

例如：Mary has been ill for three days.

　　　I have lived here since 1998.

现在完成时常用的时间状语有：already（“已经”用于肯定句的中间和末尾处）；never（“从不”用于中间处）；ever（“曾经”用于疑问句和肯定句的中间处）；just（“刚刚”用于中间处）；yet（“已经”用于疑问句的末尾处/“还”用于否定句的末尾处）。或不加任何的时间状语，但不能和表示过去的时间状语连用。

7.7.3　现在完成时和一般过去时的区别

（1）一般过去时常与具体的表示过去的时间状语如 yesterday，last year，just now 等连用；强调动作在过去发生，与现在无关。

（2）现在完成时与自己的特征词如 already，yet，just，ever，never，before 等连用，强调过去发生的动作对现在的影响或过去开始发生一直持续到现在的动作。

例：He saw the film last night.（过去时，表示他昨晚看过那部电影了，现在不知还要不要再看一次。）

He has（ever）seen the film before.（现在完成时，表示他已看过那部电影，现在不想再看了。）

（3）现在完成时可表示持续到现在的动作或状态，动词一般是延续性的。如 live，work，study 等。而一般现在时对动词是否延续无任何要求。

除了 already，yet，still，just，ever，never，since 短语和 for 短语外，还有许多时间状语常用于现在完成时，要留心将它们和一般过去时的时间状语区分开来：

（1）lately，recently 是完成时的时间状语；just now 有 a moment ago 之意，是过去时的时间状语。如：

Have you heard from your family lately/recently?

Did you see Joan just now?

（2）in the past few years 意思是“过去几年来”，常用于完成时中；in the past 意思是“在过去”，常用于过去时中。如：

Great changes have taken place in my hometown in the past few years.

Where did you work in the past?

（3）ever since then 与 from then on/after that 都有“打那以后”之意，但前者常用于完成时，而后两者常用于过去时。如：

She's lived here ever since then.

I didn't hear of Jim from then on/after that.

（4）before 通常用于完成时；...ago 通常用于过去时。如：

I have never been to Japan before.

She went to Japan two years ago.

（5）so far“到目前为止”，these days“这些天来”也是现在完成时常见的时间状语。如：

So far，no man has travelled farther than the moon.

What have you done these days?

7.7.4 现在完成时动词的持续性用法

持续性用法（肯定句，疑问句中谓语动词必须是延续性动词）：表示过去已经开始，持续到现在的动作或状态。此时常与“for+一段时间或“since+过去的点时间或从句（从句用一般过去时）以及 so far（到目前为止）等时间状语连用。

例：I've lived here since 1990. 自从 1990 年以来我就住在这里。

= I've lived here since 21 years ago.

= I've lived here for 21 years.

= It is 21 years since I began to live here.

注意：在这类句子的肯定句和疑问句中谓语动词必须用延续性动词。短暂性动词由于动作不能持续，故不能与 for（达到；累计）或 since（自从……到现在）引出的时间状语连用。

对 for 和 since 引导的时间状语提问要用 How long。

他入团两年了。

误：He has joined the League for two years.

正：He has been a League member for two years.

7.7.5 延续性与非延续性动词在现在完成时态中的使用

有一些动词是瞬间动词，也叫非延续性动词，这些动词一发生就结束了，常见的有：come，go，arrive，

reach，leave，begin，start，leave，buy，join，die，borrow，become，get up，open，stop 等，这些动词虽然可以用于现在完成时，但由于他们不能延续，所以不能跟表示一段时间的状语连用，若要解决这个问题，就需要把其改为相应的延续性动词或短语，主要有以下几种（详见表 7-13）：

（1）变为相应的延续性动词，如：buy—have，borrow—keep，come/go/become—be，put on—wear，catch a cold—have a cold。

（2）转化成 be+名词，如：join—be a member of ，go to school—be a student。

（3）转化成 be+形容词或副词，如：die&be dead，leave—be away，begin—be on，finish—be over，fall asleep—be asleep，open—be open，get up—be up，close—closed。

表 7-13　部分短暂性动词与之对应的延续性动词

短暂性动词	延续性动词	短暂性动词	延续性动词
die	be dead	get up	be up
borrow	keep	come	be in
arrive（get to/reach）	be here（in）	finish	be over
learn	know	leave	be away
put on	wear	open	be open
buy/catch	have	close	be closed
fall ill（sick，asleep）	be ill（sick，asleep）	begin	be on
go to school	be a student	join	be in 或 be a member of…
marry	be married	sit down	be seated
become	be	buy/get	have
go/get out（there）	be out（there）		

（4）转化成 be+介词短语，如；come to/go to/arrive in（at）/get to/reach—be in（at），join the army—be in the army。例如：

I have borrowed the book.　　I have kept the book for two days.
Jim has joined the band.　　Jim has been a member of the band for one month.
His grandfather has died.　　His grandfather has been dead for two years.
My father has arrived in Shanghai.　　My father has been in Shanghai for one week.

7.7.6　have been in，have been to 与 have gone to 的区别

（1）have（has）been in 意为“已经在某地呆了多长时间”，常与表示一段时间的状语连用。如：

Mr. Brown has been in Shanghai for three days. 布朗先生来上海已经有三天了。
They have been in Canada for five years. 他们到加拿大有五年了。

（2）have（has）been to 意为“曾经去过某地”，表示现在已经不在那里了。可与 just，ever，never 等连用。如：

I've just been to the post office. 我刚才去邮局了。
Have you ever been to Hangzhou? 你曾经去过杭州吗？
Mary has never been to the Great Wall. 玛丽从未去过长城。

（3）have（has）been to 后面可接次数，表示去过某地几次。如：

I've been to Beijing three times. 我去过北京三次。
They have been to that village several times. 他们去过那个村庄好几次了。

（4）have（has）gone to 意为“到某地去了”，表示到了某地或正在去某地的途中。

【课堂巩固】

写出下列动词的过去式和过去分词。

is/am _____ _______	are______ ________	become________ _______	bring ______ _____
buy_______ _______	come ______ _______	do_______ ________	eat_______ ________
learn______ ______	write_____________	hear______ ________	go_____ ______
play_____ _____	have/has ______ _____	eat ______ ______	leave______ ________
see______ _______	speak______ ________	live______ _______	help ________ _______
sleep______ ______	run______ _____	make______ _______	know______ ________

【例题精析】

1.（2016・永州）—___you ever ___to the Great Wall? —Yes. Three times.

A. Has；been　　B. Have；been　　C. Have；gone

【考点】现在完成时。

【分析】——你曾经去过长城吗？——是的。去过三次了。

【解答】答案：B。

have been to 表示曾经去过某地，have gone to 表示已经去了某地或正在去某地的路上。根据 ever 和 three times 可以推测这里表示曾经去过某地，现在已经回来了，主语是 you，故这里应该用 have。故选 B。

2.（2016・宁夏）—Look! Someone _______ the classroom. —Well，it wasn't me. I didn't do it.

A. is cleaning　　B. was cleaning　　C. has cleaned　　D. will clean

【考点】现在完成时。

【分析】——看，有人已经把教室打扫干净了。——呃，不是我做的。我没有打扫。

【解答】答案：C。

根据 it wasn't me. I didn't do it 可以判断打扫教室这个动作发生在过去，对现在造成了影响，教室已经打扫了，所以这里用现在完成时，结构为：have/has+动词过去分词。主语是 someone，是个不定代词，所以谓语动词用单数，故选 C。

3.（2016・威海）—Is that a new coat? —No，I_____it for a long time.

A. bought　　B. have bought　　C. have had

【考点】现在完成时。

【分析】——那是一件新上衣吗？——不，我已经买了很长时间了。

【解答】答案：C。

根据 for a long time 可知，这是一个表示一段时间的时间状语，通常用于现在完成时，而且动词应该用延续性动词，而 buy 是瞬间性动词，不能持续一段时间，所以要用 have，这里是指拥有手表这种状态持续到现在，故用现在完成时态，结构为 have/has+动词的过去分词，主语是 I，所以助动词用 have，动词 have 的过去分词为 had。故选 C。

4.（2016・福州）—The boy misses his parents very much.

—So he does. They _____ the hometown for nearly two years.

A. have left　　B. will leave　　C. have been away from

【考点】现在完成时。

【分析】——这个小男孩非常想念他的父母。——确实是这样。他们离开家快 2 年了。

【解答】答案：C。

根据 for nearly two years 可知，这是一个表示一段时间的时间状语，而 leave 是瞬间性动词，不能持续一段时间，所以要用 be away from，它后面可以跟表示一段时间的状语，结合语境可知用现在完成时，

现在完成时态的结构为 have/has+动词的过去分词，主语是 They，所以助动词用 have，故选 C。

5.（2016·苏州）—Hobo and Eddie__________the cinema to watch the film *Zootopia*.

—Oh，that's why I can't find them now.

A. have gone to　　B. have been to　　C. has gone to　　D. has been to

【考点】现在完成时。

【分析】——Hobo 和 Eddie 去电影院看《疯狂动物城》这部影片了。

——哦，那就是我现在为什么找不到他们的原因。

【解答】答案：A。

have/has been to 表示去过某地，人已经回来；have/has gone to 表示去了某地，人未回来。根据 that's why I can't find them now 可知那就是我现在为什么找不到他们的原因，说明了他们两个人现在不在这里，去看电影了。所以应用 have/has gone to。Hobo and Eddie 是两个人，所以助动词应该用 have。故选 A。

6.（2016·武汉）I don't feel very well，Jack. I'm afraid you______me your cold.

A. give　　B. had given　　C. have given　　D. would give

【考点】现在完成时。

【分析】我感觉很不好受，Jack。恐怕你把感冒传染给我了。

【解答】答案：C。

结合句意是说我感觉很不好受，恐怕你把感冒传染给我了，也就是传染感冒的动作发生在过去，对现在造成一定的影响，用现在完成时 have/has+过去分词，主语 you，故助动词用 have，give 的过去分词 given，故选 C。

7.（2016·北京）It's nice to see you again. We______each other since 2014.

A. won't see　　B. don't see　　C. haven't seen　　D. didn't see

【考点】现在完成时。

【分析】很高兴再次见到你。自从 2014 以来，我们彼此就没有见过面。

【解答】答案：C。

现在完成时，表示过去发生或已经完成的动作对现在造成的影响或结果。或从过去已经开始，持续到现在的动作或状态。根据 It's nice to see you again.“很高兴再次见到你。”可知是说现在见到了。根据 since 2014 可知从过去已经开始，持续到现在的状态，应该用现在完成时态。现在完成时态的构成：助动词 have/has+过去分词。否定式为：助动词 have/has+not+过去分词。根据主语 we，助动词应该用 haven't seen，故选 C。

8.（2016·张家界）— ________you ever__________the history museum，Paul? —No. I haven't.

A. Do；visit　　B. Did；visit　　C. have；visited

【考点】现在完成时。

【分析】——Paul，你曾经参观过历史博物馆吗？——不，没有。

【解答】答案：C。

根据问句中的 ever 结合答语“No. I haven't.”判断问句用现在完成时，现在完成时的构成是：主语+have/has+动词的过去分词；变一般疑问句把 have 提到主语前面，故答案为 C。

9.（2016·郴州）Yang Jiang，a famous female writer，______________for abut a month so far.

A. died　　B. has been dead　　C.has been died

【考点】现在完成时。

【分析】杨绛，一位著名的女性作家，到目前为止去世大约一个月了。

【解答】答案：B。

句中的时间状语 for+时间段是现在完成时的标志，且句子中的谓语动词必须是延续性动词。现在完成时的构成是：主语+have/has+动词的过去分词；主语是第三人称单数，助动词用 has，die 是非延续性动词，不能与时间段连用，be dead 表状态，可以与时间段连用，故答案为 B。

10.（2016·黔南州）Rick_____a lot about Chinese culture since he came to China.

A. has learned　　B. will learn　　C. learns　　D. learned

【考点】现在完成时。

【分析】自从 Rick 来到中国，他学到了很多关于中国文化的知识。

【解答】答案：A。

根据时间状语从句 since he came to China，结合句意“自从 Rick 来到中国，他学到了很多关于中国文化的知识。”可知句子强调对于现在造成的结果和影响，判断主句用现在完成时。现在完成时的构成是：主语+have/has+动词的过去分词；主语是第三人称单数，助动词用 has，故答案为 A。

11.（2016・烟台）—Lucy has____to London. How can I get in touch with her?

—Don't worry. She will phone you as soon as she_____there.

A. been，will get　　B. been，gets　　C. gone，will get　　D. gone，gets

【考点】现在完成时；一般现在时。

【分析】——露西已经去了伦敦，我怎么能和她联系上呢？

——别担心，她一到那里，就将打电话给你。

【解答】答案 D。

由语境：我怎么能和她联系上呢？可推断到 Lucy 已经去了伦敦，不在说话者身旁，故用 has gone to，as soon as 引导时间状语从句，用一般现在时代替将来时，主语为单数 she 用 gets，故选 D。

12.（2016・黑龙江）—May I speak to Mr. Lee? —Sorry，he__Harbin，he __the city for two days.

A. has been to；has been in　　B. has gone to；has been to　　C. has gone to；has been in

【考点】现在完成时。

【分析】——我可以和李先生说话吗？

——对不起，他去了哈尔滨，他在这座城市已经两天了。

【解答】答案 C。

has been to 是指某人去过某地，但是现在不在那里；has gone to 是指某人去了某地，还没回来，也可能是在去的途中；has been in 是指某人从过去的某个时间到现在一直在某地。根据回答 Sorry 可知他已经去了哈尔滨，用 has gone to。再根据 for two days 应该可知他在这座城市已经两天了，后面一空用 has been in，故选 C

13.（2016・黑龙江）Lei Feng ______ for many years，but his spirit is still encouraging us.

A. died　　B. has been dead　　C. has died

【考点】现在完成时。

【分析】雷锋已经去世许多年了，但他的精神仍在激励着我们。

【解答】答案为 B。

现在完成时常跟表示一段时间的时间状语，如“for+一段时间”“since+时间点”“during the past+一段时间”等，由设空处后的 for many years 可知应用现在完成时表状态的持续，且与一段时间连用动词要用延续性动词。die 是短暂性动词，应转换为 be dead 表状态，结合其现在完成时的构成 has/have+过去分词，主语为单数，故为 has been dead，故选 B。

14.（2016・怀化）—May I speak to Mr. Smith? —Sorry，he isn't in. He_______Changsha.

A. has been to　　B. has gone to　　C. went to

【考点】现在完成时。

【分析】——我可以跟史密斯先生通话吗？——抱歉，他不在家，他去长沙了。

【解答】答案：B。

根据设空处前面的 Sorry, he isn't in 推断史密斯先生去了长沙并且没有回来。英语中用 have/has gone to 表示去了某地，还没回来。用 have/has been to 表示为“曾经去过某地”，现在已不在那里了，故答案为 B。

15.（2016・上海）This medicine____millions of people's lives since it was put into use.

A. is saving　　B. will save　　C. has saved　　D. had saved

【考点】现在完成时。
【分析】这种药自投入使用来就挽救了数百万人的性命。
【解答】答案为 C。
根据从属连词 since 可知，需要用现在完成时，表示从过去某个时间点开始到现在的动作，而且这个动作对现在有影响。此处 since 引导时间状语从句，since 后接表示一个时间点的句子，说明从过去的时间点到现在的这段时间里的动作．现在完成时的构成为 has/have+过去分词，故选 C。

【巩固练习】

一、用所给单词的适当形式填空。

1. I____ already ____（see）the film. I ________（see）it last week.
2. _____ he ____（finish）his work today? Not yet.
3. My father ____ just ____（come）back from work. He is tired now.
4. Where's Li Ming? He __________（go）to the teacher's office.
5. I __________（work）here since I ______（move）here in 1999.
6. So far I _______________（make）quite a few friends here.
7. How long ________ the Wangs ______________（stay）here? For two weeks.
8. I ________ just ___________（finish）my homework.
9. He ________（go）to school on foot every day.
10.____ you ______（find）your science book yet?
11. If it ____（be）fine tomorrow，I'll go with you.
12. The students ____________（read）English when the teacher came in.
13. Look! The monkey __________（climb）the tree.
14. My mother __________（come）to see me next Sunday.
15. I've lost my pen. _________ you ________（see）it anywhere?

【参考答案】

1. have，seen，saw　2. Has，finished　3. has，come
4. has gone　5. have worked，moved　6. have made
7. have，stayed　8. have，finished　9. goes
10. have，found　11. is　12. were reading
13. is climbing　14. is coming　15. Have，seen

二、单项选择。

1. How long have you _______ here?
   A. come　B. got　C. arrived　D. been
2. My grandpa died _________.
   A. at the age of my 2　B. for 2 years　C. when I was 2　D. my age was 6
3. Jane has _____ to BeiJing. She will come back tomorrow.
   A. been　B. gone　C. went　D. never been
4. It is ten years _____ I last saw her.
   A. after　B. since　C. for　D. that
5. —Who will go to the station to meet Lorry? —I will. I _____ her several times.
   A. met　B. have met　C. had met　D. will meet

6. —What a nice dress! How long _____ you _____ it? —Just 2 weeks.
   A. will; buy　　B. did; buy　　C. are; having　　D. have; had
7. —Do you know Lydia very well? —Yes, She and I _____ friends since we were very young.
   A. have made　　B. have become　　C. have been　　D. have turned
8. The Smiths _______ in China for 8 years.
   A. has lived　　B. lived　　C. have been　　D. live
9. —Hello, this is Mr. Green speaking. Can I speak to Mr. Black?
   —Sorry. He ______ the Bainiao Park.
   A. has been to　　B. has gone to　　C. went to　　D. will go to
10.—____ you ever ____ to the US? —Yes, twice.
   A. Have; gone　　B. Have; been　　C, Do; go　　D. were; going

三、按要求改写句子。

1. I have been to Macau before.（改为否定句）
I _________ _________ been to Macau before.
2. He hasn't come to school because he was ill.（对画线部分提问）
______ _______ he come to school?
3. I bough a new bike just now.（用 just 改写）
I ____ just ____ a new bike.
4. We began to learn English three years ago.（改为同义句）
We ____ ____English ____three years
5. He has never surfed, _______ _______?（改成反义疑问句）
6. They have been here since 2000.（对画线部分提问）
_______ _______have they been here?
7. The old man _________ last year. He has _______ _______for a year.（die）（动词填空）
8. Miss Gao left an hour ago.（同义句转换）
Miss Gao has _______ ________ ________ an hour ago.

四、用"never, ever, already, just, yet, for, since"填空。

1. I have _______ seen him before, so I have no idea about him.
2. Jack has _________ finished his homework.
3. Mr. Wang has taught in this school ________ ten years.
4. "Have you ________ seen the film?" "No, I have ________ seen it."
5. "Has the bus left _______?" "Yes, it has _________ left."

7.8　现在完成进行时

1. 现在完成进行时的定义

现在完成进行时表示动作从过去某一时间开始，一直延续到现在，可能还要继续下去。

2. 现在完成进行时的构成

现在完成进行时是由"have/has+been+动词的现在分词"构成。

3. 现在完成进行时的基本句型

肯定式：I/We have been working.
疑问式：Have you been working?
简略回答：Yes，I/we have. No，I/we haven't.
肯定式：He/She/It has been working.
疑问式：Has he/she/it been working?
简略回答：Yes，he/she/it has. No，he/she/it hasn't.

4. 现在完成进行时的用法

（1）强调动作还未结束，还要继续下去。例如：

I've been reading this book for two hours，but I haven't finished it. 这本书我已读了两个小时了，但我还没读完。

I've read this book. 我已读完这本书了。

（2）强调动作延续时间的长久或带感情色彩。例如：

She has always been working like that. 她一贯是这样工作的。

（3）表示现在这段时间反复发生的事情。例如：

We've been seeing quite a lot of each other recently. 最近我们经常见面。

5. 现在完成时和现在完成进行时的区别

（1）现在完成进行时一般强调过去发生的动作现在仍在继续。现在完成时强调过去发生的动作现在已经完成或表示曾经发生过。例如：

I have been writing an article. 我一直在写一篇文章。（仍在）

I have written an article. 这已写好一篇文章。（已完成）

I have been reading that book since last week. 上周以来，我一直在读那本书。（还在读）

I have read that book before. 以前我曾读过那本书。（动作在过去曾经发生过）

（2）现在完成进行时表示刚刚结束的动作，强调动作在不久前持续进行，带有感情色彩。

现在完成时表示已经结束的动作，强调动作的结果。例如：

Where have you been? We have been looking for you everywhere. 你到哪里去了?我们到处在找你。（表示刚刚结束的动作）

We have looked for him，but haven't found him. 我们找过他，但没有找到他。（表示动作已结束，强调动作的结果）

【现在完成时与现在完成进行时比较练习】

一、改错。

1. All these years they are contributing articles to our magazine.
2. I have been drinking five cups of coffee this afternoon.
3. What have you been doing before you left Oxford?
4. It's a good job. Have you done it all by yourself?
5. It's a long time since you come to see me.
6. Alice didn't see much of Henry lately.
7. I'm glad to tell you that you passed the exam.

二、根据所给动词的适当形式填空。

1. You know，I ________ （look）for a job for three months，and this is my first formal interview.
2. My sister ________ （stay）in Beijing for three months last year.
3. The little boy is dirty all over because he ________ （play）in the mud all the morning.
4. I ________ （wonder）if you were free this afternoon.
5. Here he is! We ________ （wait）anxiously for him since last night.

三、选择题。

1. — I'm sure Andrew will win the first prize in the final.
   — I think so. He ________ for it for months.（2008 江苏）
   A. is preparing B. was preparing C. had been preparing D. has been preparing
2. By the time he realizes he _____ into a trap，it'll be too late for him to do anything about it.（2008 山东）
   A. walks B. walked C. has walked D. had walked
3. So far this year we _______ a fall in house prices by between 5 and 10 percent.（2008 福建）
   A. saw B. see C. had seen D. have seen
4. Cathy is taking notes of the grammatical rules in class at Sunshine School，where she ______ English for a year.（2007 湖南）
   A. studies B. studied C. is studying D. has been studying
5. Danny _________ hard for long to realize his dream and now he is popular.（2007 福建）
   A. works B. is working C. has worked D. had worked
6. —I have got a headache. —No wonder. You______in front of that computer too long.（2007 江西）
   A. work B. are working C. have been working D. worked
7. The unemployment rate in this district_______ from 6% to 5% in the past two years.（2007 上海）
   A. has fallen B. had fallen C. is falling D. was falling
8. Now that she is out of job，Lucy ___ going back to school，but she hasn't decided yet.（北京）
   A. had considered B. has been considering
   C. considered D. is going to consider
9. —_____ you _____him around the museum yet? —Yes. We had a great time there.（2007 江苏）
   A. Have；shown B. Do；show C. Had；shown D. Did；show
10. —Hi，Tracy，you look pale. —I am tired. I _______ the living room all day.
   A. painted B. had painted C. have been painting D. have painted

【参考答案】

一、1. are→have been 2. have been drinking→have drunk 3. have→had 4. Have you done→Did you do 5. come→came 6. Didn't seen→hasn't seen 7. passed→have passed

二、1. have been looking 2. stayed 3. has been playing/has played 4. wondered 5. have been waiting

三、1—5 DCDDC 6—10 CABA C

7.9 过去进行时

1. 过去进行时的定义

过去进行时表示过去某个具体时刻正在进行的事情或动作。

2. 过去进行时的结构

过去进行时由“was/were+doing（现在分词）”构成。

3. 过去进行时的基本用法

（1）表示过去某段时间内持续进行的动作或者事情。常用的时间状语有：this morning，the whole morning，all day yesterday，from nine to ten last evening，when，while。例如：

We were watching TV from seven to nine last night.
昨天晚上七点到九点的时候我们在看电视。

What was he researching all day last Sunday? 上周日他一整天都在研究什么？

My brother fell while he was riding his bicycle and hurt himself.
我哥哥骑自行车的时候从车上摔下来，受伤了。

It was raining when they left the station. 他们离开车站的时候天正在下雨。

When I got to the top of the mountain，the sun was shining. 当我到达山顶的时候，阳光灿烂。

（2）表示在过去某个时间点发生的事情。时间点可以用介词短语、副词或从句来表示。例如：

What was she doing at nine o’clock yesterday? 昨天晚上九点她在做什么？（介词短语表示时间点）

When I saw him he was decorating his room. 当我看见他的时候他正在装饰房间。（when 从句表示时间点）

（3）在复合句中，如果主要动作和背景动作都是延续的或同时发生的，那么主从句的动词都可用过去进行时。例如：

While he was waiting for the bus，he was reading a newspaper. 他边等车边看报。（两个动作都是延续的）

He was cleaning his car while I was cooking. 他擦车时我在做饭。（两个动作同时进行）

（4）表示在过去即将发生的动作。例如：

I asked him whether he was coming back for supper. 我问他是否回来吃晚饭。

（5）表示过去的反复性或习惯性的动作，常与副词 always，constantly，continually，frequently 等连用，常常带有说话人的某种感情色彩。例如：

His mother was always working like that. 他目前总是那样工作。

（6）通常不能用于过去进行时的动词主要有：agree，be，believe，belong，care，forget，hate，have（拥有），hear，know，like，love，mean，mind，notice，own，remember，seem，suppose，understand，want，wish 等。例如：

误：I was knowing the answer.
正：I knew the answer. 我知道答案。
误：I wasn’t understanding him.
正：I didn’t understand him. 我不明白他的意思。

【典型例题】

1. Mary ___ a dress when she cut her finger.

A. made　　B. is making　　C. was making　　D. makes

答案 C。割伤手指是已发生的事情，应用过去时。同时，when 表时间的同时性，“玛丽在做衣服时”提供事情发生的背景，因此用过去进行时。

2. As she ___ the newspaper，Granny ___ asleep.

A. read；was falling　　B. was reading；fell
C. was reading；was falling　　D. read；fell

答案 B。句中的 as = when/while，意为“当……之时”。描述一件事发生的背景时，用过去进行；一个长动作发生的时候，另一个短动作发生。句意为“在她看报纸时，奶奶睡着了”。句中的 fell（fall 的过去时）是系动词，后跟形容词，如：fall sick。

4. 过去进行时和一般过去时的区别

过去进行时与一般过去时，两者都表示过去发生的动作，但过去进行时表示在过去某一特定的时间点或时间段正在进行的动作，而一般过去时表示在过去时间完成的动作。例如：

I was typing a letter last night. 昨晚我在打一封信。（可能没打完）

I typed some letters last night. 我昨晚打了一些信。（已经打完）

过去进行时表示动作在持续或未完成，而一般过时往往表示某一动作已经完成。例如：

I was reading the book at that time.（未读完，“读”的片段）

I read the book yesterday.（已读完，表整个“读”）

一般过去时表示只做一次动作，而过去进行时表示动作反复地进行。例如：

She waved to me. 她朝我挥了挥手。

It was raining all night.（优先用 was raining，rained 为持续动词，故也可使用）

He was writing a letter the whole of afternoon.（短暂动词与持续时间连用，表反复、连续发生，不可用一般过去时）

5. while，when 与 as 用法辨析

（1）when 可以和延续性动词连用，也可以和短暂性动词连用；而 while 和 as 只能和延续性动词连用。例如：

Why do you want a new job when you've got such a good one already?（get 为短暂性动词）你已经找到如此好的工作，为何还想再找新的？

Sorry，I was out when you called me.（call 为短暂性动词）对不起，你打电话时我刚好外出了。

Strike while the iron is hot.（is 为延续性动词，表示一种持续的状态）趁热打铁。

The students took notes as they listened.（listen 为延续性动词）学生们边听课边做笔记。

（2）when 引导从句的谓语动词可以在主句谓语动作之前、之后或同时发生；while 和 as 引导从句的谓语动作必须是和主句谓语动作同时发生。从句动作在主句动作前发生，只用 when。例如：

When he had finished his homework，he took a short rest.（finished 先发生）当他完成作业后，他休息了一会儿。

When I got to the airport，the guests had left.（got to 后发生）当我赶到飞机场时，客人们已经离开了。

从句动作和主句动作同时发生，且从句动作为延续性动词时，when，while，as 都可使用。例如：

When/While/As we were dancing，a stranger came in.（dance 为延续性动词）当我们跳舞时，一位陌生人走了进来。

When/While/As she was making a phonecall，I was writing a letter.（make 为延续性动词）当她在打电话时，我正在写信。

注意：当主句、从句动作同时进行，从句动作的时间概念淡化，而主要表示主句动作发生的背景或条件时，只能用 as。这时，as 常表示“随着……”；“一边……，一边……”之意。while 表示“在……期间”。例如：

As the time went on，the weather got worse.（as 表示“随着……”之意）

As years go by，China is getting stronger and richer. 随着时间一年一年过去，中国变得越来越富强了。

The little girls sang as they went. 小姑娘们一边走，一边唱。

（3）在将来时从句中，常用 when，且从句须用一般时代替将来时。例如：

You shall borrow the book when I have finished reading it. 在我读完这本书后，你可以借阅。

When the manager comes here for a visit next week，I'll talk with him about this. 下周，经理来这参观时，我会和他谈谈此事。

when 做并列连词用，其意思为“正在这/那时、突然”（when=and at that time），常用于下列句式：

① sb.was doing…when… 正在做……，这时/突然……例如：

I was thinking about my new plan when a good idea occurred to me. 我正在考虑我的新计划，这时一个好主意浮现出来。

I was reading a book attentively when an old friend came to see me. 我正在全神贯注地读一本书，忽然一位老友来访。

说明：在这个句型中，主句的谓语动词通常是延续性动词，从句的时态用一般过去时，when 翻译成“这时”。

② sb.was about to do/going to do/on the point of doing…when… 正要做……，这时/突然……例如：

They were just about to set out when it began to rain. 他们正要出发，这时下起雨来了。

He was on the point of leaving，when someone knocked at the door. 他刚要走就有人敲门。

说明：在这个句型中，be（just）about to do 可以换成 sb. was/were on the point of doing sth. When…，when 翻译成“这时”。

③ sb. had（just）done…when… 刚做完……，这时/突然……例如：

I had just lain down when the telephone rang. 我刚躺下，这时电话铃响了。

说明：在这个句型中，just 用于加强语气，也可以不要，when 翻译成“这时”。

【模拟训练】

★中考典型例题：

考题 1：Mary ___ a dress when she cut her finger.

A. made　　B. is making　　C. was making　　D. makes

答案 C。割伤手指是已发生的事情，应用过去时。同时，when 表时间的同时性，“玛丽在做衣服时”提供事情发生的背景，因此用过去进行时。

考题 2：As she ___ the newspaper，Granny ___ asleep.

A. read；was falling　　B. was reading；fell

C. was reading；was falling　　D. read；fell

答案 B。句中的 as = when/while，意为“当……之时”。描述一件事发生的背景时，用过去进行时；一个长动作发生的时候，另一个短动作发生。本句句意为：当奶奶正在读报纸的时候，她睡着了。as 表示两个动词同时进行，有“一边，一边”的含义，fall asleep 入睡，表示一种状态，睡着了，无需用进行时态形式，故选 B。

考题 3：Tom ___ into the house when no one ___ .

A. slipped；was looking　　B. had slipped；looked

C. slipped；had looked　　D. was slipping；looked

【解析】此题先要理解好 when，表“此时”，说明主句中 slipped 是较短行为，而 look 是较长行为的片段，即汤姆溜进房子，此时没人瞧见，故选 A。

★高考典型例题：

1.（2009·辽宁高考）It just isn't fair _____ I was working as a waiter last month，my friends were lying on the beach.

A. whenever　　B. though　　C. for　　D. while

【解析】句意：这不公平：上个月我在做服务员时，我的朋友们却躺在海滩上。while 引导时间状语从句时，从句常用进行时态。whenever “无论何时，每次”，引导让步状语从句或名词性从句；though “尽

管，虽然”，引导让步状语从句；for“因为”，引导原因状语从句。三项均不符合句意。

【答案】D

2.（2010·全国卷Ⅰ）Mary made coffee ________her guests were finishing their meal.

A. so that　　B. although　　C. while　　D. as if

【解析】句意：趁客人们正在吃饭，玛丽煮好了咖啡。so that 表示“以至于，为了”，引导结果与目的状语从句；although 表示“虽然”，引导让步状语从句；while“当……的时候，虽然”，可以引导时间状语从句和让步状语从句；as if “好像”，引导方式状语从句。根据句意以及四个选项的用法可知选 C。

【答案】C

【真题演练】

1. — Have you known Dr. Jackson for a long time?

—Yes，since she__the Chinese Society.（2008 全国 I）

A. has joined　　B. joins

C. had joined　　D. joined

2. I called Hannah many times yesterday evening，but I couldn't get through. Her brother _____ on the phone all the time!（2008 湖南）

A. was talking　　B. has been talking

C. has talked　　D. talked

3. —I don't believe you've already finished reading the book.

—I _____it to you this morning!（2008 浙江）

A. would lend　　B. was lending　　C. had lent　　D. lent

4. He _______ football regularly for many years when he was young.（2008 天津）

A. was playing　　B. played

C. has played　　D. had played

5. —Is there anything wrong，Bob? You look sad.

—Oh，nothing much. In fact，I ________ of my friends back home.（2007 全国 II）

A. have just thought　　B. was just thinking

C. would just think　　D. will just be thinking

6. —I saw Jane and her boyfriend in the park at eight yesterday evening.

—Impossible. She_________TV with me in my home then.（2007 福建）

A. watched　　B. had watched

C. would watch　　D. was watching

7. —Ouch! You hurt me!

—I am sorry. But I ______any harm. I______to drive a rat out.（2007 江西）

A. didn't mean；tried　　B. don't mean；am trying

C. haven't meant；tried　　D. didn't mean；was trying

8. —Jack bought a new mobile phone the other day.

—________? That's his third one in just one month.（2007 浙江）

A. Had he　　B. Did he　　C. Does he　　D. Has he

【参考答案】

1—5　DADBB　　6—8　DDB

【全国中考英语过去进行时试题汇编】

1.（2011 北京）—What were you doing this time yesterday? —I___on the grass and drawing a picture.

A. sit B. sat C. am sitting D. was sitting

2.（2011 广西北海）While I ____________ TV，the bell rang.

A. watch B. watched C. am watching D. was watching

3.（2011 山东淄博）—Why didn't you answer my telephone yesterday? —Sorry. I______a bath.

A. took B. take C. am taking D. was taking

4.（2011 云南昆明）While the alien ________ a souvenir，the girl called the police.

A. was buying B. bought C. buys D. is buying

5.（2011 哈尔滨）—I called you at 6 o'clock yesterday evening，but nobody answered.

—I'm sorry. I________my friend download the movie *Kung Fu Panda Ⅱ* when the telephone rang.

A. would help B. helped C. was helping

6.（2011 江苏盐城）I_________along the road when I saw Peter. So we stopped and had a chat.

A. walked B. was walking C. would walk D. had walked

7.（2011 贵州安顺）—What did the teacher say just now? —Sorry. I didn't catch it. I ____ something else.

A. think B. will think C. was thinking D. had thought

8.（2011 湖南长沙）When I came back yesterday evening，my brother _________ his homework.

A. is doing B. has done C. was doing

9.（2011 浙江衢州）Mrs White _____dinner when her son came home.

A. is cooking B. was cooking C. are cooking D. were cooking

10.（2011 江苏宿迁）—Did you see Mr. Black just now? —Yes. He _______ his car when I met him.

A. parked B. was parking C. parks D. will park

11.（2011 浙江宁波）—Amy，I called you yesterday evening，but nobody answered the phone.

—Oh，I __________ a walk with my mother at that time.

A. take B. took C. am taking D. was taking

12.（2011 广州）Yesterday evening，I ___along the street when I suddenly met my maths teacher.

A. walk B. walked C. was walking D. am walking

13.（2011 福建福州）—Where were you at 7:00 last night? —I _____ to my mom at home.

A. write B. was writing C. wrote

14.（2011 山东菏泽）—Why didn't you go to play football with us yesterday afternoon?

—I _____my mother with the housework then.

A. helped B. was helping C. had helped D. have been helping

15.（2011 山东枣庄）He ____when the UFO arrived. He didn't wake until the UFO disappeared.

A. slept B. was sleeping C. was doing homework D. was singing

16.（2011 湖南郴州）I________ my homework at nine o'clock last Sunday morning.

A. am doing B. was doing C. do

17.（2011 江苏徐州）I was very angry with John—he just_______ when I spoke to him.

A. isn't listening B. hasn't listened C. didn't listen D. wasn't listening

18.（2011 河南省）—I called you at 4：00 yesterday afternoon，but no one answered.

—Sorry，I _____ with my friends at that time.

A. swim B. swam C. will swim D. was swimming

19.（2011 湖南湘潭）Mr. Li ___us a report on our environment when the earthquake happened in Japan.

A. gave B.is giving C. was giving

20.（2011 广东深圳）—Mr. Lee____to a student when I entered the classroom this morning.

—He is very patient_______he is young.

A. talking；but　　B. talks；though

C. was talking；though　　D. talked；however

21.（2011 辽宁本溪）—Were you at school when he came to see you? —Yes，I ____a math class.

A. had　　B. was having　　C. am having　　D. have

22.（2011 广西梧州）I met a good friend of mine while I______on the street.

A. walks　　B. walk　　C. was walking　　D. am walking

23.（2011 四川宜宾）I ________ when the UFO landed.

A. am watching TV　　B. was watching TV　　C. have watched TV　　D. watched TV

24.（2011 呼和浩特）The girl with two cats______in the yard when the earthquake happened.

A. was playing　　B. is playing　　C. are playing　　D. were playing

7.10　过去完成时

7.10.1　过去完成时的概念与结构特点

概念：过去完成时表示过去某一时间或动作以前已经发生或完成了的动作。它表示动作发生的时间是“过去的过去”。它是一个相对的时态，只有在和过去某个时间或动作相比较时才会用到。

构成：过去完成时由“助动词 had+过去分词”构成，它的否定句是在 had 后边加 not，变一般疑问句是把 had 提前。其中 had 通用于各种人称。例如：

I had reached the station before 9:00 o’clock.

I had not reached the station before 9:00 o’clock.

Had you reached the station before 9:00 o’clock?（思考如何回答）

7.10.2　过去完成时的基本用法

（1）表示在过去某一时间或动作之前已经发生或完成的动作。这个过去的时间状语有 by，by the time of 等介词短语或者是 when，before，after 等引导的从句。

① 由 by，by the end of，by then 等引导的状语从句。例如：

By the time they arrived，the bus had left.

昨夜十点钟之前他已经上床睡觉了。He had gone to bed by 10：00 last night.

错误说法：He had gone to bed at 10:00 last night. 这时应该用过去时。

② 由 when，before，after 等引导的从句。例如：

They had already finished cleaning the classroom when their teacher came. 当老师来的时候他们已经打扫完了教师。＝They had already finished cleaning the classroom before their teacher came.

③ 在 told，said，knew，heard，thought 等动词引导的宾语从句中，一般用过去完成时，表示在谈话或产生某种想法之前发生的事情。例如：

He said that he had known her well. 他说他很熟悉她。

She wondered who had left the door open. 她想知道是谁没关门。

I thought I had sent the letter a week before. 我认为我一星期前就把信寄出去了。

（2）表示从过去某一时间开始一直延续到过去另一时间的动作或状态。常与 for 或 since 等连用。例如：

She had worked in this school since it opened 25 years ago. 从这个学校25年开办以来她就一直在这工作。

I had been at the bus stop for 20 minutes when a bus finally came. 当车来的时候，我在车站已等了20分钟。

7.10.3 过去完成时的语法判定

1. 根据时间状语来判定

（1）一般说来，各种时态都有特定的时间状语。与过去完成时连用的时间状语有：by、by the end of、by then，或者 when、after、before 等引导的状语从句，句子中出现的 already、just、once 等词，以及 for…或 since…。例如：

They had planted six hundred trees before last Wednesday. 上周三以前他们已经种了六百棵树了。

（2）在 told、said、knew、heard、thought 等动词后的宾语从句。例如：

She said that she had seen the film before. 她说她以前看过这部电影。

（3）表示意向的动词，如 hope、wish、expect、think、intend、mean、suppose 等，用过去完成时表示"原本……未能……"。例如：

We had hoped that you would come，but you didn't. 我本来希望你能来，但是你没有来。

2. 根据语义或上下文来判定

例如：I returned the book that I had borrowed. 我已归还了我借的书。

She found the key that she had lost. 她丢失的钥匙找到了。

I met Wang Tao in the street yesterday. We hadn't seen each other since he went to Beijing.

注意：不一定非得用过去完成时表示过去先发生的事情，因为有时句意已非常清楚。

（1）before、after 引导的时间状语从句中，由于 before 和 after 本身已表达了动作的先后关系，若主、从句表示的动作紧密相连，则主、从句都用一般过去时。例如：

After he had finished his homework，he went to bed. /After I finished my work，I went home.

After he closed the door，he left the classroom.

（2）动作的顺序十分清楚时，通常用一般过去时表示依次发生的事件。例如：

I got out of the taxi，paid the fare，tipped the driver and dashed into the station.

【模拟训练】

★中考典型例题

考题 1：He ______ in Shanghai University for four years before he ______ Beijing.

A. studied；had gone　　B. had studied；went

C. has studied；goes　　D. had studied；had gone

解析："他去北京之前在上海大学学习了4年"。在上海学习的动作发生在去北京之前，因此第一个空应用过去完成时。此题选 B。

考题 2：The students ________ busily when Miss Brown went to get a book she ____ in the office.

A. had written；left　　B. were writing；has left

C. had written；had left　　D. were writing；had left

解析：答案 D。"把书忘在办公室"发生在"去取书"这一过去的动作之前，因此"忘了书"这一动作发生在过去的过去，用过去完成时。句中 when 代表时间的一点，表示在"同学们正忙于……"这一背景下，when 所引导的动作正在发生。因此前一句应用过去进行时。

考题 3：Xiao Pei said she ______ Hainan for 3 months.

A. has been in　　B. had been in　　C. had been to　　D. had gone to

解析："小培说她去了海南三个月。" have been to 和 have gone to 都是短暂性的动词短语。所以应用表示状态的 had been in。应选 B。

【真题演练】

1. When Li Ming hurried home，he found that his mother ____already____to hospital.

A. has；been sent　　B. had；sent　　C. has；sent　　D. had；been sent

2. We ____five English songs by the end of last term.

A. had learned　　B. learned　　C. have learned　　D. will have learned

3. Han Mei told me she _____lunch，so she was very hungry.

A. has had　　B. hasn't have　　C. have had　　D. hadn't had

4. By the end of 1976，many buildings _____built in the city.

A. have been　　B. have　　C. had been　　D. will

5. She _____her keys in the office so she had to wait until her husband ____home.

A. has left；comes　　B. had left；would come　　C. had left；came　　D. left；had come

6. He said that it was at least ten years since I _____a good drink.

A. had enjoyed　　B. was enjoying　　C. have enjoyed　　D. have been enjoying

7. The meeting _____when Mr. Wang _____to school.

A. has begun；get　　B. has been on；get　　C. had begun；got　　D. had been on；got

【参考答案】

1—5　DADCC　　6—7　AC

【例题精析】

1. Tom was disappointed that most of the guests _______when he _________at the party.

A. left；had arrived　　B. left；arrived

C. had left；had arrived　　D. had left；arrived

【答案】D

【解析】guests 先"离开"，Tom 后"到达"，"到达"用一般过去时，"离开"用过去完成时。

2. When Jack arrived he learned Mary __________ for almost an hour.

A. had gone　　B. had set off　　C. had left　　D. had been away

【答案】D

【解析】因有表示"一段时间"的状语"for almost an hour"，所以选入的动词必须是延续性动词。

3. We __________ four thousand new words by the end of last year.

A. had learned　　B. have learned　　C. learned　　D. will have learned

【答案】A

【解析】根据 by 短语中的 last year 可知正确选项为 A。

★课堂运用

【基础】

1. The police found that the house __________ and a lot of things __________.

A. has broken into；has been stolen　　B. had broken into；had been stolen

C. has been broken into；stolen D. had been broken into；stolen

2. The students _______busily when Miss Brown went to get a book she ________in the office.

A. had written；left B. were writing；has left

C. had written；had left D. were writing；had left

【巩固】

1.The pen I __________ I __________ is on my desk，right under my nose.

A. think；lost B. thought；had lost

C. think；had lost D. thought；have lost

2. Helen ________her keys in the office so she had to wait until her husband ________home.

A. has left；comes B. left；had come

C. had left；came D. had left；would come

【拔高】

1. They asked me to have a drink with them. I said that it was at least ten years since I _____ a good drink.

A. had enjoyed B. was enjoying

C. enjoyed D. had been enjoying

2. —Did you meet Tom at the airport? —No，he __________ by the time I arrived there.

A. has left B. had left C. left D. left

【答案解析】

【基础】

1. D。found 是过去时，其后的宾语从句的动作发生在 found 动作之前。

2. D。went 说明事情发生在过去，而“把书忘在办公室”的动作发生在 went 之前。

【巩固】

1. B。“丢笔”是在“认为”之前发生的动作。

2. C。had to wait 说明事情发生在过去，而“忘带钥匙”的动作发生在“等丈夫回家”之前。

【拔高】

1. A。过去完成时用在时间状语从句中。

2. B。根据 by 短语后句子的时态可判断，此题应用过去完成时。

7.11 过去完成进行时

7.11.1 过去完成进行时的构成

过去完成进行时由“had been+现在分词”构成。例如：

She had been suffering from a bad cold when she took the exam. 她在考试之前一直患重感冒。

Had they been expecting the news for some time? 他们期待这个消息有一段时间了吧?

7.11.2 过去完成进行时的基本用法

（1）表示过去某一时间之前一直进行的动作。

过去完成进行时表示动作在过去某一时间之前开始，一直延续到这一过去时间。和过去完成时一样，过去完成进行时也必须以一过去时间为前提。过去完成进行时也是一个相对的时态，上下文中须有明示或暗示的作为参照的过去的时间。例如：

I had been looking for it for days before I found it. 这东西我找了好多天才找着。

They had only been waiting for the bus a few minutes when it came. 他们只等了几分钟车就来了。

（2）表示反复的动作。例如：

He had been mentioning your name to me. 他过去多次向我提到过你的名字。

（3）过去完成进行时还常用于间接引语中。例如：

The doctor asked what he had been eating. 医生问他吃了什么。

I asked where they had been staying all those days. 我问他们那些天待在哪儿。

（4）过去完成进行时之后也可接具有“突然”之意的 when 分句。例如：

I had only been reading a few minutes when he came in. 我刚看了几分钟他就进来了。

She'd only been reviewing her lessons for a short while when her little sister interrupted her. 她温习功课才一会儿，她妹妹就打断她了。

注意以下特别的含义：

（1）尚未完成。例如：

He had been writing the novel.（He had not finished it yet.）

（2）企图。例如：

He had been studying the meaning of this proverb.（He was trying to study it.）

（3）未得结果。例如：

We had been studying what our enemy had said.（But we were not able to understand it.）

（4）最近情况。例如：

He had been quarrelling with his wife.（lately）

（5）反复动作。例如：

He had been asking me the same question.（many times）

（6）情绪。例如：

What had he been doing?（不耐烦）

这种时态很少用在否定句中，而多以过去完成时代替：

He had not practised English for many years.（普通说法）

He had not been practising English for many years.（少见）

这种时态还可用在 said，supposed 等引起的间接引语中，代替现在完成进行时。例如：

He said，“I have been speaking to John.” = He said that he had been speaking to John.

He thought，“She was watching me when I passed.” = He thought that she had been watching him when he had passed.

7.11.3 过去完成进行时和过去完成时的比较

1. 相同点

（1）谓语动词都是延续性的，如 live，learn，study，wait，work，rain 等。

（2）与“一段时间”连用时，两种时态可以互换。

例句：

I had been learning/learned English for ten years by last year.

I had been working/worked three hours when he called.

2. 不同点

过去完成时：强调动作的结果。

过去完成进行时：强调动作一直进行的状态。

例句：

She had cleaned the office，so it was very tidy. 她已经打扫过办公室了，所以很整洁。（强调结果）

She had been cleaning the office，so we had to wait outside. 她一直在打扫办公室，所以我们不得不在外面等着。（强调动作一直在进行）

7.12 将来进行时

7.12.1 将来进行时的意义

将来进行时表示将来某一时间正在进行的动作、预料要发生的或即将发生的动作；要在将来某一时间开始，并继续下去的动作。一般用延续性动词表示。常用来表示礼貌的询问、请求或期待等。

7.12.2 将来进行时的构成

将来进行时由“助动词 will/shall+be+现在分词”构成。例如：

Don’t phone me between 8：00 and 10：00. We’ll be having classes then. 8 点到 10 点之间不要给我打电话，我们那时正在上课。

Will you be using your bicycle this evening? 今晚你用自行车吗？

She won’t be having a meeting in her office at 8：00 tomorrow. 明天 8 点她不在办公室开会。

7.12.3 将来进行时的基本用法

（1）表示将来某时刻或某段时间正在进行的动作。常与 soon，tomorrow，this evening，on Sunday，by this time，in two days，tomorrow evening 等表示将来的时间状语连用。例如：

I will be having an English class at 8 tomorrow. 我明天八点钟正在上英语课。

Mary will be working in the factory in the next two months. 下两个月玛丽将在这个厂里工作。

（2）在口语中常用来表示按计划或安排即要发生的动作。例如：

This time tomorrow I shall be flying to New York. 明天这个时候我将飞往纽约。

At 7:00 this evening I will be watching the news programmes on TV. 今晚七时，我将正在收看电视上的新闻节目。

（3）表示预料不久要发生或势必要发生的事情或将来的某种可能性，说话人往往有“我料想”或“我估计”的含义。例如：

We believe that peasants’ life will be getting better and better. 我们相信农民的生活会越来越好。

If we don’t do so，we shall be making a serious mistake. 如果我们不那样做，我们就会犯严重的错误。

（4）表示亲切或委婉的语气。例如：

When shall we be meeting again? 我们什么时候再见面？

注意：在时间、条件等状语从句中，用现在进行时代替将来进行时。例如：

Be careful when you are crossing the street. 过马路时要当心。

If Tom is doing his homework when you come back，don’t disturb him，please. 你回来时如果汤姆正在做作业，请不要打扰他。

7.12.4　将来进行时与一般将来时的区别

（1）将来进行时表示将来某一时刻或某一段时间里正在进行的动作；而一般将来时表示将来某时将要发生的动作。例如：

She won't be having a meeting in her office at 8:00 tomorrow. 明天八点她不在办公室开会。

What will you do at five tomorrow afternoon? 明天下午五点你将干什么？

（2）将来进行时常用来表示说话人设想已经安排好的事；而一般将来时表示临时决定。例如：

We will be taking our holiday at the seaside in July. 七月份我们要去海边度假。

—Did you tell Julia about the result? 你告诉朱莉娅结果了吗？

—Oh，no. I will call her now. 噢，没有。我现在就告诉她。

（3）将来进行时不表示个人意愿。例如：

They will be meeting us at the station. 他们会在车站接我们的。

（4）将来进行时比一般将来时在语气上要委婉客气。例如：

When will you finish these letters? 你什么时候会处理完这些信件？

When shall I be expecting you this evening? 今天晚上我几点等你？

7.12.5　将来进行时与过去进行时用法归纳

将来进行时与过去进行时的用法归纳详见表 7-14。

表 7-14　将来进行时与过去进行时用法归纳

将来进行时	
构成	will/shall be+现在分词
基本用法	（1）表示将来某一时间正在进行或持续的动作
	（2）表示按计划或安排要发生的动作
	（3）表示委婉语气，有时用将来进行时可使语气更委婉
注意事项	（1）为避免 will 让人误以为是表示“意愿”的情态动词，口语中表示单纯的将来时常用将来进行时
	（2）条件状语从句和时间状语从句中须用现在进行时代替将来进行时
过去将来时	
构成	would+动词原形/was（were）going to/was（were）about+不定式/was（were）+不定式
基本用法	（1）would do 表示从过去看某事将要发生
	（2）用 was（were）going to do 表示过去某时计划或安排要做某事
	（3）用 was（were）about+不定式表示在过去看来正要做某事
	（4）was（were）+不定式表示过去计划安排将要发生的动作，语气较为正式
注意事项	（1）表示过去没有实现（或被取消）的计划，则用 was（were）to+动词完成式
	（2）在条件和时间状语从句中，要表示过去将来须用一般过去时代替过去将来时
	（3）come，go，leave，arrive，start 等动词可用过去进行时代替过去将来时

【典型例题】

Probably we__________（travel）in Australia this time next day.

解析：在这个句子中，副词 probably 表示“可能”，是对第二天将要发生的动作进行猜测，this time next day 意为“第二天的这个时候”，确定句中时间为将来时。表示将来的时态有一般将来时、将来进行时和将来完成时，根据句意，travel 这个动作在将来的某个时间点持续发生，应使用将来进行时，表示“第二天这个时候我们可能在澳大利亚旅行了。”因此，该填空题答案为 will be traveling。

【测试精编】

1. Tomorrow，I ________ the book all morning.

A. am reading　　B. will be reading　　C. will read　　D. have read

2. —Can you attend the meeting tonight? —No，________ the manager about something urgent.

A. I see　　B. I'll have seen　　C. I'll be seeing　　D. I can see

3. Of the millions who saw Haley's comet(彗星)in 1986, how many people ________ long enough to see it return in the twenty-first century?

A. will they live　　B. they will be living　　C. will live　　D. living

4. He told us that he ________ visiting Japan by this time next year.

A. will be　　B. would be　　C. was　　D. is

5. It ________ when you wake up tomorrow morning.

A. is snowing　　B. will snow　　C. will be snowing　　D. snows

【参考答案】

1—5　BCCBC

7.13　将来完成时

7.13.1　将来完成时的定义

将来完成时用来表示在将来某一时间以前已经完成或一直持续的动作。经常与 before+将来时间或 by+将来时间连用，也可与 before 或 by the time 引导的现在时的从句连用。

7.13.2　将来完成时的基本结构

will/shall+have+过去分词用于第一人称，will+have+过去分词用于其他人称。例如

We hope it will have stopped raining before we set off for the picnic. 我们希望在出发去野餐以前雨就已经停了。

I'll have done all the work by the time you are back this evening. 你们今晚回来的时候我就将做完所有的工作了。

7.13.3　将来完成时的基本用法

（1）表示在将来某一时刻将完成或在另一个未来的动作发生之前已经完成的动作。

注意：常与将来完成时连用的时间状语有：

① by（the time/the end of）+表示将来时间的短语和句子；

② before（the end of）+表示将来时间的词语或句子；

③ when，after 等加上表示将来动作的句子等。例如：

By the year 2050，scientists probably will have discovered a cure for cancer.

到 2050 年，科学家们可能已经找到治愈癌症的方法了。

By the time you arrive in London，we will have been staying in Europe for two weeks.

等你到达伦敦的时候，我们将已经在欧洲待了两星期了。

（2）在时间从句和条件从句中，现在完成时可以代替将来完成时，表示将来某时已完成的动作。例如：

You'll get to like the subject after you have studied it for some time.

在学习这个学科一段时间之后，你就会喜欢它的。

I'll go and see the exhibition as soon as I have finished my work. 我一做完作业就去看展览。

（3）将来完成时还可以表示“可能性”或“设想”。例如：

It's five o'clock；they will have arrived home by now. 已经五点钟了，他们现在应该已经到家了。

7.13.4 将来完成时与一般将来时的比较

有具体的时间状语要用一般将来时。例如：

Mr. Smith will return home on the first Sunday next month. 史密斯先生将于下月的第一个星期日回家。

将来完成时的时间状语一般用介词 by 引入。例如：

Mr. Smith will have returned home by next month. 到下个月史密斯先生将已回到家了。

7.13.5 现在完成时、过去完成时与将来完成时的区别

现在完成时以现在时间为参照点，表示在“现在”以前完成的动作或持续到“现在”的状态；过去完成时则以过去时间为参照点，表示在“过去”某一时间以前发生的动作或持续到“过去”某一时间的状态；将来完成时则以将来时间为参照点，表示在“将来”某一时间为止已经完成的动作或持续到“将来”某一时间的状态。例如：

He has finished writing his novel. 他已写完了他的小说。

He had finished writing his novel by the end of last year. 去年年底他就写完他的小说。

He will have finished writing his novel by the end of next year. 到明年年底他就会写完他的小说了。

与一般现在时代替一般将来时一样，在表示时间或者条件的状语从句中，通常要用现在完成时来表示将来完成时，而不能直接使用将来完成时。例如：

I will go with you when I have finished my work. 等我完成工作之后我就同你去。

若不强调动作的完成（且不会引起歧义），有时也可用一般现在时。例如：

I will go with you when I finish my work. 我完成工作后就同你去。

【例题精析】

例 1. The conference ___________ a full week by the time it ends.

A. must have lasted　　B. will have lasted　　C. would last　　D. has lasted

【解析】本题考核谓语动词的时态。全句的意思是：“会议从开始到结束将持续整整一个星期。”句中 by the time it ends 表示动作要延续到将来某一时刻，因此要用将来完成时。答案是 B。如果选 A，因为情态动词 must 后面接动词不定式的完成时形式表示对已经发生的事情的一种肯定推测，而本句的时间

状语是 by the time it ends 而非 by the time it ended，所以犯了时态不呼应的错误。Would 虽可以表示推测或可能性，但 would last 不能表示延续到将来某一时刻的动作，所以 C 错误。因为 D 是现在完成时，表示到现在为止已经完成的动作，不能表示延续到将来某一时刻的动作，所以也不正确。

例 2.（江苏卷）—Tommy is planning to buy a car.

—I know. By next month，he______enough for a used one.

A. saves B.saved C.will save D. will have saved

【解析】本题的关键在于 By next month。“by+将来时间”引导的句子用将来完成时。第二句话的意思是“到下个月，他就攒够买一辆二手车的钱了。”故选 D。

例 3.（北京卷）Tom______in the library every night over the last three months.

A. works B. worked C. has been working D. had been working

【解析】根据时间状语 over the last three months 可知，句子应该用现在完成进行时。句意为：在过去三个月中，汤姆每个夜晚都在图书馆中工作。答案选 C。

练习题（一）

1. By the end of this year，I ____enough money for a holiday.

A. will save B. will be saving C. will have saved D. have saved

2. I_________ here for four years by next summer.

A. shall graduate B. shall be graduated

C. shall be graduating D. shall have graduated

3. I hope her health ________greatly by the time we come back next year.

A. improves B. improved C. will be improved D. will have improved

4. —Are you going to Richard's birthday party? —Yes. By then I ______my homework.

A. had finished B. will have finished C. would have finished D. finished

5. I suppose by the time I come back in ten years' time all these old house______down.

A. will have been pulled B. will be pulling

C. will have pulled D. will be pulled

6. I hope that they ______the road by the time we come back.

A. will have repaired B.would have repaired C. have repaired D. had repaired

7. By the time you arrive in London，we_____in Europe for two weeks.

A. shall stay B. will have stayed C. have stayed D. have been staying

8. By the year 2010，scientists probably_____a cure for cancer.

A. will be discovering B. are discovering

C. will have discovered D. have discovered

9. Before long，he________all about the matter.

A. will have forgotten B. forget C. have forgotten D. forgot

10. I am sure he________the difficulties before you arrive there.

A. will have settled B. settled C. had settled D. settle

练习题（二）

1. By the summer，Elizabeth______ here for ten years.

A. will work B. works C. will have worked D. has worked

2. I. hope you______ the instructions ready before I come tomorrow
   A. to get　B. shall get　C. will get　D. will have gotten
3. No sooner_______ than the accident happened.
   A. he had gone　B. had he gone　C. his going　D. he went
4. Hardly______ when the bus suddenly pulled away.
   A. they had got to the bus stop　B. had they got to the bus stop
   C. did they get to the bus stop　D. they got to the bus stop
5. Mother doesn't know much time I have spent in watching TV；if she ever found out，I'm sure_______.
   A. she'd never forgive me　B. she never forgive me
   C. she'll never forgive me　D. she does never forgive me
6. As soon as he______ his error，Rockfeller made the necessary corrections to his data collected.
   A. discovered　B. has discovered　C. discovers　D. had discovered
7. I _______meeting you ever since we parted.
   A. was looking forward to　B. have been looking forward to
   C. had been looking forward to　D. looked forward to
8. Where have you been? What _____?
   A. did you do　B. have you been doing　C. have made　D. were you doing
9. She has been studying here for five years and by the end of next summer she _____.
   A. will graduate　B. will be graduating　C. will be graduated　D. will have graduated
10. When you come tonight at eight o'clock，I _____ eight lessons.
   A. would review　B. shall review
   C. shall have reviewed　D. shall be reviewing
11. —Are Alice and Tom still living in New York? —No，they _____ to Dallas.
   A. are just moved　B. have just moved　C. had just moved　D. will just move
12. I haven't heard from Maria_____.
   A. since a long time　B. for many months ago
   C. for many months　D. since many months before
13. His grandfather ______ for thirty years.
   A. died　B. was dead　C. has been dead　D. has died
14. It's（high）time you _____ a holiday.
   A. had　B. have　C. will have　D. have had
15. By the time Juan gets home，his aunt _____ for Puerto Rico.
   A. will leave　B. leaves　C. will have left　D. left

【参考答案】
（一）1—5　CDDBA　6—10　ABCAA
（二）1—5　CDBBA　6—10　DBBDC　11—15　BCCAC

7.14　将来完成进行时

7.14.1　将来完成进行时的定义

将来完成进行时表示动作从某一时间开始一直延续到将来某一时间（即说话者人提及的时间），至于是否继续下去，要视上下文而定。例如：

By this time next week，I will have been working for this company for 24 years. 到下星期的这个时候，我已经为该公司干了 24 年了。

If we don’t hurry up the store will have been closing before we get there. 咱们若不快一点儿，等我们到了那儿，店门就会关了。

7.14.2　将来完成进行时的构成

肯定句：主语+shall/will have been+现在分词……
否定句：主语+shall/will+not+have been+现在分词……
疑问句：Shall/Will+主语+have been+现在分词……

I shall have been working here in this factory for twenty years by the end of the year.
到今年年底，我将在这个工厂工作 20 年了。

The play is coming off in August. By then the play will have been running for three months.
这个剧将于八月停演。到那时为止，这个剧将连演三个月了。

7.14.3　将来完成进行时连用的时间状语

与将来完成进行时连用最多的时间状语是“by+将来时间”。除“by+将来时间”外，其他的时间状语可见下列例句：

He will have been working all day. 他整天将都在工作。

She will have been having treatment all her life. 她将终生受到治疗。

I’ll have been teaching for thirty years this winter. 到今年冬天我就已任教 30 年了。

7.14.4　将来完成进行时的情态意义

“will/shall have been+现在分词”结构除表示将来完成进行时外，有时其中的 will 也可能是情态动词，具有情态意义，表示推测或猜想等。例如：

They will have been having a holiday yesterday. 他们昨天大概是在度假。

You’ll have been wondering all this time how my invention works. 我想你应该一直想知道我的发明是怎样操作的。

7.14.5　将来完成进行时和将来完成时的区别

将来完成进行时强调动作过程在另一动词之前的长度。而将来完成时更强调在另一件事前一个动作的完成。如：By the time John retires，James will have been practicing for 10 years.

将来完成进行时与将来完成时的关系和现在完成进行时与现在完成时的关系一样。即在以下情况下可以用将来完成进行时而不用将来完成时：

（1）动作本身就是连续的。例如：

By the end of the month he will have been living/working/studying here for ten years. 到了月底他在这里居住/工作/学习就满十年了。

（2）一种经常进行的动作被表示为连续的动作。例如：

By the end of this month he will have been training horses/climbing mountains for twenty years. 到了这个月底他驯马/登山就满 20 年了。

但是如果提到所驯马匹或所攀登的山峰的数目，或用任何方式把动作分割为一次又一次的动作，就必须用将来完成时。例如：

By the end of the month he will have trained 600 horses/climbed 50 mountains. 到本月底，他驯服的马就有 600 匹/攀登的山峰就有 50 座了。

【例题精析】

（全国卷）When Alice came to，she did not know how long she________ there.

A. had been lying　　B. has been lying　　C. was lying　　D. has lain

【解析】句意：爱丽丝苏醒过来时，她并不知道自己已经在那里躺了多久了。这里强调一个“过去的过去”的动作，并且爱丽丝醒过来时还是躺着的，故用过去完成进行时。答案选 A。

7.15　过去将来时

7.15.1　过去将来时的含义

过去将来时表示在过去某个时间看来将要发生的动作或存在的状态。过去将来时常用于宾语从句和间接引语中。例如：

I didn't know if he would come. 我不知道他是否会来。

They never knew that population would become a big problem. 他们从来都不知道人口问题将会成为一个大问题。

She didn't tell me where she would go. 她没有告诉我她要去哪儿。

Betty said she would visit the Great Wall next Saturday. 贝蒂说下周六她要去参观长城。

7.15.2　过去将来时的构成

肯定句：主语+be（was，were）going to+动词原形+其他。

否定句：主语+be（was，were）not going to+动词原形+其他。

疑问句：Be（Was，Were）+主语+going to+动词原形+其他？

肯定句：主语+would（should）+动词原形+其他。

否定句：主语+would（should）not+动词原形+其他。

疑问句：Would（Should）+主语+动词原形+其他？

7.15.3　过去将来时的表达法

（1）should/would+动词原形。例如：

He said he would be there before Monday. 他说他星期一以前将在那里。（be 动词肯定式）

We hoped she should not go the next week. 我们希望下星期她不去。（do 动词的否定式）

注意：这个时态是一个相对的时态，立足于过去某时，从过去的观点看未来。在一定的语境中也可用于其他从句或句子中。例如：

It was a problem whether he would support us. 他是否会支持我们还是一个问题。

It was seven o'clock. The sun would soon set. 这时是七点钟，太阳即将落山。

（2）was/were going+动词不定式。过去将来时的这种表达形式可以表示过去曾经打算或计划准备要做的事。例如：

They told me that they were going to have a picnic. 他们告诉我他们将要举行一次野餐。

We were going to have a meeting. 我们曾经打算开个会。

过去将来时的这种形式可以表示过去将要发生或很有可能发生的事，但未实现的动作。例如：

I was just going to ring him up when she came. 我刚要给他打电话，她就来了。（电话没打成）

有时也用 was/were+coming 表示过去将来时。例如：

She didn't know when they were coming again. 她不知道他们时候会再来。

（3）was/were about+动词不定式，表示在过去看来正要做某事。例如：

They were about to leave when the telephone rang. 他们正要走，电话铃响了。

I was just about to go to bed when she came to see me. 我正要睡觉，她来看我了。

（4）was/were+动词不定式，表示定于过去某时将要做某事。例如：

He was to meet her at 10 on the street. 他约定和她 10 点钟在街上见面。

注意：若表示过去没有实现（或被取消）的计划，则用 was（were）to+动词完成时。例如：

They were to have left at 7 last night. 他们本来计划昨晚 7 点离开的。

（5）would（should）+动词原形，把助动词 be 变为过去式，把 will，shall 变为过去式。例如：

I told them that I would not go with them，if it rained. 我告诉他们，如果下雨我就不和他们一起去了。

（6）would（should）+动词原形，过去将来时常可用来表示过去习惯性的动作。此时，不管什么人称，一律用 would。例如：

Whenever she had time，she would do some reading. 她一有时间，总是看书。

I would play with them when I was a child. 当我还是孩童时，总是和他们一起玩。

【专项练习】

一、单项选择题。

1. Li Ming said he _____happy if Brian_____to China next month.
   A. as；come　　B. was；would come　　C. would be；came　　D. will be；come
2. Jenny said she _____her holiday in China.
   A. spent　　B. would spent　　C. was going to spent　　D. would spend
3. —What did your son say in the letter? —He told me that he____the Disney World the next day.
   A. will visit　　B. has visited　　C. is going to visit　　D. would visit
4. I hoped Tina ______ to my birthday party on time the next Wednesday.
   A. to come　　B. is coming　　C. will come　　D. was coming
5. Father said that he ______ me to Beijing the next year.
   A. took　　B. would take　　C. takes　　D. will take
6. We were not sure whether they ______ more vegetables.
   A. are going to grow　　B. were going to grow　　C. will grow　　D. have grown
7. She ______ to work when the telephone rang.
   A. is going　　B. will go　　C. was about to go　　D. is to go

二、用所给动词的适当形式填空。

1. Miss Zhang said she ________（visit）the Great Wall next summer.
2. She told him that she ________（not stay）here for long.
3. I wasn't sure whether Lucy_______（come）the next year.
4. The scientists said the world's population _______（slow）down in future.
5. She said the bus _______（leave）at five the next morning.
6. I wasn't sure whether he _______（lend）me his book the next morning.

7. He was fifty-six. In two years he ________ （be）fifty-eight.
8. Whenever she has time，she _______ （help）them in their work.

【参考答案】

一、1—7　CDDDBBC

二、1. would visit　　2. would not stay　　3. would come　　4. would slow
　　5. was leaving　　6. would lend　　7. would be　　8. would help

7.16　过去将来进行时

1. 过去将来进行时的定义

过去将来进行时表示在对过去某一时间而言的将来某一时刻或某一段时间正在进行的动作。

2. 过去将来进行时的结构

过去将来进行时由主语+should（would）+be+现在分词构成。
否定：主语+should（would）+not+be+现在分词
疑问：should（would）+主语+be+现在分词（+其他）？

3. 过去将来进行时的用法

（1）过去将来进行时主要用于宾语从句中，尤其多用于间接引语中。例如：
They said they would be coming.他们说了他们将要来。（用于间接引语中）
The new job he would be taking was raising racing horses.他将要接受的新工作是养赛马。（用于定语从句中）
（2）过去将来进行时可以表示在过去某一时间之后即将进行的动作。例如：
He said that he could not come because he would be having a meeting.
他说他不能来因为要开会。
（3）过去将来进行时常和表示过去将来的时间状语连用，但上下文清楚时，时间状语亦可省略。和将来进行时一样，它也常表计划中的事，不表意愿或打算。它还有一个特点，即常用在宾语从句（尤其是间接引语）中。例如：
John told us that Mary would be coming the next day. 约翰告诉我们玛丽第二天来。
（4）过去将来进行时有时也可用在其他从句中。例如：
The new name he would be using was Jack Jones. 他将用的新名是杰克·琼斯。（用在定语从句中）
He would pay the rest as he would be leaving France. 其余款项，他将在离开法国时付清。（用在状语从句中）
（5）过去将来进行时也可用在独立句中。例如：
The car started. Ellen James would be driving off to the university. 车子发动了。埃伦·詹姆斯要开车到大学去。

7.17　过去将来完成时

1. 过去将来完成时构成方法

过去将来完成时由“would+have+过去分词”构成。例如：

I thought Sophia would have told you something. 我想索菲娅会已告诉你一些情况。

He knew by the time he arrived she would have gone home. 他知道他到时她会已经回家。

The day was drawing near when we would have completed the reservoir. 我们建成水库的日子不远了。

I guessed that Mother would have made some sandwiches by the time we got back. 我猜我们回来时妈妈已经做好一些三明治了。

2. 过去将来完成时的用法

过去将来完成时表示从过去某一时间看将来某时某动作已完成。这个时态用得相对比较少，通常主要用于转述，即用于间接引语中。例如：

She said she'd have finished her exams by then. 她说那时她会已经考完试了。

The party would have arrived by four o'clock. 这一行人将于 4 时前到达。

She said she'd have finished her exams by then. 她说那时她会已经考完试了。

3. 过去完成时用于虚拟语气中

若表示与过去事实相反的虚拟语气，条件从句的谓语用过去完成时（had+过去分词），而主句的谓语则通常用过去完成时（would+have+过去分词），当然，主句的谓语也可根据情况使用“should（could，might）+have+过去分词”。例如：

If I'd left sooner，I'd have been on time. 要是我早点动身，我就准时到了。（但我动身太迟了）

If we had found him earlier we could have saved his life. 要是我们当时早点找到他的话，我们就可以救活他。（可惜我们找到他时已经太晚了）

If I had known that you were coming I would have met you at the airport. 要是我早知道你要来的话，我就会在机场接你了。

If he had lived，some day Michael would have done something important. 假定麦克尔当时在世的话，他本可做出了不起的事。

If I had known how he felt，I would never have let him adopt those children. 我要是知道他的想法，我是决不会让他领养那些孩子的。

He would have forgotten the boy's birthday if you hadn't reminded him. 要不是你提醒他，他会忘记这男孩的生日的。

Our lives would have been greatly impoverished if we had not known our dear friend. 若不是认识我们这位好朋友，我们的生活一定十分不妙。

4.“would+have+过去分词”的情态用法

would 后接完成时除用于构成过去将来完成时外，还有情态动词用法的一面。例如：

Only somebody with a small mind would have refused to help. 只有心胸狭窄的人才不肯帮助别人。（表推测）

Few men would have bared their soul to a woman as he had. 很少有男人能像他一样对一个女人敞开心扉。（表怀疑）

I'm surprised you didn't like the film. I would have thought it was just your kind of thing. 你不喜欢这部电影，这让我感到奇怪。我本来还觉得正对你的路呢。（表过去的想法）

My father would have driven me to Cornwall，but we decided it would be quicker by train. 父亲原本要开车送我去康沃尔，但我们还是觉得坐火车更快。（表过去的想法）

The scar added interest to a face that otherwise would have appeared too bland. 这处伤疤为本显得平淡无奇的脸增添了些吸引力。（表未曾发生的情况）

7.18　过去将来完成进行时

1. 过去将来完成进行时的构成

过去将来完成进行时由“would have been+现在分词”构成。例如：

He said that by the end of the spring term he would have been studying English for three years. 他说到了春季学期末，他就学了三年英语了。

I knew by that time he would have been working there for 30 years. 我知道到那时他就在那儿工作满 30 年了。

She told me she’d have been teaching in that university for 20 years by that summer. 她告诉我到那年夏天她在那所大学教书就满 20 年了。

2. 过去将来完成进行时的用法

过去将来完成进行时表动作从过去某一时间开始一直延续到过去将来某一时间。动作是否继续下去由上下文决定。例如：

I heard by July you’d have been teaching here for ten years. 我听说到七月份，你就在这里教了 10 年书了。

3. 间接引语与过去将来完成进行时

在间接引语中，若主句为过去时态，则用于宾语从句中的间接引语需要把将来完成进行时改为过去将来完成进行时。例如：

I know by this time next week you’ll have been working here for 30 years.

→I knew by that time he would have been working there for 30 years.

She will have been teaching in this university for 20 years by this summer.

→She told me she’d have been teaching in that university for 20 years by that summer.

4. 过去将来完成进行时与虚拟语气

在特定的语境中，过去将来完成进行时可用虚拟语气中。例如：

At the time of the accident I was sitting in the back of the car, because Tom’s little boy was sitting beside him in front. If Tom’s boy had not been there I would have been sitting in front. 事故发生的时候，我坐在车子的后座，因为汤姆的小儿子坐在前边他的身旁。要是汤姆的孩子没坐在那里的话，我就会坐在前面了。

5. 过去将来完成进行时的情态意义

“would have been+现在分词”结构除用于表示过去将来完成进行时外，其中的 would 也可能是情态动词，具有情态意义，表示推测或猜想等。例如：

“What interesting job have you found?”　Helen asked him；he knew she would have been thinking about it.“你找到什么有趣的工作啦?”海伦向他问道。他知道海伦一定会一直想这件事的。

【实战演练】

一、单项选择题。

1. —What did you do on your uncle’s farm? —I ____the horse and _____some hens there.

A. ride；feed　　B. rode；fed　　C. rode；feed　　D. ride；fed

2. —What does Miss Black do at weekends?

—She with some students often ___________ in the playground.

A. is running　　B. are running　　C. run　　D. runs

3. Tom __________ fishing，but he doesn't like eating fish.

A. like　　B. enjoy　　C. enjoys　　D. likes to

4. We shall go to the park if it ______.

A. don't rain　　B. won't rain　　C. doesn't rain　　D. didn't rain

5. Tom ______ watch TV after supper _____ last night.

A. wasn't；on　　B. didn't；on　　C. doesn't；in　　D. didn't；/

6. —Would you like to climb mountains with me this Sunday?

—I'd love to. But I _______ play table tennis against Class Three.

A. am going　　B. am going to　　C. am　　D. going to

7. Linda walked into the room and______her coat away.

A. took　　B. takes　　C. is taking　　D. taking

8. Jim's brother_________ five basketballs.

A. have　　B. has　　C. is　　D. are

9. There ________a party tomorrow evening.I'll go with my sisters.

A. has　　B. is going to have　　C. is going to be　　D. are going to be

10. —Do you know that we won the football match? —Yes，I___________the news.

A. hear　　B. to hear　　C. have just heard　　D. just have heard

11. —Is James at home? —No，he_______________Ya'an to be a volunteer.

A. has gone to　　B. has been to　　C. is going to　　D. are going to

12. Jim and Kate_______ in Beijing now. They both_______ from America.

A. is；come　　B. are；come　　C. is；is come　　D. are；are come

13. I have lunch at school，but my brother_______ lunch at school.

A. isn't have　　B. hasn't have　　C. don't have　　D. doesn't have

14. —_______ your mother happy today? —No，she_______.

A. Is；isn't　　B. Are；aren't　　C. Are；isn't　　D. Does；doesn't

15. Scientists think that there _____ life on Earth for millions of years.

A. has had　　B. have had　　C. has been　　D. have been

16. Some scientists have sent a spacecraft to Mars. It ____ several months to get there.

A. spent　　B. has spent　　C. has taken　　D. take

17. —Where's Mary? —She _____ to Harbin.

A. has been　　B. has gone　　C. goes　　D. went

18. We'll climb Qianling Hills if it_____next Sunday.

A. won't rain　　B. didn't rain　　C. rained　　D. doesn't rain

19. The boy is ________see the teacher because he ________ a mistake.

A. afraid of；has　　B. afraid to；has made　　C. afraid to；make　　D. afraid of；made

【参考答案】

1. B【解析】句意：——你在你叔叔的农场里做什么了？——我在那里骑马，还喂母鸡。根据问题 What did you do on your uncle's farm 可知，这是发生在过去的事情，所以应该用一般过去时态，动词用过去式。rode 是 ride 的过去式；fed 是 feed 的过去式。故选 B。

考点：考查一般过去时。

2. D【解析】句意：——Miss Black 周末一般做什么？——她经常和一些同学在操场上跑步。often 经常用于一般现在时中表示经常习惯性的动作，故选 D。

考点：考查动词时态的用法。

3. C【解析】句意：汤姆喜欢钓鱼，但是他不喜欢吃鱼。enjoy doing 表示喜欢做某事；主语是第三人称单数，故谓语动词用单数，故选 C。

考点：考查动词时态的用法。

4. C【解析】句意：如果不下雨我们就去公园。由 if 引导的从句使用“主将从现”。结合句意，故选 C。

考点：考查一般现在时的用法。

5. D【解析】句意：汤姆昨晚晚饭后没看电视。时间状语为 last night，因此句子应用过去时态，又因 watch TV 为实意动词，变否定句前加 didn't，故选 D。

考点：考查时态。

6. B【解析】句意：——这个周六你愿意和我爬上去吗？——我想去，但是我要和三班比赛乒乓球。根据上句的时间是 this Sunday，可知打乒乓球是将来的时间里计划好的事情，所以用将来时态：be going to do sth. 计划做某事，打算做某事，故选 B。

考点：考查将来时态的用法。

7. A【解析】句意：林达走进房间把她的大衣拿走。根据语境，走进房间和拿走大衣是两个并列发生的动作，“走”的动作用一般过去时，“拿”的动作也应用一般过去时。故选 A。

考点：考查一般过去时的用法。

8. B【解析】句意：吉姆的哥哥有五个篮球。当主语是第三人称单数时，动词用相应的第三人称单数。结合句意，故选 B。

考点：考查一般现在时的用法。

9. C【解析】句意：明天晚上将有一个晚会。我打算和姐姐一起去。there be 结构的一般将来时应表达为：there is/are going to be。因为句子主语是 a party，根据主谓一致原则，故选 C。

考点：考查 there be 结构的一般将来时。

10. C【解析】句意：——你知道我们赢得比赛了吗？——知道了。我刚刚听到这个消息。根据语境，“听说”这个动作直接导致“知道”这个结果，应用现在完成时。故选 C。

考点：考查现在完成时的用法。

11. A【解析】句意：——詹姆斯在家吗？——不在。他去延安当志愿者了。have/has gone to 表示去了某地，人未回来；have/has been to 表示去过某地，人已回来。结合语境应选 A。

考点：考查 have/has gone to 与 have/has been to 用法的区别。

12. B【解析】根据语境可知此句的含义是 Jim 和 Kate 现在都在北京，他们都来自美国。考查谓语动词的形式，因 Jim and Kate 是复数，故系动词要用 are，又因 they 也是复数，故谓语动词 come 要用原形，故选 B。

考点：考查主谓一致。

13. D【解析】根据语境可知此句的含义是我在学校吃午饭，而我弟弟不在学校吃。考查一般现在时否定句的基本结构，因 have 是实义动词，故否定形式要借助助动词 do，又因 my brother 是第三人称单数形式，故用 doesn't，doesn't 后面要用动词原形 have，故选 D。

考点：考查一般现在时的否定句结构。

14. A【解析】句意：——你妈妈今天开心吗？——不，她不开心。考查一般疑问句的基本构成，因 your mother 是第三人称单数，故系动词要用 is，否定性回答要用 isn't，故选 A。

考点：考查一般疑问句。

15. C【解析】句意：科学家们认为生命已经在月球上存在几百万年了。考查 there be 句型的现在完成时，因为有 for millions of，故用 has been。故选 C。

考点：考查现在完成时。

16. C【解析】句意：一些科学家已经发射了一个宇宙飞船去火星，它花费几个月才到那了。It takes（somebody）some time to do something 表示花费多长时间干某事。使用 spend 时应是人作主语，故选 C。

考点：考查现在完成时和动词。

17. B【解析】句意：——玛丽在哪？——她去了哈尔滨。主语是 she 所以用 has，go 的现在分词是 gone。故选 B。

考点：考查现在完成时。

18. D【解析】句意：如果下星期日不下雨，我们将去登黔灵山。在含有条件状语从句的主从复合句中，如果主句使用了一般将来时，那么从句一般用一般现在时而不用一般将来时。所以选 D。

考点：考查动词时态。

19. B【解析】句意：这个小男孩很害怕见到他的老师因为他已经犯了个错误。be afraid to do sth. 害怕做某事，make a mistake 犯了个错误，根据句意应选 B。

考点：考查固定短语。

二、用所给动词的适当形式填空。

1. I ____________（know）the place for many years.

2. Where is my pen? How strange! It ____________（be）here just a moment ago.

3. He will give the book back to you if he _________（finish）reading it tomorrow.

4. We are willing _______________（work）with them.

5. The students in our school spend two hours ____________（do）homework every day.

6. While the tower guide was introducing the history of the Great Wall，tourists____（take）photos at the same time.

7. It's cold outside，you'd better ______________（put）on your coat.

8. Sandra lives a very regular life and usually____（have）a cup of coffee on her way to the office.

9. My brother was writing an article about China last night，but I don't know whether he ______（finish）it.

10. She said she ______（visit）my school some day next week.

11. I'm glad to know that I ________（study）with my best friend in the same university in the coming September.

12. My brother will call me as soon as he ______（reach）there.

13. I'm sorry____（wake）you up.

14. I won't go to the movies this weekend because I ________（see）the film twice before.

15. ____________（not play）football in the street，Jim. It's dangerous.

16. Keep ___________（try）and you will find you can remember things better.

17. Look! The boy ____（put）on his sweater by himself.

18. —What's that terrible noise? —The neighbours ______（prepare）for a party.

【参考答案】

1. have known	2. was	3. finishes	4. to work
5. doing	6. were taking	7. put	8. has
9. has finished	10. would visit	11. will study	12. reaches
13. to wake	14. have seen	15. Don't play	16. trying
17. is putting	18. are preparing		

8　动词的语态

8.1　语态的含义和种类

语态（voice）是动词的一种形式，表示主语和谓语之间的具体关系，分为主动语态（active voice）和被动语态（passive voice）两种。主动语态表示主语是谓语动词所表示的动词的执行者。被动语态表示主语不是动作的执行者，而是谓语动词所表示的动作的承受者。

8.2　被动语态的构成

（1）被动语态的基本结构：be+动词过去分词。

（2）各种时态的主动被动语态结构（以动词 do 为例），见表 8-1。

表 8-1　各种时态的主动被动语态结构

时　态	主动语态	被动语态	例　句	
			主动语态	被动语态
一般现在时	do/does	am/is/are+done	We clean the classroom.	The classroom is cleaned by us.
一般过去时	did	was/were+done	He made the kite.	The kite was made by him.
现在进行时	am/is/are+doing	am/is/are+being done	She is watering flowers.	Flowers are being watered by her.
现在完成时	have/has+done	have/has+been done	Jim has finished the work.	The work has been finished by Jim.
一般将来时	will/shall/be going to+do	will/shall/be going to+be done	They will plant trees tomorrow.	Trees will be planted by them tomorrow.
过去进行时	was/were+doing	was/were+being+done	She was writing a letter this time yesterday.	A letter was being written by her this time yesterday.
过去完成时	had+done	had+been+done	Jim had finished the work.	The work had been finished by Jim.
过去将来时	would/should/be going to+do	would/should/be going to+be+done	He said he would make a kite.	He said a kite would be made by him.
含有情态动词	can/may/must+do	can/may/must+be+done	I can find him.	He can be found by me.

8.3 被动语态的用法

（1）不知道谁是动作的执行者时用被动语态，常省略 by 短语。例如：

A man was killed in the accident. 一个人死于事故

This window was broken yesterday. 这扇窗子是昨天被打破的。

（2）不说或者众所周知是谁做时用被动语态，常省略 by 短语。例如：

Rice is also grown in this place. 这个地方也种水稻。

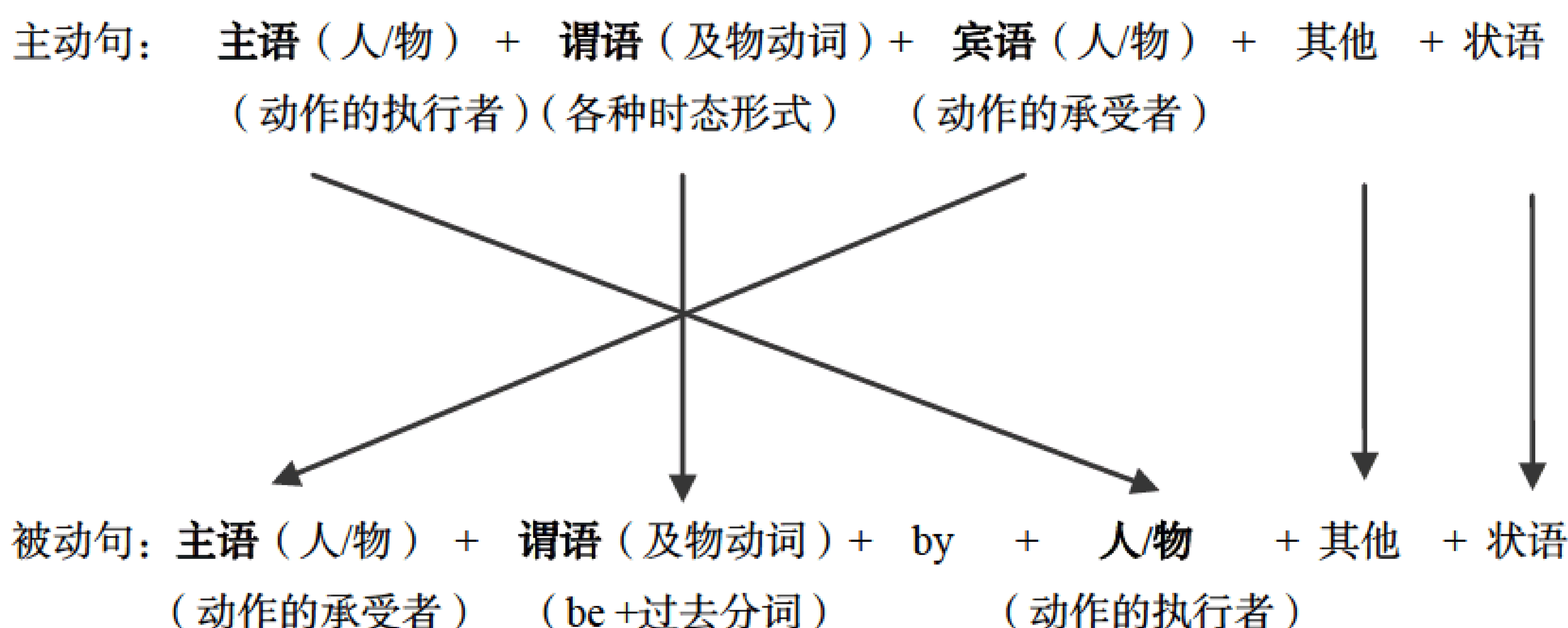
A railroad will be built here in three years. 三年之后这里将要修建一条铁路。

（3）强调动作的承受者时常用被动语态，句尾加 by 短语。例如：

It was written by Lu Xun. 它（书）是鲁迅写的。

A pet dog is never killed by its owner. 宠物狗是不会被主人宰杀的。

8.4 主动语态如何改写为被动语态



8.5 主动语态和被动语态的转换

（1）带双宾语的谓语动词变为被动语态。

谓语动词带双宾语时，既可以将间接宾语转化成主语，也可将直接宾语转化成主语。若将间接宾语转化成主语，则保留直接宾语；若将直接宾语转化成主语，则保留间接宾语，且在被保留的间接宾语前加上介词 to 或 for。例如：

His teacher gave him a dictionary. →He was given a dictionary by his teacher. 老师给他一本字典。→他得到了老师给的一本字典。

也可以用直接宾语做被动句的主语，但是需用 to 或者 for 引出原句的间接宾语。例如：

His teacher gave him a dictionary. →A dictionary was given to him by his teacher. 老师给他一本字典。→一本字典由老师送给了他。

His father made him a kite.→A kite was made for him by his father. 他的父亲给他做了一个风筝。→一个风筝由他的父亲做给了他。

（2）短语动词变为被动语态。

许多由不及物动词构成的短语动词，相当于及物动词，可以有宾语，也可以有被动语态。需要注意的是：短语动词是一个不可分割的整体，在变为被动语态时，不可丢掉构成短语动词的介词或副词。例如：

We should speak to old men politely.（变为被动语态）→ Old men should be spoken to politely.（to 不可省略）

（3）带复合宾语的动词变为被动语态。

宾语加上宾语补足语构成复合宾语。变成被动语态时，只把宾语变为被动句主语，宾语补足语保留在原处，成为主语补足语。例如：

I heard Jane playing the piano in her room.（变为被动语态）

→Jane was heard playing the piano in her room.

（4）被动语态后动词形式的选择。

see、hear、watch、feel、notice 等动词被称为使役动词，也称为感官动词。let、make、here 等动词后跟省略 to 的不定式，变为被动句时，应加上不定式符号 to。例如：

He makes the girl stay at home.（改为被动结构）→The girl is made to stay at home.

Last Sunday we heard them sing Beijing Opera in the theatre.（改为同义句）→They were heard to sing Beijing Opera in that theatre last Sunday.

（5）含有宾语从句的主动句："主语+动词+宾语从句"变成被动句后的形式为：形式主语 It+be+动词的过去分词+主语从句（原宾语从句）。例如：

It can be learned from the text that delicious apples are very big.

英语中类似的结构还有很多，常见的有：It is said that…据说……；It is reported that…据报道……；It is hoped that…有人希望……；It is believed that…人们认为……；It's supposed that…据推测……；It must be admitted that…必须承认……；It must be pointed out that…必须指出……等等。

上述结构可以酌情改为 People（We，They 等）say/report/hope/believe/suppose 或 People（We，They 等）must admit/point out that…。例如：

It is said that he is famous in his own country. ＝Someone says（People say）that he is famous in his own country. /He is said to be famous in his own country.

（6）含有情态动词的谓语变成被动语态后的形式为：主语+情态动词（+not）+be+动词的过去分词。例如：

Black holes can not be seen directly，so determining the number of them is a tough task.

（7）被动结构还可由"get+过去分词"来构成。例如：

Cleaning women in big cities usually get paid by the hour.

①"get+过去分词"除相当于"be+过去分词"的被动语态外，还可用于谈论突然发生的、不期而遇的和偶然出现或最终出现的事。例如：

Be careful when you cross this very street. If not，you may get run over by a car.

②"get+过去分词"还可用来谈论对自身所做的动作或动作的结果（为系表结构）。常见的有：get dressed"穿衣"；get washed"洗脸"；get lost"迷路"；get confused"迷惑不解"；get engaged/married/divorced"订婚/结婚/离婚"；get started"开始"等。例如：

Sarah，hurry up. I'm afraid you won't have time to get changed before the party.

注：被动结构强调动作，系表结构表示状态。例如：

The library is closed at 6. 图书馆六点关门。（表被动）

The library is closed now. 现在图书馆已经关门了。（系表结构表状态）

8.6 被动语态的一些特殊运用形式

1. 主动结构表被动意义

（1）wash，clean，cook，iron，look，cut，sell，read，wear，feel，draw，write，sell，drive…例如：

The book sells well. 这本书销路好。

This knife cuts easily. 这刀子很好用。

（2）blame，let（出租），remain，keep，rent，build。例如：

I was to blame for the accident.

Much work remains.

（3）在 need，require，want，worth（形容词），deserve 后的动名词必须用主动形式。例如：

The door needs repairing. = The door needs to be repaired.

This book is worth reading. 这本书值得一读。

Your hair wants cutting. 你的头发该理了。

The floor requires washing. 地板需要冲洗。

（4）特殊结构：make sb. heard/understood（使别人能听见/理解自己），have sth. done（ 要某人做某事）。

2. 被动形式表示主动意义

be determined，be pleased，be graduated（from），be finished，be prepared（for），be occupied（in），get married。例如：

He is graduated from a famous university. 他毕业于一所有名的大学。

注意：表示同某人结婚，用 marry sb. 或 get married to sb. 都可。例如：

He married a rich girl. ＝He got married to a rich girl.

8.7 不用被动语态的情况

（1）不及物动词或动词短语无被动语态：appear，die disappear，end（*vi.* 结束），fail，happen，last，lie，remain，sit，spread，stand，break out，come true，fall asleep，keep silence，lose heart，take place。例如：

After the fire，very little remained of my house.

比较：rise，fall，happen 是不及物动词；raise，seat 是及物动词。

（错）The price has been risen.

（对）The price has risen.

（错）The accident was happened last week.

（对）The accident happened last week.

（错）The price has raised.

（对）The price has been raised.

（错）Please seat.

（对）Please be seated.

要想正确地使用被动语态，就须注意哪些动词是及物的，哪些是不及物的。特别是注意一词多义的动词往往有两种用法。

（2）不能用于被动语态的及物动词或动词短语：fit，have，hold，marry，own，wish，cost，notice，watch agree with，arrive at/in，shake hands with，succeed in，suffer from，happen to，take part in，walk into，belong to。例如：

This key just fits the lock.

Your story agrees with what had already been heard.

（3）系动词无被动语态：appear，be become，fall，feel，get，grow，keep，look，remain，seem，smell，sound，stay，taste，turn。例如：

It sounds good.

（4）带同源宾语的及物动词、反身代词、相互代词不能用于被动语态：die，death，dream，live，life。例如：

She dreamed a bad dream last night.

（5）当宾语是不定式时，很少用于被动语态。例如：

（对）She likes to swim.

（错）To swim is liked by her.

注意：解答被动语态题目时，首先要判断主语和动作的关系，如果主语是动作的执行者，则用主动语态；如果主语是动作的承受者，则用被动语态。

8.8 被动语态与系表结构的区别

当“be+过去分词”作被动语态时表示主语承受的动作；作系表结构时表示主语的特点或所处的状态时，be 后面的过去分词是表语，相当于形容词。其区分办法如下：

（1）如果强调动作或句中有介词 by 引导出动作的执行者，该句一般为被动语态，否则为系表结构。例如：

The glass is broken.（系表结构）

The glass was broken by the boy.（被动语态）

（2）如果句中有地点、频率或时间状语，一般为被动语态。例如：

The door is locked.（系表结构）

The door has already/just been locked.（被动语态）

（3）被动语态除用于一般时态和完成时态外，还可以用于其他各种时态，而系表结构中的系动词 be 只有一般时态和完成时态。

【被动语态考点归纳】

（1）主动语态改为被动语态时，被动语态应和主动语态的时态保持一致。如：

We speak English.（改为被动语态）English ________ ________ by us.

【分析】此句主动语态为一般现在时态，被动语态也应用一般现在时态，因此，答案应是 is spoken。

（2）注意被动语态的谓语结构。一般现在时是：am/is/are+p.p.[①]；一般过去时是：was/were+p.p.；现在完成时是：have/has/been+p.p.；现在进行时是：am/is/are/+being+p.p.；含有情态动词的是：情态动词+be+p.p.。

巧记绕口令：被动语态须注意，谓语不离“be”“p.p.”。主谓一致别忘记，“进行”易丢一个“be”。如：

We must take good care of our eyes.（改为被动语态）Our eyes must ____ ________ good care of.

【分析】此句中含有情态动词 must，根据“情态动词+be+p.p.”的公式可知，答案应是 be taken。

（3）注意句中主谓语的一致关系。例如：

Tea ______ （grow）in southeast of China and India.

【分析】此句中主语 tea 是不可数名词，作主语时谓语动词应用单数形式。而此句说明的又是一自然现象，因此就应用一般现在时态。所以，答案应是 is grown。

（4）注意复合宾语的变化。例如：

They couldn't make the cow go.（改为被动语态）

① p.p. = past participle，过去分词。

【分析】the cow go 在句中作 make 的复合宾语。一般情况下，变为被动语态后，宾语补足语的结构形式、所处位置原封不动地保存下来，但 make/have/let/see/watch/hear 等后原可省的 to 要还原回来。显然，此句中，the cow go 中省去的 to 应还原回来，因此答案应是 The cow couldn't be made to go.

（5）注意双宾语的变化。例如：

Mr. Smith showed the students two pictures yesterday.（改为被动语态）

Two pictures _____ ______ _____ the students by Mr. Smith.

【分析】变为被动语态时，双宾语中的任何一个皆可变为主语，一般变直接宾语，但间接宾语前必须加上介词 to 或 for。此句显然是把直接宾语变为被动语态的主语，那么，间接宾语前须加上介词 to，所以答案应是 were shown to。

（6）注意短语动词中的“小词”。例如：

The old men and the children ____ in our country.

A. must take good care　　B. must be taken good care

C. must be taken good care of　　D. must take good care of

【分析】短语动词是一个不可分割的整体，应当作一个词来看待，变成被动语态后，“小词”不能丢弃。因此，此题答案应是 C。

【强化训练】

一、把下面的句子改成被动语态。

1. She is writing the letter.
2. They had got the key before he came in.
3. Mother asked me to return that book.
4. People say that Tom is a good boy.
5. They were building a large factory at that time.
6. Tom often shows my mother a lot of photos.
7. They make little Tom walk up and down every day.
8. He will invite you to the dinner，too.

二、用动词的适当形式填空。

1. The city______already______（develop）into an beautiful city，when I visit it last year.
2. Keep away from the walls，children. They_______（paint）now.
3. All the visitors________（invite）to the party yesterday.
4. The girl_______never___________（beat）at tennis since 1991.
5. Even if I___________（invite），I won't go to the party at Tom's home.

三、用括号里的名词或代词作主语将下列句子改成主动语态。

1. Rice is grown in the south of China.（people）
2. These photos were taken in their factory.（we）
3. Must the classroom be cleaned this afternoon?（the student）
4. I was asked where my father has gone?（they）
5. Many new schools have been built in my hometown in the past few years.（the workers）
6. Many color TV sets had been made in their village by the end of last year.（we）
7. A piano concert will be given in the Capital Theatre this evening.（a famous German pianist）
8. Computers are used in many ways.（they）

9. He was heard to sing a foreign song last night.（Tom）
10. The baby was named Rose.（his father）

【参考答案】

一、

1.The letter is being written by her.
2.The key had been got before he came in.
3.I was asked to return that book.
4.Tom is said to be a good boy.
5.A large factory was being built at that time.
6.My mother is often shown a lot of photos.
7.Little Tom is made to walk up and down every day.
8.You will be invited to the dinner，too.

二、

1. had…been，developed 2. are being painted 3. were invited 4. has…been beaten 5. am invited

三、

1. People grow rice in the south of China.
2. We took these photos in our factory.
3. The students must clean the classroom this afternoon.
4. They asked me where my father had gone.
5. The workers have built many new schools in my hometown in the past few years.
6. We had made many color TV sets in our village by the end of last year.
7. A famous German pianist will give a piano concert in the Capital Theatre this evening.
8. They used computers in many ways.
9. Tom heard him sing a foreign song last night.
10. Father named his baby Rose.

【句型转换专项练习】

一、主动语态与被动语态相互转换，每空一词（含缩写）。

1. We call maths the language of science.（改为被动句）
   Maths _________ _________ the language of science.
2. Where did they plant trees?（改为被动句）
   Where _________ trees _________?
3. You can borrow two books at a time.（改为被动句）
   Two books _________ _________ _________ at a time.
4.The teacher made the students copy the text.（改为被动句）
   The students _________ _________ _________ copy the text.
5. They produce silk in Suzhou.（改为被动句）
   Silk _________ _________ in Suzhou.
6. They built a bridge between the two islands last year.（改为被动句）
   A bridge ________ ________ between the two islands last year.
7. A birthday party will be given tomorrow.（改为主动句）

We __________ __________ a birthday party tomorrow.

8. John was seen to cross the street just now by someone.（改为主动句）

Someone __________ John __________ the street just now.

9. Can another way be thought of to keep your wine or water warm?（改为主动句）

Can ________ ________ _______ another way to keep your wine or water warm?

10. Too many trees are still being cut down in the USA.（改为主动句）

__________ are still __________ down too many trees in the USA.

【参考答案】

1. is called　2. were，planted　3. can be borrowed　4. were made to　5. is produced
6. was built　7. will give　8. saw，cross　9. you think of　10. People/They，cutting

二、将下列主动语态的句子转换为被动语态。

1. Our uncle takes Susan to hospital. ____
2. We have cleaned the car.____
3. The policemen help the children. ____
4. My mother sends me to the butcher.____
5. Peter will look after my little brother.____
6. Mr. Jones watches the film.____
7. Somebody built the house last year.____
8. She gave me the box.____
9. Max will look after him.____
10. We saw her in Dresden last week.____

三、中考英语时态和语态专项练习题。

1. Don’t make so much noise. We _______ to the music.

A. listened　B. listen　C. are listening　D. have listened

2. I must return the camera to Li Lei. I _______ it for two weeks.

A. keep　B. borrowed　C. have kept　D. have lent

3. —When will you tell him the good news?

—I will tell him about it as soon as he _______ back.

A. comes　B. came　C. will come　D. is coming

4. —Dad，please open the door，it _______. —OK，dear. I’m coming.

A. locks　B. locked　C. is locked　D. was locked

5. —Did you go to Jim’s birthday party? —No，I _______.

A. am not invited　B. wasn’t invited　C. haven’t invited　D. didn’t invite

6. A talk on Chinese history _______ in the school hall next week.

A. be given　B. has been given　C. will be given　D. will give

7. You may go fishing if your work _______.

A. is done　B. will be done　C. has done　D. have done

8. —What do you think of the football match yesterday?

—Well. It’s surprising. The strongest team of our school _______.

A. was beaten　B. won　C. scored　D. was failed

9. —Would your younger brother go for a picnic this Sunday? —If I don’t go，_______.

A. so does he　B. so he will　C. neither will he　D. neither does he

10. The trees must _______ three times a week.

A. water B. is watering C. be watered D. waters

11. —Did you see Tom at the party? —No, he _______ by the time I got there.

A. left B. was leaving C. had left D. has left

12. —Why not go to see the dolphin show with me? —Because I ______ it.

A. saw B. will see C. see D. have seen

13. —Do you like watching cooking programs on TV?

—No, I don't, but my twin brother _______. He's very fond of cooking.

A. does B. do C. is D. are

14. Catherin _______ the letter before her mother came into her bedroom.

A. has written B. was written C. had written D. is writing

15. The old man is quite weak after the accident, so he _______.

A. must take care of B. must be take care of C. must look after D. must be looked after

16. The ticket is on the floor. Would you please _______ for me?

A. pick it up B. pick up it C. pick up them D. pick them up

17. He _______ living in the country to the city.

A. likes B. prefers C. enjoys D. loves

18. How long have you _______ the book?

A. bought B. lent C. had D. borrowed

19. —Do you know him well ? —Sure. We _______ friend since ten years ago.

A. were B. have been C. have become D. have made

20. _______ me carefully, boys and girls. Can you _______ me?

A. Listen to; hear B. Hear; listen to C. Hear; hear D. Listen to; hear from

21. —These farmers have been to the United States. —Really? When ______ there?

A. will they go B. did they go C. do they go D. have they gone

22. I'm sorry I haven't got any money. I _______ my handbag at home.

A. have missed B. have left C. have put D. have forgotten

23. —Where is Miss Gao. Lily? —She _______ to the teachers'.

A. has been B. has gone C. went D. would go

24. When her father came back home, Joan ______ with her friend.

A. talked B. talks C. is talking D. was talking

25. —What's that thing with three legs? —It's a cup. It ______ for drinking in the old days.

A. uses B. used C. is used D. was used

26. His uncle _______ in three days.

A. returns B. has returned C. returned D. will return

27. —Hi, Lin Tao. I didn't see you at the party. —Oh, I _______ ready for the maths exam.

A. am getting B. was getting C. got D. have got

28. —Excuse me. What did you say you would like to do, Miss White? —I said I'd better go back to the office. I _______ something this afternoon.

A. would meet B. meet C. am going to meet D. was meeting

29. What _______ the forest in our country in the last ten years.

A. has happened do B. is happened to C. has happened at D. is happening

30. —What did Mr Jones do before he moved here? —He _____ a city bus for over twenty-five years.

A. is driving B. drove C. has driven D. drives

31. —When _______you ______ your homework? —I had finished it before he _______ back.
A. have; finished; came B. have; finished; was coming
C. did; finish; came D. did; finish; was coming
32. Look! The boys _______ happily in the river.
A. swim B. swam C. will swim D. are swimming
33. Every spring, many trees _______ along the river.
A. were planted B. is planted C. will be planted D. are planted
34. The letter _______ in French. I can't read it.
A. is writing B. is written C. wrote D. writes
35. If Mary _______ next Sunday, we will go boating together.
A. will come B. comes C. shall come D. should come
36. We expected that the English teacher ___some advice on how to write an English letter.
A. will give B. gave C. is going to give D. would give
37. Five years ago nobody knew him, although he _______ more than 100 songs.
A. already wrote B. have already written
C. had already written D. was already writing
38. So far I _______ any success. However, I'll keep trying.
A. don't have B. didn't have C. haven't had D. won't have
39. It was the third time that I _______ in at his office.
A. have dropped B. had dropped C. dropped D. was dropping
40. I often see Tom _______ homework while I am watching TV every evening.
A. do B. doing C. did D. to do
41. The flowers want _______. Look, the soil is so dry.
A. watering B. being watered C. to water D. waters
42. —Be careful! You might fall into the water. —Thank you. I ___I ____so close to the pool.
A. didn't know; am standing B. don't know; am standing
C. didn't know; was standing D. didn't know; would stand
43. —Excuse me. Where is the sick boy sent here a moment ago? —He ______ by the doctor.
A. has been examined B. will be examined
C. is examined D. is being examined
44. —Have you got the airplane tickets? —No. When I _______ to the office, all the tickets to Beijing ______ out.
A. get; have been sold B. got; had been sold
C. got; had sold D. got; were being sold
45. —Your name again? I _______ quite catch it. —Bartholomew Liveli.
A. didn't B. don't C. couldn't D. can't
46. —Whom are you waiting for? —Gary's parents. But neither of them _______ yet.
A. arrived B. has arrived C. are arriving D. is arriving
47. He _______ in bed all day long because he had a headache.
A. lie B. lay C. laid D. lied
48. Would you _______ your voice a little so that everyone can hear you?
A. rise B. put C. lift D. raise
49. More and more people began to _______ that good health means good wealth.
A. learn B. understand C. consider D. realize

【参考答案】

1—5　CCACB　　6—10　CAADC　　11—15　CDACD　　16—20　ABCBA
21—25　BBBDD　　26—30　DBAAB　　31—36　CDDBB　　36—40　DCCBB
41—45　ACDBA　　46—49　BBDD

【中考真题——动词的被动语态】

第一部分

1.（2011 北京）Many accidents ________by careless arrives last year.
A. are caused　B. were caused　C. have caused　D. will cause
2.（2011 重庆）I'm glad to find that many tress________in our city last year.
A. plant　B. planted　C. were planted　D. are planted
3.（2011 安徽）Don't worry. Your package_____here until you come back，so enjoy shopping here.
A. will keep　B. has kept　C. will be kept　D. has been kept
4.（2011 江西）—What happened to Billy? —He__________because of his drink-driving.
A. is caught　B. was caught　C. has caught　D. had caught
5.（2011 陕西）Driving after drinking wine__________in China.
A. allows　B. doesn't allow　C. is allowed　D. isn't allowed
6.（2011 南京）It's reported that Nanjing South Railway Station _______at the end of this month.
A. has been completed　B. is completed
C. was completed　D. will be completed
7.（2011 长沙）—May I use your cup，Tom? —Sorry，it_________by my sister just now.
A. was broken　B. is broken　C. broke
8.（2011 广东）People who drink wine ________to drive after May Day.
A. don't allow　B. isn't allowed　C. mustn't allow　D. mustn't be allowed
9.（2011 成都）Because of the support from all over the country，beautiful new buildings______here and there in the earthquake hit areas in Sichuan.
A. can see　B. can be seen　C. will be seen
10.（2011 深圳）—When should I hand in my paper? —Your paper must____as soon as the bell____.
A. hand in；rings　B. hand in；will ring
C. be handed in；will ring　D. be handed in；rings
11.（2011 南宁）Trees________every year to make our city greener.
A. plant　B. are planted
C. were planted　D. will be planted
12.（2011 青岛）Your donation_____and the money will be used to help the students from poor families.
A. is greatly appreciating　B. appreciates
C. has appreciated　D. is greatly appreciated
13.（2011 青岛）Each time tourists travel to Beijing，they_______the Forbidden City.
A. will be shown up　B. will be shown around　C. will show around　D. will show to
14.（2010 北京）The road________last year.
A. builds　B. built　C. was built　D. is built
15.（2010 天津）Liu Xiang ________by his coach to train regularly.

A. advised B. advises C. was advised D. be advised

16.（2010 上海）A Disneyland Park（迪斯尼乐园）____in Shanghai Pudong New Area in the near future.

A. builds B. has built C. will built D. will be built

17.（2010 南京）—Can you sing this English song? —Of course，I can. It______many times on the radio.

A. taught B. has taught C. is taught D. has been taught

18.（2010 广东）The 16th Asian Games__________in Guangzhou in November，2010.

A. holds B. will hold C. was held D. will be held

19.（2010 成都）No conclusion______before we complete this test.

A. is made B. will be made C. has made

20.（2010 昆明）Necessary action __________so that students can be safe at schools.

A. can be taken B. must be taken C. may be taken D. might be taken

21.（2010 昆明）More than 100 workers_________from the Wangjialing Coal Mine in April that year.

A. is saved B. are saved C. was saved D. were saved

22.（2009 北京）The sick boy_________to hospital by the police yesterday.

A. is taken B. was taken C. takes D. took

23.（2009 重庆）Waste paper shouldn't ___________everywhere. It's our duty to keep our city clean.

A. be thrown B. throw C. is thrown D. are thrown

24.（2009 南京）—Do you have any problems if you___________this job? —well，I'm thinking about the working day.

A. offer B. will offer C. are offered D. will be offered

25.（2009 深圳）—David，turn off the TV_________no one is watching it.

—But it___________off already! The music is from the radio.

A. so that；has been turned B. when；has turned

C. if；has been turned D. because；has turned

26.（2009 江西）I _________to get there before seven tomorrow，so I'll have to get up early.

A. told B. have told C. will tell D. was told

27.（2008 安徽）When you leave the room，make sure the door__________.

A. was locked B. is locked

C. will be locked D. should be locked

28.（2008 黄冈）—Do you believe there are aliens? —I'm afraid not. I don't think aliens____in space.

A. can find B. can be found C. can be founded D. can't be found

29.（2008 辽宁）—I want to be a Chinese teacher when I grow up.

—That's great. Chinese teacher__________in China and some foreign countries.

A. need B. are needing C. are needed D. will need

30.（2008 徐州）Don't worry. You__________plenty of time to decide.

A. will give B. have given C. will be given D. are giving

31.（2007 杭州）As China grows stronger and stronger，Chinese___________in more and more schools out of our country.

A. teaches B. is taught C. has taught D. was taught

32.（2007 哈尔滨）—Our environment is getting worse than before. —You're right. But thanks to Earth Day，people have done more and more useful things to protect（保护）the earth since Earth Day__________.

A. is started B. was started C. has started

33.（2007 济南）The young man was often seen________by the lake.

A. to draw B. to drawing C. draw D. drew

【参考答案】

1—10 BCCBDDADBD 11—20 BDBCCDDCBB

21—30 DBACCDBBCC 31—33 BBA

第二部分

1.（2011 深圳）—Mum，can I go to the zoo with Linda? —When your homework______，you can.

A. is finished B. was finished

C. finishes D. finished

2.（2011 徐州）—Lots of trees and flowers_______on both sides of Huanshan Road last year. —Oh，that's beautiful.

A. are planted B. were planting C. were planted D. have planted

3.（2011 重庆）It __________to drive after drinking wine.

A. is allowed B. is not allowed C. is made D. is welcomed

4.（2011 吉林）—Excuse me，can we bring the dog to the theatre with us? —Sorry，pets_______to enter.

A. are allowed B. are asked

C. aren't allowed D. aren't asked

5.（2011 江西）—Can you tell me how to make apple juice? —Sure. Please watch carefully and you will see how it__________.

A. is made B. is making C. makes D. will make

6.（2011 江苏）Tom，you shouldn't put off today's work for tomorrow. I mean，today's work _____today.

A. may done B. must done C. may be done D. must be done

7.（2010 湖南）The school dance is____________by the students.

A. written B. planned C. writing D. planning

8.（2010 山东）My cousin has been happy since he___________to spend more time with his friends.

A. will allow B. will be allowed C. allowed D. was allowed

9.（2010 河北）I won't go to her party unless my good friend Jack__________.

A. will invite B. will be invited C. is invited D. invites

10.（2010 北京）The Chinese mainland pandas，Tuantuan and Yuanyuan，________to Taiwan on Dec. 23rd，2008.

A. sent B. were sending C. had sent D. were sent

11.（2009 太原）They won't be back until the work _____.

A. do B. does C. is done D. will do

12.（ 2009 济南）The 30th Olympic Games ______ in London in 2012.

A. has been held B. has held C. will be held D. will held

13.（2009 上海）—Our school ____ in 1899. —It has a very long history.

A. built B. is built C. has built D. was built

14.（2009 河南）The letter ____French. I can't read it.

A. wrote in B. was written in C. wrote on D. is written on

15.（2009 甘肃）There was an important meeting last night. Mr. Smith _____ to it.

A. was invited B. invited C. is invited D. invite

【参考答案】

1—5 ACBCA 6—10 DBDCD 11—15 CCDBA

第三部分

1.（2011 北京）The sick boy ____ to hospital by the police yesterday.

A. is taken　　B. was taken　　C. takes　　D. took

2.（2011 天津）Have you ever been to Beijing? —Of course. Look，this photo___there last year.

A. is taken　　B. took　　C. was taken　　D. will take

3.（2011 湖北）Are you going to the party? —No，because I _______.

A. have invited　　B. haven't invited　　C. has been invited　　D. haven't been invited

4.（2011 湖南）Don't be afraid. The dog ______ to the tree.

A. is tied　　B. must tie　　C. was tied　　D. has tied

5.（2011 江西）—Have you heard of the movie 2012? —Yes. It ____in Hongse Theatre Last winter.

A. shows　　B. was shown　　C. is shown

6.（2010 南宁）The students _____ not to swim in the river.

A. are told　　B. tells　　C. telling

7.（2010 浙江）If the question ____ incorrectly，_______ question will be given to you.

A. is answered；other　　B. answers；other

C. is answered；another　　D. answers；another

8.（2010 天津）Don't discuss the problem with your partner unless you ____ to do so.

A. ask　　B. are asked　　C. will ask　　D. will be asked

9.（2010 上海）Chongqing is really a modern city now! Many tall buildings _____ everywhere.

A. can be seen　　B. can see　　C. can't see

10.（2010 福建）Today computers _____ in both cities and towns.

A. were using　　B. are used　　C. were used　　D. are using

11.（2009 江苏）Last year，LiHua，a college student，_____ to work for the Olympic Games.

A. is choosing　　B. is chosen　　C. was choosing　　D. was chosen

12.（2009 河北）More than one answer ____ to the question.

A. have given　　B. had given　　C. were given　　D. has been given

13.（2009 湖北）—How do you like the material? —Very much. It ______ soft and nice.

A. feels　　B. is felt　　C. is feeling　　D. felt

14.（2009 北京）—Who closed the door? —Nobody. It _____.

A. was closed by itself　　B. had closed itself

C. was closed itself　　D. closed itself

15.（2009 河南）Metal _____ making machines and many other things.

A. used to　　B.　is used for　　C. is used as　　D. is used to

【参考答案】

1—5　BCDAB　　6—10　ACBAB　　11—15　DDADB

【高考典型例题】

1.（2010·东城检测）Right now the government is trying to control the number of people who_______by H1N1 flu.

A. have been affected　　B. have affected　　C. are affected　　D. affect

【解析】考查动词的时态、语态。句意为：政府正在试图控制感染 H1N1 流感的人的数量。人们被感染流感，用 sb.be affected by sth.结构，这里说的是现在的一般情况，故用一般现在时的被动语态。

【答案】C

2.（2010·上海春招）The employees________that they should renew their contracts within a week.

A. advise　　B. have advised　　C. are advised　　D. had been advised

【解析】考查动词的语态。语意：（公司）建议员工在一周内续签合同。根据语意，The employees与advise为动宾关系，所以应该用被动结构，故选C项。

【答案】C

3.（2010·抚顺一中第一次同步考试）With the help of high technology，more and more new substances_____in the past years.

A. discovered　　B. have discovered

C. had been discovered　　D. have been discovered

【解析】考查时态和语态。由句中的时间状语in the past years可知，这里应用现在完成时；句子的主语new substances与discover之间为动宾关系，故选D项。

【答案】D

4.（2010·成都联考）—Look! Everything here is under construction. —What's the pretty small house that________for?

A. is being built　　B. has been built　　C. is built　　D. is building

【解析】考查时态和语态。语意表明从句中用现在进行时，名词house是动词build的承受者，所以谓语用现在进行时的被动语态。第二句语意为：正在修建的那座漂亮的小房子是用来做什么的？

【答案】A

5.（2010·皖南八校联考）We've been told the good news, but when and where to go for the exciting paid vacation________yet.

A. are not discussed　　B. have not been discussed

C. is not being discussed　　D. has not been discussed

【解析】后一分句的主语为when and where to go for the exciting paid vacation，表示的是一件事，谓语动词用单数形式，由此排除A、B两项。根据句末的yet可知应该用完成时，即这件事还没有被讨论。

【答案】D

6.（2010·西安质量检测）We haven't moved into the new office building—it______right now.

A. is decorating　　B. has been decorated

C. is being decorated　　D. has been decorating

【解析】考查动词的时态、语态。根据题干中前面一句话的时态及后一句话中的时间状语right now可知，应用现在进行时；又依据语意可知，房子正在（被）装修，因此选C。

【答案】C

9 情态动词

9.1 情态动词的含义和特征

情态动词（Modal Verbs）本身有一定的词义，但是不能独立作谓语，只能和动词原形一起构成谓语。另外，情态动词没有人称和数的变化，情态动词后必须跟动词原形。情态动词用在行为动词前，表示说话人对这一动作或状态的看法或主观设想。情态动词虽然数量不多，但用途广泛，常见的主要有：can（could），may（might），must，need，ought to，dare（dared），shall（should），will（would）。

情态动词又叫情态助动词，它们具有以下特点：

（1）必须与其他动词连用，即情态动词+动词原形。表示说话人对所述动作的看法，如需要、可能、意愿或怀疑等。

（2）绝大多数情态动词没有人称和数的变化，即第三人称单数不加-s。以 be 和 have 开头的情态动词短语除外。

（3）在意义上，情态动词具有“多义性”。如：can 既可表示能力，又可表示可能、允许等意义。

9.2 情态动词的分类

（1）只作情态动词：may，might，must。

（2）可作情态动词又可作实义动词：need，dare，can。

（3）有情态动词特征：have（had，has）to，used to，ought to。

（4）作情态动词又可作助动词：shall（should），will（would）。

9.3 情态动词的基本用法

9.3.1 can 和 could 的用法（见表 9-1）

表 9-1 can 和 could 的用法

情态动词	用 法	例 句
can/could	表示能力	“I don’t think Mike can type.” “Yes，he can.” I can speak fluent English now，but I couldn’t last year.
	在肯定句中，表示客观可能性，并不涉及具体某事会发生，常用来说明人或事物的特征。要表达具体某事实际发生的可能性时，不用 can，需用 could，may，might	As a human being，anyone can make a mistake. I’m confident that a solution can be found. He can be very forgetful sometimes. I may stay at home this weekend.（实际可能性） Peter might come to join us.（实际可能性） It will be sunny in the daytime，but it could rain tonight.（实际可能性）

续表

情态动词	用　法	例　句
can/could	表示请求和允许。表示请求时，口语中常用 could 代替 can，使语气更委婉	Can we turn the air conditioner on? Any police officer can insist on seeing a driver's license. In soccer，you can't touch the ball with your hands. Could you have her call me back when she gets home，please? I wonder if I could just ask you to sign this.
	表示对现在的动作或状态进行主观的猜测，主要用在否定句和疑问句中	It can't be easy caring for a man and a child who are not your own. Can the man over there be our head master?
	表示惊异、怀疑、不相信等态度，主要用在否定句、疑问句和感叹句中	Can this be an excuse for not giving them help? This can't be true. How can you be so crazy?

（1）can 和 could 可以表示某人或某物一时的特点，可以翻译为“有可能，有时会”（可理解为理论上的可能性）。例如：

It can be very warm in this area. 这个地区有时可能非常暖和。

He can be very friendly at times. 他有时会非常友好。

could 用来表示请求时，语气委婉，主要用于疑问句，不能用于肯定句，答语应用 can（即 could 不能用于现在时态的简略答语中）。如：

—Could I use your dictionary? —Yes，you can.（否定回答可用：No，I'm afraid not.）

（2）can 表示能力时（即有某种知识和技能而能办到），可以与 be able to 换用。但是在将来时和完成时中必须用 be able to。

（3）表示经过努力而成功地办到了某个具体的事情时，只能用 be able to，不可以用 can。这种用法的 be able to 相当于 succeed in 或 manage to do sth.。例如：

Can you type?＝Are you able to type?

I am sure we shall be able to get you a job soon.（不能用 can）

He has been able to finish the work on time.（不可用 can）

After years of hard work he was able to win the prize.（不可以用 could）

He couldn't climb the mountain.（没有能力爬，因而也没有爬）

He was not able to climb the mountain.（尝试爬过，但是没能爬上去）

（4）be able to 强调能力，通常表示一次性的事件，一般不表示经常性的事件。例如：

I was able to pass the examination.（＝I succeeded in passing the examination.）

我能考试及格。（考试及格了）

After studying that you will be able to solve these mathematics problems.

学习完这个方法后，你能够解这些数学题了。

（5）在否定句结构中，be able to 指暂时的情况，而 can 可以指经常的情况。例如：

He is not able to swim today. 他今天不能游泳。

He can't swim at all. 他根本不会游泳。

I shall not be able to go to school tomorrow. 我明天不能上学了。

（6）表示“经过尝试或努力能做到”的意思时，一般不用 be able to。如对“Were you able to find the pen?”做否定回答应该用：“No，I couldn't（find it）.”不能说：“No，I wasn't able to find it.”

（7）could 可以用来表示过去习惯性动作的完成，而 was able to 却没有这种用法。例如：

I could run after a bus and catch it twenty years ago，I can't do that now. 二十年前，我能在后面跑着追

上公共汽车，现在不行了。

（8）cannot/can’t 与 too/over/enough/perfectly/sufficiently 等词连用，意思是“越……越……”“无论怎样……也不为过”“决不会……够（过）”。例如：

You can’t praise him too much. 你无论怎样称赞他都不过分。

You cannot be over careful. 你越细心越好。

I can’t thank you enough. 我对你感激不尽。

This point cannot be overemphasized. 这一点无论如何强调都不过分.

注释：

（1）can’t/cannot…too/enough 等中的 not，也可以用 never/hardly/scarcely 等代替。例如：

There can never be too much deception in war. 兵不厌诈。

We can hardly/scarcely pay too high a price for liberation. 为了解放，我们无论付出多高的代价也不为过。

（2）can’t/cannot…too/enough 等后的附加疑问句的动词用肯定形式 can，不用 can’t。例如：

You can’t praise him too much，can you? 你无论怎样赞扬他都不为过，对吧?

You cannot be too careful，can you? 你再小心也不为过，对吧?

（3）“cannot wait+to do sth.”意思是“be eager to…”表示急于做……表示强调的肯定意思。例如：

I cannot wait to read the book. 我非常渴望读这本书.

He couldn’t wait to see her. 他渴望见到她.

补充词组：（1）can’t help/stop doing sth. 情不自禁地做某事

（2）cannot help to do sth. 不能帮忙做某事

（3）do everything/all（that）one can to do sth. 尽其所能去做某事，尽力做某事

注意：类似的表达还有 sb. do what one can to do sth.；do/try one’s best to do sth.。

练习题：

1. Please remind your grandpa to take medicine on time，for a man of his age_______be very forgetful.

A. should　　B. must　　C. shall　　D. can

2. You cannot be_______careful when you drive a car.

A. very　　B. so　　C. too　　D. enough

3. The car broke down on the way，but we_____get out of the desert at last.

A. might　　B. would　　C. were able to　　D. could

9.4　must 和 have to 的用法

1. must 的用法

（1）表示必须，强调说话人的主观意志。例如：

I must go now，or I’ll be late.

You must be here by ten o’clock.

【注意】表示“必须“时，must 的否定式为 needn’t 或 don’t have to ，而不是 mustn’t。例如：

—Must I/we do it now?

—<u>Yes</u>，you must.

—<u>No</u>，you needn’t/don’t have to.

（2）表示推测，一般只用于肯定陈述句，表示非常肯定。例如：

She didn’t look at me. She must be angry. 她不朝我看，一定是生气了。

He is good at English. He must know the word.　他英语好，准知道这个词。

You must be Mr. Jones. 想必您就是琼斯先生吧。

2. have to 的用法

have to 可视为情态动词，但它与其他情态动词在用法上稍有不同。其他情态动词没有人称和数的变化，而 have to 却有人称和数的变化，要视主语的不同而变化。

例：I/You/We/They have to…

He/She/It has to…

You don’t have to…

Does she have to…?

have to =have got to，意思是“必须，不得不”。

3. must 和 have to 的不同之处（见表 9-2）

表 9-2 must 和 have to 的不同之处

情态动词	用法	例句
must	表示“必须，应该”之意，语气比 should，ought to 强烈。其否定形式 mustn’t，表示“不准，不应该，禁止”等意	You must come to school on time. Everybody must obey the law. You mustn’t drive so fast in the street. We mustn’t waste any more time.
	在回答带有 must 的问句时，否定回答常用 needn’t 或 don’t have to，表示“不必”，而不用 mustn’t	—Must I come back before ten? —Yes，you must.（No，you needn’t）
	表示有把握的推测，意为“一定、准是、想必”，只用于肯定句中	It must be my mother. You must be hungry after a walk. There must be a hole in the wall.
have to	“必须，不得不”，意义与 must 相近。但 must 表示的是说话人的主观看法，而 have to 则往往强调客观需要	The film is not interesting. I really must go now. I have to go now，because my mother is in hospital.
	must 只有一种形式，即现在时与过去时都是一种形式，而 have to 则涉及各种人称、时态等方面的变化形式	I had to work hard when I was your age. I will have to learn how to use a computer. In order to take the exam，we’ll have to finish the whole book by the end of this month.
	两者的否定意义不同，mustn’t 表示“禁止，不许”，don’t have to 表示“不必”	You mustn’t go there. You don’t have to go there.

（1）have to 多表示习惯动作或客观条件所引出的义务；而 must 则表示重要或急迫的事情。例如：

We have to care for the young.（义务）

She has to be at the office before 8 every day.（习惯）

You must go to the manager at once，or you’ll be dismissed.（急迫的事情）

（2）have to 通常强调客观需求，表示因客观环境或事态促使而不得不做某事；must 强调主观看法，表示主观上认为有必要做某事。例如：

I must learn another language.（主观想法：I want to）

I have to learn another language.（客观需求：身为一个外交官）

（3）must 可以表示客观必然性，意思为“必然（会），总是会”，而 have to 则不可以这样用。例如：

All men must die. 人固有一死。

Competition must happen. 竞争总会发生。

Truth must be out. 真相总会大白。

Winter must be followed by spring. 冬天到了，春天还会远吗？

There must be a day for revenge. 总有报仇的那一天。

（4）must 所在句子变反义疑问句时，应注意以下习惯搭配：

① must 作“必须”解时，反义疑问句中重复 must。例：

All the children must respect their parents，mustn’t they? 孩子必须尊敬父母，对吗？

② must 作“有必要”解时，反义疑问句中用 need。例：

We must tell her the truth，needn’t we? 我们现在有必要告诉她实情，对吗？

③ must be 表示推测时，反义疑问句用 be 的适当形式。例：

You must be thirsty，aren’t you? 你一定渴了，是吗？

④ must have done 表示推测时，附加疑问句一般用 have 或 has，但是有明确表示过去的时间壮语（before 除外）时，反义疑问句用过去时态。例：

He must have finished the work，hasn’t he?

He must have gone abroad last week，didn’t he?

You must have been told about it that day，weren’t you?

⑤ mustn’t 表示“禁止，不允许”时，反义疑问句一般用 may。有时也可用 must。例：

The children mustn’t play with fire，may they?

We mustn’t be late，must/may we? 我们不可以迟到，对吗？

⑥ must 用于表示询问对方意向时，反义疑问句部分的动词可以与前面陈述句部分的动词不一致。例：

You must come tomorrow，will you?

4. 情态动词 must 表推测的用法归纳

情态动词 must 表推测，意为“必定，准是，很可能”。其用法归纳如下。

（1）表示肯定推测的三种用法。

①“must+do”表示对现在情况的肯定推测。例如：

—Hi, Tom. Any idea where Jane is? —She______in the classroom. I saw her there just now.（2009 重庆）

A. shall be　　B. should have been　　C. must be　　D. might have been

解析：因为“我刚看到了她”，所以可以推测出现在“她一定在教室里。”故选 C。

②“must+have done”表示对过去情况的肯定推测。例如：

The teacher_____have thought Johnson was worth it or she wouldn’t have wasted time on him，I suppose.（2007 安徽）

A. should　　B. can　　C. would　　D. must

析：因为老师已经在他身上浪费了时间，所以可以判断出老师对 Johnson 的肯定，根据上下文故选 D。

③“must+be doing”表示对正在发生或将要发生的事情的肯定推测。例如：

There will be an English test tomorrow. He must be preparing for it now.

（2）否定推测。

对于否定情况的推测不能用“mustn’t”，而要用“can’t”。例如：

① You_______be hungry already —you had lunch only two hours ago!（2008 浙江）

A. wouldn’t　　B. can’t　　C. mustn’t　　D. needn’t

② She________have left school，for her bike is still here.（2008 天津）

A. can't　　B. wouldn't　　C. shouldn't　　D. needn't

解析：① 是对现在情况的否定推测；② 是对过去情况的否定推测，故分别选 B 和 A。

（3）情态动词 must 表推测的反义疑问句。

情态动词 must 表推测时，其反义疑问句不能用情态动词，而是必须去掉情态动词之后在句子本来意义的基础上进行反问。例如：

He must be helping the old man to water the flowers，______?（2009 陕西）

A. is he　　B. isn't he　　C. must he　　D. mustn't he

解析：这句话是对正在发生的事情的肯定推测，可以理解为“He is helping the old man to water the flowers，”所以反义疑问句为“isn't he”，故选 B。

9.5　used to 的用法

1. 基本用法

used to 的意思是“过去经常”，其中的 to 是不定式符号，不是介词，所以其后接动词原形（不接动名词）。例如：

He used to live in Paris. 他过去一直住在巴黎。

I used to write poetry when I was young. 我年轻时常常写诗。

“Do you play golf?”“No，but I used to.”“你打高尔夫球吗?”“不打，但我过去打。”

2. 如何构成否定式和疑问式

used to 作为情态动词，可直接在 used 后加 not 构成否定式，直接将 used 置于句首构成疑问式，但与一般的情态动词不同的是，它也可像普通动词那样借助助动词 did 构成否定式和疑问式。例如：

He usedn't（didn't use）to come. 他过去不常来。

You used to go there，usedn't（didn't）you? 你过去常到那儿去，是吗?

Where did you use to live? 你过去是住哪儿的?

【注】在现代英语中，used to 的否定式和疑问式通常借助助动词 did 构成（特别是在口语和非正式文体中），而直接将 used 作为助动词用通常被认为是非常正统或过时的用法。然而有趣的是，有时还可见到以下这种混合形式：

Did you used to be a teacher? 你过去是当老师的吗?

They didn't used to live here. 他们过去没住在这儿。

3. used to 与副词连用时的位置

与 often，always，never 等副词连用时，used to 通常置于副词之后，也可置于副词之前。例如：

I always used（used always）to be afraid of dogs. 我过去老是怕狗。

He often used（used often）to sit outside the door of his house. 他过去常坐他家门口。

【注】它一般不能与表示次数（如 twice，three times 等）或一段时间（如 three months，five years 等）的词连用。例如：

正：I went to Paris three times. 我去过巴黎 3 次。

误：I used to go to Paris three times.

正：He lived in the country for three years. 他在乡下住过 3 年。

误：He used to live in the country for three years.

4. used to 与 be used to 的用法比较

（1）used to 意为“过去经常”，其中的 to 是不定式符号，后接动词原形。例如：

He used to live in Paris. 他过去一直住在巴黎。

（2）be used to 意为“习惯于”，其中的 to 是介词，后接动词要用动名词。例如：

He is used to living in the country. 他已习惯于住在乡下。

【注】① 若要强调从不习惯到习惯的过程，可用 get，become 等代替动词 be。例如：

He has got used to looking after himself. 他已习惯于自己照顾自己。

② be used to 有时可能是动词 use 的被动语态结构（此时意为“被用来”，其中的 to 为不定式符号，其后要接动词原形）。例如：

A hammer is used to drive in nails. 锤子是用来钉钉子的。

5. used to 与 would 的用法比较

两者都可以表示过去的习惯性动作。但是 would 只强调过去特定情况下的习惯性动作（由动态动词表示），单纯的过去和现在无关；而 used to 既可以强调过去的习惯性动作（由动态动词表示），也可以强调过去的事实或状态（由静态动词表示），且与现在形成对比，既可表示持续的状态，也可表示过去重复的行为。例如：

I used to have an old car. 过去我有一辆旧轿车。

I didn't use to like opera，but now I'm getting interested.

我过去不喜欢歌剧，但现在逐渐有了兴趣。

上面两句话的动词均是静态动词，说明过去的事实或状态，不能用 would 代替 used to。

【注】would 和 used to 一样，都不可用来表示发生的次数，也不能与表示特定时间段的状语连用。例如：

He went to London three times when he was a child. 他还是孩子时，去过伦敦三次。

但是 would 可以和 sometimes/now and then/from time to time 等词组（表示过去有时或偶尔的时间状语）连用。例如：

She would sit there for hours sometimes，doing nothing at all. 他有时一连坐好几个小时，什么事情也不干。

（1）两者都表示过去的习惯，当表示过去习惯性的动作时，可互换。例如：

When we were children we would（used to）go skating every winter. 我们小时候，每年冬天都去溜冰。

（2）若表示过去持续的状态，通常只用 used to，不用 would。例如：

He used to like you. 他原来还是喜欢你的。

He is not what he used to be. 他已不是从前的他了。

（3）若要强调过去与现在的对比，通常只用 used to。例如：

I don't smoke these days，but I used to. 我现在不抽烟，但我以前是抽的。

I used to drive to work but now I cycle. 过去我常驾车上班，但我现在骑自行车。

9.6 shall 的用法

shall 可以用在第二、三人称，要重读，不可以缩写，表示说话人的意图、意志、允诺、命令、命运或必然结果等；在法律、条约、协定等文件中可以表示义务、规定等。例如：

You shall have a lot of money.（意图/允诺）你会有很多钱的。

Each citizen shall carry his identification card when travelling.（规定）旅游时每个市民务必带上身份证。
You shall arrive there before sunset.（命令）你们要在日落前到达那儿。
If you don't behave yourself, you shall be punished.（威胁）如果你行为不轨的话，你会受到惩罚的。
The task shall be finished by Sunday.（允诺）任务会在星期天前完成的。
He shall get what he deserves.（警告）他会得到他应该得到的。
Death is certain to all; all shall die.（命运）死必临万物；万物皆必死。
Better days shall soon follow.（预言）好日子不久会来到。
The time shall come when they shall be avenged.（意志）为他们申冤的时候会来的。
Who touches pitch shall be defiled.（必然结果）玩火者必自焚。
POWs shall not be ill-treated.（法律用语）战俘不得受虐待。
The new regulation shall take effect on May the first.（规定）新章程自五月一日起实施。

9.7 will 和 would 的用法

1. 表示意愿

will 表示现在的意愿，would 表示过去的意愿。例如：
I will pay you at the rate you ask. 我愿意照你要求的价钱付款。
Go where you will. 你愿到哪里就到哪里。
He wouldn't help me yesterday. 他昨天不愿帮助我。
She asked if I would go with them. 她问我是否愿同他们一起去。
注意：
（1）表示“意愿”的 will 有时可用于条件句中。例如：
If you will allow me, I will see you home. 如果你同意，我可以送你回家。
（2）would 也可表示现在的意愿，语气较委婉。例如：
I'd go there with you. 我愿同你去那儿。
I wouldn't go. 我不会去。

2. 表示征求意见或提出请求

主要用于第二人称的疑问句中，will 和 would 均可用，would 此时并不表示过去，而是表示委婉语气。例如：
Won't you take off your coat? 你要不要把大衣脱掉？
Will/would you please post the letter for me? 请帮我寄了这封信好吗？
Would Sunday night suit you? 星期天晚上适合你吗？
注意：
（1）有时为使语气委婉，可用否定式。总的说来，用 would 比用 will 委婉，用 won't 和 wouldn't 比单独用 will 和 would 要委婉。
（2）would 有时用于提出想法，通常与 like，love，hate，prefer，be glad，be happy 等连用，若用于第一人称有时也可将 would 换成 should。例如：
I'd like（love）to have a look at it. 我想看看它。
I would prefer not to go out today. 我今天不想出去。

3. 表示习惯和倾向性

will 表示现在的习惯，would 表示过去的习惯。例如：
Oil will float on water. 油总是浮在水上。
This window won't open. 这扇窗户经常打不开。
He'll talk for hours，if you let him. 你要让他讲，他会讲几个小时。
The wound would not heal.（过去）伤口老不愈合。
When he was a child，he would often go skiing. 他小时候经常去滑雪。
He would sit there for hours sometimes doing nothing at all. 有时他在那里一坐几个钟头，什么也不做。
注意：有时 would 表示经常发生的令人不耐烦的事。例如：
That's just like him—he would lose his keys! 他就是这样，老丢钥匙！

4. 表示推测

will 用于谈论现在，would 用于谈论过去，也可用于谈论现在（语气较委婉）。例如：
This car will hold six people. 这辆小汽车可以坐六个人。
Ask him. He will know. 问问他吧，他大概知道。
You wouldn't know. 你不会知道。
Every family would have some sort of trouble. 家家都会有本难念的经。
The person you mentioned would be her father，is that right? 你提的那个人想必是她的父亲，对吗？
注意：有时后可接完成式，表示对过去可能已经发生的情况进行推测。例如：
You will have heard of it. 你已经听到那事了吧。
I thought you would have finished it by now. 我想你现在可能已经做完了吧。

5. 表示执意或决心

will 表示现在的执意和决心，would 表示过去的执意和决心。例如：
"Tell me the secret." "I won't." "把秘密告诉我。" "我才不呢。"
I won't have anything said against her. 我绝不让谁说她的坏话。
He would do it，though I told him not to. 虽然我叫他不要做，可是他偏要做。
注意：此用法可视为表意愿的加强用法，即强烈的意愿即为决心。

6. 其他用法

will 还可表示许诺、指示、叮嘱等，而 would 还可用于评论某一特定的行为等。例如：
You will have your share. 你会得到你那一份的。
You will do as I told you. 你得照我说的去做。
That's just what he would say. 他就是爱那样讲话。
You would never do anything to hurt me. 你绝不会做伤害我的事的。

7. would 与虚拟条件句

有时 would 可视为是省略了或包含有相关条件的虚拟语气。例如：

I might see her personally. It would be better. 我可能亲自去看她，那样更好些。（=It would be better if I saw her personally.）

She'd be stupid not to accept. 她不接受那才笨呢。（=She would be stupid if the didn't accept.）

8. would 与 used to 辨析

would 可用来表示过去反复出现的动作，但不能表示过去存在的状态，所以不能说："She would be a quiet girl." 另外，would 强调过去某种特定情况下的活动，是完全过去的事情，同现在没有联系。而 used to 则着眼于过去和现在的对比，隐含现在已不存在，动作或状态都可表示。would 可以表示不规则的习惯，used to 则不可。如：

He used to be a naughty boy and cause trouble.

I used to get up at six in the morning.

Sometimes she would take a walk in the neighboring woods.

In those days，whenever I had difficulties，I would go to Mr. Chen for help.

9.8 need 的用法

need 的基本词义是"需要"，它既可作情态动词，又可作实义动词。

（1）need 用作**情态动词**时，只用于否定句和疑问句。它只有一种形式，后接动词原形。

例：I don't believe you need worry.　我相信你没有必要焦急。

—Need we go so soon? 我们需要这么早就去吗？

—Yes，we <u>must</u>. /No，we <u>needn't</u>. 是的，必须。/不，不必。

So I needn't tell him，need I?　所以我不需要告诉他，对吧？

请比较以下两句话的不同意思：

You <u>needn't buy</u> the coat. 你没有必要买那件外衣。（你还没买）

You <u>needn't have bought</u> the coat. 你没有必要买这件外衣的。（而你却买了）

【注意】：—Need I/we…?

—<u>Yes</u>，you must. /—<u>No</u>，you needn't/don't have to .

（2）need 用作实义动词时，有时态、人称和数的变化。

如果人作主语，一般后接带 to 的动词不定式。即 need to do sth.；

如果物作主语，一般后用 need to be done 或 need doing sth.。

例如：I need to look up this word in the dictionary.

My watch needs <u>mending</u>/<u>to be mended</u>.　我的手表需要修理了。

We don't need to work today.（= We needn't work today.）

Does he need to go right now?（= Need he go right now?）

（3）didn't need to 和 needn't have done 的区别：

前者表示没有必要做实际上也没有做某事，后者表示做了不该做的事情。例：

They didn't need to come here. 他们不必来这儿（实际也没来）。

They needn't have come here. 他们本来不必来这儿（但是实际来了）

They did not need to arrive so early. 他们不必很早到达。

She was too nervous to reply，but fortunately she did not need to say nothing. 她紧张得无法答话，但是幸运的是她什么也不需要说。

You needn't have told them that. 你本不必把这件事情告诉他们。

（4）need 和 dare 的区别，见表 9-3。

表 9-3 need 和 dare 的区别

情态动词	用 法	例 句
need	表示“需要，必要”之意。作情态动词时，仅用于否定句和疑问句，只有现在时，过去式要用 needn't have，疑问式用 need+人称，否定式用 need not（即 needn't）	—Need we leave soon? —Yes，you must.（No，you needn't.） You needn't have hurried. （=It was not necessary for you to hurry，but you did.） 你当时不必这么匆忙。
	作实义动词时，其变化与一般的实义动词相同，后接带 to 的不定式（need doing＝need to be done ），过去式用 needed、did you need?和 didn't need，肯定式用 needs/needed/need，疑问式用 do、does、did 提问，否定式要在前面加 don't、doesn't、didn't	A job like nursing needs patience and understanding. （need+名词，need understanding=need to be understood，需要被理解） He needs to see a doctor.（need to do） Do you still need volunteers to help clean up after the party? （need somebody to do something） They didn't need to start so early. （do not need to do）
dare	表示“敢于”之意。作情态动词，没有人称和数的变化，主要用于否定句、疑问句和条件状语从句中	—Dare you tell her the truth? —Yes，I dare. /No，I daren't. How dare you accuse me of lying! He daren't admit this.
	用作实义动词时，其变化与一般的实义动词相同。在肯定句中，dare 后接带 to 的不定式；否定句中，dare 后既可接带 to 的不定式，也可接不带 to 的不定式	Only a few journalists dared to cover the story. He doesn't dare（to）go there alone. Don't you dare（to）touch it?

9.9 may 和 might 的用法

（1）表示“许可”，用 can 比较口语化。例：

You may/can come if you wish. 如果你想来，你就来。

You may not pick flowers in this park. 本公园内不许摘花。

（may not 表示按规定不许可，如果用 mustn't 则表示说话人不许可。）

—May I smoke here? 我可以在这里抽烟吗？

—No，you mustn't. 不行。（mustn't 表示明确的禁止。）

（2）肯定句中表示推测，“可能”。例：

It may rain tomorrow. 明天可能会下雨。

The news may not be true. 这个消息可能不会是真的。

注意：如果在疑问句中表示“可能”，通常用 can。例：

Can it be true? 那会是真的吗？

Who can he be? 他究竟是谁呢？

（3）—May I/we…?

—Yes，you may. /—No，you mustn't.

（4）may/might well+动词原形或 may/might as well+动词原形。

may/might well+动词原形意思为“理应，有足够的理由”=be very likely to do；may/might as well+动词原形意思为“还不如，不妨，还是……的好”=had better do sth.，表示某人应该做某事，因为没有更好的事、没有更有趣的事或没有更有用处的事可以做。may as well 比 might as well 更加肯定一点。例如：

He may well be proud of his son. 他大可以他的儿子为荣。

She may well say so. 她说得对。（有足够的理由这样说）

It is very late，so you may/might as well go to bed. 夜深了，不妨去睡吧。

We may/might as well have something to eat. 我们还不如吃点东西。

You may/might as well repeat the experiment. 你还是把这个实验重做一遍为好。

注：may/might（as）well 的否定式是 may/might（as）well+not。

9.10　should 的用法

（1）should 表示劝告、建议、命令，其同义词是 ought to；在疑问句中，通常用 should 代替 ought to。如：

You should go to class right away.

Should I open the window?

should 的含义较多，用法较活，现介绍三种特殊用法。请看下面的句子：

① I should think it would be better to try it again. 我倒是认为最好再试一试。

② You are mistaken，I should say. 依我看，你是搞错了。

③ I should advise you not to do that. 我倒是劝你别这样做。

④ This is something I should have liked to ask you. 这是我本来想问你的。

从以上例句可以看出：情态动词 should 用于第一人称时可以表示说话人的一种谦逊、客气、委婉的语气。

should 还可以用在 if 引导的条件从句中，表示一件事听起来可能性很小，但也不是完全没有可能。相当于“万一”的意思。从句谓语由 should 加动词原形构成，主句谓语却不一定用虚拟语气。如：

Ask her to ring me up if you should see her. 你万一见到她，请让她给我打个电话。

If you should change your mind，please let us know. 万一你改变主意，请通知我们。

Should I（If I should）be free tomorrow I will come. 万一我明天有时间，我就来。

此外，Why（or How）+should 结构表示说话人对某事不能理解，感到意外、惊异等意思。意为“竟会”。如：

Why should you be so late today? 你几天怎么来得这么晚?

—Where is Betty living? 贝蒂住在哪里?

—How should I know? 我怎么会知道呢?

I don't know why you should think that I did it. 我真不知道你凭什么认为这件事是我干的。

（2）“should+have+过去分词”结构一般表示义务，表示应该做到而实际上没有做到，并包含一种埋怨、责备的口气。如：

She should have finished it.

I should have helped her，but I never could.

You should have started earlier.

9.11 ought 的用法

（1）表示“应该”之意。例如：

You ought to take care of him.

—Ought I go now?

—Yes，you ought to. /No，you oughtn’t to.

（2）表示推测。注意与 must 表示推测的区别。例如：

He must be home by now.（断定他已到家）

He ought to be home by now.（不十分肯定）

This is where the oil must be.（比较直率）

This is where the oil ought to be.（比较含蓄）

说明：should 与 ought to 表示“应该”时的区别。should 表示自己的主观看法，而 ought to 的语气中，含有“按道理应该……”之意。若要反映客观情况或涉及法律义务和规定，一般用 ought to。如：

You should help them with their work.

You are his father. You ought to get him to receive good education.

9.12 had better 的基本用法

had better 常略作’d better。现代语法认为它是一个助动词，因为它后接不带 to 的动词不定式。had better do sth. 意思是“最好做某事；还是做某事比较好”。例如：

You’d better get some sleep. 你最好睡一会儿。

You’d better not do that again. 你最好别再做那件事。

What had we better do now? 我们现在怎么做才好呢?

Hadn’t we better tell her the truth? 我们是否最好不告诉她真相?

【注意】You’d better…表示劝告或委婉的命令，对长辈不宜使用。

9.13 情态动词表示推测

（1）must 多用于肯定句中，表示把握性极大的推测，意思为“一定、肯定”。

如：You have worked hard all day. You must be tired. 你已辛苦工作一整天了，一定累了。

The book must be his. His name is on the cover. 这本书一定是他的，封面上写着他的名字。

【注意】must 不表推测时，在肯定句中意思为“必须（强调内在的职责）”，在否定句中意思为“不许、禁止”，以它开头的疑问句否定回答常用 needn’t 或 don’t（doesn’t）have to。如：

We must obey the traffic rules. 我们必须遵守交通规则。

Cars mustn’t be parked here. 此处严禁停车。

—Must we hand in the papers this week? 我们必须本星期交论文吗?

—No，you needn’t. 不，你们不必（本星期交）。

（2）can/could 多用于否定句、疑问句或感叹句中表示推测、怀疑，两者在时间上没有差别。用 can 时不相信的程度更强一些，can’t 常常译为“不可能”。如：

The man under the tree can’t be Tom. He’s gone to England. 这个人不可能是 Tom，他已经去英国了。

Can it be true that he was fooled by a five-year-old boy? 他被一个五岁的孩子愚弄了，这能是真的吗?

Could this be an excuse? 这会不会是个借口?

How can you be so careless! 你怎么这样粗心!

（3）may/might 多用来表示把握性不大的推测，意思为“也许、可能”，might 比 may 的把握性更小一些。may not 在否定句中常常译为“可能不”。(注意区分“不可能”与“可能不”在把握性大小上的差异。)如：

Mr. Wang may know Professor Li's telephone number. 王先生也许知道李教授的电话号码。

This might be the key Tom has been looking for. 这可能就是汤姆一直在找的钥匙。

She may not be there today. 今天她可能不在那儿。

【中考题】

1. —I think the man over there must be Bob. —It____ be him. He has ____ to Australia.(2011 年山东省烟台市）

A. can't; gone B. can't; been C. may not; been D. mustn't; gone

2. She ____ be here. I saw her come in.（2011 年江苏省徐州市）

A. can B. may C. should D. must

3. —Who's singing in the next room? —It ____ be her. She has gone to New York.（2011 年浙江省湖州市）

A. can't B. must C. shouldn't D. can

4. —Where's Jeff? —I'm not sure. He ____ be playing football on the playground.（2010 年湖北省十堰市）

A. need B. might C. must D. can

【分析】上面的四道中考题均是在考查同学们对情态动词表示推测的掌握情况，答案为：ADAB。

9.14 情态动词+have done 的用法

情态动词+have done 的用法详见表 9-4。

表 9-4 情态动词+have done 的用法

情态动词+have done	用 法	例 句
must have done	表示主观上对过去已经发生的行为进行推测，意为“想必，准是，一定做了某事”	She must have gone through a lot. He must have visited the White House during his stay in the United States.
may/might have done	表示对过去已发生行为的推测，意为“也许/或许已经（没有）……”。一般用于肯定句或否定句中，不用于疑问句。用 might 则表示语气更加不肯定	You may have learnt the news. He may not have heard his name called. Sorry I'm late. I might have turned off the alarm clock and gone back to sleep again.
Can…have done/cannot have done	表示对过去发生的行为的怀疑和不肯定，通常用在否定句和疑问句中，can 换成 could 时语气更委婉	Where can she have gone? Could he have done such a foolish thing? The boy can't have finished reading the book so soon because it is difficult even to an adult.
could have done	可用于肯定句中，表示“可能已经……”之意，此外，还可以表示过去能做而没做的事，有一种对过去为付诸实施的事情的惋惜	He could have killed himself driving at a dangerous speed. You could have been more considerate. You could have done better, but you were too careless.

续表

情态动词+have done	用　法	例　句
might have done	表示“本来可能……，但实际上没有发生的事情”。另外，还可以表示“本来应该或可以做某事”之意，含有轻微的责备语气	You should not swum in that sea. You might have been eaten by a shark. He might have given him more help，thought he was busy.
should/ought to have done	用于肯定句时，表示本该做某事，而实际上未做；用于否定句时，则表示不该做的事反而做了	He should have known that the police would never allow this sort of thing. You shouldn't have done it so carelessly. You ought to have returned the book earlier. You ought not to have refused his offer.
needn't have done	表示做了本来不必去做的事。注意：didn't need to do 表示“没必要做而实际上也没有做某事”	You needn't have watered the plants，for it is going to rain. I didn't need to buy the dictionary. I had a copy at home.
had better have done	用于事后的建议，含轻微责备的口吻，意为“当时最好做了某事”，其否定式 had better not have done 表示相反的含义	You had better have started earlier. You had better not have scolded her.
would rather have done	表示“当时宁愿做了某事”，其否定式 would rather not have done 表示相反的含义，两者都表示“后悔”之意	I would rather have taken his advice. I would rather not have told him the truth.

9.15　情态动词易混点归纳

1. can 和 be able to

两者表示能力时用法相同，但 can 只有原形“can”和过去式“could”两种形式，在其他时态中要用 be able to 来表示。另外 be able to 常常指经过努力，花费了时间和劳力之后才能做到某事。如：

Jim can't speak English. 吉姆不会说英语。

He could speak English at 5. 他五岁时 就会说英语。

We'll be able to see him next week.下星期我们将会见到他。

He has been able to drive. 他已经会开车了。

I'm sure you'll be able to finish it quickly. 我相信你能迅速地完成。

We were able to reach the top of the mountain at noon. 我们能在中午到达山顶。

2. can 和 may

（1）can 和 may 均可用来征求意见或许可，意为“可以”，一般可互换使用。如：

Can/May I help you? 我能帮助你吗？

（2）can 和 may 表示可能性时的区别：

① 在肯定句中用 might，may，must，不用 can。

② 在疑问句中表示推测用 can，不用 might，may，must。

③ 在否定句中用 can't（不可能），不用 may，must。如：

She may be in the classroom. 她可能在教室里。

Where can they be now? 他们现在可能在哪儿？

That can’t be true. 那不可能是真的。

3. may be 和 maybe

may 为情态动词，be 为动词原形。may be 在句中作谓语。maybe 为副词，表示大概、也许之意，相当于 perhaps。常位于句首，作状语。例如：

He may be wrong，but I’m not sure. 也许他错了，但我也不确定。

Maybe he is in the classroom. 他可能在教室里。

4. can’t 和 mustn’t

（1）can’t 根据其基本用法可译为：

① 不会。如：I can’t speak English. 我不会说英语。

② 不能。如：We can’t do it now because it’s too dark. 天太黑了，我们现在干不了。

③ 否定句中表示推测，意为“不可能”。如：

The man can’t be our teacher because he is much younger than our teacher. 那个人不可能是咱们老师，他年轻得多。

（2）mustn’t 意为“禁止、不许”，用来表达命令，表示强烈的语气。如：

You mustn’t play football in the street. It’s too dangerous. 你不可以在街上踢足球，太危险了。

5. must 和 have to

（1）must 侧重于个人意志和主观上的必要。have to 侧重于客观上的必要，可用于现在时、过去时和将来时。如：

I know I must study hard. 我知道我必须努力学习。

My brother was very ill，so I had to call the doctor at midnight. 我弟弟病得厉害，我只得半夜里把医生请来。

I haven’t got any money with me，so I’ll have to borrow some from my friend. 我身上没带钱，只好向朋友借点了。

He said they must work hard. 他说他们必须努力工作。

（2）have to 可以用于多种时态；而 must 只用于一般现在或将来。如：

The composition is due to hand in this morning，so I had to finish it last night. 作文今天早晨到期，因此我不得不昨天晚上完成。

6. used to do/be used to doing/be used to do…/be used for doing sth.

used to do 表示过去常常发生的动作，强调过去，只用于过去，注意用 to do，不用 doing 形式；而 be used to doing 意为“习惯做……”，be 可有各种时态；be used to do 意为“……被使用去做……，”为被动语态形式。be used for doing sth. 意为“用作……”如：

My father used to sleep very late. 我父亲以前睡觉很晚。

She is used to eating meat. 她习惯吃肉。

He wasn’t used to eating in a restaurant. 他不习惯在饭店吃饭。

A knife can be used for cutting things. 刀可以用来割东西。

A knife can be used to cut things. 刀可以用来割东西。

【情态动词例题解析】

1. —________ you pass me a pen? I’d like to write down the phone number. —Sure. Here it is.

A. Can　　B. Need　　C. Might　　D. Must

【解析】由题干可知，本句表示请求、许可。答案：A。

2. —May I go to the cinema，mum? —Certainly，but you ________ be back by 11 o'clock.

A. can　　B. may　　C. must　　D. need

【解析】由题意可知，此处并非表推测的用法，而是妈妈对孩子提出的要求，意为“必须”。答案：C。

3. You ______ get there by bus.

A. don't need　　B. needn't to　　C. don't need to　　D. need don't to

【解析】由选项 A 可知 need 为实义动词，故应加上 to 才正确。选项 B needn't 为情态动词，应去掉 to，故选 C。

4. You _____worry about me. It's nothing serious.

A. can't　　B. mustn't　　C. needn't　　D. won't

【解析】由题干 It's nothing serious 可推断，第一句意为“你不必为我担心”，故选 C。本题易错选 B，mustn't 意为“禁止”，故不正确。

5. —Excuse me. Is this the right way to the Summer Palace? —Sorry，I'm not sure. But it ____be.

A. might　　B. mustn't　　C. can't　　D. must

【解析】考查情态动词 might 表推测的用法。“I'm not sure”说明说话者的语气并不肯定，所以要用 might。答案：A。

6. The man in the office___be Mr. Black，because he went home just now.

A. mustn't　　B. may not　　C. can't　　D. needn't

【解析】由下文 he went home just now 可知，作者判断办公室里那个人不可能是 Mr. Black。mustn't 意为“千万别”，may not 意为“可能不”，needn't 意为“不必”，can't 意为不可能，故选 C。

7. —Can you go surfing with us this afternoon? —I'd like to，but I ____ look after my sister at home，because my mother is ill.

A. need　　B. must　　C. have to　　D. should

【解析】由题干 my mother is ill 为客观要求可知应选 C。

8. —May I take this book out of the reading room? —______. Please read it here.

A. Certainly　　B. No，you needn't　　C. No，you mustn't　　D. No，you may not

【解析】May I…? 的否定答语为 No，you can't/mustn't；Must I…? 的否定答语为 No，you needn't/don't have to；Can I…? 的否定答语为 No，you can't。在口语交际中，要体会句子中的情感差别。答案：C。

【专项练习】

一、选择适当的情态动词填空。

1. John____come to see us tonight，but he isn't very sure yet.

A. may　　B. can　　C. has to　　D. must

2. They ______ do well in the exam.

A. can be able to　　B. be able to　　C. can able to　　D. are able to

3. —May I take this book out? —No，you____.

A. can't　　B. may not　　C. needn't　　D. aren't

4. You______ go and see a doctor at once because you've got a fever.

A. can　　B. must　　C. dare　　D. would

5. —Can you speak Japanese? —No，I____.

A. mustn't　　B. can't　　C. needn't　　D. may no

6. — He_______ be in the classroom, I think.
 — No, he _______ be in the classroom. I saw him go home a minute ago.
 A. can; may not B. must; may not C. may; can't D. may; mustn't
7. —Shall I get one more cake for you, Dad? —Thanks, but you______, I've had enough.
 A. may not B. must not C. can't D. needn't
8. Even the top students in our class can't work out this problem, so it_____be very difficult.
 A. may B. must C. can D. need
9. He isn't at school. I think he _______ be ill.
 A. can B. shall C. must D. has to
10. _______ I take this one?
 A. May B. Will C. Are D. Do
11. The children_______ play football on the road.
 A. can't B. can C. mustn't D. must
12. You _______ be late for school again next time.
 A. mustn't B. needn't C. don't have to D. don't need to
13. —Must I do my homework at once? —No, you________.
 A. needn't B. mustn't C. can't D. may not
14. His arm is all right. He________ go and see the doctor.
 A. has not to B. don't have to C. haven't to D. doesn't have to
15. He had to give up the plan, ________ he?
 A. did B. didn't C. does D. doesn't
16. —Could I use your dictionary? —Yes, you_________.
 A. will B. could C. can D. must
17. He had better stay here, ________ he?
 A. didn't B. don't C. hadn't D. isn't
18. You'd better _______ late next time.
 A. not to be B. not be C. won't be D. don't be
19. You'd better _______ your hair _______ once a month.
 A. had; cut B. had; cutted C. have; cut D. have; cutted
20. You________ ask that man over there. Maybe he knows the way.
 A. had better not to B. had not better C. had better D. had better not
21. —Shall we go and visit the History Museum next Sunday? —__________.
 A. Here you are B. Sorry, I can't C. Yes, please D. Let me try
22. —Why don't you ask Mike to go with us? —Thanks, ________.
 A. I will B. I won't C. lean D. I may
23. —______I take the newspaper away? —No, you mustn't. You _____read it only here.
 A. Must; can B. May; can C. Need; must D. Must; must
24. Excuse me. ________ you please pass me that cup?
 A. Do B. Should C. Would D. Must
25. _______ you like to have another try?
 A. Could B. Will C. Would D. Do
26. —Would you like to go boating with us? —Yes, _______.
 A. I'd like B. I want C. I'd like to D. I do
27. You________ worry about your son. He will get well soon.

A. needn't　B. can't　C. mustn't　D. have to

28. The poor man needs our help, ________ he?

A. need　B. needn't　C. does　D. doesn't

29. —Must we do our homework first? —No, you_______. You may have a rest first.

A. mustn't　B. needn't　C. may not　D. can't

30. It's nearly seven o'clock. Jack__________be here at any moment.

A. must　B. need　C. should　D. can

二、全国各省市中考情态动词题例。

1. —May I put my bike here? —No, you ________. You should put it over there.

A. couldn't　B. needn't　C. mustn't　D. won't

2. We ________ keep the new traffic law and learn how to protect ourselves.

A. may　B. should　C. can　D. need

3. —Must I write all the words down now? —No, you ________.

A. mustn't　B. can't　C. won't　D. needn't

4. You _______ to the meeting this afternoon if you have something important to do.

A. needn't to come　B. don't need come　C. don't need coming　D. needn't come

5. Excuse me. Read the text louder, please. I ________ hear you.

A. can't　B. wouldn't　C. needn't　D. may not

6. Li Lei can't go hiking with us today, because he ________ take care of his sick mother.

A. has to　B. may　C. mustn't　D. needn't

7. ________ you get me some paper, please?

A. Shall　B. May　C. Need　D. Will

8. —Must I come at four o'clock? —Oh, no, you ________.

A. mustn't　B. don't　C. can't　D. don't have to

9. The computer doesn't work. I'm afraid you ________ use it today.

A. may　B. can't　C. needn't　D. must

10. —Can you stay her for dinner? —Sorry, I ________. I have something important to do.

A. don't　B. didn't　C. needn't　D. can't

11. —I was told to be here before eight. —Oh, you ________. I'm sorry for not telling you that we have changed the plan.

A. must　B. can't　C. may　D. needn't

12. Boys, you ________ be sitting in this room. It is for your teachers only.

A. shouldn't　B. don't have to　C. won't　D. needn't

13. —Listen! Helen is singing in the next room. —It _____be Helen. She has gone to Beijing.

A. can't　B. mustn't　C. may　D. should

14. There's an old saying: The cleverest housewife ________ cook a meal without rice.

A. may　B. mustn't　C. needn't　D. can't

15. —Where is the umbrella? —It's fine today. You _______ take an umbrella with you.

A. can't　B. needn't　C. mustn't　D. shouldn't

16. I hear you've got some new Australian coins. ________ I have a look?

A. Do　B. May　C. Shall　D. Should

17. —Will you please give her a message when you see her? —Yes, I_________.

A. shall　B. will　C. would　D. should

18. —__________climb that tall tree?

A. Do you need　　B. Need you　　C. Do need you to　　D. Need you to

19. —Look，it__________be Tom. —No，it__________be him，for he has gone to Shanghai.

A. may；mustn't　　B. must；may　　C. must；can't　　D. can；may not

20. —Would you come back later next time? —No，I__________.

A. shan't　　B. shouldn't　　C. won't　　D. mustn't

【参考答案】

一、

1—5　ADABB　　6—10　CDBCA　　11—15　CAADB　　16—20　CCBCC

21—25　BABCC　　26—30　CADBC

二、

1—5　CBDDA　　6—10　ADDBD　　11—15　DAADB　　16—20　BBBCC

【经典高考名题导解】

1. I was really anxious about you. You________home without a word.（NMET 2001）

A. mustn't have　　B. shouldn't have left　　C. couldn't have left　　D. needn't have

解析：答案为 B。本题考查的是情态动词在虚拟语气中的用法。题目给出的条件是“我确实非常担心你”，因此后面可知应是责备 you 不应该没说一句话就离开了。

2. —Are you coming to Jeff's party? —I'm not sure. I____go to the concert instead.（NMET 2000）

A. must　　B. would　　C. should　　D. might

解析：答案为 D。本题考查情态动词的基本用法。由题目中“I'm not sure”可知“我”可能去 Jeff's party，也可能去音乐会，故用 might。

3. —Will you stay for lunch? —Sorry，_________. My brother is coming to see me.（NMET 99）

A. I mustn't　　B. I can't　　C. I needn't　　D. I won't

解析：答案为 B。本题考查表示请求的英语口语，用 will 来向第二人称提问的疑问结构，是表示一种请求和意愿，是用疑问的形式来表达较为婉转的祈使语气，意思是“请你……，好吗”，对于这种问句的肯定回答是：Sure!/Certainly!/Yes，of course. /I'd be glad to 等；否定回答通常是：I'm sorry，I can't. /No，I'm afraid I can't. I'm sorry，but…/I'd like to，but…等。注意情态动词表客气的用法及其在一般疑问句中的问与答。

【高考情态动词专项练习】

1. 情态动词表推测

（1）肯定的推测一般用 must，should，may（might）或 could（不用 can），其中，must 的语气最强，译为“肯定”“准是”“想必是”；should 的语气次之，译为“很可能”“应该”，指按常理推测；may（might），could 的语气最弱，译为“也许”“可能”。

① Helen _______ go on the trip with us but she isn't quite sure yet.（2005 年安徽卷）

A. shall　　B. must　　C. may　　D. can

② —I've taken someone else's green sweater by mistake. —It _____ Harry's. He always wears green.（2005 年广东卷）

A. has to be　　B. will be　　C. mustn't be　　D. could be

③ I have lost one of my gloves. I _______ it somewhere.（2005 年北京春季卷）

A. must drop　　B. must have dropped

C. must be dropping　　D. must have been dropped

④ If I ____ plan to do anything I wanted to，I'd like to go to Tibet and travel through as much of it as possible.（2005 年湖北卷）

A. would　　B. could　　C. had to　　D. ought to

参考答案：CDBB

（2）否定推测分为两种情况：

语气不很肯定时，常用 may not，might not 或 could not，译为"可能不""也许不"。

You might just as well tell the manufacturer that male customers ______ not like the design of the furniture.（2004 年上海春季卷）

A. must　　B. shall　　C. may　　D. need

参考答案：C

否定语气较强时，则用 can't，译为"根本不可能""想必不会"，表示惊异、怀疑的感情色彩。

① —Do you know where David is? I couldn't find him anywhere.

—Well. He ______ have gone far——his coat's still here.（2005 年湖北卷）

A. shouldn't　　B. mustn't　　C. can't　　D. wouldn't

② —Isn't that Ann's husband over there?—No，it _______ be him I'm sure he doesn't wear glasses.（2004 年全国卷 I ）

A. can't　　B. must not　　C. won't　　D. may not

参考答案：CA

（3）疑问句中的推测，往往用 can 或 could。

Mr. Bush is on time for everything. How ______ it be that he was late for the opening ceremony?（2001 年上海春季卷）

A. can　　B. should　　C. may　　D. must

参考答案：A

（4）对已发生事情的肯定推测常用"must/may/might 等+完成式"；否定推测常用"can/could/may，might 等+完成式"。

① I was on the highway when this car went past followed by a police car. They _______ at least 150 kilometers an hour.（2005 年重庆卷）

A. should have been doing　　B. must have been doing

C. could have done　　D. would have done

② He _______ have completed his work；otherwise，he wouldn't be enjoying himself by seaside.（2005 年北京卷）

A. should　　B. must　　C. wouldn't　　D. can't

③ —Tom is never late for work. Why is be absent today? —Something ________ to him.（2005 年江西卷）

A. must happen　　B. should have happened

C. could have happened　　D. must have happened

④ My sister met him at the Grand Theatre yesterday afternoon，so he_____ have attended your lecture.（2000 年上海卷）

A. couldn't　　B. needn't　　C. mustn't　　D. shouldn't

参考答案：BBDA

2. “情态动词+完成式”

（1）“should（ought to）+完成式”表示本应该做某事而实际上没有做。其否定式表示某种行为不该发生但却发生了。

① —I'll tell Mary about her new job tomorrow. —You______her last week.（2004 年福建卷）

A. ought to tell　　B. would have told　　C. must tell　　D. should have told

② Oh，I'm not feeling well in the stomach，I _____ so much fried chicken just now.（2002 年上海春季卷）

A. shouldn't eat　　B. mustn't have eaten　　C. shouldn't have eaten　　D. mustn't eat

参考答案：DC

（2）“could+完成式”表示本来能够做成某事的但结果没能做成，含有遗憾的意味。

He paid for a seat，when he ______ have entered free.（2005 年山东卷）

A. could　　B. would　　C. must　　D. need

参考答案：A

（3）“needn't+不定式的完成式”表示本来不必做某事而实际上做了某事。例如：

You needn't have watered the flowers，for it is going to rain. 你本不需要浇花的，因为天就要下雨了。

—Catherine，I have cleaned the room for you. —Thanks. You ______it. I could manage it myself.（2005 年福建卷）

A. needn't do　　B. needn't have done　　C. mustn't do　　D. shouldn't have done

参考答案：B

3. 常见的情态动词

（1）shall 用于第一、三人称疑问句表示征求对方意见；用于第二、三人称陈述句表示说话人给对方的命令、警告、允诺或威胁等。

① “The interest________be divided into five parts，according to the agreement made by both sides，” declared the judge.（2004 年重庆卷）

A. may　　B. should　　C. must　　D. shall

② —Excuse me，but I want to use your computer to type a report.

—You ______ have my computer if you don't take care of it.（2004 年湖南卷）

A. shan't　　B. might not　　C. needn't　　D. shouldn't

③ —The room is so dirty. ______ we clean it?—Of course.（2003 年北京春季卷）

A. Will　　B. Shall　　C. Would　　D. Do

参考答案：DAB

（2）must 用于疑问句，表示责备、抱怨的感情色彩，意思为“偏偏，偏要”；mustn't 表示禁止，表示说话人强有力的劝告。

① John，look at the time. _______ you play the piano at such a late hour?（2005 年全国卷Ⅲ）

A. Must　　B. Can　　C. May　　D. Need

② Tom，you_____leave all your clothes on the floor like this!（2005 年全国卷Ⅰ）

A. wouldn't　　B. mustn't　　C. needn't　　D. may not

参考答案：AB

（3）needn't 表示“没有必要”。

—Lucy doesn't mind lending you her dictionary. —She ______.I've already borrowed one.（2005 年湖南卷

A. can't　　B. mustn't　　C. needn't　　D. shouldn't

参考答案：C

（4）would 表示过去反复发生的动作或某种倾向。

When he was there，he___go to that coffee shop at the corner after work every day.（1996 年上海卷）

A. would　　B. should　　C. had better　　D. might

参考答案：A

（5）表示经过努力而成功的某一次动作，只能用 was/were able to，而不能用 could。

The fire spread through the hotel very quickly but everyone _____ get out.（1997 年全国卷）

A. had to　　B. would　　C. was able to　　D. could

参考答案：C

（6）考查情态动词用作答语的情况。

① —Write to me when you get home. —_______.（2001 年北京春季卷）

A. I must　　B. I should　　C. I will　　D. I can

② —Could I call you by your first name? —Yes，you ______.（1998 年上海卷）

A. will　　B. could　　C. may　　D. might

参考答案：CC

【巩固练习】

1. Michael ______ be a policeman，for he is much too short.

A. needn’t　　B. can’t　　C. should　　D. may

2. I told Sally how to get here，but perhaps I ____ for her.

A. had to write it out　　B. must have written it out

C. should have written it out　　D. ought to write it out

3. Jack _____ yet，otherwise he would have telephoned me.

A. mustn’t have arrived　　B. shouldn’t have arrived

C. can’t have arrived　　D. needn’t have arrived

4. Sir，you ______be sitting in this waiting room. It is for women and children only.

A. mustn’t　　B. can’t　　C. won’t　　D. needn’t

5. A left-luggage office is a place where bags _____ be left for a short time，especially at a railway station.

A. should　　B. can　　C. must　　D. will

6. —Is John coming by train? —He should，but he _____ not. He likes driving his car.

A. must　　B. can　　C. need　　D. may

7. It has been announced that candidates ____ remain in their seats until all the papers have been collected.

A. can　　B. will　　C. may　　D. shall

8. You can’t imagine that a well-behaved gentleman ______ be so rude to a lady.

A. might　　B. need　　C. should　　D. would

9. —Don’t forget to come to my birthday party tomorrow. —_______.

A. I don’t　　B. I won’t　　C. I can’t　　D. I haven’t

10. I didn’t see her in the meeting-room this morning. She____ at the meeting.

A. mustn’t have spoken　　B. shouldn’t have spoken

C. needn’t have spoken　　D. couldn’t have spoken

【参考答案与解析】

1. B。从第二个分句“他太矮了”可以推知说话者持否定态度，needn’t 意思是“没有必要”，与语境不符。

2. C。根据句意“我已经告诉她怎样到那儿，但是或许我应该给她写下来”可知，说话者含有“后悔、遗憾”的意味，应使用“情态动词+完成式”形式，“must+完成式”表示对过去的肯定推测，“should+完成式”才表示虚拟意义。

3. C。根据第二分句“否则的话他就会给我打电话了”可知“Jack 肯定还没到”，“can’t+完成式”意思是“根本不可能”。

4. A。从第二分句可知，这是妇女和儿童专用候车室，因此你“不准”坐在这儿。mustn’t 表示“禁止，不准”。

5. B。can 在此表示许可。

6. D。从后一句“他喜欢开车”可知说话者把握不大。must not 不表示推测，can not 的语气太绝对，意思是“根本不可能”。

7. D。shall 用于第二、三人称，表示说话人给对方的命令、警告、允诺、威胁等意思。

8. C。should 在此表示惊讶的感情色彩，意思是“竟然”。

9. B。对祈使句的肯定回答用 I will；否定回答用 I won’t。

10. D。根据句意“我今天上午在会议室没见到她”可知“她根本不可能在会上发言”。表示“根本不可能”用 can’t/couldn’t have done 形式。

【全国各地市中考英语试题解析汇编之单项选择——情态动词】

1.（2009·绍兴中考）—Another cup of coffee? —No，thanks. I _____ be off. Mary is waiting for me.

A. can　　B. may　　C. must　　D. might

【解析】选 C。考查情态动词 must 的用法。结合关键信息“Mary is waiting for me.”可知题意为“我必须离开了”，故排除 A、B、D 三项，选 C。

2.（2009·阜康中考）—I’m a little tired. Let’ go to the zoo by taxi. —We____take a taxi. It’s not far from here.

A. can’t　　B. mustn’t　　C. couldn’t　　D. needn’t

【解析】选 D。四个选项都是情态动词的否定式，结合关键信息“It’s not far from here.”可知“我们不必乘出租车”，故排除 A、B、C 三项，选 D。

3.（2009·绵阳中考）—Let’s go to the West Hill Park by taxi. —Oh，it is not far away from here. We _______take a taxi.

A. couldn’t　　B. mustn’t　　C. needn’t　　D. can’t

【解析】选 C。

4.（2009·宿迁中考）—Must I finish watering the flowers now? —No，you________.

A. must　　B. won’t　　C. needn’t　　D. can’t

【解析】选 C。考查对 must 开头的一般疑问句的回答。以 must 开头的一般疑问句，作否定回答时用情态动词 needn’t，故正确答案为 C。

5.（2009·江西中考）—Susan has bought a large house with a swimming pool.

—It ______ be very expensive. I never even dream about it.

A. must　　B. might　　C. can’t　　D. shouldn’t

【解析】选 A。考查情态动词 must 表示肯定的推测。结合关键信息“I never even dream about it.”可知题意为“它肯定是非常贵的”，故排除 B、C、D 三项，选 A。

6.（2009·苏州中考）It is usually warm in my hometown in March，but it _______ be rather cold sometimes.

A. must　　B. can　　C. should　　D. would

【解析】选 B。

7.（2009·泰安中考）—Listen! Is Professor Johnson giving a report in the hall? —No，it______be him. He has gone to Japan.

A. needn’t　　B. may not　　C. mustn’t　　D. can’t

【解析】选 D。本题考查 can’t 表示否定的推测。四个选项都是情态动词的否定形式，分别意为“不能；不可能”“千万不能”“应该”“可以；可能”。结合关键信息“He has gone to Japan.”可知“他不可能是约翰教授”，应选 D。

8.（2009 重庆市）—Can you play the piano? —Yes，I ________. I often practice it on weekends.

A. needn’t　　B. need　　C. can’t　　D. can

【解析】选 D。以 can 引导的一般疑问句在做肯定回答时还是用 can。

9.（2009・常州中考）—__________I borrow these magazines? —Sorry，only the magazines over there can be borrowed.

A. Must　　B. Would　　C. May　　D. Need

【解析】选 C。

10.（2009・东营中考）If the traffic light is red，you ________ cross the road. It’s dangerous.

A. don’t　　B. needn’t　　C. mustn’t　　D. wouldn’t

【解析】选 C。

11.（2009・武汉中考）—May I watch TV for a while? —No，you _______. You have to finish your homework first.

A. shouldn’t　　B. needn’t　　C. mustn’t　　D. won’t

【解析】选 C。对于情态动词 may 的一般疑问句的肯定回答为：Yes，you may/can。否定回答为：No，you mustn’t.

12.（2009・北京市）—______ you swim? —Yes，but I’m not a good swimmer.

A. Can　　B. May　　C. Need　　D. Must

【解析】选 A。考查情态动词 can 的用法。结合题意“你会游泳吗？”“是的，但是我不是一个好游泳员”可排除 B、C、D 三项，选 A。

13.（2009・河南中考）—Excuse me，where are we going to have our class meeting? —I’m not sure. Ask our monitor，please. He__________know.

A. can　　B. may　　C. need　　D. shall

【解析】选 B。考查情态动词 may 表示推测。结合前句“I’m not sure. Ask our monitor，please.”可知题意为“他可能知道（我们将在哪里开班会）”，故选 B。may 表示可能性的推测，常用在肯定句中。

14.（2009・山东中考）—How is your friend coming? —I’m not sure. He ______ drive here.

A. may　　B. can　　C. must　　D. will

【解析】选 A。

15.（2008・长沙中考）—Is Lucy knocking at the door? —No. It ________ be Lucy. She is in Japan now.

A. needn’t　　B. must　　C. can’t

【解析】选 C。考查情态动词 can’t 表示推测的用法。can’t 表示否定的推测；must 表示肯定的推测。由题意“不可能是露西，她现在在日本”可知应选 C。

16.（2008・苏州中考）We hope that as many people as possible ________ join us for the charity show tomorrow.

A. need　　B. can　　C. must　　D. should

【解析】选 B。考查情态动词 can 的用法。as many people as possible can 意为“尽可能多的人”。

17.（2008・湖北中考）—Let’s go to the concert tonight，Michael! —Sorry，I _____. I have to help my mother with the housework.

A. mustn’t　　B. may not　　C. needn’t　　D. can’t

【解析】选 D。考查情态动词 can’t 的用法。由答语“我必须帮助我的母亲做家务”知“我不能去参加音乐会”，故选 D。

18.（2008·河南中考）—Our class won the English speaking contest. —Congratulations! You _____ be very proud of it.

A. can　　B. need　　C. would　　D. must

【解析】选 D。

19.（2008·南昌中考）If the traffic light is red，you ________ cross the road. It's very dangerous.

A. don't　　B. mustn't　　C. needn't　　D. wouldn't

【解析】选 B。考查情态动词 mustn't 的用法。mustn't 意为“一定不能”，由“很危险”可知用 mustn't，故选 B。

20.（2008·咸宁中考）—The sports shoes must be Linda's. —No，they ________ be. They're too small for her.

A. mustn't　　B. can't　　C. may not　　D. might not

【解析】选 B。

21.（2011·山东菏泽）—Will you stay for some more days? —Sorry，I_____. My mother called to ask me to go back at once.

A. mustn't　　B. may not　　C. can't　　D. wouldn't

【解析】情态动词表推测。句意：—你再待几天好吗？—对不起，我不能，我的母亲打电话让我马上回去。mustn't 禁止；may not 可能不；wouldn't 不愿做……，将要不……。故选 C。

22.（2011·山东枣庄）You ______ wear sports shoes when you climb a mountain.

A. can't　　B. shouldn't　　C. mustn't　　D. have to

【解析】选 D。考查情态动词的用法。根据句意：爬山的时候你不得不穿运动鞋。前三个选项句意不通顺，故选 D。

23.（2011·山东滨州）—Must I get up early tomorrow morning? —No，_________.

A. you mustn't　　B. I don't think you have to

C. you can't　　D. you need

【解析】考查情态动词的用法。情态动词 must 引导的一般疑问句的否定答语为“No，sb. needn't. /No，sb. don't have to.”故选 B。

24.（浙江湖州）—Who's singing in the next room? —It ______be her. She has gone to New York.

A. can't　　B. must　　C. shouldn't　　D. can

【解析】考查情态动词表推测的用法。表示否定推测时，用 can't，意为“一定不……”。must 表示推测时，意为“一定……”，用于肯定句；根据答语“她已经去了纽约”可知是否定推测，故选 A。

25.（2011·山东泰安）—Must I learn all these words by heart? —No，you ____. It'll be fine if you copy them in your exercise books.

A. needn't　　B. can't　　C. shouldn't　　D. mustn't

【解析】考查情态动词的用法。由 must 引导的问句，否定回答用 needn't。句意是“我必须都要记住这些单词吗？”“不用，只要你抄在练习本上就可以了”。

26.（2011·福州中考）—Mom，must I finish my homework now? —No，you _____. You may have supper first.

A. mustn't　　B. needn't　　C. can't

【解析】选 B。考查情态动词的用法。对 must 引导的一般疑问句，否定回答时常用 No，…needn't. 由句意“——妈妈，我现在必须完成家庭作业？——不，你不需要。你可以先吃饭。”可知应选 B。

27.（2011·浙江杭州）—Will the new iphone cost a lot? —I ____ think so. Apple's products are usually expensive.

A. shouldn't　　B. needn't　　C. would　　D. Must

【解析】考查情态动词的用法。由“Apple's products are usually expensive.”可推断“我也认为花费

多”。“I would think so.” 意思是“我以前就这么认为”。故选 C。

28.（2011·浙江金华）—Must we clean the classroom now? —No，you needn’t. It _____ after school.

A. may clean　　B. must clean　　C. need be cleaned　　D. can be cleaned

【解析】考查情态动词及被动语态的用法。由句意可知 it 指 classroom，it 和 clean 为被动关系，所以用被动语态，含有情态动词的被动语态结构为“情态动词+be+动词过去分词”。排除 A 和 B。need 意为“需要”，can 意为“可能，可以”。由句意“——我们必须现在就打扫教室吗？——不，不必要。可以放学打扫”可知应选 D。

29.（江西省·2011）The work is too hard for him. He__________ finish it on time.

A.can’t　　B. mustn’t　　C. shouldn’t　　D. needn’t

【解析】考查情态动词。句意为“这工作对他来说太难。他不可能按时完成”。can’t 用在否定句中表示“不可能”；mustn’t“绝对不能，禁止”；shouldn’t“不应该”；needn’t“不必”。

30.（2011·湖南怀化）This dictionary______ Tom’s. It has Ann’s name on it.

A. might be　　B. may he　　C. can’t be

【解析】根据句意：上面有安的名字。推断出前一句应该是这本字典不可能是汤姆的。选 C。

10　动词的语气

10.1　语气的定义和种类

1. 语气的定义

语气是动词的一种形式，它表示说话人对某一行为或事情的看法和态度。

2. 语气的种类

（1）陈述语气：表示动作或状态是现实的、确定的或符合事实的，用于陈述句、疑问句和某些感叹句。如：

We are not ready. 我们没准备好。

What a fine day it is! 多好的天气啊!

（2）祈使语气：表示说话人的建议、请求、邀请、命令等。如：

Open the door，please. 请打开门。

（3）虚拟语气：表示动作或状态不是客观存在的事实，而是说话人的主观愿望、假设或推测等。如：

If I were you，I should study English. 如果我是你，我就学英语了。

May you succeed! 祝您成功!

试比较：

I hope he comes to Beijing.（陈述语气）

我希望他能来北京。（很可能来）

I wish he came to Beijing.（虚拟语气）

我真希望他能来北京。（不可能来，只是表示愿望）

I suggest he come to Beijing.（虚拟语气）

我建议他来北京。（可能来也可能不来，只表示建议）

If I am a president，I will make all the people rich.（陈述语气，可能是候选人说的）

If I were a president，I would make all the people rich.（虚拟语气，可能是小学生说的）

If I win the race，I will buy a car.（陈述语气，得过第一名的人说的）

If I won the race，I would buy a car.（虚拟语气，最后一名说的）

在陈述语气中，主句和从句的时间一般要取得一致；而在虚拟语气中，主句和从句的时间经常不一致，不互相制约，因为表示愿望、假设等。如：

If it rains tomorrow，I will not go out.（时间一致，都表示将来）

如果明天下雨，我就不出门了。

If it had rained last night，the ground would be wet now.（时间不一致，主句表示现在，从句表示过去）
如果昨晚下雨的话，现在地上就会是湿的。

10.2　虚拟语气在条件从句中的用法

学习虚拟语气在条件句中的用法之前我们必须先弄清楚条件句的种类：条件句有真实条件句与非真实条件句（或称虚拟条件句）两种。真实条件句表示的假设是可能发生或实现的，句中的条件从句与结果主句都用陈述语气。如：

If it doesn't rain tomorrow，I will go for a picnic. 假若明天不下雨，我就去野餐。

Oil floats if you pour it on water. 你如把油倒在水里，油就浮起来。

虚拟条件句表示的假设则是不可能或不大可能发生或实现的，句中的条件从句与结果主句皆须用虚拟语气。

在含有虚拟条件句的复合句中，主句和从句的谓语都要用虚拟语气。虚拟条件从句和主句的动词形式见表 10-1。

表 10-1　虚拟条件从句和主句的动词形式

	从　句	主　句
与现在事实相反	动词的过去式（be 的过去式一般用 were）	would/should/could/might+动词原形
与过去事实相反	had+过去分词	would/should/could/might+have+过去分词
与将来事实相反	（1）should+动词原形 （2）were+动词不定式 （3）过去式（动词是 be 也可以用 were）	would/should/could/might+动词原形

注：主句中的 should 只用于 I 和 we，但在美国英语中，should 常被 would 代替；从句中的 should 可用于各种人称。

1. 虚拟语气在 if 条件句中的使用（表示根本不存在的情况或实现可能性很小的假设）

（1）表示与现在事实相反的情况。if 条件句谓语动词用动词过去式（be 用 were），主句谓语动词用 would/should/could/might+动词原形。如：

If the weather were fine，they would go for a swim.（would 用于各种人称）

如果天气好，他们就去游泳了。（事实上天气不好）

If we had time now，we should/would read it again.（should 主要用于第一人称）

要是现在我们有空，我们就把它再看一遍。（事实我们现在没空）

If I were rich，I would buy that car.

If I had a car，I should be very happy.

If you took his advice，you might be well soon.（might 表示"或许"、"可能"之意）

（2）表示与过去事实相反的情况。if 条件句谓语动词用 had+过去分词，主句谓语动词用 would/should/could/might+have+过去分词。如：

If I had taken his advice，I would not have made such a mistake.

如果我听了他的忠告，就不会犯这样的错误了。（事实上当初我没有听他的忠告）

He wouldn't have been able to write such a good novel if he hadn't lived among the workers for so many years. 假如他不是和工人一起生活这么多年，他不可能写出这样好的小说。（事实上当时他和工人生活在一起了）

If I had known her telephone number，I could have called her.（could 表示"能够"）

If you had told him that thing yesterday，he might have made some suggestions.

If I had had enough money，I should have bought that car.

If he had hurried，he could have caught the train.

（3）表示与将来事实相反的情况。if 条件句谓语动词用动词过去式（be 用 were），should+动词原形，were to+动词原形，主句谓语动词用 would/should/could/might+动词原形。如：

If she should come，I would ask her for help.

（“should+动词原形”表示对将来的极大怀疑，意思是“万一”，表示可能性极小）

万一她来的话，我就请她帮忙。（事实上她来的可能性很小）

If you should drop the glass，it would break. 杯子摔下来会打碎的。（事实上杯子没有摔下来）

If I were to go to abroad，I would go to America.

If it should rain tomorrow，I might get lost.

注意：如果说话人认为 if 条件句所表示的是事实（客观存在的情况或很可能实现的假设），全句就可以用陈述句语气。如：

If you do it once more，you will do it better. 如果你再做一遍，你就会做得更好。（事实上完全可以再做一遍）

（4）混合虚拟语气。有时从句和主句分别表示发生在不同时间的动作或状态，这时，动词的形式根据它所表示的时间加以调整。如：

If he had followed the doctor’s advice，he would be quite all right now.

他当时若是听从医生的话，现在就会痊愈了。（从句说明过去，主句说明现在）

If you were to master English，you should have worked hard.

如果你要掌握英语，你本来应该下苦功的。（从句说明将来，主句说明过去）

You could answer most of the questions now if you had reviewed the lesson last night.

如果你昨晚复习功课，现在你就能回答大部分问题。

If he had died in the accident，he couldn’t stand in front of you now.

如果他在那次事故中死去，他现在就不会站在你面前了。

（5）在 if 虚拟条件句中，如果从句中含有 should，had 或 were，可以省去 if，把 should，had 或 were 移到主语之前。如：

Should it happen（=If it should happen），what would you do? 如果真发生这样的事，你怎么办呢?

Were I you（=If I were you），I would go. 如果我是你，我就去。

Had he recognized me（= If he had recognized me），he would have come over. 如果他认出了我，早就走过来了。

Were I to go home（=If I were to go home），I would do a lot of homework.

Had he hurried（=If he had hurried），he couldn’t have been late for school.

Should he fail（=If he should fail），he would leave school.

I would have called you had I known your telephone number（=If I had known your telephone number）.

（6）If it were not for+短语……和 If it had not been for+短语……也是一种条件虚拟语气从句，意思是“如果不是……”。如：

If it were not for the guidance of the Party Committee，we should fail.

如果不是党委的指导，我们会失败的。（现在情况）

If it had not been for the help of our teacher，we should not have made so much progress.

如果不是老师的帮助，我们就不会取得这么大的进步。（已发生的情况）

2. if only…与 only if…

（1）if only 作“只要”讲，引出真实条件句，谓语动词用陈述语气。如：

If only you work hard，you’ll learn English well.

If only it clears up，we’ll go for a picnic.

（2）if only 作“如果……就好了”“要是……就好了”讲，引出虚拟条件句，用来表示强烈的愿望或遗憾，谓语动词用虚拟语气。通常省略主句。如：

If only she had known where to find you!

If only I could speak several foreign languages!

If only I were you!

If only I were a bird!

If only you had known about it!

If only the alarm clock had rung!

If only I hadn't lost it! 要是没丢掉它就好了！

注意：谓语动词用一般过去时表示现在没有实现的愿望。谓语动词用过去完成时表示过去没有实现的愿望。

（3）only if 表示“只有在……情况下才能……”“只有在……条件下才能……”。谓语动词用陈述语气。如：

I wake up only if the alarm clock rings. 只有闹钟响了，我才会醒。

I told him he would succeed only if he tried hard.

注意：only if 从句如果放在主句前，则主句用倒装语序。如：

Only if my teacher helps me can I succeed.

10.3 虚拟语气在宾语从句中的用法

（1）在含有“一个坚持宁愿怂恿打算安排”（insist，prefer，urge，intend，arrange）；“两个命令”（order，command）；“四个建议”（suggest，advise，propose，recommend）；“五个要求”（ask，require，request，demand，desire）等动词的宾语从句中，谓语动词要用“（should）+动词原形”。如：

She insisted that we（should）help her.

He urged that we（should）leave.

Tom ordered that all the people（should）go to the front.

We suggest that the meeting（should）be put off.

The chairman proposed that we（should）not discuss the question.

I asked that he（should）come to my office.

The workers demanded that their wages（should）be raised.

I required that the work be done tomorrow.

注意：① suggest 作“表明、暗示”“认为”讲时，从句不用虚拟语气。如：

Mr. Smith's oral English suggests that he is from Canada.

Tom came home quickly，which suggested that she has passed the final exam.

Are you suggesting that I am too old for the job.（认为）

I suggest that he is lying.

② insist 作“坚持认为、坚持说”讲时，后面跟一种事实或客观情况，从句不用虚拟语气。如：

He insisted that he had seen the film.（坚持认为）

The young man insisted that he had done nothing wrong and be set free.

③ 表示此类动词相关内容的从句（如主语从句、表语从句和同位语从句），也使用“（should）+动词原形”。如：

It was suggested that we（should）put the match off.

His suggestion was that we（should）put the match off.

It is requested that Mr. Li（should）give a performance at the party.

（2）动词 wish 后的宾语从句必须用虚拟语气，表示不可能实现的愿望。其结构见表 10-2。

表 10-2 wish 一词的用法

主句谓语	从句谓语	
	时态	谓语动词的形式
wish	现在时 表示与 wish 同时发生的动作	动词用过去时 be 动词用 were
	过去时 表示在 wish 之前发生的动作	动词用 had done be 用 had been
	将来时 表示在 wish 之后发生的动作	动词用 would do；should do be 用 would be；should be

I wish I were as strong as you.

I wish I had never met him before.

I wish I could help him.

I wished that I had known that earlier.

I wish now that I had known that yesterday

I wish I could have gone to the movies with you last night.

I wish you would go with us tomorrow.

（3）would rather/had rather/would sooner（宁愿）+从句时，从句须用虚拟语气。

表示现在和将来，用一般过去时。如：I'd rather you came tomorrow.

表示过去，用过去完成时。如：I'd rather I hadn't done that.

（4）在“I am surprised/sorry+that 从句”和“I regret+that 从句”中，从句谓语动词要用 should，其中 should 不可省略，意思是“竟然”，表示说话人的惊异、懊悔、失望等情感。如：

I am surprised that he should have been so rude to you.

10.4 虚拟语气在主语从句中的用法

（1）在“It is+*adj.*/*n.*+that 从句”中，that 从句常常用“（should）+动词原形”。这些形容词或名词有：strange，surprising，amazing，astonishing，wrong，important，necessary，essential，natural，natural，possible，probable，ridiculous，desirable，advisable，preferable，urgent，insistent，better，funny，pitiful，eager（热切的），anxious（急切的），unthinkable（不可想象的），a pity，a shame，a thousand pities，no wonder，no right 等。如：

It is necessary that some immediate effort（should）be made. 必须立即采取行动。

It is important that the program（should）be loaded into computer. 把程序输入计算机非常重要。

注意：在“It is strange（surprising，amazing，astonishing，wrong，a pity，a shame，a thousand pities）that 从句”中，that 从句谓语动词要用 should，其中 should 不可省略，意思是“竟然”，表示说话人的惊异、懊悔、失望等情感。如：

It is quite wrong that the children should be given so much homework to do.

It is a pity that Henry should be so careless.

It is a shame that he should have done such a thing.

（2）在“It is+过去分词+that 从句”中，that 从句须用“（should）+动词原形”。这些过去分词有：

“一个坚持宁愿怂恿打算安排”（insist，prefer，urge，intend，arrange）；”两个命令”（order，command）；“四个建议”（suggest，advise，propose，recommend）；“五个要求”（ask，require，request，demand，desire）等动词的过去分词。例如：

It is desired that we（should）arrive there before dark.

It was proposed that the matter（should）be discussed at the next meeting.

It was arranged that the party should be conducted in English.

10.5 虚拟语气在表语从句和同位语从句中的用法

（1）在 insistence，order，command，advice，suggestion，proposal，recommendation，demand，desire，requirement，request，motion，plan，idea，decision 等词后的表语从句和同位语从句中，谓语动词用“（should）+动词原形”。例如：

The demand is that we（should）work hard.（表语从句）

The order is that the troops（should）withdraw at once.（表语从句）

The requirement is that we（should）keep the rules.（表语从句）

He gave me a suggestion that I（should）leave Chengdu for shanghai at once.（同位语从句）

The professor gave orders that the test be finished before 5：30.（同位语从句）

He made the request that the problem should be settled at once.（同位语从句）

（2）as if/as though 引导的表语从句或方式状语从句所表达的内容如果与事实情况相反或发生的可能性不大，则从句中需使用虚拟语气。

① 如从句表示与现在事实相反，谓语动词用一般过去时。

② 如从句表示与过去事实相反，谓语动词用过去完成时。

③ 如从句表示将来发生的可能性不大，谓语动词用 would/might/could+动词原形。如：

She looks as though she were sick.（表语从句）

It looks as if it might rain.（表语从句）

He looks as if he had just met a ghost.（表语从句）

It seems as if it were winter already.（表语从句）

He talks as if he knew all about it.（方式状语从句）

She acts as though she were an expert.（方式状语从句）

He remained calm as if nothing had happened.（方式状语从句）

He talks about pyramids as though he had seen them himself.（方式状语从句）

She looks after him as if he were her own child.（方式状语从句）

但 as if/as though 后面的从句有时也可以用陈述语气，表示从句中的情况往往是可能发生的。如：

It looks as if it is going to rain.

It looks as if our side is going to win.

He walks as if he is drunk.（= He is probably drunk.）（真实情况）

He walks as if he were drunk.（but he is not drunk）（虚拟语气）

10.6 虚拟语气在状语从句中的用法

（1）so that 和 in order that 引导状语从句时谓语动词要用“can/could/may/might/will/would 等+动词原形”。如：

Ask her to hurry up with the letters so that I can sign them.
I did this so that I might have a couple of weeks to prepare my paper.
I have come all the way here in order that you should understand me.
（2）in case，for fear that 和 lest 引导的目的从句中谓语动词要用“(should) +动词原形”。如：
She took her raincoat with her in case/for fear that/lest she (should) be caught in the rain.
她带了雨衣，以免遭雨淋。
Remind me in case I (should) forget.
We rushed out of the house lest it should collapse.
Be quiet please in case you should wake the baby.
He handled the computer carefully for fear that it should be damaged.
注意：in case 后也可用陈述语气（即一般现在时或一般过去时）。如：
You'd better take an umbrella in case it rains.
（3）even if/even though 引导的让步状语从句中，可用虚拟语气。如：
Even if he had much money now，he can't save his wife's life.

10.7 虚拟语气在定语从句中的用法

在“It is (high，about) time (that) 从句”中，从句谓语动词用一般过去时或“should+动词原形”。其中 should 不能省略。如：

It is high time that we were off.
It is time that we went to bed.
It is time that somebody taught you to behave yourself.
It is about time we should go to bed.

10.8 用在由某些介词短语、连词、副词或上下文引起的含蓄条件句的主句中

有时在句中假设的情况并不以条件句表示出来，而是通过一个介词短语、连词、副词或上下文表现出来。这样的词有：with，without，but for（要不是），but，in，under，or，or else，otherwise，in case of，what if，but that-clause 等。例如：

But for your help we couldn't have succeeded. 要不是你的帮助，我们是不会成功的。
They wouldn't have reached the agreement so easily without that common ground.
没有共同立场，他们是不会那么容易达成协议的。
She wasn't feeling very well. Otherwise she wouldn't have left the meeting so early.
她感到不舒服，不然她不会那么早离开会场的。
I would do so in your place. 假如我处于你的位子，我会那样做的。
With better equipment，we could have done it better.
But for her guidance，we should fail.（同现在事实相反）
But for her guidance，we should have failed.（同过去事实相反）
I would have lost my head in that position.
But that you had helped me，I would not have succeeded.

Under the leadership of a less experienced person，the experiment would have failed.

注意：分词短语、动词不定式、名词+and、独立主格结构等都可以表示条件。如：

United，they wouldn't have been defeated.（分词）

Given more attention，the trees could have grown better.（分词）

It would be only partly right to answer in this way.（动词不定式）

One step further and you would be head.（名词+and）

All things considered，the price would be reasonable.（独立主格结构）

10.9　虚拟语气常用于某些表示祝愿的句子中

Long live the people! 人民万岁！

Long live the Communist Party of China！中国共产党万岁！

God bless you. 愿上帝保佑你。

May you succeed! 祝你成功！

May you be happy! 祝你快乐！

May good luck be yours. 祝你顺利。

【真题解析】

1.（2015·北京）34. If I _____it with my own eyes，I wouldn't have believed it.

A. didn't see　　B. weren't seeing　　C. wouldn't see　　D. hadn't seen

【答案】D。

【解析】句意：如果不是我亲眼看到，我不会相信。根据后半句 wouldn't have believed 可以判断是对过去的虚拟。所以从句是 if+主语+had+done 的形式。故选 D。

【名师点睛】条件句中由 if 引导时，首先要根据句意和句子结构判断是真实条件句还是虚拟条件句，如果符合虚拟的结构，就可以根据句子中的时间和语意判断应该用哪种虚拟语气。

2.（2015·重庆）7. Without his wartime experiences，Hemingway____ his famous novel *A Farewell to Arms*.

A.didn't write　　B. hadn't written　　C. wouldn't write　　D. wouldn't have written

【答案】D。

【解析】句意：没有他战时的经验，海明威就不可能写出著名的小说《永别了，武器》。根据 without his wartime experience 没有战时的经历可知，句子表示对于过去的否定猜测，故主句用 would have done，因此选 D 项。

【名师点睛】虚拟语气是一种动词形式，表示说话人的一种愿望、假设、怀疑、猜测建议等，表示的含义不是客观存在的事实，此类题目一般难度不大，主要是要找对时间状语，并且分清时间状语与主句还有从句的关系，再来确定是对现在、过去还是将来的虚拟。

3.（2015·天津）13. I wish I _______ at my sister's wedding last Tuesday，but I was on a business trip in New York then.

A. will be　　B. would be　　C. have been　　D. had been

【答案】D。

【解析】句意：上个周二我本希望能参加我姐姐的婚礼，但那时我在纽约出差。本题考查 wish 引导的宾语从句，表示与过去事实相反的愿望，从句用 had+过去分词。根据句意可知选 D。

【名师点睛】本题考查 wish 引导的虚拟语气。由 wish 引起的表示愿望的虚拟语气：用 wish 表示对

现在的愿望时，它所引起的宾语从句中谓语动词形式为：过去式（be 动词用 were）；用 wish 表示对将来的愿望时，它所引起的宾语从句中谓语动词形式为：would，could，might+动词原形；wish 对过去的事实表示一种不可能实现的愿望时，宾语从句中的谓语动词形式为：had+动词过去分词或 could，would+have+动词过去分词。分析此题需抓住时间状语 last Tuesday，可以判断出 wish 是对过去的事实表示一种不可能实现的愿望。

4.（2015·陕西）23. Ellen is a fantastic dancer. I wish I__________as well as her.

A. dance B. will dance C. had danced D. danced

【答案】C。

【解析】句意：Ellen 是一个很棒的舞蹈演员。但愿我能和她跳得一样好。I wish “但愿”后面接宾语从句用虚拟语气，表示和现在相反的用一般过去时，所以选 C。

【名师点睛】虚拟语气表示一些事与愿违或和事实不符的情况。I wish “但愿”后面接宾语从句用虚拟语气，和现在相反的用一般过去时，和过去相反的用过去完成时，和将来相反的用 could/would do sth.。

5.（2015·江苏）28. It might have saved me some trouble ______ the schedule.

A. did I know B. have I known C. do I know D. had I known

【答案】D。

【解析】句意：如果我早知道日程安排，可能会省去一些麻烦。根据题干中 might have saved 可知主句是对过去的虚拟，从句应用 if I had known 且与主句保持一致。if 虚拟条件句中含有 had 时，可将 if 省去，同时将 had 提前构成倒装结构。故选 D 项。虚拟语气题的重要做题原则：根据题干中主句或从句中动词形式判断所考查的动词的虚拟时间，一般要保持一致，但要注意错综时间虚拟语气，此时要根据各自所表示的虚拟时间做出调整。另外，当 if 条件句中含有助动词 had，should 或 were 时，可以省略 if，且将 had，should 或 were 提到句首，从而构成倒装虚拟条件句。

6.（2015·安徽）32. It is lucky we booked a room，or we ______nowhere to stay now.

A. had B. had had C. would have D. would have had

【答案】C。

【解析】句意：我们很幸运地订到了房间，否则的话，我们现在就会无处可去了。or 引导含蓄虚拟条件句，or 后面是主句，相当于 if we hadn’t booked a room，we would have nowhere to stay now，根据“now”可知，是对现在进行虚拟，因此用 would+动词原形，故选 C。

【名师点睛】本题考查含蓄虚拟语气和错综时间虚拟语气。比较常见的是 if 引导的虚拟条件句，由 otherwise，or，without 等引出的相反的情况被称为“含蓄虚拟语气”。or 引出相反的情况，对过去虚拟，主句用 would+have done，但是主句中有“now”，表示与现在相反，因此用 would+动词原形。

【真题再现】

1. When a pencil is partly in a glass of water，it looks as if it_________.

A. breaks B. has broken C. were broken D. had been broken

2.（1996 年全国卷 I 19）You didn’t let me drive. If we____in turn，you____so tired.

A. drove；didn’t get B. drove；wouldn’t get

C. were driving；wouldn’t get D. had driven；wouldn’t have got

3.（2000 年上海卷 43）—do you mind if I keep pets in this building? —____.

A. I’d rather you didn’t，actually B. Of course not，it’s not allowed there

C. Great! I love pets D. No，you can’t

4.（2000 年上海卷 60）If you had _____your test paper carefully before handing it in，you would have made fewer mistakes.

A. looked up B. thought about C. gone over D. gone round

5. (2001 上海卷 40) What would have happened______, as far as the river bank?

A. Bob had walked farther B. if Bob should walk farther

C. had Bob walked farther D. if Bob walked farther

6. (2002 上海春招 31) How I wish every family _____ a large house with a beautiful garden.

A. has B. had C. will have D. had had

7. (2002 上海秋 37) It is hard for me to imagine what I would be doing today if I __________ in love, at the age of seven, with the Melinda Cox Library in my hometown.

A. wouldn't have fallen B. had not fallen

C. should fall D. were to fall

8. (2002 上海秋 39) __________ be sent to work there?

A. Who do you suggest B. Who do you suggest that should

C. Do you suggest who should D. Do you suggest whom should

9. (04 上海春招) You might just as well tell the manufacturer that male customers ___ not like the design of the furniture.

A. must B. shall C. may D. need

10. (04 广西) I often see lights in that empty house. Do you think I _____ report it to the police?

A. should B. may C. will D. can

11. (04 辽宁) —Mum, I've been studying English since 8 o'clock.______I go out and play with Tom for a while? —No, I'm afraid not. Besides, it's raining outside now.

A. Can't B. Wouldn't C. May not D. Won't

12. (04 天津) —Who is the girl standing over there ? —Well, if you___know, her name is Mabel.

A. may B. can C. must D. shall

13. (04 浙江) I ____ pay Tracy a visit, but I am not sure whether I will have time this Sunday.

A. should B. might C. would D. could

14. (04 重庆) "The interest_____be divided into five parts, according to the agreement made by both sides," declared the judge.

A. may B. should C. must D. shall

15. (04 湖南) —Excuse me, but I want to use your computer to type a report.

—You _____ have my computer if you don't take care of it.

A. shan't B. might not C. needn't D. shouldn't

16. (04 江苏) —I don't mind telling you what I know. —You______. I'm not asking you for it.

A. mustn't B. may not C. can't D. needn't

17. (04 上海) Children under 12 years of age in that country ___ be under adult supervision when is a public library.

A. must B. may C. can D. need

18. (04 湖北) —Excuse me. Is this the right way to the Summer Palace? —Sorry, I am not sure. But it _____be.

A. might B. will C. must D. can

19. (04 全国Ⅰ)—Isn't that Ann's husband over there? —No, it ____ be him —I'm sure he doesn't wear glasses.

A. can't B. must not C. won't D. may not

20. (04 全国Ⅱ) You ______ be tired —you've only been working for an hour.

A. must not B. won't C. can't D. may not

21.（04 福建）—I'll tell Mary about her new job tomorrow. —You_____ her last week.

A. ought to tell　　B. would have told　　C. must tell　　D. should have told

22.（04 广西）Mr. White _____ at 8:30 for the meeting，but he didn't show up.

A. should have arrived　　B. should arrive

C. should have had arrived　　D. should be arriving

23.（04 福建）—How do you ______we go to Beijing for our holidays?

—I think we'd better fly there. It's much more comfortable.

A. insist　　B. want　　C. suppose　　D. suggest

24.（2006 年福建 32）The workers will go on strike if the demands they____put forward are turned down.

A. could　　B. would　　C. 不填　　D. had

25.（2006 年湖北 31）___fired，your health care and other benefits will not be immediately cut off.

A. Would you be　　B. Should you be　　C. Could you be　　D. Might you be

26.（2007 全国卷 I）—How's your tour around the North Lake? Is it beautiful? —It ________ be，but it is now heavily polluted.

A. will　　B. would　　C. should　　D. must

27.（2007 北京卷）In crowded places like airports and railway stations，you__take care of your luggage.

A. can　　B. may　　C. must　　D. will

28.（2007 上海卷）The boss has given everyone a special holiday，so we____go to work tomorrow.

A. can't　　B. mustn't　　C. needn't　　D. shouldn't

29.（2007 上海卷）—Guess what! I have got A for my term paper. —Great! You ______ read widely and put a lot of work into it.

A. must　　B. should　　C. must have　　D. should have

30.（2007 福建卷）My MP4 player isn't in my bag. Where___________I have put it?

A. can　　B. must　　C. should　　D. would

31.（2007 湖南卷）The biggest problem for most plants，which ________ just get up and run away when threatened，is that animals like to eat them.

A. shan't　　B. can't　　C. needn't　　D. mustn't

32.（2007 江苏卷）—She looks very happy. She ______ have passed the exam. —I guess so. It's not difficult after all.

A. should　　B. could　　C. must　　D. might

33.（2007 江西卷）—Where is my dictionary? I remember I put it here yesterday. —You_______it in the wrong place.

A. must put　　B. should have put　　C. might put　　D. might have put

34.（2007 陕西卷）As a result of the serious flood，two-thirds of the buildings in the area_________.

A. need repairing　　B. needs to repair　　C. needs repairing　　D. need to repair

35.（2007 陕西卷）I told your friend how to get to the hotel，but perhaps I_________have driven her there.

A. could　　B. must　　C. night　　D. should

36.（2007 安徽卷）The teacher ______have thought Johnson was worth it or she wouldn't have wasted time on him，I suppose.

A. should　　B. can　　C. would　　D. must

37.（2007 四川卷）—What does the sign over there read? — "No person _____ smoke or carry a lighted cigarette，cigar or pipe in this area."

A. will　　B. may　　C. shall　　D. must

38.（2007 浙江卷）—My cat's really fat. —You ______ have given her so much food.

A. wouldn’t B. couldn’t C. shouldn’t D. mustn’t

39.（2007 重庆卷）—What do you think we can do for our aged parents?

—You ________ do anything except to be with them and be yourself.

A. don’t have to B. oughtn’t to C. mustn’t D. can’t

40.（2007 辽宁卷）—Turn off the TV，Jack. ____ your homework now? —Mum，just ten more minutes，please.

A.Should you be doing B. Shouldn’t you be doing

C. Couldn’t you be doing D. Will you be doing

41.（2009 年天津卷 15）This printer is of good quality. If it _______ break down within the first year，we would repair it at our expense.

A. would B. should C. could D. might

42.（10 上海 29）—Sorry，Professor Smith. I didn’t finish the assignment yesterday.

—Oh，you_______have done it as yesterday was the deadline.

A. must B. mustn’t C. should D. shouldn’t

43.（10 安徽 26）Bob would have helped us yesterday，but he_______.

A. was busy B. is busy C. had been busy D. will be busy

44.（10 湖南 29）If he ________my advice，he wouldn’t have lost his job.

A. followed B. should follow C. had followed D. would follow

45.（10 天津 15）John went to the hospital alone. If he________me about it，I would have gone with him.

A. should tell B. tells C. told D. had told

46.（10 江苏 34）George is going to talk about the geography of his country，but I’d rather he_____ more on its culture.

A. focus B. focused C. would focus D. had focused

47（陕西 15）If we ___ the other road，we might have arrived here in time for the meeting.

A. take B. had taken C. took D. have taken

48.（10 北京 34）—The weather has been very hot and dry.

—Yes. If it had rained even a drop，things would be much better now! And my vegetables______.

A. wouldn’t die B. didn’t die C. hadn’t died D. wouldn’t have died

49.（10 浙江 10）Had I known about this computer program，a huge amount of time and energy_______.

A. would have been saved B. had been saved

C. will be saved D. was saved

50.（2011 北京卷）Maybe if I ___ science，and not literature then，I would be able to give you more help.

A. studied B. would study C. had studied D. was studying

51.（2011 北京卷）—Where are the children? The dinner’s going to be completely ruined. —I wish they _________ always late.

A. weren’t B. hadn’t been C. wouldn’t be D. wouldn’t have been

52.（2011 天津卷）I ______ sooner but I didn’t know that they were waiting for me.

A. had come B. was coming C. would come D. would have come

53.（2011 江西卷）We ______ John’s name on the race list yesterday but for his recent injury.

A. will put B. will have put C. would put D. would have put

54.（2011 江苏卷）—I left my handbag on the train，but luckily someone gave it to the railway officials.
—How unbelievable to get it back! I mean，someone_______ it.

A. will have stolen B. might have stolen C. should have stolen D. must have stolen

55.（2011 安徽卷）—What do you think of store shopping in the future?

—Personally，I think it will exist along with home shopping but _____.

A. will never replace　　B. would never replace
C. will never be replaced　　D. would never be replaced

56.（2011 福建卷）—Pity you missed the lecture on nuclear pollution.
—I____ it，but I was busy preparing for a job interview.
A. attended　　B. had attended　　C. would attend　　D. would have attended

57.（2011 陕西卷）I__________through that bitter period without your generous help.
A. couldn't have gone　　B. didn't go
C. wouldn't go　　D. hadn't gone

【参考答案】

1—5　CDACC　　6—10　BBACA　　11—15　ACADA　　16—20　DAACD
21—25　DADCBC　　26—30　CCCCA　　31—35　BCDAD　　36—40　DCCAB
41—45　BCACD　　46—50　BBDAC　　51—55　ADDBC　　56—57　DA

11　非谓语动词

11.1　概　说

11.1.1　非谓语动词的分类、意义及构成

动词的非谓语形式：动词不作谓语时的固定形式。

动词的非谓语形式包括动词不定式、动名词和分词三种形式（见表 11-1）；其中分词又包含现在分词和过去分词两种形式。它们在句子中不能单独作谓语。

表 11-1　动词的非谓语形式

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2" rowspan="2">非谓语形式</th><th colspan="4">构　成</th><th rowspan="2">特征和作用</th></tr>
<tr><th colspan="2">时态和语态</th><th>否定式</th><th>复合结构</th></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">不定式</td><td>to do
to be doing
to have done</td><td>to be done
to have been done</td><td rowspan="4">在非谓语前加 not</td><td>for sb. to do sth.</td><td>具有名词、副词和形容词的作用，在句中做主、宾、定、表、状</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">分词</td><td>现在分词</td><td>doing
having done</td><td>being done
having been done</td><td></td><td rowspan="2">具有副词和形容词的作用，可做定、表、宾补和状语</td></tr>
<tr><td>过去分词</td><td colspan="2">done</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">动名词</td><td>doing
having done</td><td>being done
having been done</td><td>sb.'s doing</td><td>具有名词的作用，可做主、宾、定、表</td></tr>
</table>

11.1.2　非谓语动词的语法功能（见表 11-2）

表 11-2　非谓语动词的语法功能

所能充当的成分		主　语	表　语	宾　语	宾语补足语	定　语	状　语
V.-ing 形式	现在分词		△		△	△	△
	动名词	△	△	△		△	
不定式（to do）		△	△	△	△	△	△
过去分词（done）			△		△	△	△

注：现在分词、不定式、过去分词都可以作独立成分。例如：

generally speaking 一般说来；frankly speaking 坦白地说；judging from/by... 根据……来判断；considering... /taking...into consideration 考虑到……；to tell you the truth 说实话；seeing... 考虑到……；supposing 假设，如果；providing 如果；given 考虑到，鉴于；provided that 如果。

11.1.3　非谓语动词的形式变化（见表 11-3）

表 11-3　非谓语动词的形式变化

形	语法功能						构成法（以 do 为例）			与谓语动词的时间关系			
	主语	宾语	表语	定语	状语	宾主补	时态语态	主动	被动	先发生	同发生	后发生	例句
不定式	√	√	√	√	√	√	一般式	to do	to be done		√	√	I saw him go out. I hope to go to college.
	√	√	√	√	√	√	完成式	to have done	to have been done	√			I am glad to have met you.
	√	√	√	√	√	√	进行式	to be doing			√		He pretended to be working hard.
	√	√	√	√	√	√	完成进行式	to have been doing		√			I am happy to have been living here.
现在分词			√	√	√	√	一般式	doing	being done		√		He sat there，reading a book.
			√	√	√	√	完成式	having done	having been done	√			Having finished the work，he went home.
过去分词			√	√	√	√	一般式		done	√			Given more time，we could do it much better.
动名词	√	√	√	√			一般式	doing	being done	√	√		She enjoys singing. I remember meeting you somewhere before.
	√	√	√	√			完成式	having done	having been done	√			She regretted having missed the film.

11.1.4　作宾语的非谓语动词比较（见表 11-4）

表 11-4　作宾语的非谓语动词比较

情况		常用动词
只接不定式做宾语的动词		hope，want，offer，long，fail，expect，wish，ask，decide，pretend，manage，agree，afford，determine，promise，happen
只接动名词做宾语的动词或短语		mind，miss，enjoy，imagine，practise，suggest，finish，escape，excuse，appreciate，admit，prevent，keep，dislike，avoid，risk，resist，consider
		can't help，feel like，succeed in，be fond of，object to，get down to，be engaged in，insist on，think of，be proud of，take pride in，set about，be afraid of，be tired of，look forward to，devote oneself to，be worth，be busy，pay attention to，stick to
两者都可以	意义基本相同	begin，start，like，love，hate，prefer，continue（接不定式多指具体的动作，接动名词多指一般或习惯行为）
		need，want，require（接动名词主动形式表示被动意义，若接不定式则应用被动形式）
	意义相反	stop to do 停止手中正在做的事，去做另一件事 stop doing 停止正在做的事

续表

<table>
<tr><td colspan="2">情　况</td><td colspan="2">常用动词</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">两者都可以</td><td rowspan="3">意义不同</td><td>remember/forget/regret to do（指动作尚未发生）
remember/forget/regret doing（指动作已经发生）</td><td>go on to do（接着做另外一件事）
go on doing（接着做同一件事）</td></tr>
<tr><td>try to do（设法，努力去做，尽力）
try doing（试试去做，看有何结果）</td><td>mean to do（打算做，企图做）
mean doing（意思是，意味着）</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">can’t help to do（不能帮忙做）can’t help doing（忍不住要做）</td></tr>
</table>

11.1.5　非谓语动词作宾语补足语的区别（见表 11-5）

表 11.1.5　非谓语动词做宾语补足语的区别

<table>
<tr><td></td><td>常见动词</td><td>与宾语的逻辑关系及时间概念</td><td>例　句</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">不定式</td><td>ask, beg, expect, get, order, tell, want, wish, encourage</td><td rowspan="2">主谓关系。强调动作将发生或已经完成，如 see sb. do sth.</td><td rowspan="2">I heard him call me several times.</td></tr>
<tr><td>have, notice, see, watch, hear, feel, let, make</td></tr>
<tr><td>现在分词</td><td rowspan="2">notice, see, watch, hear, find, keep, have, feel</td><td>主谓关系。强调动作正在进行，尚未完成，如 see sb. doing sth.</td><td>I found her listening to the radio.</td></tr>
<tr><td>过去分词</td><td>动宾关系。如 see sb. done（sb.与 do 被动关系）</td><td>We found the village greatly changed.</td></tr>
</table>

14.1.6　非谓语动词作定语的区别（见表 11-6）

表 11-6　非谓语动词做定语的区别

<table>
<tr><td></td><td>区　别</td><td>举　例</td></tr>
<tr><td>不定式</td><td>与被修饰词往往有动宾关系，一般式表示将来，进行式表示与谓语动作同时发生，完成式表示在谓语动词之前发生</td><td>I have a lot of papers to type.
I have a lot of papers to be typed.
I have no place to live in.（注意 in 不能省略）</td></tr>
<tr><td>动名词</td><td>通常指被修饰词的用途，无逻辑上的任何关系</td><td>Shall we go to the swimming pool?</td></tr>
<tr><td>现在分词</td><td>与被修饰词之间是主谓关系，表示动作与谓语动作同时发生</td><td rowspan="2">the boiling water/the boiled water
the developing country/the developed country
the falling leaves/the fallen leaves</td></tr>
<tr><td>过去分词</td><td>与被修饰词之间是被动关系，表示动作发生在谓语动作之前，现已经完成</td></tr>
</table>

14.1.7　非谓语动词作主语和表语的区别（见表 11-7）

表 11-7　非谓语动词做主语和表语的区别

	区　别	举　例
不定式	多表示一个特定的、具体的、将来的动作，做主语时可以借助 it 把不定式移到句子后面。做表语时可和主语交换位置，而且意义不变，并且还能用 what 来提问主语或表语	My dream is to become a teacher. To obey the law is important. （dream，business，wish，idea，plan，duty，task 做主语时常用）
动名词	与不定式的功能区别不大，然而它更接近于名词，表示的动作比较抽象，或者泛指习惯性的动作，有时也可以用 it 做形式主语，做表语时可以和主语互换位置	It is no use saying that again and again. Teaching is my job.
分词	无名词的性质，不能做主语。但是有形容词的性质，可以做表语，多表明主语的特征性质或者状态等，可被 very，quite，rather 等副词修饰 现在分词多含有“令人……”之意，说明主语的性质特征，多表示主动，主语多为物。过去分词一般表示被动或主语所处的状态，含有“感到……”之意，主语多是人	The situation is encouraging. The book is well written. （常见分词有 astonishing，moving，tiring，disappointing，puzzling，shocking，boring，amusing 及其-ed 形式）

14.1.8　独立主格结构（见表 11-8）

表 11-8　独立主格结构

区别	独立主格结构带有自己的逻辑主语，与主句主语不一致	He stood there，his nose bleeding.（bleeding 的逻辑主语是 his nose，不是 he） 注意：在“He stood there，his nose was bleeding.”中，“逗号”前有分句，逗号后再出现分句时，要么用连接词，要么将其中一个分句（句子）改成分词结构或独立主格结构。
	一般的分词结构的逻辑主语往往是主句主语	He stood there，bleeding.（bleeding 的逻辑主语是主句主语 he；bleed 和 he 是主动关系，且表示伴随状态，所以用 bleeding）
用法	逻辑主语+doing/having done	Weather permitting，we will go out to play.（weather 和 permit 是主动关系，用现在分词）
	逻辑主语+done/having been done	The problems discussed，the members argued with each other.（讨论和争论同时进行） The problems having been solved，they went home.（先解决问题，后回家）
	逻辑主语+to do	Let's clean the classroom，Tom to fetch some water.
	逻辑主语+无动词结构	He came in，（with）a hat on his head. He stood there，sword in hand.

11.2　动词不定式

11.2.1　动词不定式的形式和性质

动词不定式由“不定式符号 to+动词原形”构成。它的否定形式只要在“to” 前面加上“not”。它的疑

问形式是:“wh-疑问词+to+动词原形”。不定式根据其发生的时间不同以及所处的状语的不同,可以有一般式、完成式、进行式、完成进行式,同时根据它与逻辑主语的关系,可以有主动式和被动式(见表 11-9)。

表 11-9　不定式的主动语态和被动语态

	主 动 语 态	被 动 语 态
一般式	to do	to be done
进行式	to be doing	to be being done
完成式	to have done	to have been done
完成进行式	to have been doing	to have been being done

动词不定式具有名词、形容词和副词的特征,即可以在句子中作主语、宾语、定语、状语、表语和宾语补足语。但不定式也保留动词的某些特征,即不定式后面可以跟宾语、表语和状语。动词不定式加上相关成分就构成不定式短语。

1. 不定式的一般式用法

不定式的一般式是指“to+动词原形”,其主要用法如下:

(1)表示未发生的动作,即表示发生在谓语动作之后的动作。如:

We decided to leave early. 我们决定早点动身。

He asked me to buy him some paper. 他叫我给他买些纸。

(2)表示同时发生的动作,即表示与谓语动作同时发生或略先于谓语动作的动作。如:

She is helping us to clean the window. 她在帮我们擦窗户。

I’m sorry to hear that. 听到这事我很难过。

(3)表示一般情况,即看不出动作的先后关系,而是表示一种情况或现象。如:

Washing the car seems to be your main hobby. 擦洗汽车似乎是你的主要爱好。

None of her many lovers seemed to want to marry her. 在她的许多情人节中似乎没有一个愿意娶她。

2. 不定式的完成式用法

不定式的完成式的基本形式为 to have done,其主要用法如下:

(1)表示比谓语更早的动作,即不定式所表示的动作发生在谓语动作之前。如:

I remember to have seen him do it. 我记得曾看见他这样做。

He is said to have written another TV play. 据说他又写了一部电视剧。

I am ashamed to have mentioned it. 我很惭愧提到了这件事。

(2)表示比某特定时间更早的动作,即表示在某个特定的时间之前已完成的动作。如:

I expect to have finished by tomorrow evening. 我看明天晚上之前可以完成。

We hope to have finished the job by next Saturday. 我们希望下周六前完成这项工作。

(3)表示假想的更早的动作,尤其是表示过去本来打算要做某事,但实际上没有做成的动作。如:

They were to have left the next day. 他们本来决定第二天就离开的。

I should like to have been told the result earlier. 我本想让人把结果早点告诉我。

3. 不定式的进行式用法

不定式进行式的基本形式为 to be doing,其主要用法如下:

(1)表示同时进行,即表示谓语动作同时发生且正在进行的动作。如:

He pretended to be studying. 他假装在学习。

I happened to be standing next to him when he collapsed. 他倒下的时候我恰巧站在他旁边。

（2）表示将来，正如可用进行时态表示将来意义一样，不定式的进行式有时也可表示将来。如：

I hope to be staying with you. 我希望和你住在一起。

The old man seems to be dying. 这老人似乎要死了。

I'm quite pleased to be leaving this country. 就要离开这个国家我很高兴。

（3）表示一般情况，即看不出动作的先后关系，而是表示一种情况或现象。如：

I noticed that he seemed to be smoking a lot. 我发现他似乎烟瘾很大。

Just to be doing something was a help. 做点事是有益处的。

You are too young to be meeting young men. 你太小，不能交男朋友。

4. 不定式被动式的构成与用法

（1）不定式被动式的构成。

不定式主动式的基本形式是 to do，不定式被动式的基本形式则是 to be done。如：

I was very glad to invite him. 能邀请他我很高兴。（不定式 to invite 为主动式）

I was very glad to be invited. 我很高兴受到邀请。（不定式 to be invited 为被动式）

He ordered the soldiers to go by air. 他命令士兵乘飞机去。（不定式 to go 为主动式）

He ordered the goods to be sent by air. 他命令把货物空运。（不定式 to be sent 为被动式）

（2）不定式被动式的用法说明。

① 不定式到底用主动形式还是被动形式，往往取决于句子的意思，即意思上为主动就用主动形式，意思上为被动就用被动形式。如：

He asked to be forgiven. 他请求原谅他。

You are to be congratulated. 你应当受到祝贺。

It's annoying to be interrupted. 让人打扰是很令人不高兴的。

I had to shout to be heard. 我必须叫喊对方才能听得见。

② 要注意主动表被动的情形。一般说来，表示主动意义，不定式用主动式；表示被动意义，不定式用被动式。但是，有个别时候，虽然意义上是被动的，但不定式却要用主动式。如：

I want something to drink. 我想喝点什么。

The poem is not easy to understand. 这首诗不容易理解。

Your writing is impossible to read. 你的书法没法认。

以上各例中的不定式 to drink，to understand，to read 均为主动形式，但均表示被动意义。

11.2.2　不定式的用法

动词不定式可以作句子的主语、表语、宾语、定语、同位语、补语、状语或单独使用。

1. 用作主语

直接把动词不定式置于句首的情况不多，多数情况用 it 作形式主语，把真正的主语——动词不定式置于句末，特别是不定式短语较长时（有时在不定式的前面还会用 for sb.表示不定式的逻辑主语）。动词不定式作主语，谓语动词用第三人称单数形式。带疑问词的不定式短语作主语常置于句首，复合不定式结构作主语常置于句末。如：

（1）把不定式置于句首。如：

To get there by bike will take us half an hour.

（2）用 it 作形式主语，把真正的主语不定式置于句后，常用于下列句式中。如：

① It+be+名词+to do。如：

It's our duty to take good care of the old.

② It takes sb.+some time+to do。如：

How long did it take you to finish the work?

③ It+be+形容词+for sb.+to do。如：

It is difficult for us to finish writing the composition a quarter of an hour.

④ It+be+形容词+of sb.+to do。如：

"It is stupid of you to write down everything", the teacher says.

注意：在③中，常用表示客观情况的形容词，如 difficult，easy，hard，important，impossible，necessary 等；在④中，常用 careless，clever，good，foolish，honest，kind，lazy，nice，right，silly，stupid，wise 等表示赞扬或批评的词，强调对人的评价。在不定式前的 sb.，可看作其逻辑主语。这一句式有时相当于 sb. is+形容词+to do 句式，如：It's kind of you to help me with my English. =You are kind to help me with my English.

⑤ It seems（appears）+形容词+to do。如：

It seemed impossible to save money.

（3）带疑问词的不定式短语作主语。如：

How to solve the problem is hard for him.

2. 用作表语

动词不定式作表语，常用来说明主语的内容、性质、特征，通常放在连系动词（主要是 be 动词）后。如：

The best way to improve your English is to join an English club.

The first thing is to greet the teacher.

注意：不定式作表语表示具体动作或将来动作；动名词作表语表示抽象的一般行为。如：

Our work is serving the people.

3. 用作宾语

（1）可以接带 to 的动词不定式作宾语的动词主要有：要求、选择、同意（ask，choose，agree）、期望、决定、学习（expect，hope，decide，learn）、宁可、假装、知道（prefer，pretend，know）、希望、想要、愿意（wish，want，would like/love）。如：

We decided to talk to some students about why they go there.

He prefers to eat white bread and rice.

I'd love to visit Mexico.

（2）动词 decide，know，learn，show，teach，tell 等和介词结构 on...可用疑问词带 to 的不定式短语作宾语，但 why 后面的不定式不带 to。如：

Could you please tell me where to park my car?

It gives advice on what to do in lots of different situations.

注意：疑问词带不定式在句中作成分时，谓语动词用单数。如：

The question is how to put it into practice. 问题是怎样把它付诸实施。

（3）动词 feel，find，make，think 等后面，可以用 it 作形式宾语代替真正的宾语——动词不定式，句子结构是...feel/find/make/... it+*adj.* /*n.*+to do...。如：

I find it difficult to remember everything.

（4）既可接动词不定式又可接 *v.* ing 形式作宾语，意思差别不太大的动词有 begin，start，like，love 等。一般说来，动词不定式表一次、数次的具体动作，将来动作或动作的全过程；*v.* ing 形式表习惯性的连续动作。但是这种区别并不是很严格，特别是美国英语，即使是习惯性的动作也可以用动词不定式。如：

Then I started to watch English-language TV.

I'm beginning to understand my Chinese roots，and who I am.（begin 用了进行时态，后面只接不定式作宾语，表示事情刚开始，还要继续下去。）

I like to eat vegetables.（感知动词 like，love，know 等一般不用进行时态。）

（5）后接动词不定式或 *v.* ing 形式作宾语，意思差别较大的动词有 forget，remember 等。后接不定式作宾语，表动作尚未发生；后接 *v.* ing 形式作宾语，表动作已经发生。stop to do 停下来做另外一件事，to do 是目的状语；stop doing 停止做、不做当前这件事，doing 是宾语。try to do 尽力做，try doing 试试看；go on to do 接着做另外的事，go on doing 继续做原来的事。如：

When I left home，I had forgotten to bring it with me.

I stopped using them last year.

4. 用作定语

（1）句子的主语或宾语是动词不定式的逻辑主语，不定式与其所修饰的名词、代词等存在逻辑的动宾关系时，用动词不定式的主动式。如：

① I have so many chores to do today.

② I can't think of any good advice to give her.

③ Basketball has also become a more popular sport for people to watch.

不定式短语作定语和被修饰词之间表示以下关系：

① 表示将来的动作。如：The next train to arrive is from Washington.

② 与被修饰词之间有动宾关系，如是不及物动词，则需加介词。如：Would you please give me some paper to write on?

③ 与被修饰词之间有动宾关系，同时与句中其他词之间又有逻辑上的主谓关系时，尽管有被动含义，却仍用主动语态。如：Do you have anything to say on the question? 如只有动宾关系，而无逻辑上的主谓关系，则需用被动语态。如：Do you have anything to be taken to your sister?

（2）动词不定式所修饰的名词是 place，time，way 等时，不定式与这些名词呈现出动状关系或同位关系。如：

① He needs time to do homework.

② Is that a good place to hang out?

③ You want to know the best way to get around the city.

（3）在"there be..."句型里，句子的主语是动词不定式动作的对象，常用主动式。如：

① There's just so much to see and do here.

② ... but there are still many things to do there.

注意：

（1）表 11-10 给出了一些常见结构。

表 11-10　使用不定式的常见结构

被修饰部分+不定式（作后置定语）		汉语意思
a key	to lock the door	锁门的钥匙
a box	to hold these things	装这些东西的箱子
give her a book	to read	给她一本书读
Is there any（+名词/代词）	to（do）?	有……要（做的）吗?
It's time	to go.	是走的时间了。

续表

被修饰部分+不定式（作后置定语）		汉语意思
Do you have any work	to do?	你有工作要做吗?
I'd like something	to eat.	我要点儿吃的。
I have nothing	to say.	我没有话要说。
Would you like something	to drink?	你要点儿喝的吗?

（2）如果不定式动词是不及物动词，则后面必须加介词。如：

They could not find a place to live in. 他们找不到住的地方。

Please give me a chair to sit on. 请给我一张椅子坐坐。

He has got a writing brush to write with. 他找到了写字的毛笔。

5. 用作补语

动词不定式作补语时，在主动语态句里补宾语，在被动语态句里补主语，句子的宾语或主语是不定式动作的逻辑执行者。如果不定式是 to be done，句子的宾语或主语就是逻辑承受者。

（1）在主、被动语态句里用带 to 的动词不定式作补语的动词主要有：要求、允许、提议（ask，allow，permit，advise）、期望、邀请、鼓励（expect，suppose，invite，encourage）、教导、告诉、想要（teach，tell，want）、等待、希望、愿意（wait for，wish，would like/love）。如：

① I'd invite her to have dinner at my house.

② Teenagers should be allowed to choose their own clothes.

③ Email English is supposed to be used on mobile phones.

（2）动词不定式作补语，在主动语态句里不带 to，被动语态句里带 to 时多数动词是感官动词和使役动词。

记忆口诀：一感二听三让四看半帮助。一感：feel；二听：hear，listen to；三让：make，let，have 四看：see，watch，notice，observe；半帮助：help。

使用口诀：感使动词真奇怪，to 在句中像妖怪。主动句里它走开，被动句里它回来。动词 help 要除外，to 词可来可不来。如：

① This picture makes me feel tense!

② Of course we want to see Liu Yu achieve his dreams.

注意：主动语态中 to 省略，但是在被动语态中 to 要还原。

I saw him dance.

=He was seen to dance.

The boss made them work the whole night.

=They were made to work the whole night.

（3）help 后接动词不定式作补语，to 可带可不带。一般说来，带 to 表间接帮助，不带 to 表直接帮助。在被动语态句里，或者用不定式的否定式作补语时要带 to。如：

① ... they can help you to compare two different products so that you can buy the one you really need.

② Using email English helps you write quickly.

（4）be said，be sure，happen，seem 等后面可以接带 to 的动词不定式作主语的补语。如：

① He doesn't seem to have many friends.

② Be sure not to miss them if they come to a city near you.

注意：hear/see/feel/watch 之后的宾补用不定式与现在分词时，含义不同。试比较：

I heard her crying when I walked past. 我路过时听到她正在哭。（指当时瞬间的情况）

I sat near her and heard her sing the new song. 我坐在她附近听她唱新歌。（指整个过程）

6. 用作状语

（1）目的状语可置于句首或句末，置于句首时常表示强调。如：

① In order not to offend people，learning about language etiquette is just as important as learning grammar or vocabulary.

② A group of young people got together to（in order to/so as to）discuss this question.

to do/in order to do/so as to do 用作目的状语，置句末时都可以用，置句首时只用 to do/in order to do。so as to do 一般不置于句首，可以引导结果状语从句，in order to do 不引导结果状语从句。

（2）原因状语，多见于“sb.+be+*adj*.+to do...”结构中。如：

① My dogs name is“Lucky”—a good name for him because I feel very lucky to have him.

② On Monday he told a radio interviewer that he had run out of money to buy old bikes.

（3）结果状语，多见于“too...to”（太……以致不能……），“enough to...”结构句中。如：

① Then I'm too tired to do well. What should I do?

② The room needs to be big enough for three people to live in.

（4）有些动词不定式作状语，常说明前面形容词的性质和特性。动词不定式与句子的主语有逻辑的动宾关系。动词不定式前面的形容词一般是：cheap，dangerous，difficult，easy，fun，hard，interesting，necessary。不定式常用主动式表被动意义。

（5）独立动词不定式多用作插入语，表示说话人的心理状态或对事情的看法。如：

① I'd like to stay healthy，but to be honest，I only eat food that tastes good.

② To begin with，she spoke too quickly，and I couldn't understand every word.

7. 动词不定式的复合结构

动词不定式的复合结构是“for/of sb. to do sth.”，for/of 引出不定式动作的逻辑主语。这种结构在句子中可以作主语、宾语、表语、定语、状语等。不定式复合结构的介词用 for 还是 of，主要决定于前面形容词的性质。一般说来，of 前面的形容词是 careful，clever，foolish，good，kind，nice，wise 等，既说明人的特性，又说明不定式动作的特性。for 前面的形容词是 dangerous，difficult，easy，hard，heavy，important，interesting，necessary 等，一般说明不定式动作的特性，不说明人的特性。前面如果是名词用 for。如：

① Its also probably a good idea for parents to allow teenagers to study in groups during the evening.

② Zoos are terrible places for animals to live.

8. 带疑问词的不定式短语

动词不定式前面可以带疑问代词 what，which，who 或疑问副词 how，when，where，why 等。这种结构起名词的作用，在句子里用作宾语、主语、表语等，或者单独使用。要注意的是，why 后面的不定式不带 to。

（1）用作句子的成分。如：

① I don't know what to try next.（作宾语）

② Where to go is not decided yet.（作主语）

（2）单独使用时相当于一个特殊疑问句。如：

① What to do next?（=What will we/you do next?）

② Why go there?（=Why do we/you go there?）

9. 动词不定式的否定式

不定式的否定式是 not/never to do...，不带 to 的不定式的否定式是 not/never do...。如：

① Sometimes they have disagreements，and decide not to talk to each other.

② His parents tell him never to drive after drinking.

10. 省略 to 的动词不定式

（1）情态动词（ 除 ought 外，ought to ）。

（2）使役动词 let，have，make。

（3）感官动词 see，watch，look at，notice ，observe，hear，listen to，smell，feel，find 等后作宾补，省略 to。注意：在被动语态中则 to 不能省掉。

（4）表示个人意愿或倾向的 would rather，had better，might（just）as well，rather than 置于句首时。如：

Rather than ride on a crowded bus，he always prefers to ride a bike.

（5）Why.../why not...：Why not have a picnic this afternoon? 今天下午去野餐怎么样？

why not=why don't you，二者用法是完全一致的，可以相互转化。

（6）help 可带 to，也可不带 to，help sb.（to）do sth.

（7）but 和 except：but 前是动词 do 时，后面出现的动词用不带 to 的动词不定式。

（8）由 and，or 和 than 连接的两个不定式，第二个 to 可以省去。

（9）在 discover，imagine，suppose，think，understand 等词后通常可以省去 to be。如：

He is supposed（to be）nice. 他应该是个好人。

（10）but 作介词，后接不定式结构时，前面谓语动词部分若含有 do 的形式时，but 后的不定式要省去 to，否则要带 to。如：

He wants to do nothing but go out.

He wants to believe anything but to take the medicine.

（11）当两个或多个不定式短语由连词 and，but 或 or 连接时，后一个或几个不定式符号 to 常省略。但若表示对比、对照关系时，则不能省略。如：

He wants to move to France and marry the girl.

The purpose of new technologies is to make life easier，not to make it more difficult.

（12）不定式作表语时，一般要带 to，但若主语部分中含有 do 的各种形式时，符号 to 可省去。如：

We've missed the last bus. All we could do now is walk home.

11. 不定式的特殊句型

（1）不定式的特殊句型 so as to，表示目的；它的否定式是 so as not to do。so kind as to 表示“劳驾”的意思。如：

Tom kept quiet about the accident so as not to lose his job. 汤姆对事故保持沉默是为了不丢掉他的工作。

Go in quietly so as not to wake the baby. 轻点进去，别惊醒了婴儿。

Would you be so kind as to tell me the time? 劳驾，现在几点了。

（2）“Why not+动词原形”表达向某人提出建议，表示“为什么不……?”“干吗不……?”如：

Why not take a holiday? 干吗不去度假?

（3）It's for sb.和 It's of sb. 结构。

① for sb. 常用于表示事物的特征，常见的用于表示客观形式的形容词有：easy，hard，difficult，interesting，impossible 等。如：

It's very hard for him to study two languages. 对他来说学两门外语是很难的。

② of sb. 的句型一般用来表示人物的性格、品德，表示主观感情或态度的形容词有：good，kind，

nice，clever，foolish，right。如：

It's very nice of you to help me. 你来帮助我，你真是太好了。

for 与 of 的辨别方法：

用介词后面的代词作主语，用介词前面的形容词作表语，造个句子。如果主义上通顺用 of，不通则用 for。如：

You are nice.（通顺，所以应用 of）。

He is hard.（人是困难的，不通，因此应用 for。）

（4）不定式的特殊句型 too…to…。

① too…to：太……以至于……如：

He is too excited to speak. 他太激动了，说不出话来。

—Can I help you? 需要我帮忙吗?

—Well，I'm afraid the box is too heavy for you to carry it，but thank you all the same. 不用了。这箱子太重，恐怕你搬不动。谢谢您。

② 如在 too 前有否定词，则整个句子用否定词表达肯定，too 后那个词表达一种委婉含义，意为“不太”。如：

It's never too late to mend.（谚语）改过不嫌晚。

③ 当 too 前面有 only，all，but 时，意思是“非常……”，等于 very。如：

I'm only too pleased to be able to help you. 我非常高兴能帮助你。

He was but too eager to get home. 他非常想回家。

动词不定式的“to”与介词的“to”区别：to 有两种用法，一为不定式+动词原形；一为介词+名词/动名词。to 在下面的用法中是第二种，即 to+名词/动名词：admit to 承认，confess to 承认，be accustomed to 习惯于，be used to 习惯于，stick to 坚持，turn to 开始，着手于，devote oneself to 献身于，be devoted to 致力于，look forward to 盼望，pay attention to 注意。

如介词 but，except，besides+to do（do）前有动词 do，后面应接不带 to 的不定式；如无 do，则接 to 不定式，即“带 do 不带 to，带 to 不带 do”。如：

The enemy soldiers had no choice but to give in.

On Sunday afternoon I had nothing to do but watch TV.

（5）固定句型：

- had better+（not）do sth. 最好（不）做某事
- Why（not）do sth.?
- …prefer to do/prefer doing
- …prefer+*n.* /doing A+to+*n.* /doing B
- …prefer+to do A rather than（to）do B
- …would rather（not）do sth.
- …would rather do A than（do）B
- …would rather+句子（过去式）（虚拟语气）要做……

12. 动词不定式与动名词的区别与联系

英语中某些动词后可跟动名词或动词不定式，有时两者意思差别不大，有时却截然不同。

（1）两者意思相似，但稍有差别：

① start/begin doing sth.（或 to do sth.）：start/begin doing sth. 与 start/begin to do sth.，两者均表示“开始做某事”，一般可通用，但指开始一项长期或习惯的活动时，多用 doing 形式，例如：

I started/began learning（或 to learn）English in 2016. 我在 2016 年开始学英语。

How old were you when you first started playing football? 你第一次踢足球时多大?

② 1ike doing sth.（或 to do sth.）：like doing sth. 与 like to do sth. 两者均表示“喜欢做某事”，有时可以通用，但表示一般性或抽象的多次性行为多用 doing 形式；表示某一特定场合具体的动作时，多用 to do 形式。类似此用法的动词还有 hate（憎恨），love（爱、喜欢），prefer（更喜欢）等，例如：

Fox example，Lily likes to dance（或 dancing），but I like to sing（或 singing）.

例如，莉莉喜欢跳舞，但我喜欢唱歌。

He likes/hates swimming，but he doesn't like/hate to swim today.

他喜欢/讨厌游泳，但他今天不喜欢/讨厌游泳。

（2）两者意思一样，可以互相替换：

continue doing sth.（或 to do sth.）continue doing 与 continue to do sth. 两者均表示“继续做某事”，通常可以互相替换。例如：

He continued asking（to ask ）the same question. 他继续问同样的问题。

（3）只有 doing sth ，而没有 to do sth.。

find doing sth.和 practice doing sth.。find doing sth. 表示“发现某人正在做某事”；practice doing sth. 表示“练习做某事”。类似此用法的动词还有：finish（完成），keep（继续），mind（介意），can't help（情不自禁），look forward to（期望），pay attention to（注意），feel like（想要），consider（考虑）等。例如：

I find the girl reading a book under the tree. 我发现那个女孩在树下读书。

I am considering changing my job. 我正在考虑改变我的工作。

We must practice speaking English every day. 我们必须每天练习说英语。

（4）两者意思截然不同：

① stop doing sth. 和 stop to do sth. 用法辨析。

stop doing sth. 是“动宾结构”，表示“停止正在做的事情”；stop to do sth. 表示“停下来改做另一件事”，stop 是不及物动词，不定式是目的状语，例如：

Stop talking! It's time for class. 不要讲话！是该上课的时候了。

The woman stopped to have a rest. 那个女人停下来休息一下。

② see sb. doing sth. 与 see sb. do sth. 用法辨析。

see sb. doing sth. 表示“看见某人正在做某事”；see sb. do sth.（do 是省 to 的动词不定式）表示“经常看见某人做某事或看到某一动作的全过程”。类似此用法的动词还有 hear（听见），watch（观看），feel（感觉）等，例如：

I often saw him play football and yesterday afternoon I saw him playing football. 我经常看见他踢足球，昨天下午我看到他正在踢足球。

I heard the girl singing a song in the room just now. 我刚才听见那个女孩在房间唱歌。

③ go on doing sth.与 go on to do sth. 用法辨析。

go on doing sth. 表示“继续做一直在做的事”，同义词组为 go on with sth；go on to do sth. 表示“继续接着做另一件事”，例如：

Please go on doing your homework. /Please go on with your homework. 请继续做你的家庭作业。

After l finished my homework，I went on to watch TV. 在我完成作业后，我继续看电视。

④ remember doing sth.与 remember to do sth. 用法辨析。

remember doing sth. 表示“记得做过某事”；remember to do sth.表示“记住要做某事”。类似此用法的动词还有 forget（忘记），regret（遗憾）等，例如：

I remember/forget seeing the film. 我记得/忘记看过那场电影。

Please remember/don't forget to post the letter. 请记住/不要忘记去寄那封信。

⑤ try doing sth.与 try to do sth. 用法辨析。

try doing sth. 表示“试着做某事”；try to do sth. 表示“试图（尽力）做某事”，例如：

Let me try driving a car. 让我试着开那辆小汽车。

I try to finish the work on time. 我试图按时完成那个工作。

⑥ need doing 与 need to do sth. 用法辨析。

need doing 表示“需要被做”，主语一般为物，相当于 need to be done；need to do sth. 表示“需要做某事”，主语一般为人。类似此用法的动词还有 want（需要）等，例如：

My car needs mending. =My car needs to be mended. 我的小汽车需要修理。

We need to study hard. 我们需要努力学习。

⑦ forget to do 忘记要去做某事。（未做）forget doing 忘记做过某事。（已做）例如：

The light in the office is stil on. He forgot to turn it off. 办公室的灯还在亮着，他忘记关了。（没有做关灯的动作）

He forgot turning the light off. 他忘记他已经关了灯了。（已做过关灯的动作）

Don’t forget to come tomorrow. 别忘了明天来。（to come 动作未做）

⑧ regret to do 对要做的事遗憾。（未做）regret doing 对做过的事遗憾、后悔。（已做）例如：

I regret to have to do this，but I have no choice. 我很遗憾必须这样去做，我实在没有办法。

I don’t regret telling her what I thought. 我不为告诉她我的想法而后悔。

⑨ cease to do 长时间，甚至永远停做某事。cease doing 短时停止做某事，以后还会接着做。例如：

That department has ceased to exist forever. 那个部门已不复存在。

The girls ceased chatting for a moment when their teacher passed by. 姑娘们在老师走过时，停止聊天。

⑩ be afraid to do 不敢，胆怯去做某事，是主观上的原因不去做，意为“怕”；be afraid of doing 担心出现 doing 的状况、结果。doing 是客观上造成的，意为“生怕，恐怕”。例如：

She was afraid to step further in grass because she was afraid of being bitten by a snake. 她生怕被蛇咬着，而不敢在草丛中再走一步。

She was afraid to wake her husband. 她不敢去叫醒她丈夫。

She was afraid of waking her husband. 她生怕吵醒她丈夫。

⑪ interested to do 对做某事感兴趣，想了解某事。interested in doing 对某种想法感兴趣，doing 通常为想法。例如：

I shall be interested to know what happens. 我很想知道发生了什么事。（想了解）

I’m interested in working in Switzerland. Do you have any idea about that?
我对在瑞士工作感兴趣。你想过这事吗?（一种想法）

⑫ mean to do 打算、想；mean doing 意味着。例如：

I mean to go，but my father would not allow me to. 我想去，但是我父亲不肯让我去。

To raise wage means increasing purchasing power. 增加工资意味着增加购买力。

⑬ begin/start to do sth. 与 begin/start doing sth.：谈及一项长期活动或开始一种习惯时，使用 doing。例如：

How old were you when you first started playing the piano? 你几岁时开始弹钢琴?

begin，start 用进行时时，后面动词用不定式 to do。例如：

I was beginning to get angry. 我开始生起气来。

在 attempt，intend，begin，start 后接 know，understand，realize 这类动词时，常用不定式 to do。例如：

I begin to understand the truth。我开始明白真相。

物作主语时。例如：

It began to melt.

【例题精析】

【例题 1】

Tom’s mother told him ________ eating too much meat.

A. stopping　　B. to stop　　C. stops　　D. stopped

【答案】B

【解析】本题考查动词不定式作宾补。tell sb. to do sth.告诉某人做某事。故选 B。

【例题 2】

Whenever you have a chance ________ English，you should take it.

A. speak　　B. to speak　　C. spoke　　D. speaks

【答案】B

【解析】本题考查动词不定式作定语。a chance to speak English 一个说英语的机会。故选 B。

【例题 3】

—I like this set of sofa so much，but I don't know ________it in my small house.

—You're supposed to put it in the living room.

A. where to put　　B. why to put　　C. how to put　　D. what to put

【答案】A

【解析】考查"疑问词+不定式"在特定语境中作宾语时的用法辨析。答句句意：你应该把它放在客厅。可知上句句意应该是：……，但我不知道把它放到我小房子的什么"地方"。故选 A。

【例题 4】

Try to sing some English songs，you'll find it interesting ____ a foreign language.

A. learning　　B. learns　　C. learn　　D. to learn

【答案】D

【解析】考查"find+it+*adj*.+to do sth."的用法。find+it+*adj*.+to do sth.意为"发现做某事是……"。故选 D。

【例题 5】

【2013 广东广州】17. I always tell my students ______ on the road because it's really dangerous.

A. not to play　　B. to play not　　C. not playing　　D. not play

【答案】A

【解析】考查非谓语动词。不定式作 tell 的宾语补足语，构成 tell sb. to do sth.结构，对不定式进行否定在 to 前加 not。即 tell sb. not to do sth.意为"告诉某人不要做某事"。

【例题 6】

【2013 广东】41. —I didn't hear you come in just now.

—That's good. We tried _______ any noise，for you were sleeping.

A. not make　　B. not to make　　C. to make　　D. making

【答案】B

【解析】考查非谓语动词的用法。try to do sth.意为"努力/尽力做某事"，否定式为 try not to do sth.，句意指尽量不去制造任何噪音。所以选 B。

【例题 7】

【2013 湖北孝感】39. —Dad，why must I stop ______ computer games? —For your health，my boy.

A. play　　B. to play　　C. to playing　　D. playing

【答案】D

【解析】考查固定搭配。stop to do sth. "停下来去做另外一件事"；stop doing sth. 停止正在做的某件事"。题意为"爸爸，我为什么必须停止玩游戏？""为了你的健康，孩子。"故选 D。

【例题 8】

【2013 湖北襄阳】38. —Driving less，walking more is good for our health. —So I'd rather____an hour's walk to work than consider________a car.

A. take；drive　　B. take；to drive　　C. take；driving　　D. taking；driving

【答案】C

【解析】考察动词及动词短语的用法。would rather do 意为“宁愿干某事”，后面接动词原形；consider doing 意为“考虑做某事”，后面接动名词。故选 C。

【例题 9】

【2013 山东济宁】23. —I will go to Harbin for my summer vacation. What about you? —I haven’t decided where ________.

A. go　　B. went　　C. going　　D. to go

【答案】D

【解析】考查“疑问词+不定式”结构。由句意“—我将去哈尔滨过暑假，你呢？—我还没有决定去哪里。”decide 后可接宾语从句，也可接“疑问词+不定式”结构。故排除 A、B 和 C 项。

【例题 10】

【2013 江西】38. Lucy is shy. She would not invite her classmates _____dancing with her.

A. practice　　B. practices　　C. practicing　　D. to practice

【答案】D

【解析】考查非谓语动词的用法，invite 的用法是 invite sb. to do sth. 故选 to practice。

【课堂运用】

1. The heavy snowstorm made the mountain climbers ______ halfway.

A. stop　　B. to stop　　C. stopping　　D. stopped

2. I’11 give a talk tomorrow. I’m thinking about________.

A. what to say　　B. how to say　　C. what can I say　　D. how can I say

3. Your father is sleeping. You’d better _______.

A. not to wake him up　　B. not wake him up

C. not wake up him　　D. not to wake up him

4. —Mum，I’m hungry. —What about going to McDonald’s ______ fried chicken?

A. eat　　B. to eat　　C. eating　　D. and eat

5. If everyone makes a contribution ______ the environment，our country will become more beautiful.

A. to protect　　B. in protecting　　C. to protecting　　D. for protecting

6. —Shopping with me? —Sorry. I have a lot of clothes________.

A. to wash　　B. washed　　C. wash　　D. to be washed

7. Jim asked Lin Feng ______ forget to change water.

A. to not　　B. don’t　　C. not　　D. not to

8. The little girl was too frightened _______ a word.

A. not to tell　　B. not to say　　C. to tell　　D. to say

9. He told us that where _______ a picnic was not decided yet.

A. having　　B. to have　　C. have　　D. had

10. We don’t know _______ it next. Let’s go and ask Mr. Li.

A. what to do　　B. to do what　　C. whether to do　　D. to do whether

【答案及解析】

1. A. 本题考查省略 to 的不定式。make sb. do sth. 表示“使某人做某事”，make 表示“使、让”的意思，是使役动词，后接不带 to 的不定式作宾语补足语。故选 A。

2. A. 本题考查动词不定式与疑问词连用的情况。依据上句“明天我将做一个讲演”，我正考虑讲什么，是说的内容，故应选 what。C、D 语序不对。故只能选 A。

3. B. had better 后接动词原形，排除 A、D；其否定结构为：had better not do sth.，同时要注意代词放在 wake up 的中间。

4. B. 依据题意：去 McDonald's 吃烤鸡怎么样？用不定式表示目的，故选 B。

5. C. make a contribution to 表示“为……做贡献”，其中 to 为介词，后应接名词或动名词。

6. A. 作定语用的不定式的逻辑主语是句中主语或宾语时，就用主动式的不定式来表被动意义。故选 A。

7. D. 本题考查动词不定式作宾补。动词不定式的否定结构为：not to do sth.，故选 D。

8. D. 本题考查不定式作状语表结果。too…to…表示“如此……以致不能……”。故应选 D。

9. B. 考查不定式作宾语补足语的用法。句意“他告诉我还没有决定去什么地方野炊”。选 B。

10. C. 考查“疑问词+不定式”结构。what to do 后不跟 it；whether to do...意为“是否做……”，句意为“我们不知道下一步是否做，去问一下李先生吧”。故选 C。

【课后作业】

1. Plan your time carefully and make sure you have some time ______ what you like every day.

A. do　　B. to do　　C. doing　　D. done

2. We can make a fire _________the room warm so that we can chat for a while.

A. to keep　　B. keeping　　C. keep　　D. kept

3. We can't work out the physics problem. Can you tell us _________?

A. how to do　　B. what to do it

C. how to do it　　D. what should to do

4. —Don't forget _________your homework，John. —OK. I'll do right now.

A. doing　　B. do　　C. to do　　D. to be done

5. At last the boy was made _________and began to laugh.

A. stop crying　　B. to stop to cry　　C. to stop crying　　D. stop to cry

6. If prices rise too high，the government has to do something _________it.

A. stop　　B. stopped　　C. stopping　　D. to stop

7. Water Park is a good place _______.

A. to have fun　　B. have fun　　C. having fun　　D. to have a fun

8.While we were running on the playground，Jack suddenly stopped _________and lay on the ground，so we all stopped _________what was wrong with him.

A. to run；to see　　B. running；seeing　　C. running；to see

9. We have two rooms _________，but I can't decide _________.

A. to live；to choose which one　　B. lived；choose which one

C. to live in；which one to choose　　D. live；which one

10. —How about going shopping this weekend，Peter?

—Sorry. I prefer _________ rather than _________.

A. to stay at home；go out　　B. to go out；stay at home

C. staying at home；go out　　D. going out；stay at home

【答案及解析】

1. B。本题考查不定式作目的状语。句意：仔细安排你的时间，并确保你有足够的时间做你每天喜欢做的事情。故选 B。

2. A。由句意“我们可以生火让房间暖和起来，以便我们能闲聊一会儿”知此处应为动词不定式作目的状语，故选 A。

3. C。本题考查“疑问词+不定式”的用法。句意为“我们做不出这道物理题，你能告诉我们怎样做

吗？”how to do sth.“怎样做某事”，do 后的宾语不能省略。故选 C。

4. C。forget to do sth.“忘记要做某事（还没做）”；forget doing sth.“忘记做过某事（已经做了）”。由句意“约翰，别忘了做作业。”知选 C。

5. C。make sb. do sth.“让某人做某事”，后跟省略 to 的不定式，但使役动词 make 变为被动式时，后面省略的 to 要补充出来。stop doing sth.“停止做某事”；stop to do sth.“停下来去做某事”。由题意知选 C。

6. D。本题考查动词不定式的用法。由句意“如果价格涨得过高，政府必须做一些事情来阻止它。”可知用动词不定式作目的状语。

7. A。have fun 是固定短语，意为“玩得高兴，过得愉快”。由句意“水上公园是一个游玩的好地方”可知用动词不定式作后置定语。

8. C。stop doing sth.意为“停止做某事”；stop to do sth.意为“停下来去做某事”。句意为“我们在操场上跑步时，杰克突然停下躺在地上，因此我们都停下来看他怎么了。”故选 C。

9. C。根据句意“我们有两间屋子可居住，但是我不知道选择哪一间。”第一个句子中 live in 的 in 不能省略。“选择哪一间”用“which one to choose”。故选 C。

10. A。prefer to do rather than do 意为“宁愿……而不愿”。句意为“宁愿待在家里而不愿出去。”故选 A。

11.3 动名词

11.3.1 动名词的构成和性质

动名词是非谓语动词的一种形式。从形式上看，它与现在进行时中的分词相同，都是在动词原形的末尾加上-ing。但是动名词的用法与现在分词还是有很大区别的。动名词否定形式为 not doing，具有动词和名词的性质，在句中起名词作用。

英语动名词有两个特点。第一，它是从动词变化而来的，所以它保留了动词的某些特征。例如：它能带自己的宾语、状语等，这时就叫动名词短语；第二，顾名思义，动名词最大的特点是它相当于一个名词。因此，动名词可以在句中作主语、宾语等。因为它作为名词来使用，所以动名词也有像名词一样的“所有格形式”。

11.3.2 动名词的用法

1. 动名词作主语

（1）动名词直接置于主语的位置。例如：

Learning without practice is no good.

Reading aloud is a practical method in learning a language.

（2）动名词作主语时，也常用 it 句式。例如：

① It's+no good（no use，fun，a pleasure，a waste of time）+doing。如：

It's no good reading in dim light.

It's no use sitting here waiting.

It is a waste of arguing with him.

② It's+形容词+doing。如：

It's dangerous swimming in the sea in windy days.

这样用的形容词有 expensive，nice，tiring 等，但 important，necessary 则不适用于这种结构，应用不定式代替，如：It's important for you to keep fit.

（3）动词不定式和动名词作主语的区别：

① 不定式作主语经常表示具体动作，常与特定的动作执行者联系在一起；而动名词作主语经常表示抽象动作，经常不与特定的动作执行者联系在一起。如：

It's no good eating too much fat.

It's no good for you to eat so much fat.

② 动名词结构作主语，可以用名词或代词属格形式作逻辑主语。如：

It's no use your pretending that you didn't know the rules.

2. 动名词作宾语

（1）admit，appreciate，avoid，consider，delay，forbid，enjoy，escape，excuse，fancy（想象），practise，deny（否认），finish，forgive，give up，imagine，recall，keep，mention，mind，miss，practise，put off，resist，risk，suggest，can't help（情不自禁），can't stand（无法忍受）等动词后可以用动名词作宾语，但不能用不定式。

（2）forget，go on，mean，regret，remember，stop，try 等动词或词组可带动名词或不定式作宾语，但意义上有区别。例如：

Let's go on studying Lesson 6. 让我们继续学第六课。（说明前面已学了一部分。）

Let's go on to study Lesson 6. 让我们接着学第六课。（说明前面已学了第五课。）

I remember doing the exercise. 我记得做过练习。

I must remember to do it. 我必须记着做这事。

I tried not to go there. 我设法不去那里。

I tried doing it again. 我试着又干了一次。

Stop speaking. 不要讲话。

He stopped to talk. 他停下来讲话。

I mean to come early today. 我打算今天早些来。

Missing the train means waiting for another hour. 误了这趟火车意味着再等一个小时。

（3）在 allow，advise，forbid，permit 等动词后直接跟动名词形式作宾语，如果后面有名词或代词作宾语，其后用动词不定式作宾语补足语。例如：

We don't allow smoking here. 我们不允许在这里吸烟。

We don't allow students to smoke. 我们不允许学生去吸烟。

（4）动词 need，require，want 作“需要”解，其后必须用动名词的主动形式或不定式的被动形式作宾语表示事情需要做，这时，动名词的主动式表示被动意义。be worth 后必须用动名词的主动形式来表示被动意义。例如：

The window needs/requires/wants cleaning/to be cleaned.

Her method is worth trying. 他的方法值得尝试。

（5）动名词作介词的宾语。例如：

I should go to attend the birthday celebration instead of staying at home.

What about inviting Li Jun to make a speech?

有些动词短语后面也跟动名词作宾语，常见的有：

admit to 承认	add to 增加
amount to 等于	apply oneself to 致力于
be accustomed to（=be used to）习惯于	be good at 擅长……

come to 谈到
devote oneself to 献身于
find one's way to 设法到达
give way to 对……让步
give rise to 使……发生
keep to 坚持
lead to 导致
next to 几乎
be open to 愿意接受
be sentenced to 被判刑
stick to 坚持
see to 注意处理，照料
trust to 依靠
turn to 求助于
give up 放弃
as well as 同……一样
be fond of 爱好；喜欢
be afraid of 害怕做某事
think of 想起；考虑；有…想法
put off 延期；敷衍；脱去（衣、帽等）
insist on 坚持
set about 开始做（某事）
be familiar to 为……所熟悉
confess to 供认
be equal to 能胜任，等于
get down to 着手做
give one's mind to 专心于
in addition to 除……外
look up to 尊敬
look forward to 盼望
object to 反对
be reduced to 论为，降为
be worth...值得（做）的
stand up to 勇敢面对
say yes/no to 同意/不同意
take up 开始（学习或某种爱好）；从事；着手处理；占去
be used to 习惯于
burst out 突然
be tired of 对……感到厌倦
be capable of 有……能力；能够做
be proud of 以……而骄傲/自豪
hold off 拖延；抵抗；抗拒；使……疏远
keep on 继续做某事，反复做某事
count on/upon 指望；依靠
be successful in（succeed in）成功做成某事
make a great contribution to 对……做出很大贡献

3. 动名词的惯用语

（1）there is no+doing（=it is impossible to+*v.*）意为“根本不可能”。例如：

There is no telling what will happen. 无法预测将来会发生什么事情。

There is no joking about such matters. 这种事开不得玩笑。

There is no harm in doing so. 这样做没有害处。

There is no denying the fact that the new method has greatly raised labour productivity. 不容否认新方法大大提高了劳动生产率。

（2）What do you say to+doing?（=What do you think of doing）意为“你认为……怎样？”。例如：

There is a flower show in the park.

What do you say to going there，if it is fine tomorrow?

（3）It is not any use/good（或 no use/good ）+doing 意为“做……是没有用的”。例如：

It is no use/good making an excuse for this.

（4）have difficulty/trouble/fun（in）+doing，例如：

We had great difficulty（in）solving the problem.

They had a lot of fun listening to fairy tales.

（5）在下列以 time 为中心词的短语后：

have a hard/good time
spend a lot of time　}（in）+doing
lose no time

例如：We had a difficult time persuading him.

When we arrived we lost no time（in）finding a hotel.

（6）be on the point of doing（=be about to+*v.*）意为“快要”。例如：

The baby was on the point of crying when her mother finally came home.

（7）make a point of doing（=make it a point to+*v.*）意为“认为……是必要的；特别注意”。例如：

I always make a point of getting up early.

（8）come/go near（to）doing（=be almost doing+nearly do）意为“几乎要”。例如：

He came/went near（to）being drowned.

（9）动词 do 常表示室内活动的动名词连用，如 cooking/cleaning/reading 等 do（some/much/a lot of/any）sewing/shopping/washing/sightseeing。例如：

They did too much drinking last night.

When I was in Spain，I did a lot of sightseeing.

（10）动词 go 常与一些表示运动或休闲的动名词形式连用表示进行某项活动。例如：

go fishing/swimming/skating/climbing/dancing/boating/bowling/surfing/shopping。

4. 动名词作表语

动名词作表语时往往表示一种概念、习惯或经验，或说明主语的内容。例如：

My job/hobby is painting.

The food smells inviting.

The only that interests her is dancing.

5. 动名词作定语

动名词和分词的区别：动名词作定语时，动名词和它所修饰的词没有逻辑上的主谓关系；分词作定语时，分词和它所修饰的词有逻辑上的主谓关系。动名词作定语时，表示它所修饰的名词的用途等，而不表示动作；现在分词作定语时，表示它所修饰的名词正在进行的动作。试比较：

（1）a sleeping car=a car for sleeping 一辆卧车；一节卧铺车厢

这里 sleeping 是动名词作定语，修饰 car，说明 car 是睡觉用的。

（2）a sleeping child=a child who is sleeping 一个正在睡觉的孩子

这里 sleeping 是现在分词作定语，修饰 child，说明 child 正在睡觉。

reading text 阅读课文（动名词）

developing country 发展中国家（分词）

a sleeping bag 睡袋（动名词）

boiled water 开水（分词）

11.3.3 动名词的复合结构

带有逻辑主语的动名词称为动名词的复合结构。当动名词的逻辑主语与句子的主语不一致时，要在动名词之前加上物主代词、名词所有格，这便构成了动名词的复合结构。动名词的复合结构在句中可作主语、宾语、表语等。

动名词的复合结构的形式有以下两种：

（1）名词所有格/物主代词+动名词，如：

I insist on Mary’s going there. 我坚持要玛丽到那儿去。

I had not heard of your being ill. 我没听说你病了。

（2）名词通格/人称代词宾格+动名词，如：

Usually at the beginning of school, the noise of desks being opened and closed, and lessons repeated at the top of the children's voices could be heard out in the street.

In fact，I think it's very much nicer without him，if you don't mind me saying so.

在确定逻辑主语的格的形式时须注意以下几点：

（1）动名词的复合结构作主语时一般用名词所有格或形容词性的物主代词。例如：

Nixon's visiting China marked a new year between U.S. and China diplomatic relations. 尼克松访问中国标志着中美外交关系进入一个新的时代。

（2）在口语和非正式语体中，只要不是作主语，动名词复合结构中的逻辑主语常采用名词通格或人称代词宾格。例如：

The doctor does not mind me/my eating a little meat occasionally. 大夫并不反对我偶尔吃一点肉。

（3）如果逻辑主语是一个短语或有修饰语，一般用名词通格或人称代词的宾格形式。例如：

The teacher insisted on the boy apologizing. 老师坚持要那个男孩道歉。

I insist on both of them coming in time. 我坚持要他们两人准时来。

Do you remember Mary and her mother coming to see us last year?

（4）无生命的事物名词作逻辑主语时一般采用通格形式。例如：

The suggestion of the meeting being put off was not adopted by the chairman. 延期召开会议的建议没有被主席采纳。

（5）-s 结尾的复数名词作逻辑主语时一般用通格。例如：

The librarian wouldn't like his books being earmarked. 图书管理员不喜欢书角被折。

（6）集合名词、单复数同形的名词或变化不规则的复数名词作逻辑主语并同动名词一起作宾语时，一般用通格。例如：

I was surprised at the children playing in the street yesterday.

（7）不定代词或指示代词作动名词的逻辑主语时，一般不用或很少用所有格形式。例如：

He was awaken by someone knocking on the window.

I object to that being said about me. 我反对那样说我。

（8）it 作逻辑主语时用宾格或所有格均可，但指时间时用宾格。例如：

She was worried about the little bird. She was frightened of it/its building a nest in the chimney. 她很为小鸟担忧，为它在烟囱中筑巢而感到害怕。

A：Why，it's eleven o'clock already.

B：I'm surprised at it being so late.

动名词复合结构可以在句子中充当以下成分：

（1）作主语。例如：

His coming home late worries his mother. 他回家晚令他母亲很担心。

John's/John coming here will get us out of trouble. 约翰的到来将会使我们脱离困境。

（2）作动词或短语动词的宾语。例如：

I don't remember him/his giving me that book. 我记得他给过我那本书。

Do you mind my smoking? 我抽烟你介意吗？

I would appreciate______back this afternoon.（MET'92，答案是 C）

A. you to call　　B. you call　　C. your calling　　D. you're calling

Her parents insisted on her studying medicine. 她父母坚持要她学医。

Have you heard of my sister's winning the contest? 我妹妹在竞赛中获胜的事你听说了吗？

在上述例句中，动名词前的逻辑主语与句子主语不同。如果主语相同，则不用逻辑主语，只用动名词。试比较：

I must apologize for not letting you know ahead of time.（NMET'94）

（3）作介词宾语。例如：

I don't like the idea of our living here. 我不愿意我们住在这里。

I knew nothing about the window being open. 我一点也不知道窗户敞开着。

He left the city without our knowing it. 他离开城市我们大家都不知道。

（4）作表语。例如：

What is most important is Tom's going there at once.

The main trouble is their not having enough money.

【实战演习】

1. _____（see）is_____（believe）.
2. _____（lay）eggs is the ant queen's full-time job.
3. It is no use_____（argue）with him.
4. He managed to escape _____（suffer）from the disease.
5. The suspect denied _____（turn）on the computer in the office that night.
6. I'm looking forward to your _____（come）next time.
7. They are against _____（use）so many animals in experiments.
8. I don't remember ever_____（see）her any time.
9. He apologized for _____（interrupt）us.
10. Thank you for _____（offer）me so much help.
11. He is fond of_____（watch）sports games.
12. She likes_____（make）herself busy all the day.
13. The secretary was scolded for not having finished_____（type）the report in time.
14. The trees want _____（water）.
15. I regret_____（have）said some rude words to my brother.
16. We have no idea of their _____（have）done such kind of thing.
17. After ____（have)been treated in the special way, he could deal with everything around him smoothly.
18. He can't remember _____（have）been scolded by his boss for that matter.
19. People hate _____（be）praised for nothing.
20. The problem is far from _____（be）solved.
21. She didn't mind_____（be）left alone at home.
22. Your car needs _____（fill）.
23. This city deserves _____（visit）.
24. The problem requires _____（study）carefully.

【参考答案】

1. Seeing；believing	2. Laying	3. arguing	4. suffering
5. turning	6. coming	7. using	8. seeing
9. interrupting	10. offering	11. watching	12. making
13. typing	14. watering	15. having	16. having
17.having	18. having	19. Being	20. Being
21. being	22. filling	23. visiting	24. studying

【专题练习】

一、选择填空。

1. She apologized to me for ________ to inform me of the change in the plan.
   A. her not being able　　B. her being not able
   C. not being able　　D. that she's not able to
2. I really appreciate ________ help to me，but I am sure that I can manage by myself.
   A. you to offer　　B. that you offer
   C. your offering　　D. that you are offering
3. It was impolite of him ________ without ________ good-bye.
   A. to leave；saying　B. leaving；to say　C. to leave；to say　D. leaving；saying
4. I can hardly imagine Peter ________ across the Atlantic Ocean with in 15 days.
   A. sail　B. to sail　C. sailing　D. to have sailed
5. The competitor never dreamed of ________ for him to win the first prize in the 100-metre race.
   A. there was a chance　　B. there being a chance
   C. it being a chance　　D. it was a chance
6. ________ made her parents worried a lot.
   A. Her not to come back　　B. Not her to come back
   C. Not her coming back　　D. Her not coming back

二、根据括号中所给提示改写句子。

1. It was very strange that she should have said that.（using the infinitive）
   It was very strange ________________________ that.
2. The idea is that we should meet on Thursday.（using the infinitive）
   The idea is ________________________ on Thursday.
3. I'm surprised to find it easy that they will work on it in a short time.（using the infinitive）
   I'm surprised to find it easy ________________ on it in a short time.
4. The girl opened the door so that the little cat could go out.（using the infinitive）
   The girl opened the door ________________________.
5. It was a pleasure that I had been invited to my best friend's wedding.（using the infinitive）
   It was a pleasure ________________________ to my best friend's wedding.
6. That Jack didn't get to the station on time made all of us worried.（using the gerund）
   ________________________ the station on time made all of us worried.
7. My worry is that you rely too much on your parents.（using the gerund）
   My worry is ________________________ too much on your parents.
8. Would you mind if I opened the window for a little while?（using the gerund）
   Would you mind ________________________ the window for a little while?

【参考答案】

一、1—6　ACACBD

二、1. for her to have said　　2. for us to meet　　3. for them to work
   4. for the little cat to go out　　5. for me to have been invited　　6. Jack's not getting to
   7. your relying　　8. my opening

11.4 分　词

11.4.1 分词的构成和性质

分词是一种非谓语动词，在句中不能单独作谓语，没有人称和数的变化，它可以带宾语、状语和表语构成分词短语。分词有现在分词和过去分词两种。现在分词和过去分词主要差别在于：现在分词表示“主动和进行”，过去分词表示“被动和完成”（不及物动词的过去分词不表示被动，只表示完成）。分词在句中可作状语、定语、补足语和表语。

11.4.2 现在分词和过去分词的区别

英语中的分词分两种：现在分词（the present participle）和过去分词（the past participle）。虽然它们在句子中都可作名词修饰语、接系动词补足语、宾语补足语等，但是它们形式不同，而且语义也有差别。

（1）现在分词和过去分词的意义区别。

现在分词表示正在进行的动作；过去分词表示已经完成的动作。例如：

I found him singing in the room.

I found the world changed.

boiling water（正在开的水）

boiled water（已烧开的水，可能已凉了）

现在分词表示主动的意思，修饰的人或物是分词动作的执行者；过去分词表示被动的意义，修饰的人或物分词动作的承受者。例如：

an exciting film（一部激动人心的电影）

the excited audience（激动的观众）

The boss had the workers working all day long.

She had her hair cut yesterday.

（2）现在分词和过去分词的时态和语态，见表 11-11。

表 11-11　现在分词和过去分词的时态和语态

	主动语态	被动语态
现在分词	doing（一般式）	being done（一般式）
	having done（完成式）	having been done（完成式）
过去分词	过去分词只有一种形式 done	

（3）现在分词和过去分词的比较，见表 11-12。

表 11-12　现在分词和过去分词的比较

类　别	规　则	对应示例
二者可通用的情况	作时间状语时，过去分词与“having been done”（其意义相当于一个时间状语）可以通用	Having been discussed many times, the problem was settled at last. Discussed many times, the problem was settled at last. 经过多次讨论，这个问题最后终于得到解决。 Having been cooked to a light brown color, the cake smells good. Cooked to a light brown color, the cake smells good.

续表

类　别	规　则	对应示例
二者可通用的情况	作原因状语时，过去分词与“being done”可以通用	Being confined to bed，she needs to be waited on everything. Confining to bed，she needs to be waited on everything. 由于卧病在床，她什么事都需要人伺候。
过去分词与现在分词被动结构的区　别	过去分词可以作前置定语，但现在分词被动结构不能	可以说：a broken glass（碎玻璃杯）；an uninvited guest（不速之客）；不可以说：a being broken glass；a being uninvited guest
	作后置定语时，过去分词常表示被动动作发生在谓语动作之前，或者只表示被动关系，而“being done”表示该被动动作正在进行，或与谓语动词的动作几乎同时发生	The problem，discussed at yesterday's meeting，was settled at last. 昨天会上讨论的那个问题最后终于得到解决。 The problem being discussed now is difficult to settle. 正在讨论的这个问题很难解决。
	在构成复合宾语时，过去分词强调的是动作已完成，现在分词的被动结构强调的是动作正在进行	I've never heard the word used in spoken English. 我从未听过这个词用在口语中。 You'll find the topic being discussed everywhere. 你会听到到处都在讨论这个问题。
过去分词与现在分词主动式的比较	意义不同：现在分词表示主动的含义，而及物动词的过去分词表示被动的含义。 少数不及物动词的过去分词无被动含义，这种过去分词称为主动过去分词，大部分为形容词。例如：advanced（先进的），agreed（同意的），assembled（集合的），determined（下决心的），faded（凋谢的），failed（失败的），fallen（倒下来的），grown（长大了的），retired（退休的）	Have you got some interesting books for children? The story written by a middle school student is popular in schools.
	动作不同：现在分词用作定语或表语时，表示的动作正在进行，尚未完成；过去分词表示的动作已经完成。	China is a fast developing country. What we usually rink is boiled water.

下文从四个方面详细说明现在分词和过去分词的异同。

（1）现在分词表示动作是主动的和正在进行的（例①②③）；过去分词的动作是被动的和完成的（例④⑤⑥）：

① The boiling water is hot.

② A sleeping baby is good to look at.

③ She has a smiling face.

④ You can use the boiled water to make tea.

⑤ Where is my lost key?

⑥ A broken mirror cannot be repaired.

有时，由于两个动词“异词同义”，其分词也跟着不同　，如：

⑦ Have you seen the man wearing a T-shirt?

Who is the man dressed in a blue shirt?

⑧ His new book consisting of useful data has been well received.

Do you like the book made up of untrue stories?

（2）在语义上，现在分词和过去分词反映的心理状态不同。现在分词有“令人……”的含义（见例⑨）；过去分词则有“感到……”的意思（见例⑩）：

⑨ The soccer match last night was thrilling.（令人紧张）

⑩ The soccer fans were delighted.（感到高兴）

其他类似的例子有：amazing—amazed；annoying—annoyed；boring—bored；confusing—confused；surprising—surprised；terrifying—terrified。

试比较下面四个例句：

⑪ This is the most confusing system I have ever seen.

⑫ The children will get confused if asked to learn too much at a time.

⑬ David came with some surprising news.

⑭ All were surprised at Sam's sudden resignation.

（3）在作宾语补足语时，如果宾语是有关分词逻辑上的主语，就用现在分词，如：

⑮ The teacher found a student dozing off.

⑯ Don't keep the visitor waiting.

如果宾语和有关分词有“动词+宾语”的关系，那么就要用过去分词，如：

⑰ Where did you get your book printed?

⑱ You should have your office whitewashed.

在⑬里，正在打瞌睡的是宾语“a student”；在⑭里，宾语是“the visitor”；在⑮里，“printed”的宾语是“books”；在⑯里，“whitewashed”的宾语是“his office”。

（4）分词短语相当于副词从句，但现在式表示的是主动的行动，如例⑰；过去式表示被动的行动，如例⑱：

⑰ Entering the room，she found the wall newly painted.

⑱ Written in haste，the essay had some errors.

11.4.3　分词的功能（见表 11-13）

表 11-13　分词的不同功能

功　能	规　则	对应示例
作表语	现在分词通常表示主语所具有的特征，过去分词通常表示主语所处的状态。 用作表语的分词几乎相当于形容词，可有比较级，可被 very 等副词修饰，表示“很”或“非常”的概念。这类分词有 amusing，amused，charming，disappointing，disappointed，interesting，interested，encouraging，encouraged，convincing，convinced，surprising，surprised 等	The explanation sounds very convincing. I'm convinced of his intelligence. He is astonished at my success.
作表语	有些过去分词作表语时，构成的谓语很接近被动结构，但两者有区别：作表语时，过去分词相当于形容词，表示状态，某些分词前可用 very 修饰；作被动语态时，过去分词是全句谓语中的主要动词，某些分词前可用 much 修饰	I was very surprised to see little Jimmy run so fast in the game. The top of the house is covered by snow.
	某些以物作主语的动词，其现在分词也可表示被动意义	The house is building. Preparations are making.

续表

功　能	规　则	对应示例
作表语	过去分词用在一些固定结构中	As is well-known，China is a fast-developing country. It is reported that the weather in the north is very cold. It is said that he has been abroad.
作定语	单个分词作定语时往往放在所修饰名词的前面	Are there any living things on the moon?
	单个分词作定语时也可放在所修饰词的后面	Make sentences with the phrases given. There are a lot of people talking loudly.
	分词可以构成合成词作定语，放在所修饰词的前面	an easy-going professor，hand-made shoes
	分词短语作定语一般放在所修饰词的后面，作后置定语	Do you know the man sitting there?
	分词短语可以作非限制性定语，相当于一个非限制性定语从句，它与句子的其他部分用逗号分开，可译成并列句	The film *Rise the Red Lanterns*，directed by Zhang Yimou and starring Gong Li，tells the story of a rich family.
作宾语补足语	分词在 see，hear，feel，watch，notice，observe，look at，listen to，have，set，catch，keep，leave 等后面，既可用现在分词构成复合宾语，也可用不定式（省略 to）构成复合宾语。 用现在分词时，表示动作正在发生，还未结束；用不定式时，表示动作发生了，即动作的全部过程结束了。 现在分词表示动作的重复性，不定式表示动作的一次性	I felt the bus shaking terribly. Our teacher had us doing maths exercises for two hours. I often heard him singing the French song. I heard him sing the French song.
作主语补足语	含有分词作为宾语补足语的句子变为被动结构时，主动结构中的宾语变成了主语，原作为宾语补足语的分词变为了主语补足语。 用现在分词时，表示动作正在发生，还未结束；用不定式时，表示动作发生了，即动作全部过程结束了。 现在分词表示动作的重复性，不定式表示动作的一次性	He was often heard singing the French songs. The flood is reported controlled. He was once heard to song the French song.
现在分词（短语）作状语	现在分词短语作状语时，通常表示主语正在进行的另一动作，用来对谓语表示的主要动作加以修饰或作为陪衬；表示的动作或状态同时发生或几乎同时发生。 现在分词作状语时可置于句首，也可置于句末，但表示结果时常置于句末，表示条件时可置于句首或句末	Talking and laughing, the children walked one by one into the classroom. Morris lay on the grass，staring at the sky for a long time.
现在分词（短语）作状语	（1）表示时间，相当于 when 引导的时间状语从句。如果两个动作（分词表示的动作和谓语表示的动作）同时发生，多用 when 或 while 加分词这种结构；如分词表示的动作发生在谓语表示的动作之前，分词需用完成式	Hearing the exciting news，the boy jumped for joy. What else are you doing while reading this? Having made full preparations，we are ready for the examination.
	（2）表示原因	Not knowing her address，I might as well telephone her to come over.

续表

功　能	规　则	对应示例
现在分词（短语）作状语	（3）表示结果	The fire lasted nearly a month，leaving nothing valuable.
	（4）表示条件	Working hard at your lessons，you are to succeed.
	（5）表示让步	Working hard as he was，he still couldn't succeed.
	（6）表示方式、伴随	My parents wrote me a letter telling me to change my job.
	（7）表示程度。现在分词在习惯用法中可以作程度状语，译为“很、非常、极度”，如果换为 very，句义无改变，只是语气较弱	Mary is an amazing beautiful girl. It was freezing cold yesterday.
	（8）作评论性状语。有些惯用的现在分词在句子中可以没有逻辑上的主语而独立存在，它们往往作为句子的独立成分来修饰全句，表明说话者的态度、观点等。如 generally speaking，strictly speaking（严格说来），roughly speaking（大致说来），broadly speaking（广义上说），narrowly speaking（狭义上说），judging from/by（由……判断），considering（考虑到），supposing（如果），providing（如果）等	Generally speaking，girls are more interested in literature than boys. Judging from her accent，she must come from Arabian countries. Supposing you can be here at 7 in the morning，I shall go to Nanjing together with you.
过去分词（短语）作状语	过去分词短语作状语，用以说明动作发生的背景或情况。这类状语可放在句首、句末或插在句中间	（When）asked about his family，he make no answer.
	（1）表示时间	Lost in the forest，you should first of all remain where you are，waiting for help to come.
	（2）表示原因	Well brought up by his parents，the child learns fast.
	（3）表示条件	Given more time and money，we would have done the work better.
	（4）表示让步	Born in a rich family，he lived a simple life.
	（5）表示方式或伴随	Followed by his wolf dog，the hunter walked slowly in the forest.

11.4.4　如何简化状语从句

在复合句中，常常根据主句和从句的关系把复合句分为名词性从句、副词性从句（即通常所说的状语从句）及形容词性从句（即通常所说的定语从句）。就状语从句而言，有时为了使句子言简意赅，常常将状语从句进行“简化”。状语从句的“简化”现象在口语中较为普遍，而且在高考题中的复现率也较高，因此，有必要对其进行全面、透彻地了解。

状语从句的“简化”现象常存在于以下五种状语从句中：① 由 if，unless，whether 等引导的让步状语从句；② 由 although，though，even if/though，whether 等引导的让步状语从句；③ 由 when，while，

as，before，after，until/till，once 等引导的时间状语从句；④ 由 as，as if 等引导的方式状语从句；⑤ 由 as，than 等引导的比较状语从句。下面针对状语从句的“简化”现象归纳讲解。

（1）当状语从句的主语是 it，且谓语动词是 be 时，it 和 be 可完全简化掉。例如：

If（it is）possible，he will help you out of the difficulty. 如果可能的话，他会帮你摆脱困境。

You must attend the meeting on time unless（it is）inconvenient to you. 除非情况对你不便，否则你必须出席这个会议。

（2）当状语从句的主语和主句的主语一致时，从句可以将主语和 be 动词简化掉。常用于以下情形：

① 连词+形容词。例如：

As（he was）young，he learned how to ride a bike. 他小时候就学会了怎样骑自行车。

Whenever（she is）free，she often goes shopping. 她有空就去购物。

Work hard when（you are）young，or you’ll regret. 少壮不努力，老大徒伤悲。

② 连词+名词。例如：

While（he was）a young boy，he was always ready to help others. 他在孩提时代就乐于助人。

③ 连词+不定式。例如：

He stood up as if（he were）to say something. 他站起来好像要说点什么。

He wouldn’t solve the problem even if（he were）to take charge. 即使他来负责也解决不了这个问题。

④ 连词+介词短语。例如：

She looked anxious as though（she was）in trouble. 她看上去很焦虑，就好像是遇到了麻烦。

He had mastered the English language before（he was）in the USA. 他到美国之前就精通英语了。

注意：若从句主语和主句主语不一致，从句部分要么用完全形式，要么用独立主格结构来表达。例如：

When the meeting was over，all the people went out of the meeting-place. 当会议结束时，所有的人都走出了会场。（=The meeting over，...）

（3）用分词简化状语从句。

当时间状语从句、原因状语从句和条件状语从句的主语与主句的主语一致时，可将从句变为分词短语状语。原主句的主语成为分词的逻辑主语。改写方法如下：

① 当从句的谓语动词是主动语态的一般时态或进行时态时，变从句为一般式的现在分词。例如：

When she saw the jewels，she jumped with the joy.

Seeing the jewels，she jumped with the joy.

② 从句的谓语部分是“be+形容词或名词”的系表结构时，变从句为“Being+表语”的现在分词短语。例如：

As he was seriously ill，he went home.

Being seriously ill，he went home.

③ 从句的谓语动词是被动语态的一般时态时，变从句为过去分词短语。例如：

As they are led by the Party，the people have greatly improved their living condition.

Led by the Party，the people have greatly improved their condition.

④ 从句的谓语部分是“be+过去分词”的系表结构时，变从句为过去分词短语。例如：

As he was filled with new ideas，the young man invented many kinds of modern machines.

Filled with new ideas，the young man invented many kinds of modern machines.

⑤ 从句的谓语动词是完成时态，变从句为完成式的现在分词短语。例如：

As I have seen him before，I easily recognized him.

Having seen him before，I easily recognized him.

⑥ 从句是 after 引导的，谓语动词是一般时态，也变从句为完成式的现在分词短语。例如：

After she lit a candle，she went out.

Having lit a candle，she went out.

⑦ 从句是否定句时，把从句变成否定分词短语，即 “not+分词短语”。例如：

As he didn’t know what to do，he asked me for help.

Not knowing what to do，he asked me for help.

⑧ 从句跟在主句后时，改写后的分词短语置以句首。例如：

The park looks very beautiful when it is seen from the hill.

Seen from the hill，the park looks very beautiful.

⑨ 从句是名词作主语时，应将这个名词调换到主句的主语位置。例如：

As the factory was regarded as the best one in the city，it was given a medal.

Regarded as the best one in the city，the factory was given a medal.

⑩ 如果由 when 或 while 引导的从句的时态是现在进行时，从句可变成现在分词，置以句首、句尾皆可。例如：

They waved again and again to us，when（while）they were leaving the airport.

When（While）leaving the airport，they waved again and again to us.

⑪ if 引导的条件状语从句，谓语若是一般时态，应用现在分词作条件状语。例如：

If you listen to the expert，you will certainly succeed.

Listening to the expert，you will certainly succeed.

11.4.5 如何用分词简化定语从句

分词和分词短语在句中作定语或状语时，其功用相当于一个定语从句或状语从句，所以有时为了达到言简意赅的表达效果，可使用分词或其短语来简化一个较为复杂的定语从句。

下面将以 do 为例，讲解如何用分词简化定语从句（见表 11-14）。

表 11-14 do 的现在分词形式

	主动形式	被动形式
一般式	doing	being done
完成式	having done	having been done

用分词简化定语从句的基本步骤为：先去掉关系代词或关系副词，再去掉定语从句的主语，最后将定语从句的谓语动词转化为分词的具体形式。

从句转化为分词作定语或状语的关系见表 11-15。

表 11-15 从句转化为分词作定语或状语的关系

	主动语态	被动语态
一般式	现在分词的一般式	过去分词
进行式	现在分词的一般式	现在分词进行式的被动形式
完成式	现在分词的完成式	过去分词或现在分词完成式的被动形式

（1）若定语从句的谓语动词是一般现在（过去）时和现在（过去）进行时，可简化为现在分词的一

般式；若定语从句的谓语动词是现在（过去）进行时的被动语态，则可简化为现在分词的一般式的被动形式。如：

Who is the comrade（that is）standing by the door?

We live in a house facing（which faces）the south.

The building（which is）being built will be a hospital.

（2）若定语从句的谓语动词是一般现在（过去）时的被动语态以及完成时的被动语态，则可简化为过去分词。如：

This is the factory（which was）built in 1980.

They're problems（which have been）left over by history.

11.4.6　独立主格结构

独立主格结构是由名词或代词加上分词或分词短语构成的一种独立结构，用于修饰整个句子，而不是一个词或词组。独立主格结构中的名词或代词与其后的分词或分词短语构成逻辑上的主谓关系。这种结构与主句不发生句法上的联系，独立主格结构的位置相当灵活，可置于主句前、主句末或主句中，常有逗号将其与主句分开。需特别注意的是，独立主格结构与主句之间不能使用任何连接词。独立主格结构的特点见表 11-16。

表 11-16　独立主格结构的特点

特　点	对应例句
其逻辑主语与主句主语是不一致、独立存在的	Lots of homework to do，I have to stay home all day.
独立主格结构一般置于句首，也可置于句末或句中，有逗号将其与主句分开	The bike broken，he had to take a taxi. They lived in a room on the third floor，its window facing the south.
独立主格结构中的 being 和 having been 常省略	All the doors（being）open，the air in the room is fresher.
多数独立主格结构可以用“with+宾语+宾语补足语”结构替代	The last bus having gone，we had to walk home. With the last bus having gone，we had to walk home.
独立主格结构多用于书面语，使语言简洁明了，富有节奏感。在口语或非正式文体中，一般用从句或两个句子代替	As the weather was fine，we walked for a walk.（口语） The weather（being）fine we walked for a walk.（书面语） 今天天气很好，我们散步去了。 Since it is raining hard，the sports meeting will be put off. It raining hard the sports meeting will be put off.（书面语） 雨下得很大，运动会将会被推迟。

（1）当独立主格结构中的 being done 表示“正在被做”时，being 不可省略。如：

Supper being prepared，she fell asleep. 她准备晚饭时睡着了。

（2）当独立主格结构的逻辑主语是 it，there 时，being 常不可省略。如：

It being fine，we can enjoy ourselves.

There being no time left，we had to speed up. 剩下的时间不多了，我们只好加快了速度。

非谓语动词的独立主格结构见表 11-17。

表 11-17　非谓语动词的独立主格结构

类　别		对应例句
不定式构成的独立主格结构	表示还未发生的行为、状态，在句中作原因状语或条件状语	A lot of work to do，Xiao Ming decided to stay up tonight.
现在分词构成的独立主格结构	现在分词在句中作状语时，通常情况下，其逻辑主语是主句的主语。如果现在分词的逻辑主语与主句的主语不一致，就应该用现在分词的独立主格结构，在句中常作时间状语、原因状语、条件状语	The audience having seated themselves，the concert began. The guide leading the way，we had no trouble betting out of the forest. Such being the case，you have no grounds for dismissing him. 如果情况确实如此的话，你没有理由解雇他。
过去分词构成的独立主格结构	过去分词构成的独立主格结构由“逻辑主语+过去分词”构成，在句中作时间状语、原因状语、伴随状语、条件状语等	The task completed，we had a global traveling.（表示时间）完成任务后，我们进行了一次环球旅游。 Many funny pictures included in this book，a great many children love reading it.（表示原因）这本书包括很多滑稽图片，所以很多孩子喜欢阅读。 Tom was listening attentively to the lecture，all his attention fixed upon it.（表示方式或伴随）汤姆专心致志地听着讲座，所以注意力全在上面了。 The book written in simple English，it will be more popular.（表示条件）如果这本书用简单英语写的话，将会更流行。

其他形式的独立主格结构见表 11-18。

表 11-18　其他形式的独立主格结构

独立主格结构类型		对应例句
逻辑主语+名词，主要是用以补充说明某一情况或表示某一方式		The children received many gifts，many of them books. 孩子们收到了很多礼物，其中很多是书籍。 Those people in trouble got a lot of help，much of it money.
逻辑主语+形容词		This section of road slippery，every driver can never be too careful. 这个路段很滑，所以司机都应小心。
逻辑主语+副词		Nobody in，we had to wait. 没人在家，我们只好等着。
逻辑主语+介词短语		The boy went off，a teddy bear in his hand. 小男孩手里拿着一只玩具熊走了。
With/without+宾语+宾语补足语	（1）with/without+名词/代词+形容词	Hearing the lion roaring I felt frightened，with my face pale. 听到狮子怒吼，我吓得脸色苍白。
	（2）with/without+名词/代词+副词	With the examinations over，I had a long time to rest. 考试结束了，我有很长一段时间可以休息。
With/without+宾语+宾语补足语	（3）with/without+名词/代词+介词短语	The river with grass and flowers on both sides runs through our campus. 这条两岸长满鲜花和绿草的小河从我们校园穿过。
	（4）with/without+名词/代词+不定式	With so much work to do，I can't spare a minute. 这么多工作要做，我一分钟也省不出来。
	（5）with/without+名词/代词+现在分词	With so many people communicating in English every day，it will become more and more important to have a good knowledge of English. 有这么多的人每天用英语交流，精通英语将会变得越来越重要。
	（6）with/without+名词/代词+过去分词	With all the money spent，Jack started looking for work. 钱都用完了，杰克才开始找活干。

11.4.7 垂悬分词

分词作状语时，其逻辑主语与句子中的主语一致。但有时分词的主语与其所在句子中的主语并不一致，拥有这种现象的分词，叫作垂悬分词。例如：

Looking out of the window of our hotel room，there are lots of mountains. 这句话听起来好像是那些山从窗户往外看。

Admired by everybody，dozens of letters reached the veteran soldier. 这句话听起来好像是信件被赞扬。

Sitting under an apple tree one night，an idea came to Newton. 这句话听上去好像是某种思想坐在树下。

经常这样用的分词（分词词组）有：frankly（broadly，generally，properly，strictly…）speaking，judging from（by）…，talking about…，speaking of…，looking at…，taking…into consideration，put frankly，taken…等。例如：

（1）有些分词（短语）可用来表示说话人的态度、看问题的角度，或者对所叙述的情况进行解释，它们便成了句子的独立成分，其逻辑主语也就不再是句子的主语。

Strictly speaking，nobody is allowed in here.

严格地讲，谁也不允许在这儿。（speaking 的逻辑主语并不是 nobody）

Judging from his accent，he must be from the South.

从他的口音判断，他一定是南方人。（这句中不是 he 在"判断"）

Taken as a whole，there is nothing with the book. 总的来说，这本书没有问题。

Taking all things into consideration，his work is a successful one.

全面考虑起来，他的工作还是很成功的。

（2）这样使用的有些分词，在句子中逐渐起到连词或介词的作用，便把它们视为连词或介词。例如：

Granting that he had the best intention，his conduct might work great mischief. 就算他出于好意，他的行为也会引起极大的不快。

There were ten people in the room，including me. 屋子里有十个人，包括我在内。

Provided that my expenses are paid，I will go. 要是我的费用有人代付，我就去。

（3）某些句子中作状语的分词的逻辑主语虽然不是句子的主语，但可能是句中的另外某一成分，对这样的句子也不再认为是悬垂分词。例如：

Seeing her health sinking rapidly，alarm clutched the father's heart. 她父亲看到她的健康迅速恶化，很是惊慌。（分词 seeing 的逻辑主语当然不是 alarm，但它包含在宾语 heart 的定语 father's 之中。）

His summer holidays were spent in the countryside，helping his father with farm work. 他在乡下过暑假，帮助父亲干农活。（分词 helping 的逻辑主语包含在主语 holidays 的定语 his 之中）

以上句子之所以能被接受，是因为它们能清楚表达意思，不会引起误解，如第一句中 alarm 是抽象名词，不会误解为是 seeing 的逻辑主语；第二句中主语 holidays 是无生命的名词，不可能误解为是 helping 的逻辑主语。

（4）如果句子谓语是被动语态，分词的逻辑主语可以包含在 by 后面的动作执行者之中（有时这个执行者并未明确表示出来）。这样的句子也可以被接受，但并不是悬垂分词。例如：

Ideas can be expressed accurately and effectively，using simple sentences.

用简单的句子可以准确有力地表达思想。

Knowing as much as you do，the situation is easily explained. 像你这样了解情况，很容易解释这一形势。

以上两句中的分词 using 和 knowing 的逻辑主语当然不是它们句子的主语 ideas 和 situation，而是没有明确表达出来的 express 和 explain 两个动作的执行者。

【语法演练】

一、考查过去分词作状语。

过去分词作状语可表示原因、时间、条件、伴随等。有时过去分词前也可加上连词 when，while，if，unless，though 等。过去分词作状语，其逻辑主语是句子中的主语，表示被动或完成意义。例如：

1. ________ in 1636，Harvard is one of the most famous universities in the United States.

A. Being founded　B. It was founded　C. Founded　D. Founding

2. ________ time，he'll make a first-class tennis player.

A. Having given　B. To give　C. Giving　D. Given

3. Unless ________ to speak，you should remain silent at the conference.

A. invited　B. inviting　C. being invited　D. having invited

4. Generally speaking，_____ according to the directions，the drug has no side effect.

A. when taking　B. when taken　C. when to take　D. when to be taken

二、考查过去分词作定语。

过去分词作定语，其逻辑主语是所修饰的名词或代词，表示一个被动或完成的动作，相当于一个被动的定语从句。例如：

5. Prices of daily goods ________ through a computer can be lower than store prices.

A. are bought　B. bought　C. been bought　D. buying

6. The Olympic Games，________ in 776 B.C.，did not include women players until 1912.

A. first playing　B. to be first played　C. first played　D. to be first playing

三、考查过去分词作补足语。

过去分词作宾语补足语时，逻辑主语是其前面的宾语，表示一个被动或完成的动作。例如：

7. The murderer was brought in，with his hands ________ behind his back.

A. being tied　B. having tied　C. to be tied　D. tied

四、考查过去分词作表语。

过去分词作表语，其主语通常是人，表示主语所处的状态或表示主语对某事的感觉，意思是"(某人)……的"；而现在分词作表语时，其主语通常是物，表示主语的特征，意思是"令人……的"。常用作表语的过去分词有：interested，moved，discouraged，amused，astonished，surprised，frightened，excited，moved，inspired，tired，worried，hurt，crowded，gone，broken，dressed，wounded，pleased 等。例如：

8. As we joined the big crowd，I got ________ from my friends.

A. separated　B. spared　C. lost　D. missed

另外，有些以过去分词形式出现的词，其词性和意思都已发生了变化，须引起同学们的注意。例如：

9. ________ the general state of his health，it may take him a while to recover from the operation.

A. Given　B. To give　C. Giving　D. Having given

"Given" 在此处是介词，意思是"在……的情况下；考虑到"。

【参考答案】

1—5　CDCBB　　6—9　CDAA

【强化训练】

1. Because of my poor English I'm afraid I can't make myself________.

A. understand　B. to understand　C. understanding　D. understood

2. The workers want us________ together with them.

A. work　B. working　C. to work　D. worked

3. What's the language________in Germany?

A. speaking　B. spoken　C. be spoken　D. to speak

4. ________some officials，Napoleon inspected his army.

A. Followed　B. Followed by

C. Being followed　D. Having been followed by

5. Most of the people________ to the party were famous scientists.

A. invited　B. to invite　C. being invited　D. inviting

6. He was disappointed to find his suggestions________.

A. been turned down　B. turned down　C. to be turned down　D. to turn down

7. Do you know the boy________ under the big tree?

A. lay　B. lain　C. laying　D. lying

8. —Good morning. Can I help you? —I'd like to have this package________，madam.

A. be weighed　B. to be weighed　C. to weigh　D. weighed

9. There was a terrible noise________ the sudden burst of light.

A. followed　B. following　C. to be followed　D. being followed

10. ________more attention，the trees could have grown better.

A. Given　B. To give　C. Giving　D. Having given

11. The secretary worked late into the night，________a long speech for the president.

A. to prepare　B. preparing　C. prepared　D. was preparing

12. It was so cold that they kept the fire ________all night.

A. to burn　B. burn　C. burning　D. burned

13. Generally speaking，________ according to the directions，the drug has no side effect.

A. when taking　B. when taken　C. when to take

14. Suddenly，a tall man driving a golden carriage _____the girl and took her away_____ into the woods.

A. seizing；disappeared　B. seized；disappeared

C. seizing；disappearing　D. seized；disappearing

15. Having a trip abroad is certainly good for the old couple，but it remains____ whether they will enjoy it.

A. to see　B. to be seen　C. seeing　D. seen

16. The pilot asked all the passengers on board to remain________ as the plane was making a landing.

A. seat　B. seating　C. seated　D. to be seating

17. After his journey from abroad，Richard Jones returned home，________.

A. exhausting　B. exhausted　C. being exhausted　D. having exhausted

18. The________ boy was last seen________ near the East Lake.

A. missing；playing　B. missing；play

C. missed；played　D. missed；to play

19. The patient was warned________ oily food after the operation.

A. to eat not　B. eating not　C. not to eat　D. not eating

20. While building a tunnel through the mountain，________.

A. an underground lake was discovered　B. there was an underground lake discovered

C. a lake was discovered underground　D. the workers discovered an underground lake

【参考答案】

1—5　DCBBA　6—10　BDDBA　11—15　BCBDB　16—20　CBACD

【动词-ing 形式练习题】

1. Taking pictures ___ very interesting.
   A. is B. are C. to be D. be
2. ______ the bad news made him cry.
   A. Hear B. Heard C. Hearing D. Is hearing
3. _____ a desert had always been a risk adventure.
   A. being crossed B. Having crossed C. Crossing D. To have crossed
4. Before he came，I’d finished _______ the whole book.
   A. to read B. to have read C. reading D. read
5. I always enjoy ____ to popular music at night.
   A. to listen B. listening C. that I can listen D. if I can listen
6. We are considering ________ a trip around the island.
   A. take B. to take C. to be taking D. taking
7. I hope you don’t mind ____ at your newspaper.
   A. I look B. my looking C. I looking D. my to look
8. When a man’s heart stops ______， he dies.
   A. to beat B. beating C. beat D. beaten
9. I can’t help _______ he is still alive.
   A. thinking B. think C. to think D. thought of
10. So far as I am concerned，I prefer reading ________.
    A. than meat B. for joy C. instead of sleeping D. to drinking
11. It goes without _______ that knowledge is important.
    A. talking B. telling C. saying D. mentioning
12. we are looking forward ______ our friends next week.
    A. to see B. to seeing C. to be seeing D. shall see
13. He spent a lot of money _____ books and magazines.
    A. buy B. buying C. to buy D. bought
14. The silkworm is an insect worth _____.
    A. to know B. knowing C. to be known D. being known
15. She went out without ______ good-bye to us.
    A. say B. to say C. saying D. being said
16. The curious student kept on _______ questions.
    A. asks B. asking C. to ask D. asked
17. He is such a strange person；there’s _____ what he’ll do next.
    A. no knowing B. not to know C. not known D. being unknown
18. When she heard the bad news，she burst______.
    A. into crying B. out to tears C. crying D. out crying
19. You must never cross the street without ______ the light to turn green.
    A. waiting B. to wait C. waiting for D. to wait for
20. Scientists succeed _____ protein out of old newspapers.
    A. to make B. at making C. making D. in making
21. I became ______ after watching too much television.
    A. bored B. boring C. bore D. bores

22. I felt ____ by his interest in my new invention.
  A. encourage B. to encourage C. was encouraged D. encouraged
23. He sat there ______ a novel.
  A. read B. reading C. reads D. had read
24. Don't wake up the______ child.
  A. sleep B. slept C. sleeping D. sleepy
25. A proverb goes："A ___ stone gathers no moss".
  A. roll B. rolling C. rolled D. rolls
26. The heavy rain kept us _____ for two hours.
  A. wait B. waited C. waiting D. to wait
27. I found a dog ______ over by a car on the road.
  A. to run B. run C. ran D. running
28. We found the baby ____ on the floor.
  A. slept B. sleep C. asleep D. sleeping
29. Jack saw a woman ______ near the dog，so he walked up to her.
  A. stood B. stands C. to stand D. standing
30. They got their car ____ at the garage.
  A. be washed B. washed
  C. being washed D. to have been washed
31. _____ with his report，I told him to write it all over again.
  A. Dissatisfactory B. Not being satisfied
  C. Having not satisfied D. Dissatisfying
32. _____ our shoes in our hands，we crossed the stream.
  A. To carry B. Carrying C. Carried D. Carry
33. _____ my homework，I went home.
  A. Having finished B. Finished C. Being finished D. Finish
34. ____ the door unlocked，I went in.
  A. Finding B. Found C. Had found D. Have found
35. ______ a careless fellow，he forgot all about it.
  A. Is B. Be C. Being D. Was
36. _____ carefully，this letter is very beautiful.
  A. Type B. Typing C. Typed D. To typed
37. Animals can do many amazing things when properly___.
  A. train B. training C. trained D. to train
38. You must be careful when ___ on the highway.
  A. you driving B. are driving C. driving D. you were driving
39. If _____，I will go to the party tonight.
  A. invite B. inviting C. to invite D. invited
40. Thousands of products ____ from coal are now in daily use.
  A. made B. make C. making D. to make

【参考答案】

1—5 ACCCB 6—10 DBBAD 11—15 CBBBC 16—20 BADCD
21—25 ADBCB 26—30 CBCDB 31—35 BBAAC 36—40 CCCDA

【习题精选】

1. The boy went to the ball，_____like a pretty girl.

A. dressing　B. wearing　C. wore　D. dressed

2. _____in a white uniform，he looks more like a cook than a doctor.

A. Dressed　B. To dress　C. Dressing　D. Having dressed

3. The film was made______on a true old story.

A. base　B. to be based　C. based　D. basing

4. When______，the museum will be open to the public next year.

A. completed　B. completing　C. being completed　D. to be completed

5. ______ to his research，he almost forgot everything.

A. Devoting　B. Devoted　C. To devote　D. Devote

6. ______his attention on his novel，he didn't notice the teacher coming.

A. Fixed　B. Fixing　C. Fix　D. To fix

7. _____on his novel，he didn't notice the teacher coming.

A. Fixed　B. Fixing　C. Fix　D. To fix

8. The old engineer talked of the difficulty they______the tower.

A. built　B. had building　C. had built　D. build

9. _______ such heavy pollution already，it may now be too late to clean up the river.

A. Having suffered　B. Suffering　C. To suffer　D. Suffered

10. _______ the past，our life is becoming much better.

A. Comparing with　B. Be compared with　C. To compare with　D. Compared with

11. The ______ boy was last seen ______ near the gate of the park.

A. missed; playing　B. missing; play

C. losing; to be playing　D. lost; playing

12. Tom was very unhappy for______to the party.

A. having not been invited　B. not having invited

C. having not invited　D. not having been invited

13. When I got back home I saw a message pinned to the door______ "Sorry to miss you；will call later."

A. read　B. reads　C. reading　D. to read

14. We went to see him yesterday evening，_______him away.

A. finding　B. find　C. only to find　D. found

15. _______of plastics，the machines are easy to carry.

A. To make　B. Having made　C. Being made　D. Made

【参考答案】

1—5　DACAB　6—10　BABAD　11—15　DDCCD

【真题再现】

1.（10 福建 34）In April，thousands of holidaymakers remained_______abroad due to the volcanic ash cloud.

A. sticking　B. stuck　C. to be stuck　D. to have stuck

2.（10 上海 33）Lucy has a great sense of humor and always keeps her colleagues______with her stories.

A. amused　B. amusing　C. to amuse　D. to be amused

3.（10 湖南 30）So far nobody has claimed the money______in the library.

A. discovered　B. to be discovered　C. discovering　D. having discovered

4.（10 四川 4）A great number of students__________said they were forced to practise the piano.

A. to question　B. to be questioned　C. questioned　D. questioning

5.（10 全国 I 27）Mrs.White showed her students some old maps ______ from the library.

A. to borrow　B. to be borrowed　C. borrowed　D. borrowing

6.（10 陕西 16）_____ from the top of the tower，the south foot of the mountain is a sea of trees.

A. Seen　B. Seeing　C. Having seen　D. To see

7.（10 全国 II 11）Though_________to see us，the professor gave us a warm welcome.

A. surprising　B. as surprised　C. surprised　D being surprised

8.（10 湖北 72）____（油漆成）red，the building stands out among the rest and looks very attractive.（paint）

9.（10 辽宁 35）Alexander tried to get his work _______in the medical circles.

A. to recognize　B. recognizing　C. recognize　D. recognized

10.（10 北京 25）I'm calling to enquire about the position______in yesterday's China Daily.

A. advertised　B. to be advertised　C. advertise　D. having advertised

11.（09 北京 24）For breakfast he only drinks juice from fresh fruit _____ on his own farm.

A. grown　B. being grown　C. to be grown　D. to grow

12.（09 北京 27）The way the guests _____ in the hotel influenced their evaluation of the service

A. treated　B. were treated　C. would treat　D. would be treated

13.（09 福建 32）___not to miss the flight at 15：20，the manager set out for the airport in a hurry.

A. Reminding　B. Reminded　C. To remind　D. Having reminded

14.（09 江西 22）_________ the right kind of training ，these teenage soccer players may one day grew the international stars.

A. Giving　B. Having given　C. To give　D. Given

15.（09 海南 35）Now that we've discussed out problem，are people happy with the decisions_______?

A. taking　B. take　C. taken　D. to take

16.（09 上海 33）With the government's aid，those _____ by the earthquake have moved to the new settlements.

A. affect　B. affecting　C. affected　D. were affected

17.（09 四川 4）Ladies and gentlemen，please remain ______ until the plane has come to a complete stop.

A. seated　B. seating　C. to seat　D. seat

18.（09 天津 9）_____ by the advances in technology，many farmers have set up wind farms on their land.

A. Being encouraged　B. Encouraging

C. Encouraged　D. Having encouraged

19.（09 浙江 3）_______and short of breath，Andy and Ruby were the first to reach the top of Mount Tai.

A. Tire　B. Tired　C. Tiring　D. Being tired

20.（09 重庆 25）Michael's new house is like a huge palace，______with his old one.

A. comparing　B. compares　C. to compare　D. compared

21.（08 江西 28）We finished the run in less than half the time_______.

A. allowing　B. to allow　C. allowed　D. allows

22.（08 湖南 26）The trees_______in the storm have been moved off the road.

A. being blown down　B. blown down

C. blowing down　D. to blow down

23.（08 浙江 13）It is one of the funniest things______on the Internet so far this year.

A. finding　　B. being found　　C. to find　　D. found

24.（08 福建 33）—Can those______at the back of the classroom hear me?

—No problem.

A.seat　　B. sit　　C. seated　　D. sat

25.（08 辽宁 31）Please remain_______； the winner of the prize will be announced soon.

A. seating　　B. seated　　C. to seat　　D. to be seated

26.（07 湖南 34）"Things________never come again!" I couldn't help talking to myself.

A. lost　　B. losing　　C. to lose　　D. have lost

27.（07 上海 36）The Town Hall______in the 1880's was the most distinguished building at that time.

A. to be completed　　B. having been completed

C. completed　　D. being completed

28.（07 安徽 29）John received an invitation to dinner，and with his work____，he gladly accepted it.

A. finished　　B. finishing　　C. having finished　　D. was finished

29.（07 四川 35）The flowers his friend gave him will die unless_____every day.

A. watered　　B. watering　　C. water　　D. to water

30.（07 重庆 25）The children went home from the grammar school，their lessons________for the day.

A. finishing　　B. finished　　C. had finished　　D. were finished

31.（07 浙江 20）_____by a greater demand for vegetables，farmers have built more green houses.

A. Driven　　B. Being driven　　C. To drive　　D. Having driven

32.（07 福建 24）Jenny hopes that Mr. Smith will suggest a good way to have her written English____in a short period.

A. improved　　B. improving　　C. to improve　　D. improve

33.（06 北京 28）There have been several new events____to the program for the 2008 Beijing Olympic Games.

A. add　　B. to add　　C. adding　　D. added

34.（06 天津 7）A good story does not necessarily have to have a happy ending，but the reader must not be left________.

A. unsatisfied　　B. unsatisfying　　C. to be unsatisfying　　D. being unsatisfied

35.（06 福建 33）________for the breakdown of the school computer network，Alice was in low spirits.

A. Blaming　　B. Blamed　　C. To blame　　D. To be blamed

36.（06 山东 29）Five people won the "China's Green Figure" award，a title________to ordinary people for their contributions to environmental protection.

A. being given　　B. is given　　C. given　　D. was given

37.（06 四川 33）________with so much trouble，we failed to complete the task on time.

A. Faced　　B. Face　　C. Facing　　D. To face

38.（2011 上海卷）32. The rare fish，_____ from the cooking pot，has been returned to the sea.

A. saved　　B. saving　　C. to be saved　　D. having saved

39.（2011 浙江卷）Even the best writers sometimes find themselves ______ for words.

A. lose　　B. lost　　C. to lose　　D. having lost

40.（2011 福建卷）23. Tsinghua University，_____in 1911，is home to a great number of outstanding figures.

A. found　　B. founding　　C. founded　　D. to be founded

41.（2011 四川卷）16. _______ an important role in a new movie，Andy has a chance to become famous.

A. Offer　　B. Offering　　C. Offered　　D. To offer

42.（2011 天津卷）12. ____ into English，the sentence was found to have an entirely different word order.

A. Translating　　B. Translated　　C. To translate　　D. Having translated

43.（2011 陕西卷）14. Claire had luggage ________ an hour before her plane left.

A. check　　B. checking　　C. to check　　D. checked

44.（2011 重庆卷）33. Michael put up a picture of Yao Ming beside the bed to keep himself ________ of his own dreams.

A. reminding　　B. to remind　　C. reminded　　D. remind

45.（2011 湖南卷）23.The players______from the whole country are expected to bring us honor in this summer game.

A. selecting　　B. to select　　C. selected　　D. having selected

【参考答案】

1—10　BAACCAC　painted　DA　　11—20　AABDCCACBD

21—30　CBDCBACAAB　　31—37　AADABCA　　38—45　ABCCBDCC

12　句子的种类

12.1　句子的种类

按照句子的用途分，英语句子可分为陈述句、疑问句、祈使句和感叹句；按结构分，可分为简单句、并列句和复合句。（见表 12-1）。

表 12-1　句子的种类

分　类	句子种类		例　句
按使用目的	陈述句	肯定句	He is six years old.
		否定句	She didn't hear of you before.
	疑问句	一般	Do they like skating?
		特殊	How old is he?
		选择	Is he six or seven years old?
		反意	Mary can swim，can't she?
	祈使句		Be careful，boys. Don't talk in class.
	感叹句		How clever the boy is!/What a clever boy he is!
按结构	简单句		He often reads English in the morning. Tom and Mike are American boys.
	并列句（由并列连词 and，but，or 等或分号把两个或两个以上的简单句连在一起）		You help him and he helps you. The food was good，but he had little appetite. The future is bright；the road is tortuous（曲折的）.
	复合句（含有一个或以上从句）		The foreign visitors took a lot of pictures when they were at the Great Wall.

12.2　陈述句的构成形式

1. 陈述句概述

陈述句是用来陈述一个事实或表达说话人看法（包括肯定和否定）的句子。通常用降调，句末用句号。如：

Tom has a new car.

The flower isn't beautiful.

2. 陈述句否定式的构成

（1）如果肯定陈述句的谓语部分含有助动词、情态动词或连系动词 be，则只需在这些动词后加 not 即可构成否定式。

（2）如果陈述句的谓语动词是实义动词，而其中又没有情态动词或助动词时，则需根据人称和时态

在该实义动词前加 don’t，doesn’t 或 didn’t。同时把该实义动词变为原形。

（3）如果句子是 there be 结构或谓语动词是 have（有），除了在 be 和 have 之后加 not 之外，句中如果有 some 要变为 any。

（4）除 not 以外，否定词 no，never，nothing，nobody，few 等也可构成否定句。

12.3　祈使句的构成形式及基本用法

祈使句是用来表示命令、请求、建议、号召等的句子，谓语动词无时态与数的词形变化，与动词原形同形，句末用感叹号或句号。朗读时一般用降调，为使祈使句听起来比较婉转，可用低声调。

祈使句有两种类型：含有第二人称和带有第一、三人称主语的祈使句。每种类型又有肯定形式和否定形式。否定形式用 don’t，否定时只能用其缩略式（见表 12-2 和表 12-3）。

表 12-2　祈使句的类型

类型		例句
含有第二人称的祈使句		Be sure to come on time. 请务必按时来。 Don’t ever do that again. 请不要做那事了。
带有第一、三人称主语的祈使句（通常以 let 为引导词）		Let’s have a rest. 咱们休息一会儿。 Let us try again. 让我们再试试。 Don’t let’s open the window. 咱们别开窗户了。（非正式）
其他形式的祈使句	以 no 开始的禁止性祈使句	No entry. 禁止入内。 No parking. 禁止停车。 No smoking. 禁止抽烟。
	固定短语	Out with it. 说出来吧。 Fast. 快点。 Beg pardon. 请原谅。

表 12-3　祈使句的句式

祈使句句式	肯定形式	否定形式
P 型：Please+动词原型+其他	Please sit down.	Please don’t throw it like that.
V 型：动词原型+其他	Put away your things.	Don’t open the window.
L 型：Let+宾语+动词原型+其他	Let me help you.	Don’t let him go there. /Let him not go there.
B 型：Be+表语	Be careful!	Don’t be late for class.
N 型：NO+名词/动名词（全部大写）		NO PHOTOS! NO SMOKING!

【特别提醒】

（1）祈使句的反义疑问句，通常用 will you。祈使句为 let’s 句型时，反义疑问句为 shall we。如：

Let us have a rest，will you?

Let’s go to see the pandas，shall we?

（2）应答祈使句时要用将来时。

—Please remember to bring your homework here tomorrow.
—Yes，I will.

—Don’t look out of the window.
—Sorry，I won’t.

（3）“祈使句+and/or+结果状语”结构，可以转换成由 if 引导的条件从句。如：

Hurry up，or you will be late for school.

=If you hurry up，you won’t be late for school.

=If you don’t hurry up，you will be late for school.

注意：

（1）第二人称主语通常不表示出来，有时为了强调指明向谁提出要求或发出命令，主语也可表示出来，这时主语需重读。

（2）第一人称祈使句可在 let 前面加 do，表示强调，第三人称祈使句不可这样使用。如：

Do let me have another try. 请务必让我再试试。

注意以下两句的区别：

Don’t let the children make much noise. 不要让孩子发出大的噪声。

Let the children not make much noise. 让孩子不要发出大的噪声。

（3）为了使祈使句听起来比较客气、婉转，除了用低声调外，还可用下列方法：

① 加 please。如：

Please give me a hand. 请帮一下忙。

Lend me your dictionary，please. 请把字典借给我使一下。

② 加 will you。如：

Read the text，will you? 读一下课文好吗?

Come in and sit down，will you? 进来坐下，好吗?

③ please 和 will you 同时运用。如：

Be careful，please，will you? 小心些，行吗?

④ 用 would you 则更加客气。如：

Shut the window，would you? 关上窗户，行吗?

⑤ 加 won’t you，can’t you，why don’t you。如：

Turn down the radio，won’t you? 关闭收音机，好吗?

Take it away，can’t you? 拿走，不行吗?

Be patient，why don’t you? 耐心点，难道不行吗?

（4）祈使句主语是 you 时，you 常省略，但如果要特别强调对方或表达某种强烈的情绪时可以有主语或称呼语。如：

Be quiet.

You be quiet!

（5）“Do+祈使句”表示一种强烈的感情或请求，do 起强调作用。如：

Do come back at once!

Do be careful.

（6）please 用在祈使句中可以表示一种客气的语气，但 please 用在句末时，必须用逗号与其余部分分开。如：

Open the window，please.

（7）let 引导祈使句时，后面需跟上人称代词或称呼语，人称代词一般只用第一、第三人称。如：

Let Jack wait a minute.

Let’s go to school.

（8）在祈使句中，let’s 和 let us 是有区别的。let’s 包括说话者，而 let us 不包括说话者在内。这点从反义疑问句可明显看出。如：

Let’s go skating，shall we?

Let us try again，will you?

（9）否定祈使句通常以 Don’t 或 Never 开头。其结构通常是：“Don’t（Never）+动词原形+其他成分”。例如：

Don’t do that again!

Never leave today’s work for tomorrow!

12.4　疑问句的构成形式及基本用法

1. 一般疑问句

（1）一般疑问句的肯定形式。

一般疑问句一般是指以助动词、情态动词、be 动词开始，通常要求以 yes 或 no 来回答的疑问句，读一般疑问句时通常用升调。例如：

Can you swim?

Is he doing his homework?

Do you know Mr. Smith?

Does he take exercise everyday?

（2）一般疑问句的否定结构。

在一般疑问句的否定结构中，可以把副词 not 放在一般疑问句的主语之后，也可以把 not 放在助动词之后，但要用简略形式“-n’t”。例如：

Are you not a football fan?

Aren’t you a football fan?

Will she not like it?

Won’t she like it?

2. 特殊疑问句

就句中某一部分进行提问的疑问句叫作特殊疑问句。特殊疑问句句末用问号，一般读降调。

（1）特殊疑问句的基本结构。

① 特殊疑问词+助动词+主语+实义动词+其他？例如：

What can I do for you today?

② 特殊疑问词+谓语动词+主语+其他？例如：

What is your name，please?

③ 特殊疑问词（主语）+助动词+实义动词+其他？例如：

Who will go to Guangzhong with the manager by plane tomorrow?

What has been offered to the poor homeless children for the coming winter?

④ 特殊疑问词（主语）+谓语动词（组合）+其他？例如：

Who is the man under the big tree?

What must be finished first before we go to picnic two days later?

特殊疑问句由“疑问代词或疑问副词+一般疑问句”构成，句子一般用倒装语序，但如果主语是疑问代词或由疑问代词修饰时，用陈述句的语序。特殊疑问句不能用 yes 或 no 回答，读时用降调。回答时可用一个词或短语，也可用一个完整的句子。例如：

—Where is Sally from，Mike? —She is from America.

—Who broke the window? —Jack.

—What is your brother doing? —Watering the flowers.

注意：① 注意选准特殊疑问词；② 注意疑问句词序；③ 注意句子的时态（由助动词显示）；④ 助动词的不同类别。be 类：am，is，are，was，were；will 类：will，would，shall，should；have 类：have，has，had；do 类：do，does，did；情态动词类：can，could，may，might，must，need，ought to，dare。

（2）常用的特殊疑问句，见表 12-4。

表 12-4　常用的特殊疑问句

询问内容	疑问词或句型	例　句	回　答
职业，身份	what	What is your father?	He is a doctor.
姓名或关系	who	Who is that boy?	He is Jack. He is my brother.
相貌特征	what…like?	What is she like? What does she look like?	She is beautiful.
目的	what…for?	What did they come here for?	To attend a meeting.
原因	why	Why did they come here?	Because they have a meeting to attend.
天气	how what…like?	How is the weather today? What is the weather like today?	It's fine.
颜色	what color…?	What color is her skirt?	It's red.
服装尺寸	what size	What size does he wear?	He wears 40.
几点钟	what time	What time is it?	It's 7:30.
星期几	what day	What day is today?	It's Tuesday.
几号，日期	what is the date…?	What is the date today?	It's May 2.
年龄（多大）	how old	How old is he?	He is 38.
持续多长时间（多久）	how long	How long have you been here?	For five months.
长度（多长）	how long	How long is the bridge?	It's 500 metres.
距离（多远）	how far	How far is it from here to the zoo?	It's 6 kilometres.
频度（多经常）	how often	How often do you come back?	Once a week.
时间经过（多快）	how soon	How soon will she arrive?	In an week.
数量（多少）	how many（可数名词） how much（不可数名词）	How many jackets do you have? How much coffee do you want?	Three. Two cups.
价格	how much	How much is it? How much does it cost?	Five dollars.
高度（多高）	how tall（人，树） how high（山，建筑物）	How tall is she? How high is the tower?	She's 1.73 metres. It's 450.

（3）殊疑问句的用法：对画线部分提问，除了要注意选择正确的疑问词外，还要注意语序的运用。

① 对句子的主语提问，其语序是：疑问词+谓语+其他成分？（整个句子是陈述句语序）

She　is　their　teacher.　　　Who　is　their　teacher?

主语　谓语　　　　　　　　　主语　谓语

② 对句子主语的定语部分提问，其语序是：疑问词+主语（即定语所修饰的名词）+谓语+其他成分？

（整个句子是陈述句语序）

My　　book　　is　over there.　　Whose　　book　is　over there？

主语的定语　主语　　谓语　　　　　　　　疑问词　　主语　谓语

以上两点方法都是：用正确的疑问词代替画线部分，再把句号改为问号，其余部分一般不做改变。

③ 对表语或宾语的定语部分提问，其语序是：疑问词+表语或宾语（画线部分所修饰的名词）+一般疑问句？（省略画线部分和它所修饰的名词）

I'm looking for　my　　watch.　　　Whose　watch　are you looking for？

宾语的定语　宾语　　　　疑问词　宾语　　一般疑问句？（省略掉 my watch）

④ 对表语、宾语或状语提问，其语序是：疑问词+一般疑问句？（省略掉画线部分）

He　lives　in Beijing .　　　　　Where　does　he　live？

状语　　　　　　　　疑问词　　一般疑问句（省略掉画线部分 in Beijing　）

⑤ 对谓语和宾语提问，其语序是：疑问词（What）+一般疑问句？（其中谓语动词要用 do 的相对应形式代替，省略掉宾语）

He watches TV　in the evening　　　　　　　What　does　he　do　in the evening?

He watched TV yesterday evening.　　　　　What　did　he　do　in the evening?

He is watching TV now.　　　　　　　　　　What　is　he　doing　now?

He was watching TV at that time?.　　　　　What　was　he　doing at that time?

He is going to watch TV this evening.　　　　What　is　he　going to do?

He has seen the film.　　　　　　　　　　　What　has　he　done？

（4）how often，how far，how long，how soon，how much，how many 用法点拨。

how long 有以下两个主要意思：

① 表示多长时间，主要用来对一段时间（如 three days，four weeks 等）提问。如：

—How long did he stay here? 他在这儿待了多久?

—About two weeks. 大约两个星期。

② 表示某东西有多长。如：

—How long is the river? 这条河有多长?

—About 500 km. 大约 500 千米。

how often 指每隔多久，主要用来对频度副词或状语（如 once a week，three times a month 等）提问。如：

—How often does he come here? 他（每隔）多久来一次?

—Once a month. 每月一次。

how soon 指再过多久，主要用来对表示将来的一段时间（如 in an hour，in two weeks 等）提问。如：

—How soon will he be back? 他要多久才回来?

—In an hour. 1 小时以后。

—How soon shall we know the results? 我们多久能知道结果?

—I don't know. 我不知道。

How far 表示“多远”，对两地之间的距离提问。如：

—How far is your home from school? 你家离学校有多远?

—My house is three miles from school. 我家里学校有三英里。

【中考题解析】

1.（2013 湖南益阳）25. —_____does your father go to see your grandmother? —Once a month.

A. How long　　　B. How soon　　　　C. How often

【答案】C

【解析】考查特殊疑问词的用法。how long 多长；how soon 多久；how often 多久一次。句意：“你的父亲多久去看一次你的奶奶？”“一个月一次。”根据答语“Once a month”可知询问的是频率，故选 C。

2.（2013 福建福州）38. —_________ does your cousin go to the gym? —Twice a week.

A. How long　　B. How often　　C. How soon

【答案】B

【解析】考查特殊疑问词的用法。How long 对时间段进行提问，意为“多久”；how often 对频率进行提问，意为“多久一次”；how soon 对将来的时间点进行提问，意为“多久后”。根据该句的句意“你的表姐多久去一次健身房？每周两次”。可知 B 项正确。

3.（2013 广东湛江）26. —______ do you go to the library? —Once a week.

A. How often　　B. How long　　C. How far　　D. How soon

【答案】A

【解析】考查特殊疑问词。由答语“一周一次。”可知询问的是对方去图书馆的频率。所以选择答案 A。

4.（2013 山东枣庄）24. —_______apples do we need to make fruit salad?

—Let me think. We need three apples.

A. How long　　B. How often　　C. How much　　D. How many

【答案】D

【解析】考查四个特殊疑问词组的区别。How long 表示“多长”，对时间、长度等提问；How often 表示“多久一次”，对频率提问；How much 表示“多少”，对钱数、不可数名词提问；How many 表示“多少”，其后跟可数名词复数。所以应选 D。

5.（2009 年云南）—_____is the moon away from the earth? —It’s about 383，000 kilometers.

A. How long　　B. How soon　　C. How often　　D. How far

【答案】D

【解析】答语“It’s about 383,000 kilometers.”意为“大约 383,000 千米”，表示两地间的距离，说明上句意为“月亮离地球有多远？”。故选 D。

6.（2013 山东威海）30. — ______are you leaving for Beijing? —In a couple of days.

A. How far　　B. How often　　C. How soon　　D. How long

【答案】C

【解析】考查疑问词组的辨析。how far 表示多远，用来提问距离；how often 表示多久一次，用来提问频率副词；how soon 表示多久以后，用来提问“in+一段时间”；how long 表示多久，用来提问“for+一段时间”。根据答语 in a couple of days 可知应选 C。

7.（2013 山东济南）38. —Jenny，I need some milk. —OK，Mum. ___________ do you need?

A. How much　　B. How many

C. How often　　D. How long

【答案】A

【解析】考查特殊疑问词的辨析。根据对话前一句中的 milk 判断后一句问对方需要多少牛奶，而提问不可数名词的数量要用 how much。所以选 A。

【考点精练】

例 1：At the age of five，Martin wei gh <u>25 kilos</u>.（上海市中考题）

______ _______did Martin weigh at the age of five?

解析：How much。画线部分涉及重量，应用 How much 提问，表示“多少”。

例 2：She usually comes to see her grandpa <u>four times a month</u>.（呼和浩特市中考题）

________ ________she usually come to see her grandpa?

解析：How often does。画线部分 four times a month 涉及频率，应用 How often 提问，同 sometimes，usually，often，always，once，twice，once a week，twice a year 等。句中动词 comes 为第三人称单数形式，改为疑问句时应添加助动词 does，动词应还原。

例 3：Jim has stayed in China <u>for five years</u>.（哈尔滨市中考题）

________ _________ has Jim stayed in China?

解析：How long。画线部分 for five years 涉及一段时间，而一段时间应用 how long 提问。

例 4：The hospital is <u>about 300 meters away</u>.（甘肃省中考题）

__________ __________is the hospital?

解析：How far。画线部分 about 300 meters away 涉及距离，应用 How far 提问。

例 5：His uncle will be back <u>in a week. </u>（新疆乌鲁木齐市中考题）

________ _________will his uncle be back?

解析：How soon。画线部分 in a week（一周以后）表示一段时间，常用于一般将来时态，而将来时态中的一段时间应用 How soon（多久，多久以后）提问。

练习：

1. John went to see his grandmother <u>once a week</u>.（2003 广州市）

_______ _________ _________John so to see his grandmother?

2. He has worked in this school <u>for five years.</u>（2003 四川省）

________ _________ has he worked in this school?

3. The meeting will start <u>in ten minutes</u>.（2003 乌鲁木齐市）

__________ _________will the meeting start?

【参考答案】

1. How often did　　2. How long　　3. How soon

【达标反馈】

1. —____have you been learning English.

—I have been learning English for six years.

A. How long　　B. How often　　C. How far

2. —___can you be ready，Andy? —In ten minutes.

A. How much　　B. How often　　C. How long　　D. How soon

3. —____yogurt do you need? —Three cups.

A. How long　　B. How far　　C. How long　　D. How much

4. —____can we board our plane? —In twenty minutes.

A. How soon　　B. How long　　C. How often

5. —Xiao Wang，_____will it take to fly to Guangzhou? —Sorry，I do not know.

A. how far　　B. how soon　　C. how many　　D. how long

6. —_______ should we clean the library? —Twice a week.

A. How many　　B. How much　　C. How long　　D. How often

7. —_____________ will you be away? —In a couple of weeks.

A. What time　　B. How soon　　C. How often　　D. How long

【专项练习】

一、对画线部分提问。

1. They bought a new bike yesterday.

____

2. She is a nurse.

____

3. She is my teacher.

____

4. He bought the red one.

____

5. It is my coat.

____

6. I am looking for my sister.

____

7. I get up at six.

____

8. I am from Hubei.

____

9. I went to school late because I got up late.

____

10. It is windy.

____

11. I am getting on well with it.

____

12. My bag is red.

____

13. The book is Li Hua’s.

____

14. I like math best.

____

15. They are five yuan.

____

16. I wash it twice a week.

____

17. He will be back in four days.

____

18. I didn’t come to class yesterday because I was ill.

____

二、单项选择题。

19. —Excuse me, ______ is the nearest bookshop?
—Go down the street and turn left at the second corner.
A. how B. what C. where D. who

20. —______ is a ticket for the film Hacker（黑客）? —About forty yuan.

A. How old B. How many C. How much D. How often

21. —______ are you going? — I'm going to the library.

A. Who B. Which C. What D. Where

22. —It's a nice car. ______ have you been in it? —Just to Shanghai.

A. How much B. How soon C. How long D. How far

23. —_____? —It's eight.

A. What day is it B. What's five and three

C. How old are you D. What's your telephone number

24. —______? —I've got a headache and a cough.

A. What's your trouble B. What's wrong with it

C. Can I help you D. How are you

25. —______ tea did you have? - Two cups.

A. How many B. How much C. How soon D. Which

26. —______ shall we meet in the park? —What about half past eight?

A. What B. When C. Where D. Which

27. —______ a year does your school have sports meetings? —Twice a year.

A. How often B. How soon C. How long D. How many times

28. —______? —The one behind the tree.

A. Whose girl B. Who's that girl C. Which girl D. Where's the girl

29. —______ are you going to be in the future? —I want to be a person _____ Yang Liwei.

A. How; like B. How; as C. What; like D. What; as

30. ______ will your father be back?

A. How long B. how often C. How soon D. How wide

【参考答案】

1. What did they buy yesterday?
2. What is she?
3. Who is she?
4. Which one did he buy?
5. Whose coat is it?
6. Who do you looking for?
7. When do get up?
8. Where are you from?
9. Why are you late?
10. What is the weather like today?
11. How are you get on with it?
12. What color is your bag?
13. Whose bag is it?
14. What subject do you like best?
15. How much are they?
16. How often do you wash it?
17. How soon will he be back?
18. Why didn't you come to class yesterday?

19—24 CCDDBA 25—30 ABACCC

三、按要求改写句子，每空格限填一词。（含缩写形式）

1. Mrs. Li taught her maths last year.（改为一般疑问句）

______Mrs. Li_______her maths last year?

2. Mike plays computer games everyday.（改为一般疑问句）

_________Mike _______ computer games every day?

3. My brother has lunch at the school everyday.（改为一般疑问句）

________your brother_______lunch at the school every day?

4. Ann returned the book to the library yesterday.（改为一般疑问句）

_________Ann_______the book to the library yesterday?

5. We'll have a class meeting this afternoon.（改为一般疑问句）

_________you________a class meeting this afternoon?

6. Lin Tao put the radio on the desk.（对画线部分提问）

_______ _______Lin Tao put the radio?

7. He lost the key to his bike on his way to the lecture.（对画线部分提问）

_________did he________on his way to the lecture?

8. You'd better not ask your teacher.（改为否定祈使句）

_________ __________your teacher，please.

9. Uncle Wang likes making things.（改为否定句）

Uncle Wang __________making things.

10. He has to buy a dictionary for his daughter.（改为否定句）

He__________to buy a dictionary for his daughter.

【参考答案】

1. Did；teach　2. Does；play　3. Does；have　4. Did；return　5. Will；have

6. Where did　7. What；lose　8. Don't ask　9. doesn't like　10. doesn't；have

3. 选择疑问句

（1）定义。

选择疑问句表示提供两种或两种以上的情况，要求对方在所提供的范围、对象内选择。在所提供的最后一个备选对象前面用表示选择关系的并列连词 or（或者），朗读时 or 前用声调，or 后面用降调，句末用问号。

（2）选择疑问句的结构。

①“一般疑问句+or+另一个备选对象”。例如：

Shall we go there by bus，bike or train? 我们乘公共汽车、自行车还是火车去？（备选对象为三者）

Would you like some tea or coffee? 你要茶水还是咖啡？（备选对象为二者）

Did you stay at home or at school yesterday? 你昨天待在家还是在学校？（备选对象为二者）

②“特殊疑问句+or+另一个备选对象”。例如：

Which would you like best，English，Chinese or Math? 你最喜欢哪门学科，英语、语文还是数学？

When will you go to Canada，Sunday or Monday? 你何时去加拿大，星期天还是星期一？

（3）选择疑问句的回答（见表 12-5）。

表 12-5　选择疑问句的回答

	其中之一	都选	都不选
两者	either	both	neither
三者	one of them	all	none

回答选择疑问句时，一般在所提供的备选对象内选择，有时也要视具体情况做灵活处理，但是不能用 Yes/No 来回答，一般用一个完整的陈述句或其简略形式，主语和谓语均省略。近年来的考试趋势是逐渐使用一个关键词，即不定代词作简略回答。

① 从备选对象中选择其中某一项回答。

—Are you going to borrow a dictionary or a magazine?　—____.（2005 年江苏南通）

A. Yes，a dictionary　B. No，a magazine　C. A magazine　D. Yes，both

分析：选项 A，B，D 不能回答选择疑问句。选项 C 是从备选对象中选择其中的一项来回答的，符合语境。

② 备选对象是二者，可任选其一就用表示肯定的 either；两个对象都选就用表示肯定的 both；两个

对象都不选就用表示否定的 neither。如：

—Would you like chicken noodles or beef noodles? —____. I'd like tomato noodles.（2008 年宁波）

A. Either　　B. Neither　　C. Both　　D. None

分析：备选对象是二者，先排除 D。由回答可知，要否定上面提供的备选对象，而 A 和 C 不符合逻辑，故选 B。

—Which do you like better，Math or Physics?

—_____. I'm interested in them and quite good at them.（2008 年乌鲁木齐）

A. Both　　B. None　　C. Either　　D. All

分析：备选对象是二者，先排除 B 和 D。由回答可见，C 不符合逻辑，故选择 A 选项。

—When shall we go to the museum，this afternoon or tomorrow morning?

—____ is OK. I'm free these days.（2008 年重庆）

A. Both　　B. All　　C. Either　　D. Neither

分析：备选对象是二者，先排除 B。空格处填肯定词 either，意为"今天下午和明天早上任意一个时间都可以。"选项 D 表否定不符合上下文的逻辑，故选 C。

③ 如果备选对象是三者，可任选其一时，就用 one of them（他/它/她们中任意之一）；三个对象都选就用 all；三个对象都不选就用 none。

—Which do you like best，coffee，water or juice? —_____. I only like tea.

A. Both　　B. Either　　C. Neither　　D. None

分析：备选对象是三者，排除 A，B，C，选 D 选项，意为"咖啡、水和果汁都不喜欢。我只喜欢茶水。"

【中考选择疑问句专练】

1. —What would like，milk or coffee? —___. Just a cup of tea.（ 2008 年新疆）

   A. Both　　B. Either　　C. Neither　　D. None

2. —Which do you like better，skating or skiing? —_____of them. I like running.（2008 年福州）

   A. All　　B. Both　　C. Either　　D. Neither

3. —Do you want tea or coffee? —____. I really don't mind.（2007 年青岛）

   A. Both　　B. None　　C. Either　　D. Neither

4. —Do you like the pop star Zhou Jielun or the move star Liu Dehua?

   —____. I am not their fan.（2007 年重庆）

   A. Both　　B. Either　　C. Neither　　D. All

5. —Which do you prefer，bananas or oranges? —____. I enjoy eating apples.（2007 年广东）

   A. Both　　B. Either　　C. Neither　　D. All

6. —Which do you like better，hamburgers or hot dogs? _____. I just like Chinese food.（2006 年滨州）

   A. Both　　B. Either　　C. Neither　　D. None

7. —Which do you prefer，a CD player or a walkman? ____. I prefer the new kind of MP4.（2006 年兰州）

   A. Both　　B. None　　C. Neither　　D. Either

8. —Do you like talking with your friends on the telephone or mobile phone?

   —____. I enjoy using QQ.（2006 年黄冈）

   A. Neither　　B. Either　　C. Both　　D. None

9. —What day is it today，Wednesday or Thursday? —_____. It's Friday.（2006 年山东临沂）

   A. Either　　B. Both　　C. None　　D. Neither

10. —Which do you prefer，orange juice or coke?

—___，thanks. I'd like just a cup of tea.（2005 年重庆）

A. Either　B. Neither　C. Both　D. None

11. —Which sweater do you prefer，the yellow one or the blue one? —___. Please show me a green one.（2006 年云南玉溪）

A. Both　B. None　C. Neither　D. Either

12. —Which do you prefer，coffee or cola?

—____，thanks. I'd like a cup of tea.（2004 年云南）

A. Either　B. Both　C. Neither　D. None

13. —When shall we go to the cinema，this afternoon or tomorrow morning? —____ is OK. I'm free these days.（2008 年重庆）

A. Both　B. All　C. Either　D. Neither

14. —Are you going to buy the red skirt or the blue one? —____.

A. Yes，the red one　B. No，the blue one

C. Yes，both　D. The red one

【参考答案】

1—5　CDCCC　6—10　CCADB　11—14　CCCD

【专项练习】

1. What would you like to drink，tea___ coffee?

A. but　B. and　C. or　D. of

2. —Is your father a boss or a worker? —_____________.

A. Yes，he is　B. No，he isn't　C. He is a man　D. He's a boss.

3. —What would you like to eat，bananas or apples ? —____________.

A. I wouldn't like　B. No one like

C. I'd like to eat apples　D. No，I don't like

4. ______ do you like best，bananas，apples or grapes?

A. Which　B. What　C. Where　D. Who

【参考答案】

1—4　CDCA

4. 反义疑问句

（1）反义疑问句的定义。

反义疑问句是疑问句的一种，它对陈述部分的事实提出相反的疑问，形式上是个省略句，附在陈述部分之后，并用逗号与陈述部分隔开。主语一般用相应的代词，有时这种问句并没有反义疑问句的意味，而是提出一个事实上听话人承认的问题。所以，人们统称为附加疑问句。

（2）附加疑问句的构成。

附加疑问句主要是由“陈述句+附加疑问”构成，附加疑问部分的动词一般要与陈述部分的动词相对应，附加疑问部分的主语要与陈述部分的主语相对应，如果陈述部分的主语是名词词组，则附加疑问部分用相应的代词表示。

陈述部分肯定式+疑问部分否定式可记为：前肯后否。陈述部分否定式+疑问部分肯定式可记为：前否后肯。如：

They work hard，don't they?

She was ill yesterday，wasn't she?

You didn't go，did you?

He can't ride a bike，can he?

He is a student，isn't he?

简略问句的主语与陈述句保持一致，只能用人称代词（there 除外），简略问句的谓语动词也与陈述句保持一致，如果是否定，一定要用简写。如：

Jim isn't a student，is he?/There are some books in it，aren't there?

（3）附加疑问句的类型。

① 含 be（is，are，was，were）动词的反义疑问句，需用 be 的适当形式。如：

You are from America，aren't you? Yes，I am. No，I'm not.

The Green weren't at home last night，were they? Yes，they were. No，they weren't.

注意：陈述部分主、谓语是 I am...时，反义疑问句用 aren't I，而不是 am not I（可用 am I not）。例如：I'm working now，aren't I? 我在工作，是吗?

② 行为动词的一般现在时的反义疑问句，需用 do/does 的适当形式。如：

You often watch TV in the evening，don't you? Yes，I do. No，I don't.

The first class begins at eight，doesn't it? Yes，it does. No，it doesn't.

③ 行为动词的一般过去时的反义疑问句，需用 did 的是适当形式。如：

The rain stopped，didn't it? Yes，it did. No，it didn't.

Jim's parents didn't go to Hong Kong last month，did they? Yes，they did. No，they didn't.

④ 一般将来时的反义疑问句，需用 will 的适当形式。如：

The boys will play games，won't they? Yes，they will. No，they won't.

It won't stop raining，will it? Yes，it will. No，it won't.

⑤ 现在完成时的反义疑问句，需用 have、has 的适当形式。如：

You have been to Shanghai before，haven't you? Yes I have. No，I haven't.

Jack hasn't done his homework，has he? Yes，he has. No，he hasn't.

⑥ 现在完成进行时的反义疑问句，需用 have、has 的适当形式。如：

You have been skating for five hours，haven't you? Yes，I have. No，I haven't.

Bob hasn't been collecting kites since 1999，has he? Yes，he has. No，he hasn't.

⑦ 含有情态动词的反义疑问句，需用情态动词的适当形式。如：

You can speak French，can't you? Yes，I can. No，I can't.

The students must study hard，mustn't they? Yes，they must. No，they needn't.

注意：当陈述部分含有情态动词 must 时，便要分析一下 must 的含义。如果 must 作“一定；要；必须”讲，反义疑问句须用 mustn't 或 needn't；而当 must 作推测意义“一定是；必定”讲时，反义疑问句则需根据 must 后的动词原形选用相应的形式。例如：

He must work hard at physics，mustn't he? 他必须努力学物理，是吧?

You must go home now，needn't you? Yes，I must. No，I needn't.

Tom must be at home，isn't he? 汤姆一定在家，是吧?

⑧ 祈使句用于反义疑问句中。

这种类型较特殊，前一部分是祈使句，后一部分是肯定疑问形式。回答也较灵活。

句型 1：Let's+动词原形+其他，shall we? 例如：Let's go for a walk，shall we?

句型 2：其他形式的祈使句，will you（表示请求）或 won't you（表示提醒）? 例如：

—Come into the classroom，will you?

—OK.

Please be careful，will you?

Be quick，will you?

Don’t you be late again，will you?

Do it at once，will you?

Let me have a try，will you?

Let us leave now，will you?

⑨ 感叹句。感叹句后加反义疑问句时，其反义疑问句常根据其主、谓语来确定。例如：

How time flies，doesn’t it?

How tall the buildings are，aren’t they?

How hard it’s raining，isn’t it?

What a tall man，isn’t he?

What tall buildings，aren’t they?

What an old picture，isn’t it?

⑩ 陈述部分的主语是 everything，nothing，anything 或 something 时，反义疑问句的主语应用代词 it。例如：

Something is wrong with my radio，isn’t it? 我的收音机出毛病了，是吧？

⑪ 陈述部分的主语是 everybody，everyone，anybody，anyone，somebody，someone，nobody，no one，none，neither 时，其反义疑问句的主语需用复数代词 they。例如：

Everyone is here，aren’t they? 大家都到了，是吗？

No one knows about it，do they? 没有人知道这件事，对吗？

⑫ 陈述部分的主语是指示代词 this 或 that 时，反义疑问句的主语用 it。当陈述部分的主语是指示代词 these 或 those 时，其反义疑问句的主语用 they。例如：

This is a plane，isn’t it? 这是一架飞机，是吗？

These are grapes，aren’t they? 这些是葡萄，是吗？

⑬ 当陈述部分有 never，seldom，hardly，few，little，barely，scarcely，nothing 等否定意义的词时，后面的反义疑问句则为肯定形式。如：

There are few apples in the basket，are there?

He can hardly swim，can he?

They seldom come late，do they?

⑭ 当陈述部分含有 unhappy，dislike，unfriendly 等含有否定词缀的派生词，也就是有 un-（前缀）、-less（后缀）等含有词缀意思表否定的词，应当作肯定句处理，疑问部分要用否定形式。如：

He looks unhappy，doesn’t he? 他看上去不高兴，不是吗？

The girl dislikes history，doesn’t she? 这女孩不喜欢历史，不是吗？

It is unfair，isn’t it?

It’s impossible，is it?

⑮ 当陈述部分主语是从句、不定式（短语）、动词-ing 形式时，反义疑问句的主语应该用 it。例如：

What you need is more important，isn’t it? 你需要的东西更重要，是吧？

⑯ 当陈述部分含 I think（believe，suppose...）that... 结构时，其反义疑问句须与从句的主、谓语保持一致，主句的主语必须是第一人称。例如：

I don’t think he will come，will he? 我认为他不会来，对吗？

I believe they can finish the work in time，can they?

注意宾语从句的反义疑问句的对应规则：

若反义疑问句的陈述部分为 I（we）think（believe，suppose，consider）+that 从句时，问句部分的助动词和主语与 that 从句内的动词和主语保持一致。如：

I think that he has done his best，hasn’t he?

We think that English is very useful，isn’t it?

若反义疑问句的陈述部分为 I（we）don’t think（believe，suppose，consider）+that 从句时，从句为否定意义，问句部分的助动词和主语仍与 that 从句保持一致，用肯定形式。如：

I don’t think that you can do it，can you?

We don’t believe that the news is true，is it?

反义疑问句的陈述部分为非第一人称主语+think（believe，suppose，consider）+that 从句时，问句部分的助动词和主语与陈述部分的助动词和主语保持一致。如：

They all think that English is very useful，don’t they?

He didn’t think that the news is true，did he?

We think that we will win the game，won’t we?

⑰ have（has）不是“完成时态”时，其反义疑问句的助动词要用 do，does，did。例如：

They had a meeting just now，didn’t they? 他们刚才开了个会，是吗？

You have to water the vegetables every day，don’t you? 你每天都要浇菜，对吧？

He has to stay at home，doesn’t he?

They had to start at once，didn’t they?

⑱ 陈述部分是 there be 句型时，其反义疑问句中要用 there。例如：

There aren’t any children in the room，are there? Yes，there are. No，there aren’t.

There will be a basketball match tomorrow，won’t there? Yes，there will. No，there won’t.

⑲ 陈述部分有 had better 时，反义疑问句中要用 had。例如：

We had better go to school at once，hadn’t we? 我们现在最好马上去上学，对吗？

They had better not go out at night，had they?

⑳ 陈述部分的主语是不定代词 one 时，反义疑问句的主语可以用 one，也可用 you（美式英语用 he）。例如：

One should be ready to help others，shouldn’t one? 每个人都应该乐于助人，是吧？

㉑ 当陈述部分谓语动词是 need，dare，used to，且这些词被用作实义动词时，其反义疑问句需用 do 的适当形式。例如：

He needs help，doesn’t he?

They dare to go out at night，don’t they?

You used to get up early，didn’t you?

（4）反义疑问句的回答，分为肯定回答和否定回答。如：

The girls like listening to popular music，don’t they? 这些女孩喜欢听流行音乐，不是吗？

肯定回答：Yes，they do. 是的，她们喜欢。

否定回答：No，they don’t. 不，她们不喜欢。

You haven’t eaten anything，have you? 你还没有吃过什么东西，是吗？

肯定回答：Yes，I have. 不，我已吃过了。

否定回答：No，I haven’t. 是，我还没有吃过。

注意：对前一部分为否定后一部分为肯定的反义疑问句的回答恰好与汉语相反。这时，为与汉语一致，相应地把“Yes”译为“不”，而把“No”译为“是的”。同时记住，没有类似“Yes，I haven’t.”或“No，I have.”这种汉语式的回答。

【中考英语反义疑问句试题】

一、填空。

1. You’d rather watch TV this evening，______?（09 四川）

2. I suppose you're not going today, ______? (10 山东)
3 . Let's go out for a walk, ______? (08 山东)
4. Let us go out for a walk, ______? (07 青岛)
5. Let me help you, ______? (06 襄樊)
6. Turn on the radio, ______? (08 攀枝花)

【参考答案】

1. wouldn't you　2. are you　3. shall we　4. will you　5. may I　6. will you

二、选择题。

1. E-mail is very popular today. People seldom write letters now, ______? (09 广东)
A. did they　B. do they　C. didn't they　D. don't they
2. —Are you going to the picnic with us tonight?
—Yes.
—You won't be late, __? (09 东营)
A. should you　B. will you　C. don't you　D. can you
3. —Millions of people know about Susan Boyle now, _________? (09 上海)
—______, she becomes well-known because of her success on Britain 's *Got Talent*. (09 福州)
A. do they; No　B. do they; Yes　C. don't they; No　D. don't they; Yes
4. There is no important information in the newspaper, _______? (09 齐齐哈尔、绥化)
A. isn't there　B. is it　C. is there
5. Bob, you watched the fashion show last night, ________ ? (09 孝感)
A. weren't you　B. didn't you　C. haven't you　D. won't you
6. (2010·湖北省十堰市, 28, 1) —Let's go skating, _________? —Ok. Let's go.
A. do you　B. don't you　C. will you　D. shall we
7. (2010·广西省梧州市, 44, 1) She's never been to Hong Kong, ______?
A. isn't she　B. has she　C. is she　D. hasn't she
8. (2010·黑龙江省哈尔滨市, 24, 1) —There are always many volunteers in great events, _________?
—Yes. Many hands makes light work!
A. aren't there　B. are there　C. aren't they
9. (2010·湖北省荆门市, 33, 1) Let's discuss it after the meeting, ________?
A. will you　B. don't we　C. won't you　D. shall we
10. (2010·四川省巴中市, 40, 1) Let's search the Internet for some information about famous people, ___?
A. will you　B. won't you　C. shall we
11. (2010·江苏省苏州市, 10, 1) Eric's never seen a three-D movie at the cinema, _______?
A. hasn't he　B. has he　C. isn't he　D. is he
12. E-mail is very popular today. People seldom write letters now, ______? (09 广东)
A. did they　B. do they　C. didn't they　D. don't they
13. There is no important information in the newspaper, _______? (09 齐齐哈尔、绥化)
A. isn't there　B. is it　C. is there
14. He's fed the dog and the cat, _______? (09 锦州)
A. doesn't he　B. isn't he　C. wasn't he　D. hasn't he
15. —Arthur is responsible _______ the newspaper, isn't he?
—___________, but Joyce is. She's the chief editor. (09 深圳)
A. of; Yes, he isn't　B. for; Yes, he is

C. of；No，he is　　D. for；No he isn't

16. John，clean your room，__________?（09 芜湖）

A. will you　　B. shall we　　C. don't you　　D. doesn't he

17. —It's a nice day，isn't it? —________. Let's go hiking in the mountain.（09 贵港）

A. Yes，it does　　B. No，it isn't　　C. It doesn't matter　　D. Yes，it is

18. I don't think she has gone to Beijing，________?（09 柳州）

A. has she　　B. hasn't she　　C. do I　　D. don't I

19. Nothing is difficult if you put your heart into it，________?（09 益阳）

A. aren't they　　B. isn't it　　C. is it

20. —You don't come from England，do you? —________. I come from America. How do you know that?（09 朝阳）

A. No，I do　　B. Yes，I do　　C. Yes，I don't　　D. No，I don't

21. Liu Qian has made "magic" a hot word，______ he?（091 临沂）

A. doesn't　　B. didn't　　C. hasn't　　D. isn't

22. Mom，my grandfather goes for a walk after supper every day，________?（09 威海）

A. does he　　B. is he　　C. doesn't he　　D. isn't he

23. There are two libraries in this city，_______?（09 南充）

A. aren't there　　B. aren't they　　C. are two

24. Don't forget to give Polly some food and change her water，________?（09 新疆）

A. shall we　　B. will you　　C. won't you　　D. do you

25. Eva Huang is a famous star，________?（09 湘西）

A. doesn't she　　B. does she　　C. isn't she

26. —There is little milk in the milk bag，_______ there? —OK. I'll get you a new bag.（09 滨州）

A. is　　B. isn't　　C. aren't　　D. are

【参考答案】

1—5　BBDCB　　6—10　DBADC　　11—15　BBCDD　　16—20　ADACD　　21—26　CCABCA

三、包含肯定、否定回答的反义疑问句。

1. —She doesn't like geography，does she? —_______.（09 娄底）

A. Yes，she does　　B. Yes，she doesn't　　C. No，she does

2. —Bill had nothing for breakfast this morning，______? —______，he got up too late.（08 青岛）

A. had he；Yes　　B. hadn't he；Yes　　C. did he；No　　D. didn't he；No

3.（2010·福建省福州市，37，1）—Zhou Weilun could hardly speak English three years ago，_________?
—No，he _______ . But now he is quite good at it.

A. couldn't he，could　　B. could he，couldn't

C. didn't he，couldn't

【参考答案】

1—3　ACB

【专项练习题】

一、完成下列反义疑问句。

1. It's very hot today，________________ ?

2. He can speak Chinese，________________ ?

3. Meimei studies in a middle school, ________________ ?
4. He never gets up late , ________________ ?
5. Don't go out at night, ________________ ?
6. He never loves cold weather, ________________ ?
7. You finished the task yesterday, ________________ ?
8. It ________________ a good day for swimming, is it?
9. Tom has been to Singapore, ________________ ?
10. The story is little interesting, ________________ ?
11. Everything starts to grow in spring, ________________ ?
12. He can hardly finish his homework, ________________ ?
13. I'm in Class 3, Grade 2, ________________ ?
14. Let's go shopping, ________________ ?
15. She doesn't like climbing hills, ________________ ?
16. I don't think it is cold today, ________________ ?
17. You think he is a good flight attendant, ________________ ?
18. Nobody knows where she lives, ________________ ?
19. Few students can answer the question, ________________ ?
20. Mike likes English, ________________ ?
21. That was a wonderful night, ________________ ?
22. Your sister helped him, ________________ ?
23. Tom is skating, ________________?
24. You aren't a teacher, ________________?
25. They haven't been to the Great Wall, ________________ ?
26. You will join the soccer team, ________________ ?
27. He likes neither apples nor pears, ________________ ?
28. There are some good books for you, ________________ ?
29. They have been there twice, ________________ ?
30. Let's do it now, ________________ ?
31. You dislike this kind of gifts, ________________ ?
32. Nothing is impossible, ________________ ?
33. Everything is possible, ________________ ?
34. He doesn't go to school by bus, ________________ ?
35. There is little milk left in the bottle, ________________ ?
36. Let us clean the classroom by ourselves, ________________ ?
37. He has studied here for about four years, ________________ ?
38. You have never lost money before, ________________ ?
39. Few of them hurt themselves in the accident last night, ________________ ?
40. Peter could hardly see the words on the blackboard, ________________ ?
41. She's American, ________________ ?
42. There will be a volleyball match in our school, ________________ ?
43. Don't smoke in the reading-room, ________________ ?
44. I don't think he is right, ________________ ?
45. You must do your homework by yourself, ________________ ?
46. You mustn't touch the machine, ________________ ?

47. He must be a worker, ________________ ?
48. Someone looked for me yesterday, ________________ ?
49. I'm a teacher, ________________ ?
50. What a nice watch, ________________ ?
51. I wish to use your ruler, ________________ ?
52. I have to stay at home, ________________ ?
53. You'd better wear warm clothes today, ________________ ?
54. What he needs is his parents' love, ________________ ?
55. You'd like a cup of tea, ________________ ?
56. Don't be late again, ________________ ?
57. Their prices are really low, ________________ ?
58. Reading is good for you to learn English, ________________ ?
59. No one knows about it, ________________ ?
60. I think you should study hard, ________________ ?

【参考答案】

1. isn't it 2. can't he 3. doesn't she 4. does he 5. will you
6. does he 7. didn't you 8. isn't 9. hasn't he 10. is it
11. doesn't it 12. can he 13. aren't I 14. shall we 15. does she
16. is it 17. don't you 18. does it 19. can they 20. doesn't he
21. wasn't it 22. didn't she 23. isn't he 24. are you 25. have they
26. wont you 27. does he 28. aren't there 29. haven't they 30. shall we
31. don't you 32. is it 33. isn't it 34. does he 35. is there
36. will you 37. hasn't he 38. have you 39. did they 40. could he
41. isn't she 42. won't there 43. will you 44. is he 45. mustn't you
46. must you 47. isn't he 48. didn't they 49. aren't I 50. isn't it
51. may I 52. don't I 53. hadn't you 54. isn't it 55. wouldn't you
56. will you 57. aren't they 58. isn't it 59. do they 60. shouldn't you

二、单项选择题。

1. Nobody says a word about the incident, ____________?
A. is he B. doesn't he C. do they D. don't they
2. You never told me why you were late for the class, ____________?
A. weren't you B. didn't you C. had you D. did you
3. They dare not call you a fool, ____________?
A. would they B. dared they C. dares they D. dare they
4. There is not much news in today's paper, ______________?
A. isn't it B. are there C. is there D. aren't there
5. The manager came here in a car, _________?
A. was he B. did he C. wasn't he D. didn't he
6. She must have arrived there yesterday, __________?
A. have she B. must she C. didn't she D. mustn't she
7. Peter hardly ever goes to parties, ________?
A. doesn't he B. do he C. does he D. is he
8. What a lovely day, __________?

A. doesn't it　　B. isn't it　　C. shan't it　　D. hasn't it

9. Let me do it, ________?

A. shall I　　B. shall we　　C. will you　　D. will I

10. Nothing he did was right, ____________?

A. did he　　B. was it　　C. didn't it　　D. was he

11. There used to be a church behind the cemetery, _________?

A. didn't there　　B. used there　　C. usedn't it　　D. didn't it

12. He must be in the library now, _________?

A. doesn't he　　B. mustn't he　　C. needn't he　　D. isn't he

13. You would rather not have fish, __________ you?

A. hadn't　　B. wouldn't　　C. would　　D. had

14. —You are not a new member, are you? —__________. I joined only yesterday.

A. No, I'm not　　B. Yes, I'm not　　C. No, I am　　D. Yes, I am

15. My sister often needs help with her study, ________?

A. need she　　B. needn't she　　C. does she　　D. doesn't she

16. You'd better send for a doctor for your mother, _________ you?

A. had　　B. hadn't　　C. would　　D. wouldn't

17. Let's go swimming, __________?

A. aren't we　　B. shall we　　C. will you　　D. won't we

18. Li Ming can't be in the classroom, ___________?

A. can he　　B. is he　　C. can't he　　D. must he

19. He ought to have looked after his father, __________?

A. oughtn't he　　B. ought he not to　　C. oughtn't he to　　D. oughtn't to he

20. I have nothing to do with the matter, _________?

A. have I　　B. has it　　C. do I　　D. does it

21. He was in good heath when I saw him last time, __________?

A. wasn't he　　B. didn't he　　C. hadn't he　　D. hasn't he

22. John had his hair cut yesterday afternoon, _________?

A. haven't he　　B. didn't he　　C. hadn't he　　D. hasn't he

23. None of the pupils attended the sports meet, _________?

A. did they　　B. do they　　C. didn't they　　D. don't they

24. I'd like to go with you, ________?

A. had I　　B. wouldn't I　　C. hadn't I　　D. would I

25. It is the third time that John has been late, _______?

A. hasn't he　　B. isn't he　　C. isn't it　　D. hasn't it

26. I suppose he is serious, _________?

A. do I　　B. don't I　　C. is he　　D. isn't he

27. She dislikes this skirt, __________?

A. doesn't she　　B. does she　　C. isn't she　　D. is she

28. You mustn't tell it to your mother, _________?

A. must you　　B. do you　　C. need you　　D. will you

29. They have to face the difficulty, _________?

A. haven't they　　B. don't they　　C. do they　　D. must they

30. The man in blue must be your brother, ________?

A. mustn't he　　B. needn't he　　C. isn't he　　D. is he

【答案与解析】

1. C。当陈述部分中的主语为 everybody，everyone，someone，no one，nobody，somebody 等不定代词时，反义疑问句中的主语常用 they。当陈述部分为否定意义的词 nobody 时，反意疑问部分应用肯定形式。

2. D。当陈述部分是主从复合句时，反义疑问部分中的动词和主语代词通常应和主句中的动词和主语保持一致。

3. D。当陈述部分含有情态动词 dare 时，反义疑问部分也应用情态动词 dare（没有人称和数的变化）。

4. C。陈述句部分含有 not，时是否定式，所以反义疑问部分应用肯定式。而当陈述部分是 there be 结构时，反义疑问部分用 there，省略主语代词。

5. D。当陈述部分的动词是行为动词时，且前面又没有任何助动词时，这时的疑问部分要用 do/does/did。

6. C。如果 must have done 句式中的时间状语为表示过去时间的词，如 last year，yesterday，the day before yesterday 等，反义疑问部分常用 didn't+主语。

7. C。如果陈述部分已有表示否定意义的副词，如 never，nothing，seldom，rarely，hardly 等，反义疑问部分应用肯定形式。

8. B。当陈述句部分为感叹句时，反义疑问句部分常用否定形式，且问句部分的动词常用 be。

9. C。当陈述部分是祈使句时，反义疑问部分常用 will you。

10. B。当陈述部分的主语是 everything，anything，nothing，something 等表物的不定代词时，反义疑问部分的主语常用 it。

11. A。当陈述部分是 there be 结构时，反义疑问部分用 there，省略主语代词。当陈述部分含有情态动词 used to 时，反义疑问部分可用 used to 形式或 did 形式。所以此空应填 didn't there 或 usedn't there。

12. D。must/may/can't+do 表示对现在情况的推测，反义疑问部分用一般现在时。He must be in the library now. 相当于 I think he is in the library now.

13. C。当陈述句部分含 had better/best，would like to，would rather 等约定俗成的特殊短语时，反义疑问部分应保留第一个词。如此题中的陈述部分含有 would rather 的否定式，则反义疑问部分用 would。

14. D。反义疑问句的答语应根据实际情况来定，如果事实是肯定的，前面要用 yes，否则用 no。回答中的肯定否定关系可以用下面这个公式表示：（+表示肯定，－表示否定）：

问句中：+，－或－，+。

回答中：+，+或－，－。

15. D。陈述句部分含有实义动词 needs，所以反义疑问部分要用助动词 doesn't。

16. B。当陈述部分有 had better 时，反义疑问部分应用 hadn't。

17. B。当陈述部分是祈使句时，反义疑问部分常用 will you。但以 Let's 开头的祈使句，反义疑问部分常用 shall we。以 Let us 开头的祈使句，反义疑问部分常用 will you。

18. B。当陈述部分含有情态动词 must，may，can't，且表示推测时，反义疑问部分不能用 must，may，can't，应和后面的实义动词保持一致。Ling Ming can't be in the classroom 相当于 I don't think Li Ming is in the classroom.

19. A。当陈述部分含有情态动词 ought to 时，反义疑问部分常用 oughtn't。

20. C。本题陈述部分中的 have 是实义动词，不作"有"解，所以反义疑问部分义需借助助动词 do，does，did 等来完成。

21. A。当陈述部分是主从复合句时，反义疑问部分的动词和主语代词通常应和主句中的动词和主语保持一致。此题的主句是：He was in good health.

22. B。本题陈述部分中的 had 是实义动词，不作"有"解，所以反义疑问部分应需借助助动词 did 来完成。

23. A。当陈述部分的主语是 everybody，everyone，someone，none，nobody，somebody 等不定代词

时，反义疑问句部分中的主语常用 they。本题中的陈述句部分用的一般过去时态。

24. B。当陈述部分中有 would like 时，反义疑问部分应用 wouldn't。

25. C。当陈述句部分是强调句或类似强调句的结构时，反义疑问部分常和句首的 It is/was 保持一致。

26. D. 当陈述部分的主句是 I suppose，I think，I believe，I imagine 等结构时，反义疑问部分往往与从句保持一致，而且要注意否定转移。

27. A。当陈述部分中含有 im，in，dis，un 等否定前缀或 less 等否定后缀时，应把陈述部分看成是肯定的，反义疑问部分要用否定式。

28. A。当陈述部分含有情态动词 mustn't 表示“禁止”时，反义疑问部分常用 must。

29. B。当陈述部分含有 have，而且 have 作“有”解时，反义疑问部分用 have/has 或借助助动词 do，does，did 等来完成；如果陈述部分中的 have 是实义动词，则反义疑问部分应借助助动词 do，does，did 等来完成。本题陈述部分中的 have to（不得不）为实义动词，所以反义疑问部分不能用 haven't。

30. C。当陈述部分含有 must，may，can't 且表示推测时，反义疑问部分不能用 must，may，can't 自身，应和后面的实义动词保持一致。本题中的陈述部分 The man in blue must be your brother 相当于 I think the man in blue is your brother.

12.5 感叹句

感叹句是表示喜、怒、哀、乐以及惊异等感情的句子，句末用感叹号“!”，读时用降调。感叹句往往由 what 或 how 引导，what 修饰名词，how 修饰形容词、副词或动词。

由 what，how 引导的感叹句的构成形式、用法及区别详见表 12-6。

表 12-6 由 what，how 引导的感叹句的构成形式、用法及区别

	讲　解	句　型	例　句
What	What 引导的感叹句的中心词是名词	What+（a/an）+形容词+名词+（主语+谓语）!	What a cold day（it is）！今天天气真冷啊！ What an old house（it is）！这间房子真老啊！ What nice air（it is）！空气真好啊！
How	How 引导的感叹句的中心词是形容词或副词	How+形容词/副词+（主语+谓语）!	How cold（it is）today! 今天天气真冷啊！ How happy（the children are）！孩子们真愉快啊！ How hard（the student works）! 这个学生学习多努力啊！

注意：在复数可数名词和不可数名词之前不可用“how+形容词”构成感叹句，而应用“what+形容词+复数可数名词或不可数名词”。也就是说“how+形容词”可置于带不定冠词的单数名词之前构成感叹句。如：

What great changes we have had these years! 这些年我们的变化真大呀!

不可说成 How great changes we have had these years!

What good news it is! 多么好的消息呀!

不可说成 How good news it is!

上述两种感叹句可以互相转换。例如：

What a clever boy he is!→How clever a boy he is/How clever the boy is!

What a cold day it is!→How cold a day it is/How cold it is!

如何判断用 what 还是用 how 来引导感叹句：

方法一：凡是有 a，an 开头的，多用 what；

方法二：凡是形容词直接加名词的，多用 what；

方法三：其他一般用 how。

【典型例题】

1. ___ food you've cooked!

A. How a nice　　B. What a nice　　C. How nice　　D. What nice

答案：D。由于 How 修饰形容词、副词，what 修饰名词，且 food 为不可数名词，因此 A，B 排除。C 选项"How+*adj.*"后面不能再加名词，因此只有 D 正确，其句型为"What+*adj.*+*n.*"（不可数）。

2. ___terrible weather we've been having these days!

A. What　　B. What a　　C. How　　D. How a

答案：A。weather 为不可数名词，故 B，D 排除。C 为"how+*adj.*"后面不应有名词。只有 A 符合句型"What+形容词+不可数名词"。

3. —______ I had! —You really suffered a lot.

A. What a time　　B. What time　　C. How a time　　D. How time

答案：A。

【感叹句专项训练】

一、选词填空，从 What/What a/What an/How 中选出适当的词填入下列句子中。

1. ____________ nice girl she is!
2. ____________ careful the boy is!
3. ____________ beautiful flowers they are!
4. ____________ delicious the food tastes!
5. ____________ interesting film we will see!
6. ____________ good news it is!
7. ____________ the time flies!

二、句型转换。

1. The students are listening to the teacher carefully.（ 改为感叹句）

____

2. We had a good time in summer holidays.（改为感叹句）

____

3. The river is long.（改为感叹句，两种）

____

4. How nice the food is!（改为同义句）

____

5. How well he swims!（改为同义句）

____

6. What strong men they are!（改为同义句）

____

三、同步练习题：将下列句子改为感叹句。

1. Tom is a clever boy.

① What____!

② How____ !

2. The flower is beautiful.

① What____!
② How____ !
3. The book is very interesting.
① What____!
② How____ !
4. The weather is sunny.
① What____!
② How____ !
5. The work is very hard.
① What____!
② How____ !
6. Andy studies hard.
How____ !
7. The girls are singing well.
How____

四、将下列句子变成感叹句。

1. It is quite a nice present. →__________ __________ nice present（it is）!
2. We have fine weather today. →__________ __________ weather we have today!
3. It's sunny today. →__________ __________ sunny day it is today!
4. The children are working hard. →_________ ________ the children are working!
5. She played basketball wonderfully. →________ _______ she played basketball!
6. He sings very well →________ _________ he sings!
7. He was very lucky →_________ _________he was!
8. They are too expensive books! →________ _________ they are!
9. Mr. Wang is a very busy man. →________ ________ _______man Mr. Wang is!
10. They live a happy life today. →________ _________ ________ life they live!

五、单项选择题。

1. _______ fine the weather is!
A.What a B. What C. How D. How a
2. _____exciting film we saw yesterday!
A.What a B. How a C. How an D. What an
3. _______ great fun they had!
A.What a B. What C. How D. How a
4. _____ heavy rain it was!
A.What a B. What C. How D. How a
5. ________fun place to go Shanghai is!
A. What a B. What C. How D. How a
6. ______ happy life the old live!
A.What a B. What C. How D. How a
7. ________ nice fish they cooked!
A.What a B. What C. How D. How a
8. _________ blue the sky is!

A.What a　　B. What　　C. How　　D. How a

9. __________dangerous the animals are!

A. What a　　B. What　　C. How　　D. How a

10. ____ good time we are having!

A. What a　　B. What　　C. How　　D. How a

【感叹句练习】

1. —Hello，Zhu Hua. I'll have to return to Canada because I've worked here for a year.

—____!

A. What time flies　　B. How time flies　　C. What does time fly　　D. How does time fly

2. _______! You should take this chance to attend it.

A. How important conference is it　　B. How an important conference it is

C.What an important conference is it　　D. What an important conference it is

3. —What sport do you like best?

—Springboard diving（跳板跳水）.

—___to dive into water from high board!

A. What a fun is it　　B. How fun it is　　C. How a fun is it　　D. What fun it is

4. ____for us to surf（冲浪）on the sea in summer!

A. What exciting is it　B. How exciting is it　　C. What exciting it is　　D. How exciting it is

5. _____he gave that we should take more exercise in our spare time!

A. What a good advice　　B. How a good advice

C. What good advice　　D. How good advice

6. We haven't seen each other for many months. ___!

A. What I missed you　　B. What did I miss you

C. How I missed you　　D. How did I miss you

7. ___it is for us to see that he does his work so well!

A. What surprise　　B. How surprise

C. What a surprise　　D. How a surprise

8. _____these ancient buildings in this city are!

A. What perfectly protected　　B. How perfect protected

C. How perfectly protected　　D. What perfect protected

【参考答案】

1—8　BDDDCCCC

【实例解析】

1.（2013 浙江义乌）—_____is the National Culture Exhibition held in Yiwu? —Every year.

A. How far　　B. How long　　C. How soon　　D. How often

2.（2013 贵州铜仁）—Are you afraid of dogs?— _______________.

A. Yes，I am　　B. Yes，I do　　C. No，I don't　　D. Yes，I did

3.（2013 新疆）He has never been to Urumqi，______?

A. has he　　B. hasn't he　　C. is he　　D. isn't he

4.（2013 辽宁大连）—_______is the boy with a pair of glasses? —My brother，John.

A. How B. Who C. Where D. What

5.（2013 山东淄博）—How do you like the program *The Voice of China*?

—________amazing program it is! Many people like to watch it.

A. What B. How an C. What an D. How

6.（2013 贵州黔东南）_____ hard and you'll succeed sooner or later.

A. Study B. To study C. Studying D. Studied

7.（2013 黑龙江大庆）________ fine weather today! Why not go out for a walk?

A. What a B. What C. How D. How a

8.（2013 黑龙江牡丹江）I can visit many places of interest as a tour guide. _______interesting job it is!

A. What an B. What C. How

9.（2013 山东东营）Look at the smog（雾霾）. ________bad weather it is!

A. How B. How a C. What D. What a

10.（2013 山东威海）— ______are you leaving for Beijing? —In a couple of days.

A. How far B. How often C. How soon D. How long

11.（2013 江苏徐州）—________ model plane is this? —I think it's Jim's. Look，his name is on it.

A. Who B. What C. Whose D. Where

12.（2013 江苏淮安）—What brought joy to Linda just now? —________.

A. Received a gift B. She received a gift

C. Receiving a gift D. Because she received a gift

13.（2013 江苏淮安）—________ do you usually go to school，Simon? —By bike.

A. When B. How C. What D. Where

14.（2013 湖南益阳）—Jim had nothing for breakfast this morning，__?

—____. He got up too late.

A. had she；Yes B. hadn't he；Yes C. did he；No

15.（2013 湖北宜昌）—______ is the street crowded with so many people?

—Because they are waiting to watch the boat races.

A. Why B. Where C. How D. Who

16.（2013 湖北十堰）There's little important news in the newspaper today，___________?

A. isn't there B. is there C. is it D. are there

17.（2013 江苏南京）— ___________film do you prefer，*Lost in Thailand* or *Life of Pi*，Madee?

—*Lost in Thailand*. I like comedies because they often make me，laugh.

A. What B. Whatever C. Whose D. Which

18.（2013 四川宜宾）—Sam didn't go to school yesterday，did he? —______. He was ill yesterday.

A. Yes，he did B. No，he did C. No，he didn't D. Yes，he didn't

19.（2013 湖南邵阳）There is little milk in the fridge，__________?

A. is there B. isn't there C. isn't it

20.（2013 山东滨州）— ________do you know so much about the UFO?

—I usually get the information by surfing the Internet.

A. How B. What C. Which D. Where

21.（2013 浙江温州）—It's Father's Day，_________? —Yes. Let's buy a gift for Dad.

A. isn't it B. doesn't it C. isn't he D. doesn't he

22.（2013 上海）—__have you been in the sports club?—Since the first month I came to the school.

A. How old B. How long C. How much D. How soon

23.（2013 山东济南）—Do you like summer or winter? —__________. I really like the snow.

A. Yes，I do　　B. No，I don't　　C. Summer　　D. Winter

24.（2013 山东济南）—__________ does your new friend look like?

—He is tall with short blonde hair and big blue eyes.

A. How　　B. Who　　C. What　　D. Where

25.（2013 甘肃兰州）—He hasn't watched the movie *So Young*，has he?

—________. He told me it's very moving and interesting，he'd like to watch it again.

A. Yes，he has　　B. Yes，he hasn't　　C. No，he hasn't　　D. No，he has

26.（2013 贵州黔东南）_____ hard and you'll succeed sooner or later.

A. Study　　B. To study　　C. Studying　　D. Studied

27.（2013 四川南充）________ call me Wangwang! It's my dog's name.

A. Not　　B. No　　C. Don't

【答案与解析】

1. 考查特殊疑问词的用法。根据答句“每年”可知上句是对频率提问，故选 D。

2. 考查一般疑问句的回答。问句是含有系动词的一般疑问句，所以回答也应是含有系动词的，故选 A。

3. 考查反义疑问句的用法。never“绝不，从不”为表示否定意义的词，所以前面陈述句应视为否定句，根据反义疑问句“前肯后否，前否后肯”的原则，后面简略问句应为肯定形式，故排除 B，D 两项。所给句子为现在完成时，故选 A。

4. 考查特殊疑问词的用法。由答语句意“是我的弟弟（哥哥）约翰”可知上文提问的是人，故选 B。

5. 考查感叹句的疑问词。感叹句中 program 为单数可数名词，前面需要用 What an。故选 C。

6. 考查祈使句的用法。表示向对方提出建议或期望，往往用祈使句，祈使句是以动词原形开头的句子，故选 A。

7. 考查感叹句。weather 是不可数名词，前面不能加冠词。故选 B。

8. 考查感叹句的用法。what 对名词进行感叹，how 对形容词进行感叹，句中 job 是可数名词单词，interesting 是以元音因素开头的单词，故用 what an。故选 A。

9. 考查感叹句。在感叹句中 what 后面接的是名词，how 后接形容词。bad weather 是不可数名词，故其前用 what 感叹，不用不定冠词。故选 C。

10. 考查疑问词组的辨析。根据答语“in a couple of days”可知是对将来一段时间的提问，how soon“多久以后”，用来提问“in+一段时间”，故选 C。

11. 考查疑问词的用法。由答句“it's Jim's”知，问句意为“这是谁的飞机模型”，故用 Whose。故选 C。

12. 考查特殊疑问句的答语。问句中的疑问词是 what，因此用名词或动名词作答语，选项中只有 C 是动名词，故选 C。

13. 考查疑问词的用法。when“什么时候”，how“怎样”，what“什么”，where“在哪里”。因答句中的 by bike 是一种方式，问句意为“你通常怎样上学，西蒙”，用 how 提问方式。故选 B。

14. 考查反义疑问句的用法。由 nothing 可知前半句是否定句，故反义疑问句部分用肯定句，故排除 B。本句为一般过去时，故用助动词 did。故选 C。

15. 考查疑问词的辨析。四个选项中，只有 why 符合句意“——为什么街上有这么多人？——因为他们在等着看龙舟赛。”故选 A。

16. 考查反义疑问句的用法。反义疑问句的规则是 “前肯后否”或者“前否后肯”。题干中的 little 具有否定意义，所以用“前否后肯”，谓语动词是 is，故反义疑问句用 is，故选 B。

17. What“什么”；Whatever“无论什么”；whose“谁的”；Which“哪一个”。句意：——马蒂，你更喜欢哪一部电影，《泰囧》还是《少年派的奇幻漂流》？——《泰囧》。我喜欢喜剧，因为他们常常让我大笑不已。结合语境可知选 D。

18. 考查反义疑问句的用法。由答语后句“昨天他生病了”可知，Sam 昨天没有来上学，事实是否定的，应用否定回答。故选 C。

19. 考查反义疑问句的用法。Little“几乎没有”，是否定词。反义疑问句遵循“前否后肯”的原则，所以疑问部分用 is there。故选 A。

20. 考查特殊疑问词的辨析。由答语“我通过上网获取信息。”可知询问的是方式，故选 A。

21. 考查反义疑问句的用法。根据反义疑问句的句式结构“前肯后否”和上半句的主语 it 可知正确答案选 A。

22. 考查疑问副词的用法。how long 表示“(延续)多长时间”，回答用 for 或 since 引导的时间状语。故选 B。

23. 考查选择疑问句的应答。选择疑问句不能用 Yes 或 No 回答。根据答语第二句句意“我真的很喜欢雪”判断答语选用“winter 冬季”，故选 D。

24. 考查特殊疑问词的辨析。由答语“He is tall with short blonde hair and big blue eyes”判断问句是在提问长相，需要用“What does sb. look like?”提问，故选 C。

25. 考查反义疑问句的回答。由答语后一分句“他告诉我这部电影动人有趣”可知答者对“是否看过这部电影”持肯定态度，用 yes 回答，排除 C，D；而 B 项是错误搭配。故选 A。

26. 考查祈使句的用法。表示向对方提出建议或期望，往往用祈使句，祈使句是以动词原形开头的句子，故选 A。

27. 考查祈使句的用法。祈使句的肯定句结构为：动词原形+其他；祈使句的否定句结构为：Don't+动词原形+其他；故选 C。

12.6 否定结构

1. 否定句的基本规则

在任何语言中都存在表示否定意义的句子。英文表示“否定”意义的句子必须遵守一些规定，表 12-7 是否定句子的例子。

表 12-7 否定句示例

肯定句子	否定句子
I like music.	I don't like music.
He loves swimming.	He does not love swimming.
They have come to work.	They have not come to work.
Mary went to see a movie yesterday.	Mary did not go to see a movie yesterday.
John is a good boy.	John is not a good boy.
I will go to New York tomorrow.	I will not go to New York tomorrow.
He can sing.	He can not sing.
You may go now.	You may not go now.
He should sleep early.	He should not sleep early.
It is raining now.	It is not raining now.
It rains very often here.	It does not rain very often here.
He has a lot of money.	He does not have a lot of money.
It is exciting to see this game.	It is not exciting to see this game.
He asked me three questions.	He did not ask me three questions.

从以上例子可以归纳出以下的规则：

（1）动词 to be 后面可以直接加 not。例如：

He is not a good teacher.

Mary was not very happy when she was young.

They are not strong boys.

Peter is not coming.

John is not going to work.

（2）助动词后面可以直接加 not。例如：

He has not written any letter.

They will not come.

He cannot swim.

They should not cry very often.

Tom had not eaten any thing before you came.

He may never eat cakes in the future.

John has not lived here.

（3）一般句子的动词必须加入 do 或它的变形。例如：

He does not smoke.

He did not go.

I do not love sports.

You do not like to eat fish.

They do not swim very well.

We did not see that movie.

在英文中，可以用 have to 来代替 must，以下是 have to 的例子：

He has to go to Chicago tomorrow. 他明天应该去芝加哥。

They had to buy three tickets to go to the concert. 他们必须买三张票去听音乐会。

I have to work very hard. 我必须努力工作。

含有 have to 的句子，如要改成否定句子，必须在 have to 前面加 do 或它的变形，请看以下例子：

肯定句子：	否定句子：
He has to eat a lot of food.→	He does not have to eat a lot of food.
He had to leave.→	He did not have to leave.
I have to write that letter.→	I do not have to write that letter.

【练习】

将以下肯定句改成否定句。

1. I saw your brother last night.
2. I like apples.
3. She is a beautiful girl.
4. They can play violin very well.
5. Mr. Chang must answer the following questions.
6. He went to see his brother last night.
7. He could sing many songs.
8. He will buy this car.

9. It rained heavily last night.
10. I have lived here for three years.
11. He has to see his mother.
12. He had to stay here yesterday.

2. no，never 和 any 的用法

要达成否定的意思，有时也可以用 no 和 never 这些词，no 必须接名词，请看下面的例子：
1. I saw no students here.
2. There are no lakes in this country.
3. I have no money.
4. I had no choice.
5. He has no friends.
以上这些例子也可以用 not 来表示否定的意思，如果用 not，则以上的句子应该照下面的方式改写：
1. I did not see any student here.
2. We can not find any lake in this country.
3. I do not have any money.
4. I did not have any choice.
5. He does not have any friends.
除 not 之外，never 也可以表达否定的意思，以下例子均使用了 never。值得注意的是 never 常用在完成式的句子里，如：

I have never gone there.
He has never written any song.
They have never washed their clothes.

3. 英语否定句的分类

（1）全部否定。
此结构的意思是"都不是"。常用于表示全部否定的词有：no，not，never，nor，neither，none，nobody，nothing，nowhere，not at all，by no means，in no way 等。例如：

Clearly，this was a person who took considerable pride in personal appearance. David King，the receptionist，is unusual，but by no means unique.

很明显，这是一个对自己外表相当骄傲的人。大卫·金，一个接待员，是不普通的，但绝不是唯一的。（by no means 绝不是）

（2）部分否定。
部分否定往往翻译为"不都是"，部分否定主要是由代表全体意义的代词如 all，both，each，every，everybody，everyday，everywhere 或代表全体意义的副词如 always，entirely，wholly，completely，together，often，absolutely 等，与否定词 not 搭配使用。例如：

But not all parts of the brain are equally involved；the limbic system is especially active，while the prefrontal cortex is relatively quiet.

但是并不是所有的部分都平等地参与：脑边缘系统是尤其活跃的，然而前额的表皮是相对安静的。（此句中 not all 表示部分否定"不是所有"）

（3）双重否定。
双重否定即在一个句子中出现两次否定，也就是"否定+否定=肯定"，如 no…not（没有……不）；without…not（没有……就不）；never（no）…without（没有……不）等。例如：

But it is hardly inevitable that companies on the Web will need to push strategies to make money.

可以避免的是，网络上的公司将需要求助于推动策略来赚钱。（hardly inevitable 双重否定，表肯定）

（4）形式是肯定，意义表否定的结构。

此结构表面上看上去没有否定词，但确是表达否定的含义“几乎不”或“几乎没有”。如：few/little，hardly，seldom，rarely，nearly nothing 等。例如：

Yet few seem willing to try to reverse it. 然而，几乎没有人愿意扭转它。

（5）转移否定。

转移否定，即句中的否定虽然出现在谓语部分，否定范围却不在主句谓语动词本身，而转移到了句子中的宾语、状语或其他成分上。这种形式比较常见的有以下两种情况：

① 转移否定多用于表思维活动。如：believe（相信），expect（期望），hope（希望），imagine（想象），think（认为）等。例如：

I don’t think he will pass the exam. 我认为他考试会不及格的。

② 主句的谓语动词是表感觉的系动词，通常也用于转移否定句。这类动词有：seem（好像），feel（感觉），appear（出现），look like（看起来像）等。例如：

It doesn’t look like it’s going to rain. =It looks like it isn’t going to rain. 好像不会下雨。

No matter how hard he studies，he never seems to be able to pass the exam. 不管他多么努力地学习，他似乎永远也考不及格。

13　句子的类型

13.1　句子的分类

（1）按照句式结构，句子可分为三种：简单句、并列句、复合句。
（2）按照句子功能，句子可分为四类：陈述句、疑问句、祈使句、感叹句。

13.2　简单句

13.2.1　简单句的定义

简单句是指只包含一个主语或并列主语和一个谓语或并列谓语的句子，且句子的各个成分都是由单词或短语来组成的。

13.2.2　简单句的五种基本句型（见表 13-1）

表 13-1　简单句的五种基本句型

句　型	例　句
主语+系动词+表语	He is a student.
主语+不及物动词	We work.
主语+及物动词+宾语	Henry bought a dictionary.
主语+及物动词+双宾语（间接宾语+直接宾语）	My father bought me a car.
主语+及物动词+复合宾语（宾语+宾补）	Tom made the baby laugh.

1. 主语+谓语动词

该句型中的谓语动词为不及物动词，后面不可接宾语，但可接状语或其他成分。例：
Nobody went out.
The children are playing.
We study hard.

2. 主语+谓语动词+宾语

该句型中的谓语为及物动词，后面必须接宾语，且只能接一个宾语。例：
We love our country.

The old woman looks after the baby carefully.

He dreamed a terrible dream last night.

3. 主语+谓语动词+表人的宾语+表物的宾语

该句型中的动词为双宾语动词，后面必须接两个宾语。该类动词主要有 give，show，send，pass，lend，return，promise，owe；make，buy，do，fetch，paint，save，spare，find 等。例：

He gave his sister the piano.

He gave the piano to his sister.

He bought his wife a coat.

He bought a coat for his wife.

4. 主语+谓语动词+宾语+补足语

该句型中的谓语动词后面必须接宾语，且还要用一个补足语来补充说明宾语的状态。例：

I found the book easy.

The teacher told us to study hard.

We heard him singing.

5. 主语+系动词+表语

该句型需注意：

（1）该句型无被动形式。

（2）无进行时态。

（3）作非谓语时常用 V-ing 形式。

例：The flower is beautiful.

He is a teacher.

系动词的分类：

（1）变化系动词：turn，become，grow，fall，get，go，come，run 等。例：

She becomes a lawyer.

She turns lawyer.

（2）状态系动词：be，seem，remain，stay，stand，keep 等。例：

He always kept silent at meeting.

（3）感官系动词：feel，smell，sound，taste，look，appear 等。例：

The milk tastes sour.

The cloth feels soft.

（4）终止性系动词：prove，turn out 等。例：

His plan turned out a success.

13.2.3　句子的成分

句子是由词按照一定的语法结构组成的。组成句子的各个部分叫作句子的成分。句子的成分包括：主语、谓语、表语、宾语（直接和间接宾语）、宾语补足语、定语和状语。主语和谓语是句子的主体部分（在英语中，句子一般必须有主语和谓语），表语、宾语和宾语补足语是谓语里的组成部分，其他成份如定语和状语是句子的次要成分。例如：

主语　　　　谓　语

We　　　study and work.

有些谓语是由系动词和另一个词（或词组）构成的，和系动词一起构成谓语的这个词（或词组）叫作表语，例如：

主语　　　谓　　　语

He　　　is　　a student.

（系动词）（表语）

一个句子除了主语和谓语外，还常常有其他成分：

（1）宾语：用来完成动词的意思，表示动作的对象，例如：

I study English.

Read the text.

（2）定语：用来修饰一个名词或代词。例如：

I have a red pencil.

（3）状语：用来修饰动词、形容词或副词，例如：

Does she work hard（努力）？

英词各个句子成分在句子中都有比较固定的位置，一般只有一定词类的词才能作一定的句子成分。

注：在分析句子时，可以仿照上面的例子采用简易的图解符号，即：

主语 ______　谓语______　宾语______　定语……　状语______　补语〈　〉

1. 句子成分的分类

（1）主语。

主语是谓语讲述的对象，表示所说的“是什么”或“是谁”。一般由名词、代词、不定代词或相当于名词的单词或短语来充当，也有从句充当的现象。大多数主语都在句首。如：

讲述“谁”We work in a big factory.

讲述“什么”：The classroom is very big.

数词作主语：Three are enough. 三个人就够了。

不定式作主语：To operate on the blind is one of the ORBIS Doctor’s job.

从句作主语 What we need is food. 我们需要的是食物。

在“There be…”句型中，主语的位置在中间。如：There are some bottles of milk in the box.

在个别句型中，主语在整个句子后面，这时前面用 it 作形式主语。如：

It is very interesting to play the game called “treat or trick”.

It took two workers about three months to build the house.

（2）谓语。

谓语是用来说明主语“做什么”“是什么”或“怎么样”，谓语必须是动词，谓语和主语在“人称”和“数”两方面必须一致。如：

He is very generous.

She looks very smart and cool.

We have finished the job.

He can speak German.

（3）表语。

表语说明主语“是什么”或“怎么样”，由名词、形容词、介词、副词、不定式及相当于名词的词或短语来充当，它的位置在系动词后面。如：

形容词作表语：You look younger than before.

名词作表语：My father is a teacher.

副词作表语：Everyone is here.

介词短语作表语：They are at the theatre.

不定式作表语：My job is to teach them English.

动名词作表语：Her job is training the nurses.

从句作表语：That is why he didn't come to school yesterday.

（4）宾语。

宾语是动作、行为的对象，由名词、代词、不定式、或相当于名词的词或短语或从句来充当，它和谓语动词一起说明主语是什么，通常放在谓语动词后面。有时，会有双宾语。如：

名词作宾语：He never forgives others for their mistakes.

代词做宾语：He often helps me.

不定式作宾语：He likes to sleep in the open air.

动名词作宾语：The Americans enjoyed living in China.

从句做宾语：I believe that they can finish the work in time.

直接宾语和间接宾语及物动词作谓语时，后面要跟宾语，宾语分直接宾语和间接宾语。直接宾语是及物动词的对象。但有些动词除了直接宾语外，还需要有一个间接宾语，间接宾语表谓语动作是对谁做的，所以只能用名词或代词来充当。如：We brought them some food.

主　谓　间宾　直宾

间接宾语可以放在直接宾语后面，但必须加 to 或 for。

（5）宾语补足语。

在英语的句子中，有些句子里只有宾语并不能表达完整的意思，还必须在宾语后面加上宾语的补足语才能表达完整的意思。我们把“宾语+宾语补足语”合起来称为复合宾语。名词、动词、形容词、副词、介词短语、不定式、现在分词、过去分词都可以作宾语补足语。如：

名词作宾补：If you let me go，I'll make you king.

形容词作宾补：Don't make your hands dirty.

副词作宾补：We found Li Ming out when we arrived.

介词短语作宾补：Make yourself at home.

省略 to 的不定式作宾补：I saw a girl go into the building.

带 to 的不定式作宾补：The boy ordered the dog to lie down.

现在分词作宾补：The boss kept them working all day.

过去分词作宾补：Yesterday he got his leg broken.

在英语中，常见的“宾语+宾语补足语”的结构有：

①“宾语+名词”。常用于此结构的动词有：call，name，make，find，choose，think，leave 等。如：

We call him Jack.

They made Li Lei their monitor.

②“宾语+形容词”。常见的动词有 think，believe，leave，drive，make，keep，turn，wish，want 等。如：

Do you think his idea wrong?

We must keep our classroom clean.

We can't leave him alone.

Can you get everything ready for the party before Friday?

③“宾语+副词”。副词作宾补常表示宾语的状态，与宾语有逻辑上的主表关系。常见的副词有：down，up，here，there，home，in，out，anywhere 等。如：

Let him in/out.

Mr. Li drove us home.

When got there，we found him out.

④ “宾语+介词短语”。介词短语作宾补常表示其逻辑主语（即宾语）所处的状态，两者有主表的关系。如：

We found everything in good order.

We regard him as our good friend.

He opened the door and found some of his friends in the rain.

⑤ “宾语+不定式”。充当宾补的不定式有三种：

A. 要求带 to 的不定式：The cool water of the lake invited us to swim.

B. 要求不带 to 的不定式：let，make，see，hear，watch 等

The boss made the workers work 12 hours a day.

I often hear him read English in his room.

C. 单词 help 后可加 to 或不加 to。如：

She sometimes helps her mother（to）do housework.

⑥ “宾语+现在分词”。现在分词作宾补，此时该句型中的宾语即为现在分词逻辑上的主语，有着主谓关系。如：

I saw them playing on the playground.

I heard Mary singing in the classroom.

⑦ “宾语+过去分词”。宾语和宾补之间是被动关系，过去分词表示被动和完成。如：

I had my bike stolen.

The teacher explained again and again to make himself understood.

⑧ 形式宾语+形容词。如：

We found it impossible to get there before Saturday.

⑨ 宾语+what 从句。如：

Call me what you like.

Mr. Li has made the factory what it is today.

The mountain village is different from what it was ten years ago.

（6）定语。

定语用来修饰名词或代词。形容词、代词、数词、名词、介词短语、不定式或相当于形容词的词或短语等都可以充当定语。因为它是修饰名词或代词的，而名词和代词可以作主语、表语或宾语，所以定语的位置很灵活，凡是有名词、代词的地方都可以有定语。如：

形容词作定语：The black bike is mine.

代词作定语：What’s your name?

名词作定语：They made some paper flowers.

介词短语作定语：The boys in the room are in Class Three，Grade One.

不定式作短语：I have lots to eat and drink.

从句作定语：The tall boy who is standing there is Peter.

在英语中，并不是所有的定语都放在被修饰词的前面，有的是放在被修饰词的后面，故称“后置定语”。修饰不定代词 something，anything，nothing，something，anyone，somebody，anybody，nobody 的定语必须后置。如：

We’ll go to have something English.

If you don’t know the answer，ask someone else.

Do you have anything important to tell me?

介词短语作定语时要后置。如：

Do you know the boy behind the tree?

The students in the room are all my friends.

I think the picture on the left is better than the one on the right.

动词的不定式作定语时要后置。如：

What about something to drink?

I have no time to travel to China is in Autumn or in Spring.

注意：动词不定式作主语时，to 后面的动词必须是及物动词或相当于及物动词的短语。如果是短语时，那么与动词搭配的介词或副词是不能少的。如：

Do you have any piece of music to listen to?

nearby，below，downstairs 等个别方位词作定语时要后置。如：

We are at the top of the hill. Can you see the village below?

The people downstairs are listening to a talk now?

They took the boy to the hospital nearby at once.

（7）状语。

状语用来修饰动词、形容词或副词。它表示行为发生的时间、地点、目的、方式、程度等，一般由副词、介词短语、不定式、从句或相当于副词的词或短语来充当。状语一般放在句末，但有时也可以放在句首、句中。如：

He did it carefully.

They missed me very much.

Without his help，we couldn't work it out.

In order to catch up with my classmates，I must study hard.

When I was young，I could swim well.

13.2　并列句

13.2.1　并列句的概念

并列句是由并列连词 and，but，or，for，so 等把两个或两个以上互不依从、但意思紧密联系的简单句连在一起而构成的句子。其结构为：简单句+并列连词+简单句。

13.2.2　并列句的分类（见表 13-2）

表 13-2　并列句的分类

分　类	常用并列连词	例　句
联合并列句	and，not only…but also…，neither…nor…，then 等	The teacher's name is Smith，and the student's name is John.
转折并列句	but，still，however，yet，while，when 等	He was a little man with thick glasses,but he had a strange way of making his classes lively and interesting.
选择并列句	or，either…or…，otherwise 等	Hurry up，or you'll miss the train.
因果并列句	so，for，therefore 等	It was late，so we went home.

1. 表示同等关系的并列句

这类并列句常用并列连词 and 连接前后简单句，and 常译为“和”“并且”，也可不译出来。例如：

He likes playing football and he plays well. 他喜欢踢足球，并且踢得很好。

Last year l met Kate and we became friends. 去年我和凯特相遇，我们成了朋友。

2. 表示转折关系的并列句

这类并列句常用并列连词 but（但是），yet（可是），while（而，另一方面），however（可是）等连接前后简单句，but 常译为“但是”“可是”，切不可与从属连词 though 或 although 一起使用。例如：

It has no mouth，but it can talk. 它没有嘴巴，但是它会说话。

School is over，yet all the teachers are still working. 学校放学了，可是老师们仍然在工作。

He wants to be a writer，while I want to be a scientist. 他想当作家，而我则想当科学家。

It’s raining hard，however，we must go out. 雨下得很大，然而我们必须出去。

3. 表示选择关系的并列句

这类并列句常用并列连词 or（或者，否则）等连接前后简单句。or 有两重含义。

（1）译为“或者”，表示选择。例如：

Now you can have a rest or you can go to the cinema. 现在你可以休息，或者去看电影。

（2）译为“否则”“要不然”，表示条件。例如：

You must tell the truth，or you will be punished. 你必须说真话，否则你将会受到惩罚。

4. 表示因果关系的并列句

这类并列句常用并列连词 for，so 等连接前后简单句。

（1）for 在意义上与从属连词 because，since 和 as 相同，但它们引导的是原因状语从句，而 for 则连接两简单句，前者表示结果，后者表示原因。其结构为：简单句（结果）+for+简单句（原因）。例如：

He has many good friends，for he is an honest man. 他有许多好朋友，因为他是个诚实的男子汉。

（2）so 意为“因此”“所以”，但不能与 because 同时出现在同一个句子中。因为 because 是从属连词，而 so 是并列连词，用来连接并列句。其结构为：简单句（原因）+so+简单句（结果）。例如：

Mr. Li went to his hometown，so Mr. Wang was taking his class instead. 李老师回家乡去了，所以王老师替他上课。

5. 其他形式的并列句

（1）“祈使句+and+简单句”。祈使句表示一个条件，并列连词 and 引导的简单句则表示一个较好的结果，谓语常用一般将来时。例如：

Use your head，and you will find away. 动脑筋，你就会想出办法来。

（2）“祈使句+or+简单句”。祈使句表示一个条件，并列连词 or 后的简单句则表示一个不愉快或不理想的结果。例如：

Study hard，or you will fall behind the others. 努力学习，否则你就会落于别人。

（3）“either...or”结构表示“不是……就是……”“或者……或者……”。例如：

Either my uncle can do it，or my aunt can do it. 我叔叔可以做那件事，或者我婶婶也可以做。

习惯上将两个句子合并成 Either my uncle or my aunt can do it.

（4）“not only…but also”意思为“不仅……而且……”，例如：

Not only the students have missed the school car，but also the teacher has missed the school car. 不仅学

生，而且他们的老师都误了校车。

（5）“neither…nor…”意为“既不……也不……”，“两者都不……”，用法与“either…or…”“not only…but also…”相同。

6. 使用并列句要注意的几种情况

（1）并列句有时可不用连词，而用分号隔开（前后句之间的关系须相当紧密）。例如：

We fished all day；we didn't catch a fish. 我们钓了一天的鱼，一条鱼也没钓到。

（2）并列连词后的简单句如果与其前的简单句有相同的部分，则相同的部分常可省略。例如：

My father works in a factory and my mother in a school. 我父亲在工厂工作，母亲在学校工作。

（3）由 so，nor，neither 连接的并列句，后一简单句为避免重复，其成分常倒装并省略一些。例如：

He is not a student，nor am I. 他不是学生，我也不是。

Beibei can swim，so can I. 贝贝会游泳，我也会。

单项选择。

1.（2009・泰安）—Can you help me with my business?

—I'd like to, ____ I have a meeting to attend.

A. because　B. as　C. but　D. and

2.（2009・福州）—I hear ____ your grandpa ____ your grandma like watching Min Opera.

—Right, just as many old people do in Fuzhou.

A. both; and　B. either; or　C. neither; nor　D. not only; but also

3. Work hard, ____ you'll pass the English exam this time.

A. or　B. but　C. because　D. and

4. It's a nice house ____ it hasn't got a garden.

A. and　B. or　C. but　D. so

5.（2009・江西）Help others whenever you can ____ you'll make the world a nicer place to live.

A. and　B. or　C. unless　D. but

6. Hurry, ____ we shall be late for school.

A. and　B. or　C. but　D. so

7. She asked me to go, ____ I went.

A. for　B. so　C. but　D. or

8. The train didn't stop ____ made us stay at school until 7 o'clock in the morning.

A. but　B. so　C. and it　D. or

9. She didn't like to play basketball, ____ he likes singing and dancing.

A. or　B. but　C. and　D. so

10.（2003・河北）Mr. Brown knows little Japanese, ______he can't understand the instructions on the bottle Of the pills.

A. so　B. or　C. but　D. for

11.（2003・北京海淀）—Can you play football?

—Yes, I can, ________I can't play very well.

A. or　B. and　C. so　D. but

12.（2003・黑龙江）You must work hard, _____ you will fall behind.

A. and　B. but　C. so　D. or

13.3 复合句

13.3.1 复合句的分类

复合句由一个主句和一个或多个从句构成，之间由从属连词连接。主句和从句都有完整的主语和谓语结构，主句是一个句子的主体，从句是句子的一个成分不能独立。复合句按照从句的性质可分为名词性从句、形容词性从句和副词性从句；按照从句在整个句子中的成分来分，分为主语从句、表语从句、宾语从句、同位语从句、定语从句和状语从句，具体见表 13-3。

表 13-3 复合句的分类

<table>
<tr><td rowspan="6">复合句</td><td rowspan="4">名词性从句：在句子中相当于名词</td><td>主语从句</td></tr>
<tr><td>表语从句</td></tr>
<tr><td>宾语从句</td></tr>
<tr><td>同位语从句</td></tr>
<tr><td>形容词性从句：具有形容词的作用</td><td>定语从句</td></tr>
<tr><td>副词性从句：具有副词的作用</td><td>状语从句</td></tr>
</table>

1. 主语从句

用作主语的从句叫作主语从句。

（1）由 what，whatever，whoever 等代词引导主语从句。如：

What she likes is watching the children play.

Whatever you have heard must be kept secret.

Whoever fails to pass the exam will be dismissed.

（2）that 引导主语从句。如：

It is tight that you told him the truth.

（3）由连接副词 whether，when，how，where，why 引导主语从句。如：

Why the fire broke out at night remains a mystery.

Whether we can help you is a difficult question.

When the meeting will be held has not been decided.

（4）主语从句后移。

主语从句虽然可以放在谓语的前面，但是当主语从句较长而谓语较短时，常用代词作形式主语，而把主语从句放到句子后边。如：

It is uncertain whether he wants to go or not.

It turned out true that he had done nothing wrong.

2. 表语从句

用作表语的从句叫作表语从句，通常由 that，what，where，why，how 等连接词引导。

（1）if，whether，that 引导表语从句，有时也用 as，because，as if，as though，lest 引导。如：

The question is that we must be good at learning from others.

It looks as if it's going to rain.

（2）what，which，who 等连接代词引导表语从句。如：

That is what I want to tell you.

The question is which of the classes we choose to be the excellent one.

（3）how，when，where，why 等连接副词引导表语从句。如：

The question is how we can help him.

That is why he has been late.

3. 宾语从句

在句子中起宾语作用的从句叫作宾语从句。宾语从句的引导词和主语从句的引导词相同。宾语从句可以作及物动词的宾语、作短语动词的宾语、作介词的宾语。

（1）作及物动词的宾语。如：

Everybody knows that money doesn't grow on trees.

（2）作短语动词的宾语。如：

Please go and find out when the train will arrive.

（3）作介词的宾语。如：

I am interested in what she is doing.

（4）否定的转移。如：

I don't suppose you're used to this diet. 我想你不习惯这种饮食。

I don't believe she'll arrive before 8. 我相信她 8 点之前不会到。

4. 同位从句

一般跟在某些名词如 answer（答案），hope（希望），fact（事实），belief（信仰），news（消息），idea（主意；观念），promise（承诺），information（信息），conclusion（结论），order（命令），suggestion（建议），problem（问题），thought（想法）等后面。如：

I had no idea that you were here.

She told us her hope that she would become a pianist.

He made a promise that he would never come late.

He hasn't made the decision whether he will go there.

I have small doubt whether he is suitable for the job.

I have no idea what he is doing now.

It's a question how he did it.

5. 状语从句

（1）地点状语从句。地点状语从句通常由 where，wherever 引导。如：

Wherever I am I will be thinking of you.

（2）方式状语从句。方式状语从句通常由 as，（just）as…so…，as if，as though 引导。

① as，（just）as…so…引导方式状语从句。如：

Always do to the others as you would be done by. 你希望人家怎样待你，你就要怎样待人。

As water is to fish，so air is to man. 我们离不开空气，犹如鱼儿离不开水。

Just as we sweep our rooms，so we should sweep backward ideas from our minds.

正如打扫房屋一样，我们也要扫除我们头脑中落后的东西。

② as if，as though 引导方式状语从句时，两者的意义和用法相同，引出的状语从句谓语多用虚拟语气，表示与事实相反，有时也用陈述语气，表示所说情况是事实或实现的可能性较大。常译作“仿佛……似的”“好像……似的”。如：

They completely ignore these facts as if（as though）they never existed.

他们完全忽略了这些事实，就仿佛它不存在似的。（与事实相反，谓语用虚拟语气。）

He looks as if（as though）he had been hit by lighting.

他那样子就像被雷击了似的。（与事实相反，谓语用虚拟语气。）

It looks as if the weather may pick up very soon.

看来天气很快就会好起来。（实现的可能性较大，谓语用陈述语气。）

（3）原因状语从句。如：

Because he is very hard-working，he passed the exam.

（4）目的状语从句。表示目的状语的从句可以由 that，so that，in order that，in case 等词引导。如：

You must speak louder so that/in order that you can be heard by all.

Better take more clothes in case the weather is cold.

（5）结果状语从句。结果状语从句常由 so…that 或 such…that 引导。如：

The boy is so young that he can't go to school.

He is such a young boy that he can't go to school

（6）条件状语从句。连接词主要有 if，unless，as/so long as，on condition that 等。if 引导的条件句有真实条件句和非真实条件句两种。非真实条件句已在虚拟语气中阐述。如：

Let's go out for a walk unless you are too tired.

If you are not too tired，let's go out for a walk.

（7）让步状语从句。如：

Although it's raining，they are still working in the field.

We'll make a trip even though the weather is bad.

Whether you believe it or not，it is true.

No matter what happened，he would not mind.

Whatever happened，he would not mind.

（8）时间状语从句。由时间连接词引导的状语从句叫作时间状语从句。

① 由 when，while，just，just as，as，after，before，since，until，as soon as 引导的时间状语从句。如：

When you think you know nothing，then you begin to know something. 当你以为自己一无所知的时候，你就是在开始知道一些事物了。

You can feel the air moving as your hand pushes through it. 当你的手在空气中挥动的时候，你就能感觉到空气在流动。

Our headmaster laughed as she spoke. 我们的校长边谈边笑。

When she came in，I stopped eating. 她进来时，我停止吃饭。（瞬时动词）

While my wife was reading the newspaper，I was watching TV. 我妻子在看报纸，而我在看电视。

We always sing as we walk. 我们总是边走边唱。（as 表示“一边……一边”）

As we were going out，it began to snow. 当我们出门时，开始下雪了。（as 强调句中两个动作紧接着先后发生，而不强调开始下雪的特定时间）

I didn't go to bed until（till）my father came back. 直到我父亲回来我才上床睡觉。

It was not until the meeting was over that he began to teach me English. 直到散会之后他才开始教我英语。

I worked until he came back. 我一直工作到他回来。

He will call you as soon as he arrives there. 他一到达那里就会给你打电话。

② 由 before 和 after 引导的时间状语从句。如：

It will be four days before they come back. 他们要过四天才能回来。

My father had left for Canada just before the letter arrived. 我父亲恰好在信到之前去加拿大了。

After you think it over，please let me know what you decide. 你仔细考虑过以后，告诉我你是怎样决定的。

After we had finished the work，we went home. 完成工作之后，我们回家了。（从句用过去完成时，主句用一般过去时）

③ 由 by the time 引导的时间状语从句。一般情况下，如果主句的谓语动词用一般过去时，从句的谓语动词用过去完成时；如果主句的谓语动词用一般现在时，从句的谓语动词用将来完成时（主将从现）。如：

By the time you came back，I had finished this book. 到你回来时，我已经写完这本书了。

By the time you come here tomorrow，I will have finished this work. 你明天来这儿的时候，我将已经完成此工作了。

④ 由 each time，every time 和 whenever 引导的时间状语从句。如：

Each time he came to Harbin，he would call on me. 他每次来哈尔滨，总是来看我。

Whenever that man says "To tell the truth"，I suspect that he's about to tell a lie. 每当那个人说"说实在话"的时候，我猜想他就要说谎了。

You grow younger every time I see you. 每次遇到你，都感觉你更年轻了。

6. 定语从句

在复合句中，修饰某一名词或代词，并充当其定语的从句叫作定语从句。被定语从句修饰的名词或代词叫作先行词。定语从句常放在先行词的后面，由关系代词 who，whom，whose，which，that 和关系副词 when，where，why 等引导。

【练习导航】

一、指出下列句子的画线部分是什么句子成分。

1. The students got on the school bus.
2. He handed me the newspaper.
3. I shall answer your question after class.
4. What a beautiful Chinese painting!
5. They went hunting together early in the morning.
6. His job is to train swimmers.
7. He took many photos of the palaces in Beijing.
8. There is going to be an American film tonight.
9. He is to leave for Shanghai tomorrow.
10. His wish is to become a scientist.
11. He managed to finish the work in time.
12. Tom came to ask me for advice.
13. He found it important to master English.
14. Do you have anything else to say?
15. To be honest，your pronunciation is not so good.
16. Would you please tell me your address?
17. He sat there，reading a newspaper.
18. It is our duty to keep our classroom clean and tidy.
19. He noticed a man enter the room.
20. The apples tasted sweet.

二、用符号画出下文各句中的定语（__）、状语（==）、补语（~~）。

Most Saturday evenings there is a party，even at harvest time. These parties often make us very happy. We cook meat on an open fire outside. It's great! Americans eat a lot of meat — too much in my opinion. Some of my friends drink beer. I don't，because I have to drive home after the party. In your letter you asked about the time in different areas of the States. There are five different time areas in the States. In my state we are fourteen hours behind Beijing time. How many different time areas do you have in China? Well，I must stop and get some sleep. Please give my best regards to your parents.

三、分析下列句子的成分。

1. Our school is not far from my home.
2. It is a great pleasure to talk with you.
3. All of us considered him honest.
4. My grandfather bought me a pair of sports shoes.
5. He broke a piece of glass.
6. He made it clear that he would leave the city.
7. I love you more than her，child.
8. Trees turn green when spring comes.
9. They pushed the door open.
10. Grandma told me an interesting story last night.
11. He wrote carefully some letters to his friends.
12. All the students think highly of his teaching
13. We need a place twice larger than this one.
14. He asked us to sing an English song.
15. Don't get nervous，help yourself to what you like.
16. We will make our school more beautiful.
17. He didn't come. That is why he didn't know.
18. She showed us her many of her pictures.
19. The old man lives a lonely life.
20. Luckily the 1989 earthquake did not happen in the center of town.
21. The cars made in Japan are better than those in Germany.
22. There are so many people in the hall that it's hard for me to find him.
23. No matter how difficult the task may be，we must fulfil it this month.
24. Go back where you came from.
25. We must do whatever the people want us to do.
26. At last he got home，tired and hungry.
27. Would you please pass me the cup?
28 Mary handed her homework to the teacher.
29. Do you know the latest news about him?
30. I'll get my hair cut tomorrow.

四、区分下文中的复合句、简单句、并列句。

I hope you are very well. I'm fine，but tired. Right now it is the summer vacation and I'm helping my Dad on the farm. August is the hottest month here. It is the time of year for the rice harvest，so every day I work from dawn until dark. Sometimes we go on working after dark by the lights of our tractors. We grow rice in the

south of the States，but in the north where it is colder they grow wheat. We have a lot of machines on the farm. Although the farm is large，my Dad has only two men working for him. But he employs more men for the harvest. My brother takes care of the vegetable garden. It doesn't often rain in the summer here. As a result，we have to water the vegetable garden. Every evening we pump water from a well. It then runs along channels to different parts of the garden.

Most Saturday evenings there is a party，even at harvest time. These parties often make us very happy. We cook meat on an open fire outside. It's great! Americans eat a lot of meat—too much in my opinion. Some of my friends drink beer. I don't，because I have to drive home after the party. In your letter you asked about the time in different areas of the States. There are five different time areas in the States. In my state we are fourteen hours behind Beijing time. How many different time areas do you have in China? Well，I must stop and get some sleep. Please give my best regards to your parents.

【参考答案】

一、

1. 主语，定语　2. 间接宾语　3. 谓语，状语　4. 定语　5. 状语，状语
6. 定语，表语　7. 宾语，状语　8. 谓语，主语　9. 谓语　10. 主语，表语
11. 谓语，宾语　12. 状语　13. 形式宾语，真正宾语　14. 宾语、定语
15. 插入语，状语　16. 宾语（间宾+直宾）　17. 状语，状语
18. 形式主语，表语，宾补　19. 宾补　20. 表语

二、

1—5　CBDBB　6—10　ACBAB

三、

1. 主语+系动词+表语　2. 主语+系动词+表语
3. 主语+动词+宾语+宾语补足语　4. 主语+双宾动词+间接宾语+直接宾语
5. 主语+及物动词+宾语　6. 主语+动词+形式宾语 it+宾语补足语+宾语
7. 主语+及物动词+宾语　8. 主语+系动词+表语
9. 主语+动词+宾语+宾语补足语　10. 主语+双宾动词+间接宾语+直接宾语
11. 主语+双宾动词+间接宾语+直接宾语　12 主语+及物动词+宾语
13. 主语+及物动词+宾语　14. 主语+动词+宾语+宾语补足语
15. 主语+系动词+表语　16. 主语+动词+宾语+宾语补足语
17. 主语+系动词+表语　18. 主语+双宾动词+间接宾语+直接宾语
19. 主语+不及物动词　20. 主语+不及物动词
21. 主语+系动词+表语　22. 主语+系动词+表语
23. 主语+及物动词+宾语　24. 主语+不及物动词
25. 主语+及物动词+宾语　26. 主语+不及物动词
27. 主语+双宾动词+间接宾语+直接宾语　28. 主语+双宾动词+间接宾语+直接宾语
29. 主语+及物动词+宾语　30. 主语+动词+宾语+宾语补足语

四、

I hope you are very well（复合句）. I'm fine，but tired（简单句）. Right now it is the summer vacation and I'm helping my Dad on the farm（并列句）. August is the hottest month here（简单句）. It is the time of year for the rice harvest，so every day I work from dawn until dark.（并列句）Sometimes we go on working after dark by the lights of our tractors(简单句). We grow rice in the south of the States，but in the north where it is colder they grow wheat（并列复合句）. We have a lot of machines on the farm（简单句）. Although the farm is large，my Dad has only two men working for him(复合句). But he employs more men for the harvest（简单句）. My brother takes care of the vegetable garden（简单句）. It doesn't often rain in the summer here

（简单句）. As a result，we have to water the vegetable garden（简单句）. Every evening we pump water from a well（简单句）. It then runs along channels to different parts of the garden（简单句）.

Most Saturday evenings there is a party，even at harvest time（简单句）.These parties often make us very happy（简单句）. We cook meat on an open fire outside（简单句）. It's great（简单句）! Americans eat a lot of meat — too much in my opinion（简单句）. Some of my friends drink beer（简单句）. I don't，because I have to drive home after the party（复合句）. In your letter you asked about the time in different areas of the States（简单句）. There are five different time areas in the States（简单句）. In my state we are fourteen hours behind Beijing time（简单句）. How many different time areas do you have in China（简单句）? Well，I must stop and get some sleep（简单句）. Please give my best regards to your parents（简单句）.

14 形容词、副词

14.1 形容词

14.1.1 形容词的定义和特征

形容词修饰名词，说明事物或人的性质或特征。通常，可将形容词分成性质形容词和叙述形容词两类，其位置不一定都在名词前面。

14.1.2 形容词的种类

1. 根据其构成分类

（1）简单形容词。如：

kind 善良的　　green 绿色的　　interesting 有趣的

（2）合成形容词。

合成形容词是指由几个词共同组成并起到形容词作用的词。主要用作定语，一般不作表语。

① 数词+名词+形容词。如：

a ten-metre-wide river 一条十米宽的河　　a five-year-old girl 一个五岁的女孩

② 形容词（或数词）+名词+-ed。如：

a middle-aged man 一位中年男子　　a fifteen-storeyed building 一座十五层的大楼

③ 形容词+*v.* -ing 形式。如：

a good-looking man 一位相貌英俊的男子　　an easy-going woman 一位随和的女子

④ 名词+*v.* -ed 形式。如：

a man-made lake 人工湖　　a snow-covered mountain 一座被雪覆盖的山

⑤ 副词/形容词+*v.* -ed 形式。如：

a well-known writer 一位著名的作家　　a new-born baby 一个新生儿

2. 根据与名词的关系分类

（1）限制性形容词：指描述事物本质的形容词，它与名词紧紧相连，这些形容词如果去掉会严重影响名词原来的本意。如：

an English dish 英式菜　　a French table 法国制造的桌子

（2）描述性形容词：又称非限制性形容词，置于名词之前，常对名词进行描述，省略之后也不会影响所修饰名词的本意。如：

a delicious English dish 一道美味的英式菜　　a smooth French table 一张光滑的法国制造的桌子

3. 根据形容词本身的性质分类

（1）等级形容词：指直接说明人或事物的特征、性质并有比较等级变化的形容词，可以用程度副词

来修饰。在句中可作定语、表语和补足语。如：

Mary has a nice voice. 玛丽有一副好嗓子。

Cities today seem to be becoming much busier than ever before.今天的城市似乎变得更加繁忙了。

We're making every effort to make our environment much cleaner and safer.我们在努力使环境变得更加干净、更安全。

（2）表语形容词：有一类形容词在句中常作表语，不作前置定语，这种形容词称为表语形容词。这类形容词没有级的变化，也不可用程度副词修饰。大多数以 a 开头的形容词都属于这一类。例如：afraid 害怕的。

Little Linda is not afraid of dog. 小琳达不害怕狗。

（错）He is an ill man.

（对）The man is ill.

（错）She is an afraid girl.

（对）The girl is afraid.

这类词还有：well，unwell，ill，faint，afraid，alike，alive，alone，asleep，awake 等。

14.1.3 形容词的用法

1. 用作定语

如：Li Mei is a beautiful city girl.

The new student comes from Japan.

2. 用作表语

如：My father's car is very expensive. The English story is very interesting.

常见的后跟形容词作表语的动词有：表示“变成某种状态”的 become，come，fall，get，go，grow，make，turn；表示“保持某种状态”的 continue，hold，keep，lie，remain，stay；表示“感觉”的 appear，feel，look，smell，sound，taste，know。例如：

He turned red when he heard the news.

It's going to stay cold for some time. The beer tastes very delicious.

3. 用作宾语补足语

如：Don't keep the door open. His success made him happy.

4. 某些形容词加上定冠词可以泛指一类人，与谓语动词的复数连接

如：the dead，the living，the rich，the poor，the blind，the hungry。

The poor are losing hope.

有关国家和民族的形容词加上定冠词指这个民族的整体，与动词的复数连用。如：

the British，the English，the French，the Chinese

The English have wonderful sense of humor.

5. 有时也可用作状语或补语

如：Please speak loud and clear.

These soldiers spent three days in the cold weather，cold and hungry.

6. 少数形容词只能作表语，不能作定语

这些形容词包括 ill，asleep，awake，alone，alive，well，worth，glad，unable，afraid 等。例如：
（正）Don't be afraid.（误）Mr Li is an afraid man.
（正）The old man was ill yesterday.（误）This is an ill person.
（正）This place is worth visiting.（误）That is a worth book.

7. 少数形容词只能作定语，不能作表语

这些形容词包括 little，live（活着的），elder，eldest 等。例如：
（正）My elder brother is a doctor.（误）My brother is elder than I.
（正）This is a little house.（误）The house is little.
（正）Do you want live fish or dead one.（误）The old monkey is still live.

8. 形容词的常用句型

（1）It's+形容词+of+sb.+动词不定式。

这一句型表示“某人（做某事）……”。常用的形容词有 good，kind，nice，polite，clever，foolish，lazy，careful，careless，right，wrong 等，用来说明“人”的性质或特征。如：

It's very kind of you to help me. 你能帮助我真是太好了。

It's foolish of you to make such mistake. 你真傻啊，竟然犯这种错误。

（2）It's+形容词+for+sb.+动词不定式。

这一句型表示“做某事对某人来说……”。常用形容词有 difficult，easy，hard，dangerous，safe，useful，pleasant，interesting，impossible 等，用来说明动词不定式的性质、特征。

9. 部分以-ly 结尾的词是副词，但有些形容词也以-ly 结尾

如：friendly，lovely，lonely，likely，lively，daily，weekly，monthly，yearly，early，silly 等。

10. 复合形容词的构成

（1）*adj*.+*n*+ed，如： kind-hearted，red-eyed，white-haired。
（2）*adj*.+*adj*.，如：dark-blue，red-hot，red-light。
（3）*adj*.+*v*.-ing，如：tired-looking，ordinary-looking。
（4）*adv*.+*v*.-ing，如：hard-working。
（5）*adv*.+*v*.-ed，如：newly-built，well-written。
（6）*n*.+*adj*，如：life-long，world famous。
（7）*n*.+*v*.-ing，如：peace-loving，English speaking。
（8）*n*.+*n*.+-ed，如：man-made，snow-cover。
（9）数词+*n*.+-ed，如：a three-egged table，a six-storeged building。
（10）数词+*n*. /（+*adj*.），如：an 8-year-old girl，the eighth five-year plan。

14.1.4 形容词的位置

单个形容词修饰名词时，一般要放在名词的前面。它们的前面常常带有冠词、形容词性物主代词、指示代词、数词等。例如：

a red flower 一朵红花

this interesting story 这个有趣的故事

six blind men 六个盲人

my own house 我自己的房子

（1）形容词修饰 something，anything，nothing，everything 等不定代词时，一般放在不定代词后面。例如：

I have something important to tell you. 我有些重要的事要告诉你。

Is there anything special in today's newspaper? 今天的报纸上有特别报道吗？

Do you know anybody else here? 这儿你还有认识的人吗？

（2）形容词后面有介词短语或不定式短语时，形容词必须置于名词之后。例如：

It is a problem difficult to work out. 这是一道难以解决的问题。

Edison is a student difficult to teach. 爱迪生是个很难教的学生。

This is a kind of flowers easy to grow. 这是一种易栽的花。

（3）在以下特殊用法中，形容词置于所修饰的名词之后。例如：

All people，young or old，should be strict with themselves. 所有人，无论老少，都应该严格要求自己。

We are building a new school，modern and super. 我们正在建一所现代化的高档次的新型学校。

All countries，rich and poor，should help one another. 所有国家，无论穷富，都应该互相帮助。

（4）enough 用作形容词，意为“充足的；足够的”，在句中可作定语或表语。作定语时，它的位置较灵活，既可放在所修饰词前，也可放在所修饰词后。例如：

We have enough time（time enough）to finish the work. 我们有足够的时间来完成这项工作。

enough 用作副词，意为“充分地；足够地；十分”，修饰形容词、副词或动词，位于所修饰词之后。enough 往往用在“be+形容词+enough+for+sb.+to do”结构中，注意 do 后面不接宾语。例如：

The book is easy enough for you to read. 这本书很简单，你们可以看懂。

He knows the situation well enough. 他十分了解情况。（不可说 enough well）

【中考英语经典真题】

1.（2014·广东）The light in the room wasn't ________for me to read.

A. enough bright　　B. brightly enough

C. enough brightly　　D. bright enough

【解析】此题容易误选 A 或 B。选 A 的人是受汉语思维的影响，enough bright 翻译过来正好是“足够明亮”的意思，其实这并不符合英语的习惯，在英语中当 enough 修饰形容词或副词时一定要后置；选 B 的人没有注意到句子所缺的成分是表语，作表语时应该用形容词而不用副词。正确答案为 D。

2.（2015·盐城）Audrey Hepburn，one of the greatest actresses，was ______ to take on challenges in her life.

A. enough brave　　B. brave enough　　C. stupid enough　　D. enough stupid

【解析】考查 enough 的用法。句意：Audrey Hepburn 足够勇敢去面对生活中的挑战。enough 修饰形容词时放在其后。结合句意，故选 B。

3.（2010·哈尔滨）As teenagers，we're old enough _________with housework.We can help set the table，wash the dishes and clean our own rooms.

A. to help　　B. helping　　C. helped

【解析】本题考查非谓语动词。根据 enough 的句型：be+*adj.*+enough+to do sth. 可知用动词不定式的形式。故选 A。

4.（2004·重庆）—Mum, I think I'm ________ to get back to school.

—Not really, my dear. You'd better stay at home for another day or two.

A. so well　　B. so good　　C. well enough　　D. good enough

【解析】考查 good, well 和 enough 的用法。在英语中表身体健康 well。enough 是应用比较频繁的词，用法是① 用在名词前，如 enough money。② 用在形容词或副词的后面，如 big enough。答案为 C。

5.（2010・宜昌）—Hurry, Mike! The bus is coming.

—Wait a moment, please! Let me see if there's ________ left.

A. anything else　　B. something important　　C. nothing else　　D. any other things

【解析】形容词修饰不定代词时，一定要放在不定代词的后面。此句为宾语从句，再根据句意，答案只能选 A。

6.（2010・宁夏）I don't want to read this book. There is ________ in it.

A. something interesting　　B. nothing interesting

C. interesting something　　D. interesting nothing

【解析】根据句意，此句为否定意义，故排除 A，C；又因形容词修饰不定代词，应放在不定代词的后面。故答案应选 B。

7.（2004・沈阳）You'd better not read today's newspaper because there is _______ in it.

A. something interesting　　B. anything new

C. important thing　　D. nothing special

【解析】考查形容词修饰不定代词的位置。something, anything, nothing 均是不定代词，当形容词修饰不定代词时，应将形容词放在不定代词的后面，去掉 C 项。根据句意“你最好不要读今天的报纸”可知报上没有任何新的、有趣的事。答案为 D。

【高考英语经典真题】

1.（NMET 93）—Mum，I think I'm ________ to get back to school.（答案：C）

—Not really，my dear. You'd better stay at home for another day or two.

A. so well　　B. so good　　C. well enough　　D. good enough

2.（NMET 98）If I had _____，I'd visit Europe stopping at all the small interesting places.（答案：A）

A. a long enough holiday　　B. an enough long holiday

C. a holiday enough long　　D. a long holiday enough

3.（NMET 2000）______ to take this adventure course will certainly learn a lot of useful skills.（答案：C）

A. Brave enough students　　B. Enough brave students

C. Students brave enough　　D. Students enough brave

【解析】本题考查 enough 作副词时修饰形容词的位置。由于本题中的 enough 是副词，所以要置于被修饰的形容词 brave 之后，整个形容词短语 brave enough to take this adventure course 作后置定语，修饰名词 students，全句的意思是：有足够勇气选修这门历险课程的学生将会学到很多有用的技能。故答案应选 C。

（5）有些形容词，置于名词之前与之后，含义不尽相同。例如：

the writer present 出席的作家　　the present writer 当代的作家

（6）多个形容词修饰名词的顺序：限定词—数词—描绘词—（大小，长短，形状，新旧，颜色）—出处—材料性质，类别—名词。

例如：

an exciting international football match 一场令人激动的国际足球赛

a new red sports shirt 一件新的红色运动衫

a light black plastic umbrella 一把轻的黑塑料伞

a small old brown wooden house 一座小的旧的棕色的木头房子

名词前如果有两个或两个以上的形容词，描述形状大小的形容词要放在描述颜色的形容词前面。例如：

a small round table 一张小圆桌　a tall gray building 一栋高的灰色楼

注释：

（1）so…that 与 enough to 的转换。

① 当 that 引导的从句为肯定式时，若从句主语与主句主语相同，so…that 可转换为 enough to 结构；若从句主语与主句主语不相同，so…that 可转换为 enough for sb. to 结构。例如：

Xiao Lin is so old that he can go to school. ＝Xiao Lin is old enough to go to school.

The box is so light that he can carry it. ＝The box is light enough for him to carry.

② 当 that 引导的从句为否定式时，若从句主语与主句主语相同，so…that 可转换为 enough to 的否定结构；若从句主语与主句主语不相同，so…that 可转换为 enough for sb. to 的否定结构。同时要注意，转换后的形容词（副词）要用其相应的反义词。例如：

The man is so old that he can't go to work. ＝The man isn't young enough to go to work.

The desk is so heavy that I can't move it. ＝The desk isn't light enough for me to move.

③ enough to 的句式为否定式时，enough to 可以转换为 too…to 结构。但转换后的 too…to 结构中的形容词（副词）要用其相应的反义词。例如：

He is not old enough to do the work. ＝He is too young to do the work.

The problem is too difficult for me to work out. ＝The problem isn't easy enough for me to work out.

（2）too/enough/very 三个程度副词的比较。

① too 本身译为“很，太”修饰形容词和副词时，一般放在形容词和副词的前面。

too…to 译为“太……而不能做某事”，表面上表示肯定但其实表达否定的意思。固定搭配：be too+*adj*/*adv*. +for sb. to do sth.“某事对……来说太……而不能……。”

但当句子的主语与 to 后的宾语是指同一事物时，则 to 后的宾语不能重复，必须省略。有时其后面的 to 也可以省略。如：

This box is too heavy for me to carry it.（误）

This box is too heavy for me to carry.（正）

② enough 的词性很多，可以当形容词、副词，也可以当名词。

enough 当形容词时，译为“足够的，充足的”，可以放在名词前也可以放在名词后。如 enough time/time enough。

enough 当副词时，译为“足够地，充足地”，但是要注意它的位置，放在形容词和副词后。如 difficult enough/beautiful enough/old enough。

固定搭配：be+*adj*. /*adv*.+enough for sb. to do sth. “做某事对某人来说太（足够）……”。

③ very 当副词时表示“太……/非常……”修饰形容词和副词时一般放其前面。

very 可以直接放在形容词和副词之前，但是修饰动词不能直接用 very，修饰动词用 very much。如：

I very like English.（误）

I like English very much.（正）

不用在形容词和副词的比较级和最高级中，修饰形容词比较级和最高级可以用 much。如：

very elder（误）

much elder（正）

不能用在“too+*adj*. /*adv*.+for sb. to do sth.”句型中，但可以用 much。如：

very too difficult for me to do it.（误）

不能用在“too+*adj*. /*adv*.”的结构中。如：

very too easy（误）

much too easy（正）

【too，very 或 enough 专项练习】

一、完成下列句子，用 too，very 或 enough 填空。

1. I couldn't speak to the boss. He was _____ busy.

2. I couldn't go out. It was ________ cold for me to go out.
3. I could answer all the questions. They were _____ easy.
4. Is that suitcase light ________ for you to carry?
5. Is your brother old _____ to be a member of our association?
6. They couldn't see that film. They were _____ young.

二、改写同义句，每空一词。

1. The book is interesting enough for everybody to read.
   The book is __________ interesting __________ everybody likes to read it.
2. The boy is so short that he can't reach the buttons of the lift.
   The boy is __________ short __________ __________ the buttons of the lift.
   The boy isn't __________ __________ __________ __________ the buttons of the lift.

三、将下列句子改写成同义句。

1. He is old enough to go to school.
   He is __________ __________ that __________ __________ go to school.
2. She was so weak that she couldn't take care of her baby.
   She was __________ weak __________ take care of her baby.

【典型例题】

1. Tony is going camping with ___ boys.

A. little two other　　B. two little other
C. two other little　　D. little other two

答案：C。由"限定词—数词—描绘词—（大小，长短，形状，新旧，颜色）—性质—名词"的公式可知只有 C 符合答案。

2. One day they crossed the ____bridge behind the palace.

A. old Chinese stone　　B. Chinese old stone
C. old stone Chinese　　D. Chinese stone old

答案：A。几个形容词修饰一个名词，它们的排列顺序是：年龄，形状，大小+颜色+来源+质地+用途+国家+名词。

3. —How was your recent visit to Qingdao?
   —It was great. We visited some friends，and spent the ___days at the seaside.

A. few last sunny　　B. last few sunny　　C. last sunny few　　D. few sunny last

答案：B。本题考查多个形容词的排序问题。一般与被修饰形容词关系密切的形容词靠近名词；如果几个形容词的重要性差不多，音节少的形容词在前，音节多的方在后，在不能确定时，可参照下表：

限定词+数量词（序数词在前，基数词在后）+性状形容词+大小、长短、高低等形容词，如：

those+three+beautiful+large+square

新旧+颜色+国籍+材料+名词，如：

old+brown+wood+table

【实战演练】

1. John Smith，a successful businessman，has a ______ car.

A. large German white　　B. large white German
C. white large German　　D. German large white

答案：B。按"大小+颜色+产地"的顺序排列。

2. ______ students are required to take part in the boat race.

A. Ten strong young Chinese　　B. Ten Chinese strong young

C. Chinese ten young strong　　D. Young strong ten Chinese

答案：A。数词是限定词，应排在形容词前，排除 C 和 D；又因 strong 是表描绘的形容词，young 表年龄，Chinese 是国籍，其先后顺序应为“描绘+年龄+国籍”。

3. The husband gave his wife ______ every month in order to please her.

A. all half his income　　B. his half all income

C. half his all income　　D. all his half income

答案：A。all 和 half 都是前位限定词，his 是中位限定词，所以 his 要位于 all 和 half 之后，只有 A 正确。

4. One day they crossed the ____bridge behind the palace.

A. old Chinese stone　　B. Chinese old stone

C. old stone Chinese　　D. Chinese stone old

答案：A。几个形容词修饰一个名词时，它们的排列顺序是：年龄，形状，大小+颜色+来源+质地+用途+国家+名词。

14.1.5　常用形容词的用法比较

1. fine，well，good 和 nice 的区别

（1）good 常用来指人的品行好或事物的质地好，也常用来向别人问好。如：

Miss Gao is a good teacher.（人好）

Your picture is very good.（物好）

Good morning.（问好）

（2）well 作形容词时，指人的身体好、健康好。如：

—How is your father?

—He’s very well.

well 常作副词，修饰动词用。He speaks English well.

（3）fine 指身体状况好，天气状况好。如：

—How are you?

—Fine，thanks.（身体状况好）

It’s a fine day today.（天气状况好）

另外，fine 也可以用来指出色。如：

He is a fine boy.（人物的品行）

The pen is fine.（事物的质地特别出色）

（4）nice 指人或物的外观、相貌好，表示“美好的”“美妙的”“漂亮的”。如：

Lucy looks nice.（人的相貌好）

The flowers are very nice.（物的外观好）

（5）OK，有时可替代 fine 和 well，表示身体好。如：

—How are you?

—Fine，thanks. And you?

—I’m OK.

OK 表示事物的完好无损、人的安然无恙。如：

—Is it broken?

—No，it’s OK.

—Oh，sorry! Are you OK?

OK 还可表示赞同别人的观点。如：

—Let's go home.

—OK，let's go.

【习题】

1. This kind of bicycle sells____?

A. good　　B. well　　C. nice　　D. fine

2. This kind of shirt looks ____and sells____.

A. nice；well　　B. well；nice　　C. good；good

3. The flowers smell so ______?

A. well　　B. nice　　C. wonderfully　　D. nicely

4. The flowers look very _______.

A. nice　　B. nicely　　C. beautifully　　D. well

5. The music sounds _______.

A. well　　B. nicely　　C. good　　D. beautifully

【答案解析】

1. B。句意：这种自行车卖得好。sell 是动词，明显后面要选填一个副词，只有 B 符合题意。well 是 good 的副词形式，（另外：well 也有形容词，表示身体好）C、D 都与题意不符，舍去。

2. A。句意：这种衬衫看起来漂亮，卖得也很好。look 是系动词（亦称连系动词，它本身有词义，但不能单独用作谓语，后边必须跟表语即补语，构成系表结构说明主语的状况、性质、特征等情况），后面跟形容词。sell 是动词，后面跟副词。只有 A 选项对，nice（好看的 *adj.*），well（很好地 *adv.*），good 是形容词。

3. B。smell 是系动词，后面跟形容词作表语。所以选 B。

4. A。look 是系动词，后跟形容词。答案 A。

5. C。感官动词（如：看上去、听上去、闻上去、摸上去）后面跟形容词，因为这时的感官动词类似于连系动词的用法，后接形容词作表语，如 look nice、sound clear、feel good，所以答案是 C。

注：形容词是修饰名词的，副词是修饰动词的。be 前面是名词（be 动词是系动词，be+形容词，构成系表结构），所以 be 后面要跟形容词。

2. big/large/great/huge 用法辨析（见表 14-1）

表 14-1　big/large/great/huge 用法辨析

词　汇	用　　法	例　句
big	侧重于表示物体的块头、重量，含有庞大、笨重的意思，其反义词是 little	This coat is too <u>*big*</u> for her. 这件上衣对她来说太大了。
large	侧重表示物体的宽度和数量，有广阔和众多的含义，其反义词是 small	China is a <u>*large*</u> country. 中国是一个幅员辽阔的国家。
great	常表示“伟大的”，带有一定的感情色彩	Einstein is a <u>*great*</u> scientist. 爱因斯坦是位伟大的科学家。
huge	表示“巨大的；极大的”，修饰具体事物，指规格数额超常	The earth is a <u>*huge*</u> ball. 地球是一个巨大的球。

注：其他表示“巨大的”“广大的”形容词的用法辨析。

enormous 暗示大得超出了一般的尺寸，enormous expenses 巨额费用；

immense 指无法测量的大，an immense crowd of people 人山人海；

huge 是尺寸或容量的巨大，a huge wave 巨浪

gigantic 指尺寸的大，a gigantic redwood tree 巨杉；
colossal 指大得让人望而生畏，has a colossal nerve 大胆；
tremendous 指体积或程度巨大，大得吓人，a tremendous meal 一顿大餐；
vast 指平面的辽阔、广阔，vast forest 广阔的森林。
例题：

1. Human is very_____.He invented robots with_____arms to help them carry very_______things.
   A. big；great；large　　B. large；big；great
   C. great；large；big　　D. big；large；great

答案：C。根据上文的分析，great 一般用来形容人或人的行为很重要，译作“伟大的”，题目中第一个空格的就是要形容人很伟大，所以要选 great。

2. Three months later，the travelers walked through the ________ desert.
   A. big　　B. huge　　C. large　　D. vast

答案：D。

3. calm，quiet，still，silent 用法辨析

这几个词都与“静”有关，但它们表示的静的对象不同，所描述的物体、场合不同。

（1）calm 常指天气平静、无风，海无浪，心境镇定，无忧虑，镇静自若，强调外表等。如：

The weather is calm and the sea is calm. 天气和大海是一片宁静。

Although she was frightened，she answered with a calm voice. 尽管她心里害怕，她回答问题时心里还是很镇定。

（2）quiet“静止的，宁静的，没有激动、烦恼、忧虑的”，强调没有扰乱，没有兴奋活动或闹声的“宁静”或“心神安逸”。如：

Ask the children to make less noise and keep quiet. 让孩子们小点声，保持安静。

（3）still“静止不动”“平静”，突出不发出动作。如：

Please stand still while I am ready to take the photograph. 站着别动，我给你们照相。

It was very late and the night was still. 更深夜静。

（4）silent“声音极小的”“沉默的”“寡言的”。如：

John is a silent，thoughtful boy. 约翰是个不爱讲话，喜欢思考的孩子。

The house was silent because everyone was asleep. 房子里很安静，所有的人都睡着了。

4. alone，lonely 用法辨析

（1）alone 的意思是“独自、单独”。仅用作表语和副词。放在名词或代词之后，可表示“只有、仅仅”的意思。如：

Most of the time，I am alone at home. 很多时候我独自一人待在家里。

I can’t lift the box alone；I need your help. 我自己抬不动这盒子，我需要你帮忙。

Gifts alone are not enough for a child，because he needs love most. 礼物本身对孩子来说不够，因为他们最需要的是爱。

（2）lonely 既可作定语形容词也可作表语形容词。作定语形容词时，词义为“孤单的、偏僻的、荒凉的”。如 a lonely traveler 孤身旅行的人，a lonely house 荒凉的房子，a lonely mountain village（荒凉的山村）等。作表语形容词时，lonely 表示“寂寞的、孤单的”，指因缺乏人作伴而产生的忧郁和寂寞。如：

He lived a lonely life all his life. 他一生过着孤单的生活。

I am alone，but I’m not lonely at all，for I’ve got a short-wave radio. 我独自一人，但我并不寂寞，因为我有一个短波收音机。

5. loud，aloud，loudly 用法辨析

（1）aloud 的意思是“出声地、高声地”，强调能让人听得见。如：

Read aloud so that we can all hear you. 读大点声，以便我们大家都能听见你。

They are shouting aloud. 他们在大声感叫。

（2）loud 的意思是“大声地、高声地、响亮地”，强调声音响亮。常和动词 speak，talk，say，laugh 等连用。如：

Don’t talk so loud. 讲话声音不要这么大。

Facts speak louder than words. 事实胜于雄辩。

（3）loudly 的意思是“高声地”，有时可与 loud 通用，但含有“喧闹”的意味。如：

Someone knocked loudly at the door. 有人在大声敲门。

Don’t talk so loudly/loud. 说话声音不要这么大。

在现代英语中有时在并不喧闹的场合也用 loudly。如：

Will you please read the text loudly? 你能不能大声读这篇课文？

6. little，small 用法辨析

（1）little 表示本身的“小”，不含比较的意味，与 big 和 great 相对。常带赞赏、爱怜等意味。如：

The little room is very bright and warm. 这间小屋非常明亮、温暖。

She is certainly a pretty little girl. 她的确是一个漂亮的小姑娘。

（2）small 表示比较而言的“小”，与 large 相对。有时带有轻视、贬低的意味。如：

He works in a small factory 他在一家小工厂工作。

little 和 small 均可用于人。前者指年龄小或身材小，后者仅指身材比同龄人小。如：

The boy is rather small for his age. 就年龄而言，这男孩个子矮了些。

7. ill，sick，diseased 用法辨析

这三个形容词都可表示“生病、身体不适”，但在用法上，英美人的习惯有所不同。

用作表语时，英国人多用 ill，美国人多用 sick，ill 一般用在正式场合。作为定语，英美人一律用 sick。如：

He has been ill for a two weeks. 他已病了两周了。

He has been sick for two weeks. 他已病了两周了。

She is looking after her sick mother. 她在照看她得病的母亲。

diseased 有些被动意味，即被感染得病的意思。如：

All the plants around the factory are diseased and are dying. 这个工厂周围的植物都感染上了病，都快死了。

ill 也可用作定语，但词义是“拙劣的、不良的、坏的”。如：an ill man 等。此外 sick 还可表示“恶心、呕吐、厌恶的”。如：

I feel sick and don’t want to eat anything. 我想吐，不想吃任何东西。

8. high，tall 用法辨析

high 常见用法有：

（1）物体高出地面之上，如：

It’s the highest mountain in the world. 它是世界上最高的山。

（2）离开地面的高度或测量的高度，如：

The tower is about 200 meters high. 这座大约有 200 米高。

（3）比喻性的高。如：high price（高价），high jump（跳高）。

社会地位高。如：a high official（一位高级官员）。

tall 一般指人和动物的体长或物体高度超过宽度。如：

She is taller than the boy. 她比这个小男孩高。

9. beautiful，handsome，pretty 用法辨析

（1）beautiful 的意思是“美丽的、美好的、漂亮的”，是最普通的用语，可形容人、物、景色等。形容人时，一般只用于女人或小孩。如：

I have never seen so beautiful a girl. 我从未见过这么漂亮的姑娘。

What a beautiful little boy! 多么漂亮的小男孩！

In autumn the mountain looks beautiful. 秋天，这座山看上去很美。

（2）handsome 的意思是“漂亮的、英俊的”，主要形容男子，用以形容女子时，一般指身材匀称、仪态高贵。也可用于事物，表示“美观的、堂皇的”。如：

He was young and handsome. 他既年轻又潇洒。

What a handsome old building it is! 多么壮丽的一座古建筑哇！

（3）pretty 的意思是“美丽的、漂亮的、可爱的”，侧重小巧、优美或文雅，常用以形容娇小伶俐的小子或年轻女子。如：

She looks pretty in that new dress. 穿着那件裙子，她看上去真漂亮。

The garden is small but very pretty. 这个花园虽小但非常小巧、优美。

10. worth，worthy 用法辨析

（1）worth 表示“值”“相等于……的价值”。表示“价值……”的意思时，常与表示钱方面的名词连用；表示“值得……”的意思时，常与名词连用。它一般用作表语。常用在下面两种句型：sth.+be worth+动名词或名词，It+be worth（one’s）while+动名词（或不定式）。如：

The city is well worth visiting twice. 这个城市很值得再去看看。

=It is worthwhile to visit/visiting the city twice.

=It is worth our while to visit the city twice.

=It is worthwhile for us to visit the city twice.

What you have done is worth praise. 你所做的值得表扬。

（2）worthy 作“值得”“应……的”“足以……”解。用作形容词时，表示对某事有资格或合适的意思，通常作表语用，后接 of 短语或不定式。它还可表示“可尊敬的”“有价值的”等意思，用作定语。如：

She is worthy of praise.= She is worth praise. 她值得表扬。

The science fiction is very worthy of being read. 这篇科技故事值得一读。

=The science fiction is very worthy to be read.

=The science fiction is well worth reading.

=It is worthwhile reading the science fiction.

=It is worthwhile to read the science fiction.

11. alive，living，live 和 lively 用法辨析

（1）alive 意为“活着的”“在世的”，它既可以修饰人也可以修饰物。通常作表语、后置定语或主语补足语。如：

The tiger is still alive. 那只老虎仍然活着。（表语）

All the other people were killed in the battle. He was the only man alive. 所有的人都阵亡了，他是唯一的幸存者。（后置定语）

The fish were caught alive. 这些鱼被活捉。（主语补足语）

（2）living 意为“活着的”，主要用作定语、表语。the living 表示“活着的人”。如：

Every living person has a name. 每一个活着的人都有一个名字。（定语）

No man living could do better. 当代无人可比。（定语）

Is Mrs. Smith still living? 史密斯太太还在世吗？（表语）

The living are more important to us than the dead. 对我们来说活着的人比死了的人更重要。

（3）live 读作[laɪv]，意为“活着的”，作前置定语，一般不用来修饰人。如：

The cat was playing with a live mouse. 那只猫在玩弄一只活老鼠。

live 还可以作“现场直播的”解。如：

It'll be the biggest live concert the world has ever seen. 那（场音乐会）将是全世界（的人曾经见过的）最大的一场现场直播音乐会。

live 还可用作动词，读作[lɪv]，意为“生活”“生存”。如：

Pandas usually live in the south and the southeast of China. 熊猫通常生活在中国的南部和东南部。

（4）lively 读作[laɪvɪ]，意为“生动的”“活泼的”“充满生气的”，用作表语或定语，可以用来修饰人或物。如：

The sports ground is lively with all sorts of ball games. 运动场上要进行各种球类比赛，呈现出一派生气勃勃的景象。

The boy has a lively mind. 这男孩头脑灵活。

实战演练：

1. The bear was caught____________.

A. live　　B. lively　　C. living　　D. alive

解析：D。live 作形容词时，表示“现场的；活着的”，可以作前置定语；lively 表示“生动的，活泼的”，可以作定语、表语或宾补；living 表示“活着的”，可以作表语或前置定语；alive 表示“活着的”，可以作表语、后置定语或补足语。此处应选 alive 作补足语，表示“那只熊被活捉了”。

2. The World Cup in France was the biggest______football match in the world.

A. alive　　B. live　　C. lively　　D. living

解析：B。alive 为表语形容词，意为“活着的”；live 可作定语，意为“实况转播的”符合题意；lively 意为“生动的”“活泼的”；living 意为“有生命的”。

12. little, a little, few, a few 用法辨析

little, a little, few, a few 的用法区别见表 14-2。

表 14-2　little, a little, few, a few 用法辨析

中　文	用　法		备　注
	修饰可数名词	修饰不可数名词	
一些	a few	a little	表示肯定含义
几乎没有	few	little	表示否定含义，为否定词
更少（比较级）	fewer	less	在两者之间进行比较
最少（最高级）	fewest	least	在三者或三者以上进行比较

特别提醒：

◇ few（= not many；hardly any）含否定意义，a few（= some；several；a small number of），无论 few 还是 a few，后面都跟可数名词的复数形式。

◇ little, a little 修饰不可数名词，后面都跟不可数名词。little 含否定意义（反义词：much）；a little 含肯定意义（反义词：none）。

◇ few, little 表示“几乎没有”，都是否定词；a few, a little 表示“一些”，均表示肯定。

◇ a little 可以用来表示程度。还可用来修饰形容词比较级。

◇ little 还可以表示“小而可爱”的意思，如 a little cat（一只小猫），a little sheep（一只小羊）。

◇ quite a few 表示“相当多”，only a few 表示“只有一些”。

◇ not a few = no few = quite a few = a good few = many.

◇ 当 few 受 every，last，past，next，some，very 等词所修饰时，表示肯定意义，few 之前不再有冠词。如：

In the last few minutes, he checked up his paper again.

It took us some few days to repair the machine.

They are very few in number.

There were too few of them.

He goes to see his grandma every few weeks.

【典型例题】

1.（2010・宜宾）Several years ago, ________ people knew Sean. But now he is famous in Jinan.

A. few B. any C. many D. most

【解析】few“几乎没有”；any“任何”；many“许多”；most“大多数”，根据句意，应选答案 A。

2. Although he's wealthy, he spends___ on clothes.

A. little B. few C. a little D. a few

【解析】答案：A。spend 所指的是钱，不可数，只能用 little 或 a little。本句为 although 引导的让步状语从句，由句意得知后句为否定含义，因此应用 little 表示几乎不。

3. I have so________time to enjoy myself.

A. little B. a little C. few D. a few

【解析】我几乎没有享受自我的时间。little 表示“很少”，修饰不可数名词；a little 表示“有一点”，修饰不可数名词；few 表示“很少”，修饰可数名词；a few 表示“有一点”，修饰可数名词。

【中考试题汇编】

1. —Mr Wang, would you please tell me the result of the test?

—You've done a good job. You made ______ mistakes.（2008 常州）

A. a few B. few C. a little D. little

2. She has written a lot of books, but _____ good ones.（2008 苏州）

A. any B. some C. few D. many

3. Simon makes _______ friends in his class because he is very selfish.（2008 宿迁）

A. few B. a few C. little D. a little

4. How smart Mary is! Of all the students in her class, she usually spends the ________ time and makes the________ mistakes in her homework.（2010 南通）

A. least; fewest B. least; least C. fewest; least D. most; fewest

【参考答案】

1—4 BCAA

[注意] a little / a bit / a little bit / for a bit 用法辨析：

（1）在肯定句中，a little 和 a bit 意思相同。如：

This box is a bit heavier than the other one. = a little heavier than the other one. 这个箱子比那个箱子重一点。

（2）a bit 通常修饰表示“令人不快”的形容词，例如 sad, silly, cold, hungry, angry, difficult, heavy, expensive 等；a little 则无论褒贬都可以修饰。如：

The song is a bit sad. 这首歌有点伤感。

You might say I'm a bit silly. 你可能会说我有点傻。

Mary is a little older but a little more beautiful than Ann. 玛丽比安年纪更大但是更漂亮。

Everyone seemed a little nervous. 每个人看起来都有点紧张。

（3）a bit 后面不能直接接名词，接名词要用 a bit of 的结构；a little 则可以直接修饰名词：当 a little 修饰的名词前有 the, this, that, 所有格等限定词时，也要用 a little of 的结构，如 This will add a little fun to the game. 如果要用 a bit 来修饰 fun，要用 a bit of 的结构，如：

This will add a bit of fun to the game. 这可以使这个游戏更有趣一点。

This remind me a little of those old sayings. 这使我想起了那些古老的谚语。

（4）a bit 和 a little 不能用来修饰“形容词+名词”的结构。例如 heavy boxes 这样的结构，就不能用 a bit 和 a little 修饰，不能说 a bit heavy boxes；再比如 hot weather，不可以说 a little hot weather。a little bit 的意思是“一点点”，用法与“a bit”相同。如：

This is a little bit too difficult for me. 这对我来说有点难。

Jack is a little bit selfish. 杰克有点自私。

I speak a little bit of French. 我讲一点法语。

【实战演练】

—You must be tired out after the climbing.

—Oh, ______. I felt too tired to move.

A. not a bit　　B. not a little　　C. not at all　　D. not nearly

【解析】not a bit “根本不”；not a little “很、十分”；not at all “根本不”。根据“I felt too tired to move.”可知很累，故选 B。not a little 意为 very much “很，十分”之意，not a bit 意为 not at all; not in the least “一点也不”。

13. -ing 形容词和-ed 形容词（见表 14-3）

表 14-3　-ing 形容词和-ed 形容词

-ing 形容词	-ed 形容词	例　句
surprising 令人惊讶的	surprised 感到惊讶的	The story has a surprising end. He is surprised at the news.
interesting 有兴趣的	interested 感到有兴趣的	There are many interesting places in Beijing. I'm interested in what he says.
exciting 令人兴奋的	excited 感到兴奋的	They jumped when they heard the exciting news. We are excited about the match.
pleasing 令人愉快的	pleased 感到愉快、满意的	It is a pleasing trip. If you jump the queue, others will not be pleased.
frightening 令人恐惧的	frightened 感到恐惧的	The girl cried because of the frightening story. He is frightened of the ghost.
moving 令人感动的	moved 受感动的	It is a moving performance. We are moved by the performance.
tiring 使人疲倦的	tired 感到疲倦的	We had a very tiring trip last week. I'm tired of so much homework.
fascinating 迷人的	fascinated 着迷的	What a fascinating story! The children are fascinated by all the toys in the shop windows.
特点：表示主动意义，多指事物对人的影响，一般修饰事物	特点：表示被动意义，多指人对事物的感受，主语一般是人，常用“sb.+ be +-ed 形容词+介词”结构	We were very excited about the trip to Beijing.

14. many 和 much 的用法

many 意思是“很多”,与可数名词复数连用；much 意思是“很多”,与不可数名词连用。它们在句中可做主语、宾语和定语等。如：

I don’t have many friends here.

Many died in the bus accident.

We can learn much with the help of him.

many 和 much 一般用于否定句,肯定句中通常用 a lot of 或者 lots of; many / much 用于肯定句时可以在前面加上 so，very 或 too。如：

There are a lot of people on the playground.

They haven’t got much work to do.

There are too many people in the room.

易混词组比较：too many，too much 和 much too，在使用时容易混淆。

这三个词语的主要区别在于它们的中心词以及它们所修饰的词不同。三者之中的前一个词都是修饰词，用来加强语气，后一个词是中心词。因此，在使用时只需要考虑后一个词的用法就行了。分述如下：

① too many 的中心词是 many，用法与 many 相同，用来修饰复数可数名词。例如：

He’s got too many questions to ask you. 他有很多问题要问你。

They bought too many eggs yesterday. 昨天他们买了太多的鸡蛋。

Today, _____trees are still being cut down somewhere in the world.（1999 年辽宁）

A. much too　　B. too much　　C. many too　　D. too many

② too much 的中心词是 much，用法与 much 相同，用来修饰不可数名词。例如：

We both have too much work to do. 我们俩都有很多工作要做。

She spent too much money on clothes. 她花太多钱买衣服。

The teacher told him not to spend too much time playing games. 老师叫他不要花太多时间玩游戏。

I’m afraid that I’ve given you too much trouble. 恐怕我太麻烦你了。

He can’t hear you because there is _____noise here.（1999 年黑龙江）

A. very much　　B. too much　　C. much too　　D. so many

Look! There’s _____ice on the lake.（1999 年成都）

A. too much　　B. much too　　C. a lot

另外，too much 还可作名词性短语，用作宾语；也可作副词性短语，在句中用作状语，修饰动词。例如：

You’ve given me too much. 你给我的太多了。

I have too much to do every day, so I am very busy. 我每天都有很多事情要做，所以我很忙。

He talked too much at the meeting, didn’t he? 他在会上讲得太多了，是吗?

Don’t eat too much. 不要吃得太多。

③ much too 的中心词是 too，用法与 too 相同，用来修饰原级形容词或副词。例如：

You’re walking much too fast. Slow down. 你走得太快了，慢点。

I’m afraid that this cap is much too big for me. 这顶帽子我戴恐怕太大了。

It’s much too cold outside. You’d better put on your overcoat. 外面太冷了，你最好把大衣穿上。

The sweater is very beautiful, but it’s _____dear.（1999 年吉林）

A. too much　　B. much too　　C. many　　D. more

These shoes are much too _____for me.（1999 年河北）

A. big　　B. bigger　　C. biggest　　D. the biggest

小结：too many 后面接可数名词，too much 后面接不可数名词，much too 后面接形容词。

14.2　副　词

14.2.1　副词的概念

副词是一种用来修饰动词、形容词、全句的词，说明时间、地点、程度、方式等概念。副词是一种半虚半实的词。

14.2.2　副词的构成和种类（见表 14-4 和表 14-5）

表 14-4　副词的构成

本身就是副词	here，there，often，always，very
形容词尾直接加-ly	careful→carefully，slow→slowly，real→really
以辅音字母加 y 结尾的形容词要变 y 为 i，再加 ly	happy→happily，easy→easily，busy→busily
以辅音加 le 结尾的词去 e 加 y	simply→simply，comfortable→comfortably

表 14-5　副词的种类

种　类	用　法	举　例
时间副词	表示时间	now，today，yesterday，then
地点副词	表示地点或位置关系	here，there，home，out，anywhere
方式副词	一般回答“怎样地”这类问题	well，fast，slowly，happily
程度副词	表示程度	very，too，quite，a little，enough
频率副词	表示做事情的频率	always，often，never，sometimes
疑问副词	用于引导一个特殊疑问句	when，how，where，why

1. 根据意义分类

（1）方式副词。一般用来回答“怎样地”这类问题，具有典型的状语形式，绝大部分都是由一个形容词加词尾-ly 构成。如：calmly 冷静地，carefully 仔细地，小心地，carelessly 粗心地，patiently 耐心地，politely 礼貌地，proudly 自豪地，properly 适当地，quickly 快速地，rapidly 迅速地，suddenly 突然，successfully 成功地，willingly 情愿地，warmly 热情地。

在句子中的位置：

① 修饰不及物动词的方式副词要放在被修饰词之后。如：

His sister sings well.

The baby is sleeping soundly.

② 修饰及物动词的方式副词可放在被修饰词之前或宾语之后；如果宾语较长，也可放在动词和宾语之间。如：

He speaks French fluently.

All this morning Liu Ying has been writing carefully some English letters to her teachers.

（2）地点副词。包括表示地点的副词和表示位置关系、方向的副词，如：here 这里，there 那里，upstairs 楼上，downstairs 楼下，anywhere 任何地方，above 在上方，up 上面，down 下面，east 向东，west 向西，等等。

在句子中的位置：

地点副词和方式副词 here，there，down，anywhere，everywhere，inside，well，quickly，kindly 常放在宾语之后，不及物动词之后。其中 here，there，up，down 等副词与不及物动词 go，come，stand，walk，lie 等词连用时，副词可置于句首。如句子主语是名词或名词短语，句子需用完全倒装语序。如：

There stands the tower.

Down came the rain.

We looked for the lost wallet here and there，but in vain.

（3）时间副词。有的表示确定时间，如 yesterday 昨天，today 今天，tomorrow 明天；

有的表示不确定的时间，如 recently 最近，nowadays 现今，still 仍然，already 已经，immediately 立刻，just 刚刚；有的表示时间顺序，如 now 现在，then 然后，first 首先，next 其次，later 后来，before 以前；有的表示时间频率，如 always 总是，often 常常，usually 通常，seldom 很少，never 从不，sometimes 有时。

在句子中的位置：

① 时间副词可以放在整个句子或从句之前或之后，通常放在句末。其中 then，recently 可以放在动词之前；still 常放在动词之前或系动词、助动词、情态动词之后；而 yet 常位于句末，并且句子常用否定形式。如：

I'll then turn to my classmates for help.

We haven't finished the work yet.

② 表示确定时间的副词和表示地点的副词一般放在句尾。若句中同时有地点副词和时间副词，地点副词通常在前，时间副词在后。如：

They went to the Summer Palace yesterday.

We often go there.

I will go there tomorrow.

③ 表示不确定时间的副词，如 always，usually，often，never，ever，seldom，sometimes，rarely，generally，frequently 等，当句子谓语是 be 时，位于其后；句子谓语是单个完全动词时，位于其前；句子谓语由不完全动词与完全动词一起组成时，位于第一个不完全动词之后。如：

She always helps her mother with the housework.

The old man seldom goes out.

He is always the first to come to class.

They have already done their homework.

（4）程度副词。又称强调副词，从程度上强调，用来回答“how much”这类问题。可用来修饰形容词、副词，还可用来修饰动词、介词短语、名词、代词和从句等。如 a bit 有点，very 很，quite 十分，rather 颇，much 很，just 正好，only 仅仅等。

程度副词除 enough 之外常放在被修饰词之前，但放于情态动词和助动词的后面。但当 very 修饰动词时，常与 much 连用并置于句末。如：

I like her very much.

With one false movement，he nearly loses the whole game.

The student is very careful with his work.

He swims quite well.

The boy is old enough to go to school.

2. 根据形式分类

（1）简单副词。如 back 在后，just 刚刚，enough 足够，near 在附近，very 很，well 好，等等。

有些简单副词和形容词同形，要根据上下文才能确定其词性，有时意义也不一样，这类词有：cheap，

daily，deep，direct，early，enough，far，fast，firm，hard，high，late，low，much，near，pretty，straight，wrong 等。如：

The bus arrived *early*. 这趟车到得早。（副词）

an *early* bus 早班车（形容词）

（2）复合副词，如：nowhere 无处，everywhere 处处，somehow 不知怎么地，somewhat 有点，therefore 因此，anyway 不管怎样，somewhere 在某处，outdoors 在户外，在野外，等等。

（3）派生副词（方式副词），许多副词由形容词或分词后面加后缀-ly 构成。如：obvious 显然的→obviously 显然地，curious 好奇的→curiously 好奇地，surprising 吃惊的→surprisingly 吃惊地，skilled 熟练的→skilledly 熟练地，等等。

注意：以辅音字母+y（读作/i/）结尾的形容词变为副词时，要把 y 变为 i，再加-ly，如 easily，happily 等；以-*ll* 结尾的形容词变为副词时，直接加-*y*，如 chilly，fully 等；以辅音字母+*le* 结尾的形容词变为副词时，去-*le* 加-*ly*，如 ably，idly，simply 等；以-*ue* 结尾的形容词变为副词时，去-*e* 加-*ly*，如 truly 等；以-*ic* 结尾的形容词变为副词时，加-*ally*，如 basically，heroically，tragically 等。

有些副词有两种不同的形式，一种和形容词同形，另一种由形容词加后缀-ly 构成，二者有时没有什么区别，如 high→highly，slow→slowly 等。

副词除了常见的后缀-ly 外，还有一些后缀，如-wise，-ward（s），-ways 等。有些副词带有前缀 a-，如 abroad，ahead，around，aloud，alike，alone 等。

3. 根据功用分类

（1）句子副词。这类副词往往和整个句子具有松散的语法关系，而并非修饰某个动词。如：

Surprisingly, the weather report on the evening before the storm said there would be strong winds, but not a hurricane. 令人惊奇的是，风暴发生之前的那天晚上，天气预报说将有强风，但没有飓风。

Worse still，it could even carry off the baby from its mouth. 更为糟糕的是，狮子甚至有可能把婴儿叼走。

类似的副词有：actually，by all（no）means，decidedly，evidently，generally，frankly，indeed，in my opinion，unexpectedly，no，now，obviously，yes，undoubtedly，luckily，seriously 等。

（2）连接副词。用来连接句子、分句或从句，表示各种关系。

表示结果，如 therefore 因此，accordingly 从而。

表示添补，如 besides 此外，moreover 再者。

表示对比，如 however 不管怎样，nevertheless 然而。

表示条件，如 otherwise 否则。

表示时间，如 then 然后，lastly 最后。

（3）解释副词。常用来举例或列举。如 as 如，e.g.（＝for example）例如，for example 例如，i.e.（＝that is）那就是。

（4）关系副词。常用来引导定语从句，有 when，where，why 等。如：

An estuary is the body of water *where* a river meets the ocean. 河口是河流与海洋会合的水域。

Childhood is a time *when* we solidify our personalities. 童年是我们形成个性的时期。

This is the reason *why* he was late. 这就是他迟到的理由。

（5）缩合连接副词。由先行词和关系副词缩合而成，用来引导主语从句、宾语从句和表语从句，有 when（＝the time when），where（＝the place where），why（＝the reason why）。如：

When it will be finished depends on the weather. 什么时候能完成要看天气。

I don't know *where* we are going to have this meeting. 我不知道这个会放到哪里开。

That is *why* Einstein and his family left Europe for the USA in 1933.

这就是为什么爱因斯坦和他的家属于 1933 年离开欧洲去美国的原因。

带有-ever 的副词如 whenever(＝any time when), wherever(＝any place where), however(＝no matter

how）常用来引导状语从句，表示“任何”“不论”的意思。如：

Whenever we found an unknown plant，we had to describe it in our notebooks. 我们无论什么时候发现一种不认识的植物，就记在笔记本上。

Sit *wherever* you like. 你随便坐哪里都行。

He will never succeed，*however* hard he tries. 无论他如何努力尝试，他都不会成功。

（6）疑问副词。常用来引导特殊疑问句，有 when，where，why，how 等。如：

When do you take your next exam? 你什么时候参加下次考试?

Why not buy some English tapes? 为什么不买些英语录音带呢?

Where did you last have it? 你最后一次有这东西是在什么地方呢?

How are you getting on with your English lessons? 你的英语课学得怎么样?

（7）感叹副词。如：

How well he looks! 他看起来多么健康啊!

14.2.3 副词在句中的用法

1. 修饰动词

Advertisements appear *everywhere* in modern society. 广告在现代社会中无处不在。

I haven't read that book *carefully*. I've just only dipped into it. 我没有认真读过那本书，只是随便翻阅过。

2. 修饰形容词

Training by yourself in a gym can be *highly* dangerous. 你独自在体育馆训练是非常危险的。

I think at the beginning we'd rather have some *fairly* quiet and peaceful music.
我认为开始时我们应该来点稍微轻柔平和的音乐。

3. 修饰副词

He worked out just *how* much the light would bend; he could also work out *how* far the stars would appear to have moved. 他把光的弯曲度计算了出来；他还能把星球看上去移动了的距离也计算出来。

If the feeding place was toward the sun，the dancer headed *straight* upward during the straight part of the wagging dance. 如果喂食地点向着太阳，跳舞的蜜蜂在跳摆尾舞的直线部分就一直向上。

4. 修饰全句

You are *obviously* a person of great courage. 显然你是个极有勇气的人。

Often，all we need is a good friend who will listen to us while we “talk things through”.
往往我们所需要的，不过是一位能倾听我们“畅叙衷肠”的好朋友。

Then it turned in a semicircle, ran straight again, and turned in another semicircle to the opposite side. 然后它转半个圈，再沿直线跑，在另一边又转半个圈。

5. 副词的其他用法

Now the computer has touched the lives of everyone，*even* people in faraway villages.
现在计算机已经触及每个人的生活，甚至触及遥远乡村人们的生活。（ever 修饰名词 people）

The fire has been *out* for half an hour. 火已熄灭半小时了。（副词作表语）
I went to see him only to find him *out*. 我去看他，不料他不在家。（副词作宾语补足语）
Don't put off until *tomorrow* what should be done today.今日事今日毕。（副词作介词宾语）
I hope you'll enjoy your stay *here*. 希望你在这里过得愉快。（副词作定语）

14.2.4 副词的句法功能

1. 作状语，各类副词的排列顺序一般为：方式副词、地点副词、时间副词

如：He behaved well here yesterday.
（1）作状语，修饰动词。如：
Don't drive so fast. 别开得这么快。
（2）作状语，修饰形容词。如：
It's a very interesting film. 这是一部很有趣的电影。
（3）作状语，修饰其他副词。如：
He speaks English quite fluently. 他英语说得很流利。
（4）作状语，修饰全句。如：
Perhaps he will come back later. 或许过一会儿他会回来

2. 作表语

I must be off. 我得走了。

3. 作主补

He was seen out. 有人看到他出去了。

4. 作宾补

We saw him out. 我们看到他出去了。

5. 作定语

People here are very friendly. 这里的人们很友善。
（副词作定语，应放在名词的后面。）

14.2.5 副词的位置

（1）多数副词作状语时放在动词之后。如果动词带有宾语，则放在宾语之后。例如：
Mr Smith works very hard.
She speaks English well.
（2）频度副词作状语时，通常放在行为动词之前，情态动词、助动词和 be 动词之后。例如：
He usually gets up early.
I've never heard him singing.
She is seldom ill.

（3）程度副词一般放在所修饰的形容词和副词的前面，但 enough 作副词用时，通常放在被修饰词的后面。例如：

It is a rather difficult job.

He runs very fast.

He didn't work hard enough.

（4）副词作定语时，一般放在被修饰的名词之后。例如：

On my way home，I met my uncle.

The students there have a lot time to do their own research work.

14.2.6　副词的排列顺序

（1）表示确定时间的副词和表示地点的副词一般放在句尾。若句中同时有地点副词和时间副词，地点副词通常在前，时间副词在后。如：

They went to the Summer Palace yesterday.

We often go there.

I will go there tomorrow.

（2）方式副词，短的在前，长的在后，并用 and 或 but 等连词连接。如：

Please write slowly and carefully.

（3）多个不同副词排列时的顺序：程度+地点+方式+时间副词。

注意：副词 very 可以修饰形容词，但不能修饰动词。

（错）I very like English.

（对）I like English very much.

注意：副词 enough 要放在形容词的后面，形容词 enough 放在名词前后都可。如：

I don't know him well enough.

There is enough food for everyone to eat.

There is food enough for everyone to eat.

14.2.7　兼有两种形式的副词

1. close 与 closely

close 的意思是“近”；closely 的意思是“仔细地”。如：

He is sitting close to me.

Watch him closely.

2. late 与 lately

late 的意思是“晚”；lately 的意思是“最近”。如：

You have come too late.

What have you been doing lately?

3. deep 与 deeply

deep 的意思是“深”，表示空间深度；deeply 时常表示感情上的深度，“深深地”。如：

He pushed the stick deep into the mud.

Even father was deeply moved by the film.

4. high 与 highly

high 表示空间高度；highly 表示程度，相当于 much。如：
The plane was flying high.
I think highly of your opinion.

5. wide 与 widely

wide 表示空间宽度；widely 的意思是“广泛地”“在许多地方”。如：
He opened the door wide.
English is widely used in the world.

6. free 与 freely

free 的意思是“免费”；freely 的意思是“无限制地”。如：
You can eat free in my restaurant whenever you like.
You may speak freely；say what you like.

7. hard 与 hardly

hardly 不是 hard 的副词形式。二者的区别见表 14-6。

表 14-6　hard 与 hardly 的区别

hardly	副词	几乎不；几乎没有	可修饰动词或与 ever 连用构成词组	I could hardly stand after a long walk. 长途跋涉后我几乎站不住了。
hard	副词	努力地；猛烈地	修饰动词	It's hard work, so you must work hard. 这是一件困难的工作，因此你必须努力去做。
	形容词	困难的；硬的	修饰名词	

注：hardly 用作副词，意为“几乎不，几乎没有”，表示否定意义，其同义短语为 almost not。如：
He works hard. 他努力工作。
He hardly works. 他几乎不工作。
中考衔接：
（2017 江苏苏州）If you don't work _____ enough, I don't think your dream will come___.
A. hardly; truly　　B. hardly; true　　C. hard; true　　D. hard; truly
解析：hardly“几乎不”；hard“努力”。由句意“如果你工作不够努力，我认为你的梦想就不会实现”可知第一个空用 hard；come true 是固定短语，意为“实现”。故选 C 项。答案：C。

14.3　形容词、副词的比较等级

14.3.1　比较等级的含义

大多数形容词（性质形容词）和副词有比较级和最高级的变化，即原级（positive degree）、比较级（comparative degree）和最高级（superlative degree），用来表示事物的等级差别。原级即形容词的原形，比较级和最高级有规则变化和不规则变化两种。

14.3.2　形容词的比较等级

1. 规则变化（见表 14-7）

表 14-7　形容词比较等级的规则变化

构成法	原　级	比较级	最高级
一般单音节词末尾加-er，-est	tall（高的） great（巨大的）	taller greater	tallest greatest
以不发音的 e 结尾的单音词和少数以-le 结尾的双音节词只加-r，-st	nice（好的） large（大的） able（有能力的）	nicer larger abler	nicest largest ablest
以一个辅音字母结尾的闭音节单音节词，双写结尾的辅音字母，再加-er，-est	big（大的） hot（热的）	bigger hotter	biggest hottest
以辅音字母+y 结尾的双音节词，改 y 为 i，再加-er，-est	easy（容易的） busy（忙的）	easier busier	easiest busiest
少数以-er，-ow 结尾的双音节词末尾加-er，-est	clever（聪明的） narrow（窄的）	cleverer narrower	cleverest narrowest
其他双音节词和多音节词，在前面加 more，most 来构成比较级和最高级	important（重要的） easily（容易地）	more important more easily	most important most easily

2. 不规则变化（见表 14-8）

表 14-8　形容词比较等级的不规则变化

原　级	比较级	最高级
good（好的）well（健康的）	better	best
bad（坏的）ill（有病的）	worse	worst
old（老的）	older/elder	oldest/eldest
much/many（多的）	more	most
little（少的）	less	least
far（远的）	farther/further	farthest/furthest

易混点 1：farther; further。

farther 和 further 都是 far 的比较级。其用法区别是：在谈论地点、方向或距离时，farther 和 further 可以互换。但 further 还有“更多，进一步，稍后，额外”等含义，这时不能与 farther 互换使用。如：

The problem must be further discussed next time. 这个问题下一次必须进一步讨论。

We must get further information. 我们必须获得更多的信息。

1. He went abroad for ________ studies.

2. For______information about the color therapy, you can call Mr. Wang on 55578187.

A. farther　　B. farthest　　C. further　　D. furthest

3. I think we'll talk about it ______ after we both think ______.

A. farther; it over　　B. farther; over it　　C. further; it over　　D. further; over it

4. Fusun is _________ from our school than Zhaohua.

易混点 2：older 和 elder。

（1）older 和 elder 都是 old 的比较级。older 常用在表示比较的句型中，意为“较老的，较旧的，年纪较大的”；elder 只用于比较一家人的年龄长幼，意为“年长的”。如：

Your bike is older than mine. 你的自行车比我的旧。

He’s older than you. 他比你年龄大。

He’s my elder brother. 他是我哥哥。

（2）另外，elder 除指家庭成员外，也可以指其他人，意思是“资格老的”。

He is an elder teacher. 他是个老资格的教师。

例：

Mary’s_____ brother is a doctor. He is four years_____ than her.

A. older; elder　　B. elder; elder　　C. elder; older　　D. older; older

解析：由 than 判定应该用比较级，older 指人的年纪大，而 elder 主要表示兄弟姐妹之间的长幼关系。故选 C。

14.3.3　形容词、副词比较等级的基本用法（见表 14-9）

表 14-9　形容词、副词比较等级的基本用法

<table>
<tr><th>级别</th><th colspan="2">比较程度</th><th>表达方式和意义</th><th>例　句</th><th>备　注</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">原级</td><td rowspan="2">同等程度</td><td>肯定形式</td><td>as+原级+as
（像……一样）</td><td>Art is as interesting as music.
Play as well as you can.</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>否定形式</td><td>not+so（as）+原级+as
（不如……那样）</td><td>English is not so difficult as science.
She does not think swimming is as interesting as hiking.</td><td>注意 I don’t think 否定前移句型</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">比较级</td><td colspan="2">不同程度
（用于两者比较）</td><td>比较级+than
（比……）</td><td>Jim is older than Luky.
I like pork better than beef.</td><td>比较级前面可以加 much, far, even, still, a lot，a little，a bit 等</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">程度加深</td><td>比较级+and+比较级
（越来越……）
The+比较级，the+比较级
（越……，越……）</td><td>He is growing taller and taller.
He studies better and better.
The more books she reads, the better she understand.</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>最高级</td><td colspan="2">最高程度
（用于三者或三者以上）</td><td>The+最高级+of（in）
（最……）</td><td>Spring is the best season of the year.
Lin Tao jumped（the）farthest of all.</td><td>副词最高级前面的 the 往往省略</td></tr>
</table>

注意：

（1）有些形容词，如 dead，empty，round，sure，woolen 等受本身含义的限制，没有比较级。

（2）一些特殊比较词组：

no more than 不过，仅仅；同……一样不能

not more than 至多，不超过

no less than 多达，有……之多（加数字）（强调数量之多，带有感情色彩）；一样，不亚于，恰好

not less than 不少于（加数字）（无强调多少之意）

（3）the+最高级+比较范围（in 表示环境范围；of 或 among 表示对象范围）。如：

He is the tallest of/among the boys.

He is the tallest in his class.

（4）比较级与最高级的互换。如：

Jim is taller than any other boy in our class. 吉姆比我们班上任何一个男孩都高。

= Jim is taller than the other boys in our class. 在我们班上吉姆比其他的男孩高。

= Jim is taller than any of the other boys in our class.

= Jim is the tallest boy in our class. 吉姆是我们班最高的。

Jim is taller than any girl in our class. 吉姆比我们班的任何一个女孩都高。

Tom isn't as/so tall as Mike. = Tom is shorter than Mike.

= Mike is taller than Tom. = Tom is less tall than Mike.

This book isn't as/so interesting as that book.

=This book is less interesting than that book.

=That book is more interesting than this book.

（5）比较级前常用的修饰语：

比较级前常用 a bit/a little（一点），much/a lot（非常），even/far（更加），still 等词语表示程度。而表示数量的 more 之前还可以加 some/any/no/one/two/many/several/a lot 等词。例如：

She is a little taller than I（me）.

Rose is much more careful than Tom.

Would you like some more coffee? 你还要些咖啡吗?

He did not eat any more. 他没有再吃

（6）最高级前不加 the 情况：

① 作表语的形容词最高级前，如果不是和别人（或别物）相比，常不加 the。如：

We are busiest on Monday.

② 形容词最高级前有物主代词时，不再加 the。如：

Wang Hai is my best friend.

③ 最高级形式有时并不表示最高级概念，它只表示“非常”或“在很大程度上”，这时前边一般不加 the。如：

It's a most important question. = It's a very important question.

（7）英语中用比较级句型可以表最高级的含义，较为常见的有下列几种形式：

① 比较级与否定词连用表示最高级。如：

How beautiful she sings! I've never heard a better voice. = She has the best voice I've ever heard.

I have never read a more interesting novel. = It is the most interesting novel I've ever read.

② 比较级+than+any other+*n.*（单）/the other+*n.*（复）/any of the other+*n.*（复）。如：

She goes to school earlier than the other girls.

He works harder than any other student.

China is larger than any of the other countries in Asia.

③ 比较级+than+anything/anyone else。如：

George did more work than anyone else.

Tom cared more for money than for anything else.

④ 在比较句型中使用 no，nobody，nothing+better than…等词。如：

I like nothing better than swimming.

Nobody can do the work better than he did.

No other building is as grand as the new hotel.

⑤ one of+the+形容词最高级+*n.*（复）“最……的……之一”。如：

Paper-making is one of the greatest inventions of ancient China.

⑥ the+序数词+形容词最高级+*n.*（单）+in 短语“第几（长、大、远）……”。如：

The Yellow River is the second longest river in China.

⑦ 形容词最高级可用在选择疑问句中，常用句型：Which/Who… A，B or C? 如：

Which city is the biggest，Beijing，Shanghai or Chongqing?

⑧ 当形容词最高级前有物主代词、指示代词、名词所有格修饰时省掉最高级前的定冠词 the。如：

Linda is my sister's best friend.

14.3.4　形容词、副词比较级和最高级使用注意事项

（1）比较应在同类事物之间进行。

误：Your English is better than me.

正：Your English is better than mine.

（2）比较级前可以有一个表示程度的状语，最常见的三大修饰词是：a little，much，even。以下单词也可用来修饰：any，far，still，a lot，yet，rather。如：

My sister is a little taller than me.

Their house is much larger than ours.

另外，名词短语也可修饰比较级，用来说明程度。如：

I'm three years older than he.

特别提醒：very，quite，too 不可修饰比较级。

（3）避免重复使用比较级。如：

误：He is more kinder to small animals than me.

正：He is much kinder to small animals than me.

误：He is more cleverer than his brother.

正：He is cleverer than his brother.

（4）比较要符合逻辑，在同一范围内比较时，避免将主语含在比较对象中，这时需使用 other 来排除自身。如：

误：China is larger that any country in Asia.

正：China is larger than any other country in Asia.

误：John studies harder than any student in his class.

正：John studies harder than any other student in his class.

正：John studies harder than any of the other students in his class.

正：John studies harder than anyone else in his class.

（5）比较要遵循前后一致的原则，注意前后呼应。如：

The population of Shanghai is larger than that of Beijing.

It is easier to make a plan than to carry it out.

（6）序数词通常只修饰最高级。如：

Africa is the second largest continent.

The Yellow River is the second longest river in China.

This is the third most popular song of Michael Jackson.

（7）为避免重复，通常用 that，those，one，ones 代替前面出现的名词。that 代替可数名词单数和不可数名词，those 代替可数名词复数。one 既可指人又可指物，只能代替可数名词。如：

The weather in China is different from that in America.

The book on the table is more interesting than that（或 the one）on the desk.

A box made of steel is stronger than one made of wood.

误：In winter，the weather of Beijing is colder than it of Shanghai.

正：In winter，the weather of Beijing is colder than that of Shanghai.

（8）“否定词+比较级”相当于最高级。如：

—Wait until we get a satisfactory reply，will you?

—I couldn’t agree more. The idea sounds great to me.

Nothing is so easy as this. =Nothing is easier than this. =This is the easiest thing.

（9）比较级前一般不加冠词，但表示两者中较突出者，且比较级后又有名词或出现了 of the two，这时比较级前一定要加 the。如：

He is the taller of the two.

Of the two jobs，he chose the harder.

Which is the younger one，Lily or Lucy?

试比较：

Which is larger，Canada or Australia?

Which is the larger country，Canada or Australia?

She is taller than her two sisters.

She is the taller of the two sisters.

（10）不含 than 的比较级前可加不定冠词修饰，构成“a/an+比较级+单数可数名词”表示“一个更……的人/物”。如：

Why don’t you use a sharper knife? 你为什么不用一把更锋利的刀呢?

（11）比较级 than 后应用人称代词的主格，但非正式语体中常用宾格。如：

He is taller than me.

（12）为避免重复，比较级中同样的动词用助动词 do，does，did 替代。如：

I spend less time doing homework than John does.

She tells more funny jokes than we do.

（13）形容词 most 前面没有 the，不表示最高级的含义，只表示“非常”。如：

It is a most important problem. =It is a very important problem.

（14）倍数的表达法。

① A is three（four，etc.）times the size（height，length etc.）of B。如：

The new building is four times the size（the height）of the old one.

这座新楼是那座旧楼的四倍大（高）/这座新楼比那座旧楼大（高）三倍。

② A is three（four，etc.）times as big（high，long，etc.）as B。如：

A is four times as large as B. A 是 B 的四倍大/A 比 B 大三倍。

③ A is three（four，etc.）times bigger（higher，longer，etc.）than B。如：

Your school is three times bigger than ours. 你们的学校比我们的学校大三倍。

用 times 表倍数通常用于三倍以上，两倍可以用 twice 或 double.

【形容词、副词比较级和最高级重点句型归纳】

句型一：形容词或副词比较级+than…

注意事项：该句型为比较级的最基本句型。只要看到 than，即可确定前面使用比较级。如：

He is taller than I am.

The boy does his homework more carefully than the girl.

句型二：less+形容词的原级+than

注意事项：该句型表示“不如、不及”，特别需要注意的是，less 本身就是 little 的比较级，后面必须跟形容词的原级，否定就造成了比较级的重复使用。如：

This computer is less expensive than that one.

句型三：as+形容词或副词的原级+as

注意事项：该句型表示对比的两者程度相当，as 之间必须跟形容词或副词的原级，决不能使用比较级。此外，还要确定使用形容词还是副词。确定的依据就是第一个 as 前的动词，如果是系动词（如 be 动词，感官动词 look，sound，smell，taste，feel 等），那么就用形容词的原级，如果前面的动词是一般的实义动词，那么就必须用副词的原级修饰动词。如：

This lesson is as easy as that one.

Lucy talks with old people as politely as her sister.

特别提醒：as…as 之间也可以跟名词，句型如下：

（1）as+形容词+a/an+单数名词+as。如：

He is as kind a person as his father. 他和他爸爸一样都是善良的人。

（2）as+many/much+不可数名词/可数名词复数+as。如：

I can carry as much paper as you can. 你能搬多少纸，我也能。

I have as many books as you do. 我的书和你的一样多。

We'll give you as much help as we can. 我们将尽我们所能给你帮助。

其他几个关于 as…as 的句型：

（1）as…as one can 尽其所能。如：

He began to run as fast as he could.

（2）as…as possible 尽可能。如：

Please help us as quickly as possible.

（3）as soon as…一……就……。如：

He will call me as soon as he comes here.

句型四：not as/so+形容词或副词的原级+as

注意事项：该句型表示“前者不如后者……”，往往可以与句型一和句型二替换。第一个 as 可以换为 so。如：

This classroom is not as bright as yours.

I cannot run as fast as you.

句型五：the+形容词或副词最高级+in/of/among+比较范围

注意事项：如果这里为副词最高级，前面的 the 常常省略。介词 in 和 of 的用法完全不一样。in 表示“在某一范围内”，如 in the classroom，in the world。of 表示“在同类之间”，of 后面的词与主语同类，另名词前一般有冠词 the。among 表示“在（三者或三者以上）之间”，among 后接代词或没有修饰语的名词。如：

The Changjiang River is the longest river in our country.

Peter is the tallest of the six students.

This picture is the most beautiful among these.

句型六：one of+形容词最高级+可数名词复数形式

注意事项：one of 有三大考点：① 后跟形容词最高级；② 后接可数名词复数形式；③ 作主语时主语为 one，谓语动词用单数形式。如：

One of the smallest dinosaurs was about one metre long.

句型七：比较级+and+比较级/more and more+多音节词的原级

注意事项：该句型表示“越来越……”，如果该形容词比较级构成形式加 er，则用前面的句型；如果该形容词比较级加 more 构成，则用后面的句型。如：

It is getting hotter and hotter.

The girl is becoming more and more beautiful.

句型八：the+比较级+…，the+比较级+…

注意事项：该句型意思为“越……就越……”，表示两种情况同时变化。如：

The more you eat，the fatter you will be.

In the test，the more careful you are，the fewer mistakes you will make.

句型九：be different from

注意事项：该句型没有运用比较级，但也是对两者事物进行比较。注意前后比较需在同类事物中进行。如：

My schoolbag is different from yours.

句型十：the same as…/the same…as…

注意事项：该句型同样没有运用比较级，表示两者之间具有共同特性。注意这里的 as 和 same 为固定搭配，不能随便变换。如：

I don't want to buy the same things as Amy did.

句型十一：比较级+than+any other+名词单数形式

注意事项：any other 后面跟单数名词，表示“任何别的”，即主语在范围内，必须把自身从这一范围内除去，否则逻辑上不通。如果主语不在这一范围内，那么要把 other 去掉，只用 any 即可。如：

Tom is taller than any other boys in our class.

Shanghai is larger than any city in Jiangsu.

句型十二：比较级+than+the other+名词复数形式

注意事项：该句型相当于 any other+名词单数形式，常用来进行同义句改写。该句型与句型十一虽然表面上都是比较级，但实际上相当于最高级。以下三句表达的是同一个意思。

Daniel is the most hard-working student in our class.

Daniel is more hard-working than any other student in our class.

Daniel is more hard-working than the other students in our class.

【课堂练习】

一、写出下列形容词的比较级和最高级。

old ____________________ far __________________ early ________________

delicious ________________ short_________________ late _________________

little __________________ fat __________________ red __________________

happy __________________ brave________________ young _______________

二、用所给词的适当形式填空。

1. Li Ming is _____（young）boy in his class.
2. Daniel has _______________（many）story books of all the students.
3. Lucy speaks English ________（well）in her class.
4. He lives _______________（far）than any other student in your class.
5. She has the _______________（pretty）house in this area.
6. Who runs _______________（fast）of all?
7. Tom is one of _______________（short）boys in our class.
8. Which is _______________（interesting），science，Chinese or English?

三、句型转换，每空一词。

1. Basketball is more popular than football in the USA.（改为同义句）

Football is _________ _________ popular as basketball in the USA.

2. Tom is tall. Jim is short.（合并为一句）

Tom is _________ _________ Jim.

3. Mike is not as quiet as his brother.（改为同义句）

Mike's brother is _________ _________ Mike.

4. I'm athletic. He's athletic，too.（合并为一句）

I am _________ _________ _________ he is.

5. My dictionary isn't so thick as yours.

My dictionary is _________ than yours.

四、完成句子，每空一词。

1. 我的哥哥比你高。

My brother is _________ _________ you.

2. 他不如他的弟弟外向。

He isn't _________ _________ _________ his brother.

3. 我想我比杰克高一点。

I think I am _________ _________ _________ than Jack.

4. 春天来了，天气越来越暖和了。

Spring is coming，it gets _________ _________ _________.

5. 你学习越努力，成绩就会越好。

_________ _________ you study，_________ _________ grades you will get.

6. 那个短发的女孩是我们班最高的。

The girl with short hair is __________ __________ in our class.

7. 今天是一年中最热的一天。

Today is __________ __________ day of the year.

8. 中国第二大城市是哪座城市？

Which is __________ __________ __________ __________ in China?

9. 他的房间是三个中最干净的一个。

His room is __________ __________ of the three.

10. 长江是世界上最长的河流之一。

The Yangtze River is _________ __________ __________ __________ __________ in the world.

五、单词填空。

1. Many Chinese have trouble using a knife and fork ______________（correct）.

2. When you feel tired，you'd better wear ___________（energy）colours，such as green.

3. Don't get ____________（patient）about your personal trouble.

4. _____________（医疗的）workers are badly needed in those earthquake-hit areas.

5. Sleep is ____________（必要的）to health.

6. I changed into my sports shoes so that I could walk more ________________（舒服地）.

7. She has been a very_______________（勇敢的）little girl.

8. The book should be returned no_____________（迟）than next Friday.

9. Susan often goes swimming in summer when it's warm and ________（晴朗的）.

10. I like working here because everyone is________（friend）.

11. Finally help reached the flood victims in the damaged village_______（成功）.

12. The guy is a top student in her school. He'll go abroad for________study next month.（far）
13. —Do you want to learn how to cook healthy and________food? —Of course.（taste）
14. His father was looking________at him because he had made a serious mistake.（angry）
15. I could________（几乎不）find my old house because great changes had taken place there.
16. The museum has lots of amazing things. It's________（值得）a visit.
17. I have a weight problem and it's____（必要的）for me to change my diet and take more exercise.
18. It is very________（有意义的 ）for me to join the Tree-planting Club.
19. The weather today becomes even_________（bad）. Why not take a raincoat with you?
20. If someone doesn't show good manners to others，he or she is_________（ polite）.
21. How_________（quick）Betty answered the teacher's question!
22. Blue is a calm and________（peace）colour. It can make you feel relaxed.
23. "Why didn't you tell me earlier?" the boss shouted_______（ 生气）.
24. Mary was too________（紧张）to describe the accident clearly.
25. If you don't see the doctor at once，you'll get even _____________（ill）later on.
26. The firemen have saved the boy from the fire _______________（successful）.
27. He is quite an ____________（energy）man because he always stays up late but gets up early.
28. What's the weather like in your hometown now?It's usually very ___（热）and often rains a lot.
29. Scientists have found that talking to another person for 10 minutes a day can help you remember things ________（好）than not to.
30. The __________（high）you climb，the more beautiful view you will see.
31. Nancy is patient and she doesn't give up __________（easy）.
32. He seemed _________（friend）at first，but now I've got to know him and I realize he's warm and kind.
33. Mary passed her examination because she studied very __________（努力）.
34. In the eighteenth century，more people came to America，_________（主要地，大部分地）Europeans.
35. It's________（friendly）of him to say such bad words to his classmates.
36. We hope the weather will be fine，but it is getting even________（bad）.
37. The computer is________（广泛）used in our daily life. We can do many things with it.

【参考答案】

1. correctly	2. energetic	3. impatient	4. Medical	5. necessary
6. comfortably	7. brave	8. later	9. sunny	10. friendly
11. successfully	12. further	13. tasty	14. angrily	15. hardly
16. worth	17. necessary	18. meaningful	19. worse	20. impolite
21. quickly	22. peaceful	23. Angrily	24. nervous	25. worse
26. successfully	27. energetic	28. hot	29. Better	30. higher
31. easily	32. unfriendly	33. hard	34. mostly	35. unfriendly
36. worse	37. widely			

六、选择填空。

1. I'm much _____ than my two friends，but I jump _____ of us three.
   A. taller；higher　　B. shorter；higher　　C. taller；highest　　D. shorter；highest
2. I like the pop star _____ that I never miss his concert.
   A. very much　　B. too much　　C. quite much　　D. so much
3. Lily is ______ hard-working than any other student in her class.
   A. much　　B. more　　C. most　　D. the most

4 . Grandma，you must feel _________after cleaning the house. Let’s take a rest.

A. tired　B. well　C. good　D. angry

5. Curing sick people is ________ important________ doctors must be careful.

A. too；to　B. so；that　C. enough；to　D. such；that

6. —John sings so well. Has he ever been trained?

—No. He learns all by himself. He____________ goes to any training class.

A. usually　B. often　C. never　D. even

7. —Mark speaks English well，but you____________ him.

—Thank you.

A. speak as badly as　B. speak worse than

C. don’t speak so badly as　D. speak much better than

8. Love will ______ last if we love the whole fine things around us.

A. seldom　B. always　C. never　D. sometimes

9. I’m his best friend. I know him well probably ______ than anyone else.

A. less　B. wider　C. better　D. deeper

10. That lady is a vegetarian（素食主义者）. She _______ eats meat.

A. often　B. sometimes　C. seldom　D. usually

11. Li Lianjie often donates much money to poor people. He is a well-known _____actor.

A. creative　B. generous　C. modest　D. confident

12. We arrived_________late that there were seats left.

A. much　B. too　C. so　D. very

13. Of the two T-shirts，I’d choose the_________one to save some money for a book.

A. cheapest　B. cheaper　C. more expensive　D. most expensive

14. —Was Henry late for the concert yesterday?

—No. He got there even ten minutes ___________ than us two.

A. earlier　B. earliest　C. later　D. latest

15. The question is_________ that nobody can answer it.

A. very hard　B. too difficult　C. strange enough　D. so strange

16. I find this computer game _____ to play.

A. enough easy　B. easy enough　C. enough easily　D. easily enough

17. —Which of those radios sounds _____? —The smallest one.

A. good　B. well　C. better　D. best

【参考答案】

1—5　DDBAB　6—10　CDBCC　11—15　BCBAD　16—17　BD

七、用所给单词的适当形式填空。

1. My purse was stolen on the bus yesterday. ____________（luck），there was no money in it.

2. Mobile phones are _________（wide）used in most of the cities in China.

3. He put on his coat and went out ____________（quick）.

4. She is __________（good）than Li Ping at swimming.

5. A lot of Chinese people are ___________（pride）of Yao Ming，a famous basketball star in NBA.

6. —One more satellite was sent up into space in China in May.

—Right. The government spoke ___________ of that.（high）

7. Allie asked me ___________（polite）to put the things away.

8. It’s snowing hard. You must drive ______________ （careful）.
9. —This digital camera is really cheap! —The ___， the better.（cheap）I’m short of money， you see.
10. Hainan is a very large island. It’s the second ____________ （large）island in China.
【参考答案】

1. Luckily	2. widely	3. quickly	4. better	5. proud
6. highly	7. politely	8. carefully	9. cheaper	10. largest

八、选择题。

1.（2010·荆州中考）—Do you think yesterday’s math problem was difficult?
—Yes. I could ________ work it out.
A. hardly B. easily C. finally D. nearly
2.（2010·晋江中考）—Don’t worry. My mother will look after your baby ______.
—Thanks a lot.
A. careful enough B. enough careful C. carefully enough
3.（2010.盐城中考）They clapped and shouted____when they saw Yao Ming appear on the playground.
A. hardly B. quietly C. excitedly D. angrily
4.（2010.衢州中考）As we all know， smoking is bad for us， ______ for children.
A. especially B. recently C. probably D. nearly
5.（2010·定西中考）He doesn’t play the violin so_____as his father.
A. good B. better C. well D. best
6.（2009·沈阳中考）—Does Alice often work until 2 a. m.?
—No， she ________ does.
A. nearly B. certainly C. seldom D. always
7.（2009·河南中考）The match was really fantastic， ________when Smith scored in the last minute.
A. probably B. exactly C. especially D. mostly
【解析】选 C。四个选项分别意为“可能”“准确地”“特别是”“大部分”，结合题意“比赛真的是很奇怪，特别当史密斯在最后一分钟得了分”可选出答案 C。
8.（2009·枣庄中考）One day I’m going to retire ________.
A. a village beautiful B. beautiful somewhere
C. quiet somewhere D. somewhere quiet and beautiful
9.（2009·江西中考）—I didn’t know you take a bus to school.
—Oh，I ______ take a bus，but it is snowing today.
A. hardly B. never C. sometimes D. usually
10.（2009·绵阳中考）Some rules are almost the same ___in the world，but rules of etiquette can be different from place to place.
A. somewhere B. anywhere C. nowhere D. everywhere
11.（2009·湖州中考）Would you mind speaking a little _______? I can’t follow you.
A. quietly B. slowly C. quickly D. politely
12.（2009·山西中考）—How often do you go to a concert? —____ ever. I’m not interested in that at all.
A. Usually B. Hardly C. Almost
【解析】选 B。hardly ever 意为“几乎不”。
13.（2009·绍兴中考）—Emily，here’s a dictionary. I hope it will help you.
—Thank you. It’s ______ what I need.
A. just B. still C. only D. almost
14.（2009·扬州中考）—Do you know anything about the players of our school football team?

—Yes. They are _______ young boys between the age of thirteen and fifteen.

A. most　　B. mostly　　C. almost　　D. at most

15.（2008·山东中考）—How much will you be paid?

—Judy，I don't do it for money，but for experience. ___，it's voluntary（志愿的）work.

A. However　　B. Besides　　C. Finally　　D. Possibly

16.（2008·哈尔滨中考）Please read every sentence _____. The more _____you are，the fewer mistakes you'll make.

A. carefully；carefully　　B. careful；careful　　C. carefully；careful

17.（2008·攀枝花中考）We are going to have a party ________ next week.

A. sometime　　B. some time　　C. sometimes　　D. some times

18.（2008·南通中考）—The electric fan can ________ blow away the terrible smell in the room，can it?

—It's hard to say，but you may have a try.

A. easily　　B. hardly　　C. quickly　　D. finally

19.（2007·天津中考）Remember to e-mail me. All of us hope to hear from you _________.

A. quickly　　B. soon　　C. fast　　D. quick

【解析】选 B。quickly 和 quick 多指时间快，其中前者用来修饰动词，后者用来形容词和名词；soon 是“不久、很快”的意思；fast 意为“快”，多指动作迅速。结合题意“记着给我发邮件，我们所有人都希望很快收到你的来信”可选出答案 B。

20.（2003·绵阳）This question is ________ more difficult than that one.

A. rather　　B. quite　　C. very　　D. little

【解析】考查比较级的修饰语。比较级的修饰语可以使用 much, a little 和 a bit。故排除 D。而 quite 和 very 只能修饰原级。答案为 A。

九、填空题。

1.（2009·黄冈中考）When Chang'e I landed___（安全地）on the earth，all Chinese were cheerful.

2.（2009·常州中考）Congratulations! You've answered all the questions___________（正确地）.

3.（2009·乌鲁木齐中考）Please listen to me _____（认真）! I have something important to tell you.

4.（2009·广元中考）—Don't play the music so ________（大声）. Your father is sleeping，Jenny.

—Sorry，Mum.

5.（2009·东营中考）There was a fire in the office yesterday. L_______，all the people were saved.

6.（2009·恩施中考）Computers are ________（wide）used in our daily life.

7.（2009·兰州中考）It rained ________（heavy），so he didn't go to work yesterday.

8.（2009·宿迁中考）The mother looked_________（angry）at her naughty daughter.

9.（2008·威海中考）He walked so ________（慢）that he fell behind.

10.（2008·徐州中考）In the eighteenth century，more people came to America，________（主要地，大部分地）Europeans.

11.（2008·苏州中考）I changed into my sports shoes so that I could walk more _______（舒服地）.

12.（2008·泰州中考）The firemen have saved the boy from the fire ________（successful）.

13.（2008·贵阳中考）It's time to go to bed. You'd better finish your homework ________（quick）.

【全国高考汇编之形容词和副词】

（2014 安徽卷）27．My good performance in the job interview left me_______about my future and about what I can do here.

A. puzzled　B. sensitive　C. optimistic　D. embarrassed

【考点】考查形容词词义辨析。

【答案】C。

【解析】puzzled“困惑的”；sensitive“敏感的”；optimistic“乐观的”；embarrassed“尴尬的”。句意：在工作面试中的良好表现让我对自己的未来和在这里能够做的事情很乐观。根据 My good performance in the job interview 表现良好可知我对自己未来很有信心，故 C 正确。

（2014 安徽卷）33．It's our hope that we will play a greater role in the market place and，_______，supply more jobs.

A. however　B. anywhere　C. therefore　D. otherwise

【考点】考查副词词义辨析。

【答案】C。

【解析】however“然而”；anywhere“无论何处”；therefore“因此”；otherwise“否则，要不然；另外一方面”。上下文之间是因果关系。故 C 正确。

【举一反三】The businessperson wanted to sell his goods fast，_____，he chose his partner with great care.

A. and　B. otherwise　C. however　D. therefore

【答案】D。

【解析】and 属于并列连词，后面要直接加并列成分，不用逗号。otherwise“否则，要不然”；however“然而”；therefore“因此”。句意：这位商人想快点把货物卖掉，因此他很细心地选择同伴。根据句义可知上下文存在着因果关系。故 D 正确。

（2014 大纲卷）27. Raymond's parents wanted him to have _______ possible education.

A. good　B. better　C. best　D. the best

【考点】考查形容词的用法和常识。

【答案】D。

【解析】句义：Raymond 的父母亲想要他得到可能的最好教育。本句是常识，父母亲当然希望自己的孩子能够得到最好的教育，有最好的发展前途。故 D 正确。

（2014 大纲卷）34. Henry was away from home for quiet a bit and _____ saw his family.

A. frequently　B. seldom　C. always　D. usually

【考点】考查副词词义辨析。

【答案】B。

【解析】frequently“频繁地，经常地”；seldom“很少”；always“总是，一直”；usually“通常”。句意：Harry 已经离开家一段时间了，他很少看见他的父亲。根据句义可知他已经离开家了，那么很少有和父亲见面的机会。故使用副词 seldom 表示否定。故 B 正确。

（2014 大纲卷）35. —What did you do last weekend? —Nothing _____.

A. much　B. else　C. ever　D. yet

【考点】考查固定搭配。

【答案】A。

【解析】本题中的固定搭配 nothing much 表示“没什么，很少”；nothing else“没有别的事情”。句意：——上个周末你做什么了？——我什么也没有表示。根据句义可知表示的是否定含义。故 A 正确。

（2014 福建卷）24. With online shopping increasingly popular，the Internet is seen as a（n）___way of reaching target customers.

A. temporary　B. complex　C. accurate　D. efficient

【考点】考查形容词词义辨析。

【答案】D。

【解析】temporary“暂时的”；complex“复杂的”；accurate“准确的，精确的”；efficient“高效的”。

句意：随着网络购物越来越流行，因特网被看作是找到目标客户的高效方法。根据前半句可知网络购物的流行让我们很容易就会找到目标客户，所以因特网是一个很高效的方法。故 D 正确。

【举一反三】He has decided to settle ____in France because he is fond of the romantic country.

A. temporary B. temporarily C. permanent D. permanently

【答案】D。

【解析】temporary “暂时的”；temporarily “暂时地”；permanent “永久的”；permanently “永久地”。句意：他已经决定在法国定居，因为他喜欢上了这个浪漫的国度。故 D 正确。

（2014 湖北卷）27. What was so ______ about Jasmine Westland's victory was that she came first in the marathon bare-footed.

A. awful B. essential C. impressive D. obvious

【考点】考查形容词词义辨析及语境理解。

【答案】C。

【解析】A 糟糕的，可怕的，极坏的；B 必要的，基本的；C 留有深刻印象的；D 明显的，显然的。句意：关于 Jasmine Westland 的胜利给人印象最深刻的是他赤脚得到了马拉松比赛的第一名。根据句意 Jasmine Westland 赤脚获得第一名可知这是最让人难忘的事情。故 C 项符合上下文义。

【举一反三】Mistakes don't just happen；they occur for a reason. Find out the reason，and then making the mistake becomes__________.

A. favourable B. precious C. essential D. worthwhile

【答案】D。

【考点】形容词词义辨析，同时也涉及构词法。

【解析】worthwhile “值得的，有价值的”，表示犯错误是值得的。A 喜爱的，赞同的；B 珍贵的；C 本质的。只要知道词义，并联系生活常识，该题还是很容易得出答案的。

【中考真题】

用所给词的适当形式填空。

1.（2012 临沂中考）Recently, scientists have found that dogs are______（smart）than cats.

2.（2012 安顺中考）The boys like playing basketball because they think they can be_____（relax）.

3.（2012 烟台中考）Can you tell me the_____（long）of the new bridge?

4.（2011 上海中考）It is a very_____（use）book for language learners to improve writing skills.

5.（2011 烟台中考）What should we do to help the______（home）people after the earthquake?

6.（2011 贵阳中考）Martin was_____（interest）in Chinese history after he came to China and he read a lot about it.

7.（2011 临沂中考）This is one of the_____（big）rabbits in the world. He eats twelve carrots, six apples and two cabbages every day.

8.（2011 永州中考）The______（much）we exercise, the healthier we'll get.

9.（2011 遵义中考）Cleaners clean the street every day. Their work is______（true）common.

10.（2011 宿迁中考）____（lucky）, they escaped from the burning building with the help of the firemen.

【专项测试】

1.（2009 连云港）— Can you come and give us a talk on Thursday or Friday?

— I'm afraid ______ day is impossible.

A. either B. neither C. every D. any

2. (2009 镇江) You'd better not read today's newspaper because there is ______ in it.

A. something interesting B. anything new

C. important thing D. nothing special

3. (2009 乌鲁木齐) It's ______ today than yesterday.

A. quite colder B. a little colder C. much cold D. more cold

4. (2009 贵州) What ______ things can you tell us?

A. other B. else C. some D. also

5. (2008 淮安) We got to the cinema late because of the ______ traffic.

A. heavy B. large C. big D. much

6. (2008 无锡) The cake Mrs Black made looks ______, but it tastes ______.

A. bad; good B. bad; well C. badly; good D. badly; well

7. (2008 无锡) I'm afraid this one is too expensive. Please show me a ______ one.

A. cheaper B. better C. bigger D. stronger

8. (2008 常州) Few of us like him because he thinks ______ of himself than of others.

A. much B. much more C. much less D. a little

9. (2008 镇江) The population of Tianjin is ______ than that of Shanghai.

A. larger B. less C. smaller D. fewer

10. (2008 连云港) It is so ______ here that he can't do his homework.

A. noisy B. noise C. noisier D. noisily

11. (2008 衡水) When spring comes, the days get ______.

A. short and short B. shorter and shorter

C. long and long D. longer and longer

12. (2007 镇江) I like skiing better than climbing because I think climbing is ______ skiing.

A. not as exciting as B. not as more exciting as

C. not as most exciting as D. more exciting than

13. (2007 扬州) My cousin has changed a lot. She used to be ______, but now she is tall.

A. short B. thin C. pretty D. heavy

14. (2007 连云港) If you like the chicken , you may have ______ you can.

A. more than B. as much as C. as many as D. so many as

15. (2007 苏州) —You look ______ . What's wrong? —My son hurt his leg this morning.

A. happy B. fine C. surprised D. worried

16. (2007 淮安) The company sends a ______ report out to the public every March.

A. one year B. yearly C. every year D. year

17. (2007 济南) If you want to be ______, you have to eat ______ food and take ______ exercise.

A. thinner; less; more B. thinner; little; more

C. thin; few; enough D. thinner; fewer; less

18. (2007 秦皇岛) One day they crossed the ______ bridge behind the place.

A. old Chinese stone B. Chinese old stone

C. old stone Chinese D. Chinese stone old

19. (2007 廊坊) They offered her a house for $ 100,000, ______ it was worth.

A. as much as twice B. as much twice as

C. as twice much as D. twice as much as

20. (2007 河南) Now the air in our town is ______ than it used to be. Something must be done to stop it.

A. very good　　B. much better　　C. rather bad　　D. even worse

21.（2010 重庆）We're happy that our country has developed __these years than before.

A. quickly　　B. less quickly　　C. more quickly　　D. most quickly

22.（2010 眉山）—I think folk music is less popular than classical music.

—I don't agree with you. Classical music is ______folk music.

A. as popular as　　B. so popular as　　C. more popular than

23.（2011 成都）—______scientific attitude is needed in developing our city.

—I agree with you. In this way, we can make ______mistakes.

A. Fewer; less　　B. Less; more　　C. More; fewer

24.（2011 德阳）—Do you know what has happened in Japan recently?

—The earthquake! It's _______ one that I have ever heard of.

A. a very serious　　B. a more serious　　C. the most serious

25.（2008 广东）—John, is Henry your twin brother?

—Oh, yes. He is twenty minutes _____ than me.

A. heavier　　B. elder　　C. taller　　D. older

26.（2009 河源）Everyone was _____ when they heard the ______ news.

A excited; excited　　B exciting; exciting　　C excited; exciting　　D exciting; excited

27.（2008 深圳）—The teacher looked at her students _______ when they were saved.

—We also felt _____ for them.

A. happily; happy　　B. happy; happily　　C. happy; happy　　D. happily; happily

28.（2008 深圳）—______ plastic bags we use, _______ it will be to the environment.

—I agree ______ you.

A. The less; the better; with　　B. The fewer; the better; with

C. The less; the worse; to　　D. The fewer; the worse; to

29.（2007 广东）The doctor told Mary to eat ______ vegetables and ______ meat because she was getting fatter and fatter.

A. more; little　　B. more; less　　C. many; few　　D. more; fewer

30.（2011 深圳）—The doctor told me _____ too much, but I find it difficult.

—The doctor is right. The less you drink,____ you will be.

A. don't drink; the healthier　　B. not to drink; the healthier

C. not to drink; the more healthier　　D. don't drink; healthier

31.（2011 深圳）—There is a smile on Miss Gao's face. She must be _____ with Sam's work.

—I think so. No one did as ____ as him in our class.

A. angry; well　　B. pleasing; good　　C. strict; good　　D. pleased; well

32.（2011 广东）—Have you ever seen the movie called Los Angles 2011?

—Yes, but I think it's _____. I fell asleep when I saw it.

A. exciting　　B. boring　　C. bored　　D. excited

15 介 词

15.1 概 述

介词是一种用来表示词与词、词与句之间关系的虚词，在句中不能单独作句子成分。介词是英语中很活跃的词，一般置于名词之前。它常和名词或名词性词语构成介词短语。同一个介词常和不同的词语搭配形成固定搭配，表示不同意义。

15.2 介词的分类

依照不同的标准，介词可分为不同的种类。

按介词本身的组成方式，介词可分为简单介词、双重介词和短语介词三大类（见表 15-1）。

表 15-1

词 类		例 词
简单介词	普通介词	at，in，of，with，before，about，after
	合成介词	into，within，without，inside，outside
	分词介词	including，considering
双重介词		since before，until after，from behind
短语介词		because of，in front of，according to

按介词本身的意义，介词可分为时间介词、方位介词、动向介词、方式介词、原因介词等（见表 15-2）。

表 15-2

词 类	例 词
时间介词	at，in，on，before，after，from
方位介词	on，in，at，behind，over，above，under，below
动向介词	to，into，up，down，through，along，out of
方式介词	by，on，with
原因介词	for，from，of，with

15.3 介词的意义

1. 表示时间的介词

（1）in 表示“在某一时间段”“在……某一时候”，常用在月、季、年份、时代、世纪等时间名词的

前面，或用来泛指一天的某一段时间。如：

in July/summer/2000/ancient times/the 1999's

in the morning/afternoon/evening

in 也可以指“在……之后”，表示从说话起的若干时间内。如：

The bus will be here in ten minutes.

（2）on 表示“在特定的某一天”，也可用于带有修饰语的一天的某个时间段之前。如：on Saturday，on Saturday morning，on the morning of August 1st。

（3）at 表示“在某一时间点”，或用来表示不确定的时间和短期的假日、时节等。如：at six o'clock，at Easter。

（4）介词 over，through（out）两者均指“经过的全部时间”。如：

Stay over the Christmas.

（5）介词 for 表示动作或状态延续的全部时间长度，表示“长达……”之意；since 指从过去特定的某个时刻到说话时为止的一段时间；两者往往用于完成时。如：

I have been there for six years.

We have not seen each other since 1993.

（6）during 指“在……时期/时间内”，必须以表示一段时间的词或词组作宾语。如：

She was ill for a week，and during that week she ate little.

2. 表示地点的介词

（1）above 和 below 分别表示高于和低于的意思，不一定指垂直方向上的上下；over 和 under 分别表示垂直方向上的上下和高低；on/on top of 和 beneath/underneath 表示“和表面相接触”意义上的上下。以上三对介词互为反义词。如：

The temple stands on top of the hill.

The pen is beneath the book.

There is a lamp over the desk.

（2）介词 at 指小地点或集会场合；on 表示线或面上的位置；in 表示在立体、区域或环境内，特别是那些教大，能够容纳相应事物的环境。如：

He works at Peking University.

Your radio is on the desk.

The boat is in the lake.

（3）介词 in，on，off，to 表示相当于某个区域或某个物体的位置关系：in 表示在区域的里面；on 表示在区域的边界附近，可以是属于这个区域的一部分或相互接壤；off 也表示在区域的边界附近，但一般不是属于这个区域的一部分；to 表示在区域的边界更远些的附近，所以不是属于这个区域的一部分或不互相接壤。如：

Japan is to the east of China and Mongolia is on the north.

Taiwan is in the east of China but is off the mainland.

（4）介词 between 用来说明“在……两者之间”或“三个以上人物或事物中的两者之间的相互关系”；among 用来说明“在……两者以上之间”的相互关系；amid（amidst）和 among 都可以用来表示没有确定数目的物体之间的相互关系，amid 多用于正式文体。如：

There is a small river between the two villages.

The book is the best among these modern novels.

（5）介词 in front of 和 behind 指前、后的相对位置。如：

She always looks in front of and behind the car before she starts it.

（6）介词 round 指“绕过”；pass 指“从……旁边经过”；through 指“从……之中穿过”。如：

The movie theater is round the corner.

He lives in the village past the bus stop through the park.

3. 表示原因的介词

（1）for 常常表示褒贬、奖惩的原因或心理原因。如：

They will reward you for your help.

（2）due to 常常用来引导形容词性的短语，作定语或表语。如：

Mistakes due to carelessness may have serious consequences.

（3）from 和 out of 常常表示动机或原因；through 表示消极或间接的原因。如：

He feels weak from lack of sleep.

He broke down through overwork.

4. 表示目的的介词

（1）for 表示拟定的接收人或目的；to 表示实际的接收人或目的。如：

I bought the gift for my little sister.

I gave the gift to my little sister.

（2）for 和 to 都可以引导目的地。for 跟在含有出发或开始意义的动词后，如 leave，set out，start，depart，sail 等；to 跟在含有来来往往的行动的意义的动词后，如 go，come，run，walk，move，fly，drive，ride 等。如：

We have left for Hong Kong.

He flew to America via Hong Kong.

（3）at 还可引导行为的目标或精力的集中点。如：

He shot at the bird.

5. 表示“关于……”的介词

一般 about 用于比较随便的谈话或非正式的文体；on 用于正式的讲话、著作或报告中；of 用于动词 talk，read，know，say，hear，boast 等的后面。如：

What are you talking about?

A paper on selfdom in Russian.

In terms of natural resources.

6. 表示原料的介词

of 和 out of 表示制成品的材料仍保持原材料的性质；with 表示制成产品的一种成分；from 表示制成品已失去了原材料的性质；in 表示制成品的材料的色调或特殊性。如：

His house was built of brick.

He made these toys out of old cigar-boxes.

A fruitcake is made with fruit.

Steel is made from iron.

We have furniture of this design in oak and in walnut.

7. 表示价格的介词

at 和 for 都可表示价格，at 仅表示价格，for 还表示“交换”，如：

Eggs are sold at 95 cents a dozen here.

I bought it for five pounds.

8. 表示其他意义的介词

（1）in spite of，despite，for（all...），with（all...）等表示让步意义的介词。其中：despite 较为正式，in spite of 较为普通，for/with（all...）较为口语化。如：

in spite of/despite the bad weather 尽管天气不好

for/with all his shortcomings 尽管他有许多缺点

（2）表示超过或不足的介词有：above，beyond，over，past；below，beneath，under 等。如：

beyond description 难以形容

below/under the average 低于平均水平

（3）表示状态的介词有：at，off，in，under，out of 等。如：

on fire 着火　off duty 下班　out of fashion 过时

（4）介词 with，for 表示支持；against 表示反对。如：

I'm with you in all you say.

Are you for or against the plan?

注释：

（1）this/that/these/those/last/next/a/every/each 等词构成的时间短语，前面不用任何介词。如：

Every year travellers from abroad come to visit Pingyao. 每年都有国外的游客来游览平遥镇。

He had a bad cold that week. 那个星期他患重感冒。

（2）for 有时用来引出动词不定式的逻辑主语，常翻译成“对于……而言”。如：

It's too hard for me to finish the work in only one hour. 让我在区区一个小时内完成这项工作太难了。

The house is big enough for 10 men to live in. 房子大得可以容 10 个人住。

（3）of 有时用来表示后面的人物正好是前面的表语的逻辑主语。如：

It's very nice/kind of you to do so. 你这么做真是太好了。

（4）介词有时会与它的宾语分离，而且宾语要前置。

① 当宾语是疑问词时。如：

Who are you talking about? 你们在谈论谁？

② 当宾语在从句中充当连接词时。如：

He has a younger brother who he must take good care of. 他有一个需要他照顾的小弟。

Do you know who our teacher is talking with over there? 你知道我们的老师在那边和什么人谈话吗？

③ 当动词不定式作定语且该动词为不及物动词，后面有介词时。如：

I finally found a chair to sit on. 我最终找到了一张椅子坐。

（5）固定词组搭配：

arrive at/in 到达……　　on foot 步行　　not...at all 根本不

to the north of 在……以北　　in the east of 在……的东部　　in the night 在夜间

at night 在晚上　　be afraid of 害怕……　　be full of 充满/装满……

be filled with 充满/装满……　　be good/bad for 对……有益/有害　　be made of 由……做成

be made from 由……制造　　play with 玩耍……　　look out of 朝……外面看

at the end of 在……末梢/结束时　　by the end of 不迟于……/到……末为止

with the help of/with one's help 在……的帮助下　　look after 照料……

look for 寻找……　　on a bike（=by bike）骑车

help sb. with 帮某人做……　　get on（well）with 与某人相处（融洽）

（6）介词运用记忆口诀：
早、午、晚要用 in，at 黎明、午夜、点与分。
年、月、季节、周，阳光、灯、影、衣、帽 in。
将来时态 in...以后，小处 at 大处 in。
有形 with 无形 by，语言、单位、材料 in。
特征、方面与方式，心情成语惯用 in。
介词 at 和 to 表方向，攻击、位置、恶、善分。
日子、日期、年月日，星期加上早、午、晚，
收音、农场、值日 on，关于、基础、靠、著论。
着、罢、出售、偷、公、假，故意、支付、相反，准。
特定时日和“一……就”，on 后常接动名词。
年、月、日加早、午、晚，of 之前 on 代 in。
步行、驴、马、玩笑 on，cab，carriage 则用 in。
at 山脚、门口、在当前，速、温、日落、价、核心。
工具、和、同随 with，具有、独立、就、原因。
就……来说宾译主，对、有、方状、表细分。
海、陆、空、车、偶、被 by，单数、人类 know to man。
this、that、tomorrow，yesterday，next、last、one。
接年、月、季、星期、周，介词省略已习惯。
over、under 正上下，above、below 则不然，
若与数量词连用，混合使用亦无关。
beyond 超出、无、不能，against 靠着，对与反。
besides，except 分内外，among 之内 along 沿。
同类比较 except，加 for 异类记心间。
原状 because of，owing to，due to 表语形容词。
under 后接修、建中，of，from 物、化分。
before，after 表一点，ago，later 表一段。
before 能接完成时，ago 过去极有限。
since 以来 during 间，since 时态多变换。
与之相比 beside，除了 last but one。
复不定 for、找、价、原，对、给、段、去、为、作、赞。
快到、对、向 towards，工、学、军、城、北、上、南。
but for 否定用虚拟，复合介词待后言。
ing 型由于鉴，除了除外与包合。
之后、关于、在……方面，有关介词须记全。
in 内 to 外表位置，山、水、国界 to 在前。
（7）易错、常考的介词及搭配：
① be made of，be made from，be made into，be made in
② call on = visit，call for = go and pick up，call at one’s house or office
③ on business（出差）/strike（罢工）/duty（值日）/holiday/fire/vacation/watch/sale（出售）/leave（请假）/guard（警戒）
④ have some trouble/difficulty（in）doing sth.，have a habit/idea/plan of doing sth.
⑤ A is pleased to B，B is pleased with A（对……感到满意）
⑥ be tired of，be tired from

⑦ with the help of，under the leadership of

⑧ by means of（使用），by way of（经由），by heart（记住），by the way

⑨ out of question（毫无疑问），out of the question（毫无可能）

⑩ prevent/stop/keep sb. from doing sth.

⑪ be thankful to sb. for sth.

⑫ steal sth. from sb.，rob sb. of sth.

⑬ insist on doing sth.，persist in doing sth.，stick to，go on doing sth.

⑭ set about doing sth.，set out to do sth.

⑮ look sb. in the face，hit sb. on the face，lead the cow by the nose

⑯ do a favour for sb. = do sb. a favour

⑰ tell A from B

（8）介词的惯用短语及搭配：

① above all（首先），after all，at all（全然），in all

② day after day，year after year，one after one，one after another

③ at peace（和平），at war（战争），at times（时常），at dinner

④ by oneself，by all means（尽一切办法、务必），by chance，by accident，by no means（决不、并没有），by means of（用、依靠），by the way

⑤ in…teens（十几岁），in pain，in danger，in need

⑥ to one’s joy/sorrow/surprise

⑦ with care（仔细地），with joy/pleasure（高兴地），with one’s help，with the best wishes（致以我们良好的祝愿），without difficulty（毫不困难地），without exception（毫不例外），without delay（立即、马上）

⑧ according to（依据），along with（和……一起），as to（至于……），because of，except for（除……之外），instead of（代替）

⑨ out of order（不正常），out of date，out of trouble（脱离困境），out of sight，out of debt（还清了债务），out of touch（没有联系）

⑩ at the bottom of，at the centre of，at the end of，at the top of，at the cost of（以……为代价），at the sight of，at the thought of，at a speed of

⑪ in memory of（纪念），in favour of（同意），in the habit of（有……习惯），in touch with（与……保持联系），on the left of，on the eve of（在……前夕）

⑫ from time to time（不时地），from day to day（天天），from hand to hand（一个传一个），from side to side（左右地），from car to car（一个车厢一个车厢地），from bad to worse（越来越差），from beginning to end（从头到尾），from hand to mouth（仅能糊口），from head to foot，from start to finish，from one to another

（9）掌握方式、手段、工具的表达方法：

① in+文字、语言、材料名词：in English（ink，pencil，capital letters）。

② with+工具、机器；人体器官；情绪、情感、态度的名词：with a branch，with one’s nose，with pride，with satisfaction，with the help of，with one’s permission。

③ by 表示泛指的方式、手段：by bus，by land，by means of（用……方法），by way of（经由），by doing sth.，by hand（手工），by post（由邮局传递），by letter（用写信的方式），by electricity，by hard work，by the year，by the hour（by+the+单位名词）按……

④ 其他表示方式（情况、状况、手段）的表示法：through the radio/by radio/on the radio，through/by/from practice，by telephone（on the telephone），on foot，on the train，in satisfaction，in surprise，in silence，in a low voice，in comfort，in sorrow，in high/good/poor spirits，in anger，in safety，in debt，in good order，in good/poor health，in tears，in use，in pain。

（10）某些名词和介词的固定搭配：

① 有些名词后必须跟介词 to：key，answer，visit，apology，introduction。

② 有些名词后必须跟介词 in：interest，satisfaction，expert。

③ 有些名词后必须跟介词 on：mercy，congratulation。

④ 特殊搭配：victory over，struggle with，price for，respect for。

（11）常见的介词短语：

① 动词+介词：

agree with 同意	ask for 索要	belong to 属于	listen to 听
look for 寻找	turn on/off 打开/关闭	take care of 照顾、照料	wait for 等待
talk about/of 谈及	leave for 动身前往	look at 看	hand in 上交
get on/off 上/下车	play with 与……玩	catch up with 赶上	
help…with 帮……做某事		have/has been to 去过……地方	

② 形容词+介词：

be afraid of 害怕	be angry with 恼怒	be proud of 自豪
be famous for 出名	be full of 充满	be late for 迟到
be good at 擅长	be close to 接近于	be different from 不同于
be worried about 担心	be short of 缺乏	be friendly with 与……友好

③ 名词+介词：

a pair of 一双，一对	a lot of 许多	a picture of 一幅……的画
plenty of 许多	lots of 许多	pity on 遗憾

④ 其他：

on the left/right 在左/右边	from…to… 从……到……	in front of 在……前面
on foot 步行	on time 准时	in time 及时

15.4　介词短语的句法作用

介词短语相当于一个形容词或副词，可用作状语、定语和表语。如：

The man came down the stairs. （状）那个人走下楼来。

The woman with a flower on her head is from the countryside.（定）头上戴花的妇女来自乡下。

The teacher is now with the pupils.（表）老师现在和学生在一起。

15.5　介词短语在句子中的位置

介词短语作状语时，如果表示时间/地点，可以放在句首或句尾，如果表示方向/方式/伴随/涉及/原因/目的/比较，一般放在句尾；介词短语作表语时放在连系动词之后；介词短语作定语时，只能放在被修饰的名词之后。如：

He wanted to find a good job in Shanghai the next year.（状语）他想来年在上海找份好工作。

They searched the room for the thief. 他们在房间里搜索小偷。

The letters are for you.（表语）信是给你的。

Have you seen a cat with a black head and four white legs?（定语）你看见一只黑头白腿的猫了吗？

15.6 易混介词的用法辨析

1. 时间或地点介词 in、on、at 的用法区别

（1）表示时间时：
in 表示在一段时间里（在将来时句子中则表示在一段时间之后）；
on 表示在具体的某一天或者某天的上下午等；
at 表示在某个时刻或者瞬间。
（2）表示地点时：
in 表示在某个范围之内；
on 表示在某个平面上或与一个面相接触；
at 则表示在某个具体的场所或地点。如：
He was born on the morning of May 10th. 他出生于五月十日的早晨。
His glasses are right on his nose. 他的眼镜就架在他的鼻子上。
I usually get up at 7:00 in the morning. 我通常在早上七点钟起床。
He is at the cinema at the moment. 此刻他正在电影院。

2. after 与 in 表示时间的用法区别

after+（具体时刻/从句）表示“在……时刻之后”，常用于一般时态。in+一段时间表示“在（多久）之后”，常用于将来时态。如：

He said that he would be here after 6:00. 他说他六点钟之后会来这儿。
My father is coming back from England in about a month. 我父亲大约一个月以后从英国回来。

3. since 与 for 表示时间的用法区别：

since+（时间点/that 从句）表示“自从……起一直到现在”，从过去的某个确定时间点到现在。如：
Uncle Li has worked in this factory since 1970. 李叔叔自从 1970 年起就在这家工厂工作了。
for+（时间段）表示“总共有……之久”，常用于完成时态。如：
Uncle Li has worked in this factory for over 30 years. 李叔叔在这家工厂已经工作了 30 多年。

4. by、in 与 with 表示方式的用法区别

三个都可以表示“工具、手段”。
by 主要表示“乘坐”某个交通工具或“以……方式”，在被动句中可以表示动作的执行者。如：
Let’s go to the zoo by taxi. 我们打的去动物园吧。
It was written by Lao She. 那是老舍写的。
in 表示“使用”某种语言/文字。如：
Please write that article in English. 请你用英语写那篇文章。
with 表示“使用”某个具体的工具、手段。如：
We see with our eyes and walk with our feet. 我们用眼睛看东西，用双脚走路。

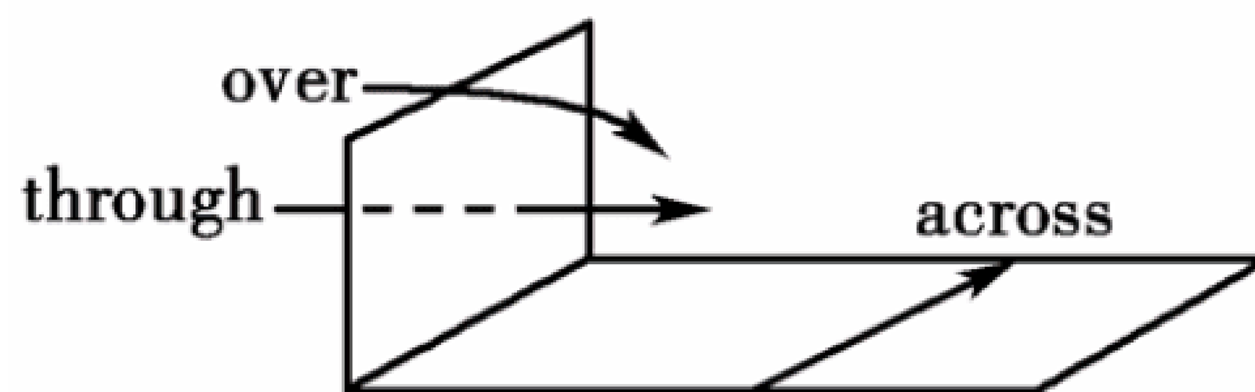
5. about 与 on 的用法区别

两个都可以表示“有关……”，但是 about 的意义比较广。如：
They are very excited talking about the coming field trip. 他们兴致勃勃地谈论着即将来到的野外旅游。

on 主要表示“有关……（专题/课程）”。如：

Tom is going to give a talk on the history of America. 汤姆要做一个美国历史的报告。

6. through 与 across、over 的用法区别



through 指“内部穿过……（门洞/人群/树林）”。如：

The visitors went through a big gate into another park. 参观者们穿过一个大门来到另一个公园。

across 和 over 可以指“横穿跨越……（街道/河流）”，两者可互换，但是表示“翻过……”时只能用 over。如：

Just then a rat ran across the road. 就在那时一只老鼠跑过路面。

There is a bridge across/over the river. 河上有座桥。

They climbed over the mountain and arrived there ahead of time. 他们翻过大山提前到达了那里。

7. as 与 like 的用法区别

两个词都表示“像……”，但是 as 译为“作为……”，表示的是职业、职务、作用等事实。如：

Let me speak to you as a father. 我以父亲的身份和你讲话。（说话者是听者的父亲）

like 译为“像……一样”，表示外表，不是事实。如：

Let me speak to you like a father. 让我像一位父亲一样和你讲话。（说话者不是听者的父亲）

8. at the end of，by the end of，to the end，in the end 的用法区别

at the end of...既可以表示时间也可以表示地点，译为“在……末；在……尽头”，常与过去时连用。如：

They left for Beijing at the end of last week. 上周末他们动身去了北京。

by the end of...只能表示时间，译为“在……前；到……为止”，常用于过去完成时。如：

By the end of last term we had learned 16 units of Book III. 到上学期期末我们已经学习了第三册 16 个单元。

in the end 与 at last 基本等义，表示“终于、最后”，通常用于过去时。如：

In the end he succeeded in the final exams.他最终在期末考试中考及格了。

to the end 译为“到……的终点为止”，前面往往有表示运动或连续性的动词。如：

We should go on with the work to the end. 我们应该把工作干到底。

Follow this road to the end and you will see a post office. 沿这条路走到底就能看见一家邮电局。

9. for a moment，for the moment，in a moment，at the moment 的用法区别

for a moment“一会儿、片刻”（=for a while），常与持续性动词连用，如 learn，work，stand，lie，know，walk，keep，have，wait，watch，sing，read，sleep，live，stay 等。如：

Please wait for a moment. 请稍等。

for the moment“暂时、目前”，常用于现在时。如：

Let’s leave things as they are for the moment. 暂时就维持现状吧！

in a moment“一会儿、立即、马上”（=soon；in a few minutes），一般用于将来时。如：

I’ll come back in a moment. 我过会儿回来。

at the moment “此刻，眼下”（=now），用于现在进行时。如：

I am very busy at the moment. 眼下我很忙。

10. 介词 but

介词 but 引出另一个动词时，如果前面有助动词 do，后面就用原形动词。如：

I could do nothing but wait. 我什么也做不了只能等。

前面没有助动词 do 时，后面的动词要加 to。如：

They had no choice（选择）but to fight. 他们没有选择只有战斗。

11. in front of 与 in the front of 的用法区别

前者表示“在……前面”，指范围之外的前面；后者表示“在……的前部”，指范围之内的前部。如：

There’s a bus stop in front of the school. 学校前面有个公共汽车站。（范围之外）

I prefer to travel in the front of the car. 我喜欢坐在汽车的前面。（范围之内）

12. besides，but，except，except for，excepting，apart from 的区别

（1）except “除了”，表示排除某人，即不包含。如：

Everyone went to the Palace Museum except Tom. 除了 Tom，大家都去了故宫博物院。（Tom 没有去故宫）

besides “除了”，表示包含，即“不仅……又……”。如：

Besides Chinese he also studied many other subjects. 除了汉语之外，他还学其他许多功课（“汉语”也是他学的功课之一）

（2）except 与 except for。

① 除去的和非除去的是同类事物，用 except。如：

All the essays are well written except Nelson’s. Nelson 的文章（除去的）和 All the essays（非除去的）是同类事物，所以用 except。

② 除去的和非除去的不是同类事物，用 except for，并且从语气上通常表示遗憾。如：

His essay is well written except for a few spelling mistakes. a few spelling mistakes(除去的)和 His essay（非除去的）是不同类的事物。

③ apart from 具有多重意义：既可表示 besides，也可以表示 except 或 except for，还可以表示 without 的意思。如：

Apart from the cost，it will take a lot of time.（=besides）

The orphan had no one to take care of him apart from his uncle.（=except）

He has done good work，apart from a few slight faults.（=except for）

There can be no knowledge apart from practice.（＝without）实践出真知。

④ excepting =except，但一般用于句首或用于 not，without，always 等词之后。如：

Excepting his brother，they are all right.

Everyone，not excepting myself，must share the blame.

All of us，without excepting those who know more about the subject，should study.

All my brothers come here every day，always excepting the youngest.

⑤ but 与 except 同义，但 but 多用在 every，any，no 等和由这些词构成的复合词如 everything，anywhere，nobody 等词以后及 all，none 之后。如：

The children go to school everyday but Sunday.

They are all gone but me.

You can get the book anywhere but here.

There is no one but me.
Who but George would do such a thing?

13. hit / beat + sb.+ on/in + the +身体部位

“hit / beat + sb.+ on/in + the +身体部位”这样的结构（其中的定冠词不可用物主代词代替）。如果打在坚硬结实的部位（如 head，shoulder，back 等），前面常用介词 on；如果打在柔软多肉的部位，（如 leg，eye，face 等）前面常用介词 in。如：

hit him on the head/ shoulder/back
hit him in the face /eyes/right leg

【模拟试题】

1. My sister gets up ______ six ______ the morning.
2. He goes to work ______ bike______ his workmates.
3. My mother often buys some food ______ supper ______ her way home.
4. “Where is Tom?” He’s writing ______ the blackboard ______ the classroom.
5. “Do you watch TV ______ weekdays?”
   “No，I watch it only ______ Sunday evening.”
6. She works ______ the farm.
7. The girl ______ a red coat is Mike’s sister.
8. Look! There is a white cat ______ the tree.
9. Please have a look ______ this machine，it can fly ______ a plane.
10. The shop is closed ______ this time ______ day.
11. He goes to work ______ his bike ______ about 7:00 everyday.
12. Please run ______ the kite ______ this.
13. Tom is writing a letter. The letter is ______ Jim.
14. Peter is one ______ my friends. He looks much ______ my brother.
15. She likes eggs. What ______ you.
16. Look ______ the picture. Can you say something ______ it ______ English.
17. She doesn’t like to be late ______ school.
18. My mother makes clothes ______ us.
19. They like staying ______ their parents.
20. The shop ______ our school sells school things.
21. He comes ______ Canada. He often helps us ______ our English.
22. Please give the pen back ______ me soon.
23. They are going ______ the Great Wall tomorrow morning.
24. Do you have lunch ______ the middle ______ the day.
25. He wants two kilos ______ apples.
26. The students got ______ the zoo ______ the morning of January 12.
27. His mother gets ______ work ______ seven every morning.
28. Uncle Wang is working ______ a machine.
29. Jim likes going out ______his father’s car.
30. The foreign friends ______America are very friendly______ us.

31. What do the farmers do ______ the machine?
32. Who do they make the machine ______ ?
33. We often buy toys ______ the twins.
34. He usually comes late ______ school.
35. They like swimming ______ the river.
36. All the students are ______ home ______ Saturday.
37. Don't speak ______ me. I have not time to listen ______ you.
38. She opens the door ______ the shop every day.
39. Do his children study ______ the same school?
40. What can Kate do ______her mother.
41. It's hard to sing this song ______ Chinese.
42. Don't sit ______ the desk. Sit ______ the chair.
43. What pen does he write ______ ?
44. There are two windows ______ the wall.
45. I want to take some reading books ______ the classroom.
46. You can't put the bags ______ the car. It's full ______ things.
47. It's warm here. Take ______ your coat, please.
48. Mother says, "Put them ______, please. You must look ______ your things."
49. How do you like the book ______ the table?
50. What do you think ______ the book ______ your hand?
51. Could you get some bananas ______ me.
52. Can you find the right answers ______ the workbook?
53. Please write them down ______ a piece of paper.
54. The girls are playing ______ the playground.
55. Xiao Ming is putting ______ his new clothes now.
56. Try to find the answer ______ page 99 or your workbook.
57. What do you like ______ China?
58. Here is a postcard ______ Lily ______ her friend ______ the USA.
59. ____ the afternoon, classes are over ______ 3:30.
60. The teacher says ______ us, "Look at the pictures. Ask and answer ______ pairs."
61. Turn these sentences______ questions.
62. Turn ______ the lights, please. It's very dark here.
63. "Turn ______ Page 5, please, and read ______ me."
64. Say ______ least five sentences ______ each of the pictures.
65. Match the words in Column A ______ the words in Column B.
66. What are the names _____ the twins.
67. Let's write down the days ______ a week.
68. Which part ______ Australia do you come ______ ?
69. "Welcome back ______ our school."
70. Li Lei goes to school ______ foot every day.
71. Could you tell me the way ______ the park?
72. Turn right ______ the fourth turning.
73. We eat this kind ______ pie ______ Thanks giving Day.
74. There is a book store ______ the end of the road.

75. An old woman is standing ______ the side______the road.
76. When did you move ______Beijing?
77. Doing eye exercises every day is good ______ your eyes.
78. He was ill ______bed yesterday.
79. Go ______this road and take the first turning ______the right.
80. The ball passes ______one student ______ another.
81. The students stand ______a row. The teacher gave one______them an eraser.
82. The twins sit ______ the middle of the classroom.
83. They ask questions ______ this：“Li Lei，is it ______your right hand?”
84. The book is the newest ______all.
85. Please find out the answers ______these questions.
86. Will you climb up the tree ______a ladder?
87. Is there anything wrong ______ your TV set?
88. Please come over ______ my house ______tea if you have time.
89. He got ______the lift and went up ______the tenth floor.
90. It's a fine day______finishing today.
91. My brother was born ______May 6th，1996.
92. He lives ______the 15th floor. He uses a lift to go up and down.
93. I don't think you can reach the apples______the tree.
94. Mr. Wang works ______the city ______Shanghai.
95. Bill sits ______the back of the classroom.
96. The teacher stands ______front of the class.
97. After breakfast，she went to school ______a hurry.
98. I am afraid she is out ______the moment.
99. Mr. Li is ______good health.
100. Walk along this road，turn left ______the traffic lights.

【参考答案】

1. at；in	2. by；with	3. for；on	4. on；of	5. on；on	6. on
7. in	8. in	9. at；like	10. at；of	11. on；at	12. with；like
13. for	14. of；like	15. about	16. at；about；in	17. for	18. for
19. with	20. near	21. from；with	22. to	23. to	24. in；of
25. of	26. to；on	27. to；at	28. on	29. in	30. from；to
31. with	32. for	33. for	34. to	35. in	36. at；on
37. to；to	38. of	39. at	40. for	41. in	42. at；on
43. with	44. in	45. to	46. in；of	47. off	48. away；after
49. on	50. of；in	51. for	52. in	53. on	54. on
55. on	56. on	57. about	58. to；from；in	59. In；at	60. to；in
61. into	62. on	63. to；after	64. at；about	65. with	66. of
67. in	68. of；from	69. to	70. on	71. to	72. at
73. of；on	74. at	75. at；of	76. to	77. for	78. in
79. down/along；on		80. from；to	81. in；of	82. in	83. like；in
84. of	85. to	86. with	87. with	88. to；for	89. into；to
90. for	91. on	92. on	93. on	94. in；of	95. at
96. in	97. in	98. at	99. in	100. at	

【聚焦中考】

1.（2010·河北中考）Sally is very happy. There is a big smile ________her face.

A. on　B. to　C. in　D. a

2.（2010·娄底中考）—It's very important _______us to make a plan before a new term.

—Yes. You must try to make it carefully.

A. of　B. for　C. to

3.（2010·盐城中考）It's very kind _______you. Thank you for your help.

A. of　B. for　C. to　D. on

4.（2010·内江中考）All of us went to the park______ Bob. He had to look after his sister.

A. besides　B. with　C. except

5.（2010·自贡中考）—We'll have a hiking trip，but when shall we meet?

—Let's make it _________half past eight _______the morning of June 21.

A. at；in　B. /；on　C. /；in

6.（2010·潍坊中考）The little elephant is afraid to go alone. He always walks _______his mother.

A. beside　B. behind　C. below　D. under

7.（2010·南京中考）Marie Curie，the first woman to win the Nobel Prize，was born _____November，1867，in the city of Warsaw in Poland.

A. at　B. on　C. in　D. to

8.（2010·上海中考）The famous actor often plays ________his children in the park.

A. about　B. in　C. at　D. with

9.（2010·晋江中考）—Peter，can you tell me the differences __________ the four words? —Sorry，I don't know.

A. between　B. among　C. for

10.（2010·成都中考）—Frank，when will the short meeting begin?

—You should come ______2:30. If you come 10 minutes _______that time，the meeting will be over.

A. at；before　B. at；after　C. after；before

11.（2009·北京中考）Einstein，the famous scientist，was born ______ March，1879.

A. at　B. on　C. in　D. to

12.（2009·河南中考）—When is Henry's birthday party，Lynn?

—The 18th，________about three o'clock in the afternoon.

A. in　B. at　C. on　D. to

13.（2009·连云港中考）—What's the TV news______?

—The Chinese Team won five gold medals at World Table Tennis Championships.

A. at　B. across　C. above　D. about

14.（2009·山东中考）Lin Lin often practices English _____ chatting with her American friend.

A. in　B. by　C. for　D. with

15.（2009·龙岩中考）—Where is Taiwan，do you know? —Why? It's _____the southeast of China.

A. in　B. on　C. to

16.（2009·淄博中考）Tom told me his parents had arrived _______ Beijing.

A. at　B. on　C. in　D. to

17.（2009·宁夏中考）—When will the party be held? —______two weeks' time，______15th July.

A. In；on　B. In；in　C. On；on　D. At；on

18.（2009·黔东南中考）Taiwan is a beautiful island and it’s __________ the east of Fujian.

A. in　　B. on　　C. to

19.（2009·泰安中考）—Xiao Shenyang is so popular____us. —Yeah，he is one of my favorite pop stars.

A. for　　B. to　　C. with　　D. on

20.（2009·东营中考）Here are some flowers _________ you _________ our best wishes.

A. to；for　　B. for；with　　C. of；to　　D. from；to

21.（2009·重庆中考）I got an e-mail this morning. It was _______ my foreign friend，Tony.

A. in　　B. on　　C. at　　D. from

22.（2009·成都中考）—Can you see some people are waiting _______ the library?

—Yes. They are standing in a queue in front of its gate.

A. around　　B. inside　　C. outside

23.（2009·哈尔滨中考）You can find a way to reach your goals when you are proud _____ yourself and stand tall like a sunflower.

A. on　　B. from　　C. of

24.（2009·南充中考）—What did you study _______ university? —I didn’t go _______ university.

A. at；to　　B. for；into　　C. for；in

25.（2009·绍兴中考）Linda’s teacher was so mad _____ her because she made lots of mistakes in the test.

A. at　　B. in　　C. on　　D. about

26.（2009·施恩中考）There is going to be a wonderful party _____ the evening of October 1st，2009.

A. in　　B. on　　C. at　　D. for

27.（2009·河北中考）Let’s play table tennis ______ Tuesday morning，shall we?

A. on　　B. in　　C. to　　D. at

28.（2009·济宁中考）We have been doing much better in English ________ our teacher’s help.

A. in　　B. to　　C. for　　D. with

29.（2009·深圳中考）—Which would you like，tea or coffee?

—Either _________ OK，but I prefer coffee _________ milk.

A. is；has　　B. are；with　　C. is；with　　D. are；has

30.（2009·安徽中考）—Why are you standing there，Maggie?

—I can’t see the blackboard clearly. Two tall boys are sitting ______ me.

A. behind　　B. in the front of　　C. beside　　D. next to

31.（2009·漳州中考）The young men walked ______ the forest and came to a big river at last.

A. on　　B. over　　C. through　　D. across

32.（2008·山西中考）_____ a teacher，John thinks that his main duty is to help the students to become better learners.

A. As　　B. By　　C. About

33.（2008·临沂中考）—What time will you be home? —I don’t know. It depends _______the traffic.

A. of　　B. on　　C. for　　D. from

34.（2008·连云港中考）—Is the tie made ________ silk? —Yes. It’s made ________ Italy.

A. from；in　　B. of；in　　C. from；of　　D. of；from

35.（2008·巴中中考）—Thank you very much ________ helping me. —Not at all.

A. for　　B. of　　C. to

36.（2008·莆田中考）He often borrows things ____ others，but he doesn’t lend anything ____ anybody.

A. to；from　　B. from；to　　C. from；for

37.（2008·咸宁中考）—All the clerks went home ________ Mr. Wang. Why?

—Because he had to finish his work.

A. except　B. besides　C. without　D. beside

38.（2008·茂名中考）The fastest way to travel to Shanghai is _______ air.

A. in　B. by　C. on

39.（2008·安徽中考）—What do you often do _______classes to relax yourself? —Listen to music.

A. over　B. among　C. between　D. through

40.（2008·南通中考）Our English teacher was standing____us so that she could hear us all clearly.

A. away from　B. far behind　C. between　D. among

41.（2008·徐州中考）You can improve your English ________ reading more.

A. in　B. with　C. by　D. of

42.（2008·海南中考）Hainan celebrated（庆祝）her twentieth birthday _______ April 26，2008.

A. in　B. at　C. on

43.（2008·北京中考）Peter usually gets up early _________ the morning.

A. on　B. in　C. at　D. of

44.（2008·泸州中考）The little boys go to school ________ Monday to Saturday.

A. on　B. from　C. to

45.（2008·河北中考）You must ride your bike ________ the right side of the road.

A. at　B. on　C. in　D. for

46.（2008·成都中考）When the school building began to shake，the teachers ran downstairs _________ all the students. The teachers are real heroes.

A. after　B. with　C. since　D. for

47.（2008·芜湖中考）The policeman helped the old woman _________ the road.

A. above　B. across　C. through　D. over

48.（2008·芜湖中考）The way we learn English is quite different ________ that we learn maths.

A. from　B. off　C. between　D. with

49.（2007·乐山中考）Many teachers believe that children learn_____life，not just from their textbooks.

A. of　B. from　C. for　D. with

50.（2007·重庆中考）Many sportsmen are getting ready ______the 2008 Beijing Olympic Games.

A. to　B. with　C. for　D. on

51.（2007·杭州中考）Oh，it’s you，Ella! Your voice sounds very different ________ the phone. What’s happening?

A. from　B. in　C. of　D. on

52.（2007·连云港中考）It is important _______ us students to make a plan ________ our studies before a new term starts.

A. for；for　B. of；for　C. to；of　D. with；on

【参考答案】

1—5　ABACB　6—10　ACDBB

11.【解析】选 C。考查时间介词 in 的用法。由表示月份的关键词 March 可排除 A、B、D 三项，选 C。

12.【解析】选 B。考查时间介词 at 的用法。由表示时间点的关键信息 about three o’clock 可排除 A、C、D 三项，故选 B。

13.【解析】选 D。考查介词 about 的用法。由答语可知题意为：电视新闻是关于什么的？“about”有“关于”的意思。故选 D。

14.【解析】选 B。考查介词 by 表达方式、途径。由题意“林琳常常通过和她的美国朋友聊天来练习英语”可知应选 B。by 在这里意为“通过某种方式”。

15.【解析】选 A。

16.【解析】选 C。考查介词 in 的用法。由关键词 arrived 可联想到 arrive at/in 短语，先排除 B、D 二项；因为 Beijing 是大地点，故舍 A 选 C。

17.【解析】选 A。

18.【解析】选 C。

19.【解析】选 C。be popular with sb.是固定用法，表示“受某人欢迎”。

20.【解析】选 B。题意为“这儿有一些给你的带着我们最美好祝愿的花”。for 表示对象，意为“为”，with our best wishes 是介词短语，作名词 some flowers 的后置定语。故正确答案为 B。

21—25 DCCAA 26—31 BADCBC

32.【解析】选 A。考查介词 as 的用法。根据题意“作为一名教师，约翰认为他的主要责任是帮助学生变成更好的学习者”可选出正确答案。as 在题中意思是“作为”。

33.【解析】选 B。四个选项都是介词，由关键词 depends 可选出正确答案为 B。depend on 也可以说成 depend upon，意为“依靠、依赖、靠……决定”，后面接名词、代词、动名词或 that 从句作宾语。

34.【解析】选 B。be made of 意为“由……制成的”能看得出原材料，be made from 意为“由……制成的”看不出原材料，be made in 意为“在……地方制造”。根据句意“领带是由丝制的”看得出原材料，先排除 A、C；另结合答语“它在意大利被制造”可舍 D 选 B。

35.【解析】选 A。“Thank you for...” 和 “Thanks for...” 的用法一样，都是对别人已做的事表示感谢，后面接名词、代词或动词-ing 形式。本题由关键信息 thank you 可排除 B、C，故选 A。

36.【解析】选 B。borrow 意为“借入”，常与 from 搭配；lend 意为“借出”，常与 to 搭配，故选 B。

37.【解析】选 A。考查 except 与 besides 的区别。except 是“除了……（不包含在内）”，而 besides 是“除了……，还（包含在内）……”。由句意可知是“除了王先生（不包含王先生）”故选 A。

38.【解析】选 B。当名词前面没有任何修饰词时，应用 by。故排除 A、C 两项，选 B。

39.【解析】选 C。考查 between 和 among 的辨析。between 用于两者之间的比较，among 用于三者或三者以上的比较，over “在……之上”，through 是“穿过（空间内部）”，通过题意可以看出是两节课之间。选 C。

40—45 DCCBBB 46—50 ABABC

51.【解析】选 D。根据题意“在电话里你的声音听起来非常不同”可选出正确答案 D。on the phone 是“在电话里”的意思。需要注意的是，不要受 different 的干扰而选 A。

52.【解析】选 A。“It is+*adj.*+for sb.+to do sth.”表示“对某人来说做某事怎么样”，这样由关键信息 It is important 和 to make a plan 可排除 B、C、D 三个选项。另第二个空填 for，是“为……”的意思。

【聚焦高考】

1.（2010 年北京）Would you mind not picking the flowers in the garden? They are________everyone's enjoyment.

A. in　　B. at　　C. for　　D. to

2.（2010 年江苏）So far we have done a lot to build a low-carbon economy，but it is_________ ideal. We have to work still harder.

A. next to　　B. far from　　C. out of　　D. due to

3.（2010 年湖北）It is illegal for a public official to ask people for gifts or money________favors to them.

A. in preference to　　B. in place of　　C. in agreement with　　D. in exchange for

4.（2010 年江西）Nowadays some hospitals refer to patients______name，not case number.

A. of　　B. as　　C. by　　D. with

5. (2010 年江西) We give dogs time, space and love we can spare, and _____, dogs give us their all.

A. in all B. in fact C. in short D. in return

6. (2010 年辽宁) I agree to his suggestion__________the condition that he drops all charges.

A. by B. in C. on D. to

7. (2010 年重庆) The dictionary is what I want, but I don't have enough money__________me.

A. by B. for C. in D. with

8. (2010 年四川) Tired, Jim was fast asleep with his back___________a big tree.

A. in B. below C. beside D. against

9. (2010 年天津) My father warned me______going to the West Coast because it was crowded with tourists.

A. by B. on C. for D. against

10. (2010 年浙江) I guess we've already talked about this before but I'll ask you again just_______.

A. by nature B. in return C. in case D. by chance

11. (2010 年福建) More and more high-rise buildings have been built in big cities________space.

A. in search of B. in place of C. for lack of D. for fear of

12. (2009 年海南) Everybody was touched_________words after they heard her moving story.

A. beyond B. without C. of D. in

13. (2009 福建) —How amazing it is that astronauts are exploring outer space!

—It's a challenge, I guess, ________ man against nature.

A. of B. for C. by D. about

14.(2009 年北京)The wine industry in the area has developed in a special way, ____ little foreign ownership.

A. by B. of C. with D. from

15. (2009 江苏卷 30) This special school accepts all disabled students, ____educational level and background.

A. according to B. regardless of C. in addition to D. in terms of

16. (2009 年天津) The art show was _______ being a failure; it was a great success.

A. far from B. along with C. next to D. regardless of

17. (2009 年辽宁) Children need friends________their own age to play with.

A. of B. for C. in D. at

18. (2009 山东) It saves time in the kitchen to have things you use a lot _____ easy reach.

A. near B. upon C. within D. around

19. (2009 浙江) ______, the pay isn't attractive enough, though the job itself is quite interesting.

A. Generally speaking B. On the contrary

C. In particular D. To be honest

20. (2009 年全国Ⅱ) Jenny nearly missed the flight ______ doing too much shopping.

A. as a result of B. on top of C. in front of D. in need of

21. (2009 湖南) Most Americas would prefer to keep their problems ______ themselves and solve their problems _____ themselves.

A. to; by B. by; to C. for; to D. in; on

22. (2009 湖北) You'd sound a lot more polite if you make a request _____ a question.

A. in search of B. in form of C. in need of D. in the direction of

23. (2009 湖北) His efforts to raise money for his program were ______ because no one showed any intention to take a cent out of their pockets.

A. in place B. in sight C. in effect D. in vain

24. (2009 上海) Four Chinese models were ______ the 14 people awarded prizes on Friday at the World

Supermodel Competition.

A. among B. between C. along D. beside

25.（2009 四川）A great person is always putting other's interests ______ his own.

A. below B. above C. in D. on

26.（2009 陕西）He invited me to a dance after the show ______ Christmas Eve.

A. at B. on C. in D. by

27.（2009 上海春）I'll pay you good money ______ return for your timely help.

A. on B. in C. with D. from

28.（2008 年福建）A great man shows his greatness ______ the way he treats little men.

A. under B. with C. on D. by

29.（2008 年辽宁）I like Mr. Miner's speech; it was clear and ______ the point.

A. at B. on C. to D. of

30.（2008 年天津）Many Chinese universities provide scholarships for students_____financial aid.

A. in favor of B. in honor of C. in face of D. in need of

31.（2008 福建 ）You have no idea how she finished the relay race___her foot wounded so much.

A. for B. when C. with D. while

32.（2008 年安徽）Fred entered without knocking and，very out of breath，sank _____ a chair.

A. on B. off C. into D. to

33.（2008 年湖北）When she first arrived in China，she wondered what the future might have_______ for her，but now all her worries are gone.

A. in need B. in time C. in preparation D. in store

34.（2008 年湖南）—When did you last hear__________Jay?

—He phoned me this morning，and we agreed__________a time and place to meet.

A. of；to B. about；with C. from；with D. from；on

35.（2008 年北京）If you really have to leave during the meeting，you'd better leave________the back door.

A. for B. by C. across D. out

36.（2008 年全国Ⅰ）Let's learn to use the problem we are facing_______a stepping-stone to future success.

A. to B. for C. as D. by

37.（2008 年全国Ⅱ）Modern equipment and no smoking are two of the things I like________ working here.

A. with B. over C. at D. about

38.（2008 年天津）At the railway station，the mother waved goodbye to her daughter until the train was_____.

A. out of sight B. out of reach C. out of order D. out of place

39.（2008 年江苏）—Why do you suggest we buy a new machine?

—Because the old one has been damaged ______.

A. beyond reach B. beyond repair C. beyond control D. beyond description

40.（2008 年陕西）Elizabeth has already achieved success__________her wildest dreams.

A. at B. beyond C. within D. upon

41.（2008 年上海春）Nowadays a lot of adults go to evening schools _________ further education.

A. after B. in C. for D. on

42.（2008 年山东）I began to feel ________ in the new school when I saw some familiar faces.

A. at home B. at heart C. at will D. at sight

43.（2008 年浙江）Everything was perfect for the picnic ______ the weather.

A. in place of B. as well as C. except for D. in case of

44.（2008 年上海）The two sportsmen congratulated each other _____ winning the match by shaking hands.

A. with B. on C. in D. to

45. (2007 年山东) I have offered to point the house ___________ a week's accommodation.

A. in exchange for B. with regard to C. by means of D. in place of

46. The book was written in 1946, _________the education system has witnessed great charges.

A. when B. during which C. since then D. since when

47. (2007 年天津) ________ fire, all exits must be kept clear.

A. In place of B. Instead of C. In case of D. In spite of

48. (2007 年浙江) The open-air celebration has been put off ______the bad weather.

A. in case of B. in spite of C. instead of D. because of

49. (2007 年全国Ⅱ) Some people choose jobs for other reasons ____ money these days.

A. for B. except C. besides D. with

50. (2007 年上海) Leaves are found on all kinds of trees, but they differ greatly ______ size and shape.

A. on B. from C. by D. in

51. (2007 年湖南) ______ the silence for the pauses, we could hear each other's breathing and could almost bear our own heartbeats.

A. In B. For C. Under D. Between

52. —__________when has the country been open to international trade? —1978, I suppose.

A. Since B. In C. From D. After

53. (2007 年四川) Some students often listen to music ________ classes to refresh themselves.

A. between B. among C. over D. during

54. (2007 年陕西) —I think he is taking an active part in social work. —I agree with you_______.

A. in a way B. on the way C. by the way D. in the way

55. (2007 年江西) Experts have been warning____of the health risks caused by passive smoking.

A. at a time B. at one time C. for some time D. for the time

56. (2007 年北京) This is a junior school. You should go to a senior school _____ girls of your age.

A. for B. about C. from D. to

57. (2007 年福建) Although_______my opinion, the old professor didn't come up with his own.

A. against B. on C. for D. in

58. (2007 年江西) Scientists are convinced_______the positive effect of laughter_______physical and mental health.

A. of; at B. by; in C. of; on D. on; at

59. (2007 年宁夏) The manager suggested an earlier date ______ the meeting.

A. on B. for C. about D. with

60. (2007 年上海) Dolly wants to cycle round the world and she is really keen____the idea.

A. on B. for C. at D. with

61. (2006 浙江) I would like a job which pays more, but ____ I enjoy the work I'm doing at the moment.

A. in other words B. on the other hand C. for one thing D. as a matter of fact

62. (2006 山东) A clean environment can help the city bid for the Olympics, which ____ will promote its economic development.

A. in nature B. in return C. in turn D. in fact

63. (2006 福建) Sorry, Madam. You'd better come tomorrow because it's ____the visiting hours.

A. during B. at C. beyond D. before

64. (2006 四川) —Can he take charge of the computer company? —I'm afraid it's ___his ability.

A. beyond B. within C. of D. to

65.（2006 陕西）My sister was against my suggestion while my brother was _________ it.

A. in favour of　　B. in memory of　　C. in honour of　　D. in search of

66.（2006 福建）The classroom is big enough ___， but we'll have to move if we have more students.

A. for the moment　　B. on the moment　　C. in a moment　　D. for a moment

【参考答案】

1—5　CBDCD　　6—10　CDDDC　　11—15　CAACB　　16—20　AACDA

21—25　ABDAB　　26—30　BBDCD　　31—35　CCDDB　　36—40　CDABB

41—45　CACBA　　46—50　DCDCD　　51—55　AAAAC　　56—60　AACBA

61—66　BCCAAA

16 连 词

16.1 概 述

连词是一种虚词，用于连接单词、短语、从句或句子，在句子中不单独用作句子成分。连词按其性质可分为并列连词和从属连词。并列连词用于连接并列的单词、短语、从句或句子，如 and，but，or，for 等；从属连词主要引出名词性从句（主语从句、宾语从句、表语从句等）和状语从句（时间状语从句、条件状语从句、目的状语从句等），引出名词性从句的连词有 that，whether 等，引出状语从句的连词有 when，because，since，if 等。

16.2 并列连词的用法

16.2.1 表示转折关系的并列连词

表示转折关系的并列连词主要有 but（但是），yet（可是），while（而，却）等。如：

I would have written before but I have been ill. 我本该早写信的，但我生病了。

I have failed，yet I shall try again. 我失败了，但我还要尝试。

You like tennis，while I'd rather read. 你爱打网球，但我爱看书。

Someone borrowed my pen，but I don't remember who. 有人借了我的钢笔，但我不记得是谁了。

He said he was our friend，yet he wouldn't help us. 他说他是我们的朋友，但却不肯帮助我们。

1. but 的用法举例

（1）连接词或短语。如：

It was a sunny but not very warm day. 那一天天气晴朗，却不太暖和。

He drives not carefully but slowly. 他开车不是很小心，而是开得很慢。

（2）连接句子。如：

This isn't a good one but it will answer. 这不太好，但可以将就用。

He looks honest，but actually he's a rogue. 他看起来很老实，实际他是一个坏蛋。

The ice remained，but there was no water underneath. 冰还在，但下面却没有水。

Mrs. Brown was about to begin，but Jennie spoke first. 布朗夫人正要开始讲话，珍妮先讲了。

At first he was a little shy，but now he acts more natural. 开始时他有些腼腆但现在他表现得很自然了。

There was a little trouble at first，but things were soon quiet. 起初有点小麻烦后来情况就平静了。

（3）用于句首。如：

But that question doesn't arise. 但没发生那个问题。

But in secret she was delighted. 但她暗中感到高兴。

But what else can we do? 我们还能做什么?

But in the end he gave in. 但最后他还是让步了。

But there's one thing we are agreed on. 但有一点大家的意见是一致的。

（4）用于道歉的表达之后。如：

Sorry，but we're behind schedule. 抱歉，我们落在计划后了。

I'm frightfully sorry，but I can't see you today. 太对不起了，我今天不能见你。

Excuse me，but I don't think that's quite true. 很抱歉，我认为这与事实略有出入。

（5）用于 not...but...，表示“不是……而是……”。如：

Not you but I am to blame. 不是你的错而是我的错。

（6）用在某些否定语后，表示“只……”。如：

He eats nothing but hamburgers. 他只吃汉堡包。

She knows no one but you. 她只认识你。

You have nobody but yourself to blame. 只能怪你自己。

No one but me saw her. 只有我看见了她。

（7）用于 next（last）but one 中，表示“隔壁再过去……”“倒数第……”。如：

He lives in the next house but one. 他住在隔壁再过去一家。

He was the last but one to arrive. 他是倒数第二个到的。

（8）can't help but“不由得不……”。如：

You can't help but respect them. 你不由得不尊敬他们。

When they gave him a ticket to the game，he couldn't help but go. 他们给了他一张看球赛的票，他不由得不去。

I can't help but wonder what I should do next. 我不由得不想知道下一步该怎么办。

注意：不要按汉语意思将“虽然……但是……”直译为 although...but...。如：

误：Though we are poor，but we are happy.（去掉 though 或 but 中任一个）

2. but 与 however 的用法区别

两者均可表示转折或对比，意为“但是”“可是”“然而”等，但有以下区别。

（1）表示转折时，but 是连词。如：

He is young but very experienced. 他虽年轻，但经验很丰富。

He has three daughters but no sons. 他有三个女儿，但没有儿子。

He likes sports，but his wife likes music. 他喜欢运动，而他妻子则喜欢音乐。

（2）however 表示“然而”“可是”时，也可以把它当作副词。如：

Later，however，he changed his mind. 可是他后来改变了主意。

He hasn't arrived. He may，however，come later. 他还没有到，不过他等会儿可能会来。

He said that it was so；he was mistaken，however. 他说情况如此，可是他错了。

注意：以上各例中的 however 不能换成 but，但可用 but 来改写。如：

He said that it was so，but he was mistaken. 他说情况如此，可他错了。

（3）当连接两个句子时，其前通常应用分号或另起新句。如：

It's raining hard；however，I think we should go out. /It's raining hard. However，I think we should go out. 雨下得很大，但我想我们还得出去。

注意：上例中的 however 不能换成 but，但可用 but 来改写（注意所用标点的变化）。如：

It's raining hard，but I think we should go out.

3. yet 的用法

（1）yet 用作连词时，与 but 一样也主要用于转折，意为“但是”“而”。如：

I have failed，yet I shall try again. 我失败了，但我还要尝试。

The judge was stern，yet completely fair. 法官很严峻，却完全公正。

They are the same，yet not the same. 它们又一样，又不一样。

It is strange，yet it is true. 那真是怪事，然而却是事实。

I've been away only for three years，yet I can hardly recognize my hometown.
我仅在外三年，可我几乎认不出我自己的故乡了。

He said he was our friend，yet he wouldn't help us. 他说他是我们的朋友，但却不肯帮助我们。

（2）有时用在句首。如：

Yet the house was cheerful. 但屋子里显得很欢快。

Yet its population has doubled. 但它的人口翻了一番。

（3）yet 有时可与并列连词 and 或 but 连用，构成习语 and yet 和 but yet，意为"虽然如此""可是""然而"，与单独使用的 yet 意思相同。如：

He's not really nice-looking，and yet he has enormous charm. 他并不是十分好看，可是他很有魅力。

She's a funny girl，but yet you can't help liking her. 她是一个奇怪的姑娘，但你禁不住会喜欢她。

I gave him ten pounds（and）yet he was not satisfied. 我给了他十镑但他仍不满足。

She's vain and foolish，and yet people like her. 她很虚荣愚蠢，但人们却喜欢她。

She drove very fast to the airport，but（yet/and yet/but yet）she missed the plane. 她开快车去机场，可还是误了飞机。

（4）根据英语习惯，although 不能与连词 but 搭配使用，但是 although 可以与 yet 搭配连用（此时的 yet 可视为副词）。如：

Although we are poor，yet we are happy. 尽管我们穷，但我们很快活。

Although we have made some progress，yet we still have a long way to go. 我们虽然取得了些进步，但还是远远不够的。

4. 连词 while 考点知识归纳

（1）表示时间时，其意为"当……的时候"。如：

We must strike while the iron is hot. 我们要趁热打铁。

Stand still while I take your photograph. 我给你拍照时站着不要动。

Have we got enough books to read while we are on holiday? 假期里我们有足够的书看吗?

Were there any calls for me while I was out? 我出去的时候，有人来过电话吗?

She hates anyone listening while she is telephoning. 她打电话时不愿让任何人听。

（2）表示让步时，其意为"尽管""虽然"。如：

While the work was difficult，it was interesting. 虽然工作有难度，但很有趣。

While I understand what you say，I can't agree with you. 虽然我理解你的意思，但我还是不同意。

While the Internet is of great help，I don't think it's a good idea to spend too much time on it.
虽然因特网很有帮助，但我还是认为在其上花太多的时间不是个好主意。

While we don't agree we continue to be friends. 尽管我们意见不同，我们还是朋友。

While I did well in class，I was a poor performer at games. 虽说我学习不错，我运动却不行。

While a few became richer，many did not. 虽然一些人变得更富有了，但多数人并非如此。

（3）表示对比时，其意为"而""但"。如：

In some places women are expected to earn money while men work at home and raise their children. 有些地方妇女挣钱，而男子则在家里持家和带孩子。

I went swimming while the others played tennis. 我去游泳，而其余的人则去打网球了。

Air is a fluid but not a liquid，while water is both a fluid and a liquid. 空气是流体不是液体，水是流体也是液体。

Some people waste food while others haven't enough. 一些人糟蹋食物而另一些人却食不果腹。

Prices are rising sharply，while incomes are lagging far behind. 物价飞涨而收入却远远落后。

注意：表示对比时，while 引出的句子通常位于句末，但有时也可位于句首。如：

While most children learn to read easily，some need extra help. 大多数儿童学会阅读很容易，有一些儿童却需要特别帮助。

While some languages have 30 or more different vowel sounds，others have five or less. 有些语言有 30 个或更多的元音，而其他语言只有 5 个或更少的元音。

While Deauville is a holiday resort，Trouville is more of a working town. 特维尔是个度假胜地，而特鲁维尔更多的却是个工业城市。

（4）当主句与从句主语相同，且从句谓语动词含有动词 be 时，通常可省略从句主语和动词 be。如：

While（he was）in prison，she wrote her first novel. 她在狱中写出了第一部小说。

He had strayed from home while still a boy. 他小时候就离开家到处流浪了。

He fell asleep while（he was）doing his homework. 他做着做着功课就睡着了。

I was only listening to the radio with half an ear，while（I was）preparing some food.

我正在做吃的东西，没太留心听收音机。

16.2.2 表示选择关系的并列连词

表示选择的并列连词主要有 or（或者，还是，否则），either…or…（不是……就是……），neither…or…（既不……也不……），otherwise（要不然）等。如：

Be careful about what you say or you may regret it. 当心你讲的话，否则你会后悔的。

Either say you're sorry or else get out! 你要么道歉，要么滚开!

Neither does he smoke nor does he drink. 他既不抽烟也不喝酒。

Seize the chance，otherwise you will regret it. 要抓住机会，否则你会后悔的。

注：neither…nor…连接两个句子，注意用倒装语序。

1. or 的用法归纳

（1）表示选择，意为“或”“还是”。如：

Is the radio off or on? 无线电关上了还是开着的?

Would you prefer tea or coffee? 你喜欢茶还是咖啡?

Is he asleep or awake? 他睡着了还是醒着?

Are you going to America by boat or by air? 你到美国是坐船还是坐飞机?

You may go or stay，according as you decide. 是去是留由你自己决定。

Are you from North China or South China? 你是华北人还是华南人?

（2）表示一种否定的条件，意为“否则”。如：

Come on，or we'll be late. 快点，否则我们要迟到了。

Hurry up，or you'll be late for school. 赶快，否则你上学就要迟到了。

Dress warmly，or else you'll catch cold. 穿暖和点，否则你会感冒的。

Be careful，or you'll break that vase! 小心，否则你会把那花瓶打碎!

Cross the road very carefully. Look both ways，or you might be knocked down. 过马路要非常小心，要看两边，不然会被车撞倒。

（3）可表示“要不就是”。如：

He must be joking，or else he’s mad. 他一定在说笑话，要不就是疯了。

The book must be here，or else you’ve lost it. 这书一定在这儿，要不就是你把它丢失了。

（4）用于否定句中代替 and。如：

He was not clever or good-looking. 他不聪明，也长得不好看。

比较：

They sang and danced. 他们既唱歌又跳舞。

They didn’t sing or dance. 他们既没有唱歌也没有跳舞。

（5）用于习语。如：

The work is more or less finished. 工作大体上完成了。

They consist of 1700 or more tribes. 他们由 1700 个或更多部族构成。

There’s just one or two details I want to make sure about. 还有一两个细节我想弄清楚。

Either your mother or your father may come with you. 你母亲或是你父亲会陪你去。

16.2.3 表示因果关系的并列连词

表示因果关系的并列连词主要有 for（因为），so（因此）等。如：

He shook his head，for he thought differently. 他摇了摇头，因为他有不同想法。

He told me to do it，so I did it. 他让我这样做，于是我就这样做了。

The child had a bad cough，so his mother took him to the doctor. 这孩子咳得很厉害，所以他妈妈带他去看医生。

You are supposed to get rid of carelessness，for it often leads to serious errors. 你们一定要克服粗枝大叶，因为粗枝大叶常常引起严重的错误。

注意：for 表示结果时通常不能放在句首，也不能单独使用。

1. 连词 for 的用法

（1）for 用作连词，主要表示理由，引起的分句对前面的话进行解释，常用逗号把它和前面的分句分开。如：

She was angry，for she didn’t know French. 她生气了，因为她不懂法语。

He must be out，for there is no light in the room. 他准是出去了，因为屋里没有灯。

The days were short，for it was now December. 白天很短，因为这时已经是十二月。

We rarely stay in hotels，for we can’t afford it. 我们很少住旅馆，因为我们住不起。

You needn’t have watered the flowers，for it is going to rain. 你本不必浇那些花，因为就要下雨了。

He took the food eagerly，for he has eaten nothing since dawn. 他狼吞虎咽地吃了起来，因为他从天亮就没吃过东西。

He was busy packing，for he was leaving that night. 他那时正忙着打点行李，因为那天晚上他就要走了。

She does not go out in the winter，for she feels the cold a great deal. 她冬天不出门，因为她特别怕冷。

（2）for 表示原因时的四个“不能”。

① for 引导的从句不能位于它所解释的动词之前。如：

Because it was wet he took a taxi. 因为下雨，他叫了一辆出租车。（这里不能用 for）

② for 引导的从句不能位于 not，but 或任何连词之后。如：

He stole，not because he wanted the money but because he liked stealing.

他偷东西，并不是因为他想要钱，而是他有这种毛病。（这里不能用 for）

③ for 引导的从句不能用于回答问题。如：

—Why did you do it? 你为什么这么做?

—I did it because I was angry. 因为我生气才这么做的。(这里不能用 for)

④ for 引导的从句不能单单用来复述已讲过的话，而必须包括新的内容。如：

He spoke in French. She was angry because he had spoken in French.

他讲法语。因为他讲法语，她生气了。(这里不能用 for)

但是可以说：She was angry，for she didn’t know French.

她生气了，因为她不懂法语。(这里用 for 是正确的，也可用 because)

注意：之所以有这些用法上的限定，是因为 for 引导的从句不能直接说明某一特定动作发生的原因，而只能提供一些起解释作用的附加说明。例如：

The days were short，for it was now December. 天短了，现在已是十二月了。

He took the food eagerly，for he has eaten nothing since dawn. 他狼吞虎咽地吃了起来，因为他从天亮就没吃过东西。

When I saw her in the river I was frightened. For at that point the currents were dangerous. 我看见她在河里时，吓坏了。那个地方水流非常危险。

注意：在口语中，for 从句前常稍停一下。在书面语中，此处常有一个逗号。有时也用一个句号断开，如最后一个例子所示。上面三个例句中也可用 because，但用 for 更好些。

2. 连词 so 的用法

(1) so 用作连词，主要表结果，意为“所以”。如：

It’s very cold，so wear a heavy coat. 外边很冷，因此穿一件厚大衣。

The door was locked，so we couldn’t get in. 门上锁了，所以我们进不去。

I couldn’t have won，so I didn’t go in for the race. 我不可能获胜，因此我没参赛。

The play began at eight，so they must dine at seven. 戏八点开始，因此他们必须七点吃饭。

It was dark，so I couldn’t see what was happening. 天很黑，所以我看不见发生了什么事。

There happened to be a policeman on the corner，so I asked him the way. 恰好拐角处有一位警察，我就向他问路了。

(2) 有时可与并列连词 and 连用，构成习语 and so (相当 so)。如：

He told me to do it and so I did it. 他叫我那么做，所以我就做了。

He worked hard and so he succeeded. 他勤奋工作，所以他取得了成功。

There was so much to eat and so few people to eat it. 有这么多东西可吃，而吃的人又这么少。

I forgot to post the letter，and so she never heard about my divorce. 我忘了寄那封信了，所以她一直不知道我离婚的事。

(3) 不要按汉语意思将“因为……所以……”直译为 because…so…。如：

误：Because he was ill，so he couldn’t come. (去掉 because 或 so 中任意一个)

16.2.4 表示并列关系的并列连词

这类连词主要有 and，or，either…or，neither…nor，not only…but (also)，both…and，as well as，when (=and just at this time 就在这时) 等。如：

Give him an inch and he will take a mile. 他会得寸进尺。

Not only did he speak more correctly，but he spoke more easily. 他不仅讲得更正确，也讲得更不费劲了。

He was about to go to bed when the telephone rang. 他正要上床睡觉，这时电话铃响了起来。

He didn't go and she didn't go either. 他没去，她也没去。

The weather is mild today；it is neither hot nor cold. 今天天气很温暖，不冷也不热。

Both New York and London have traffic problems. 纽约和伦敦都存在交通问题。

It is important for you as well as for me. 这对你和对我都很重要。

People who are either under age or over age may not join the army. 年龄不到或者超龄的人都不得参军。

1. 连词 and 用法归纳

（1）基本意思为“和”“又”“而且”等，但它有时还可表示对比或转折，相当于汉语的“而”“但”“却”。如：

She's a bank manager and I'm just a road-sweeper. 她是银行经理，而我不过是个扫街的。

I've read Tony's book and I don't understand it. 我读过托尼的书，但我不懂。

He hasn't had anything published and he calls himself a writer! 他什么都没发表过，却自称作家！

（2）有时用于连接两个相同的词语，主要有以下用法。

① 连接两个相同的比较级，表示“越来越……”。如：

The weather is getting colder and colder. 天气越来越冷了。

Your English is getting better and better. 你的英语越来越好了。

Computers are becoming more and more complicated. 计算机变得越来越复杂。

② 连接两个相同的动词，表示动作的反复或连续。如：

He coughed and coughed. 他咳个不停。

He tried and tried but without success. 他试了又试却未成功。

③ 连接两个相同的副词，也表示动作的反复或连续。如：

He kept moaning on and on. 他呻吟不已。

④ 连接两个相同的名词，表示“许多”；强调差别，意为“与……不同”。如：

They talked for hours and hours. 他们谈了很长很长时间。

The road went on for miles and miles. 这条路很长很长。

Don't worry there are rules and rules. 别担心——规则跟规则不一样。

I like city life but there are cities and cities. 我喜欢城市生活，但城市之间也有差别。

（3）come 和 go 以动词原形出现时，其后习惯上不跟不定式表示目的，而是用“and+动词原形”表示目的。如：

I must go and help my mother. 我必须去帮助我母亲。

I'll come and check the accounts. 我会来清理账目。

Go and buy yourself a new pair of shoes. 去给自己买双新鞋吧。

Come and play a game of bridge with us. 来跟我们一起打桥牌吧。

注意：如果 go 和 come 不是以动词原形出现，而是以过去式、过去分词、现在分词、动名词等方式出现，则其后应用不定式表示目的。如：

I've come to collect my book. 我来取我的书。

I' m thinking of going to look for mushrooms. 我想去采蘑菇。

I didn't come to talk to Bill；I came to talk to you. 我不是来跟比尔谈话的，我是来跟你谈话的。

I went to buy a newspaper and lost my place in the queue. 我去买了份报纸，回来就找不到我排队中的位置了。

另外，在 come，go 之后的 and 有时可以省略（尤其在美国英语中）。如：

I'll come（and）see you later. 我晚些时候再来看你。

（4）用在祈使句后，表示结果，意为“那么”（暗示一种条件）。如：

Work hard and you’ll pass the examinations（=If you work hard，you’ll pass the examinations）. 努力吧，你考试会及格的。

Arrive late once more and you’re fired（=If you arrive late once more，you’re fired）. 再迟到一次，就把你开除。

有时也可以不用在祈使句后表示结果。如：

One more step and I will fire. 你再动一步，我就要开枪了。

（5）用在 good，nice，fine 等之后，表示“很”“挺”。如：

I won’t go until I’m good and ready. 我完全准备好了才去。

Make sure you cut the bread nice and thick. 你一定要把面包片切得厚厚的。

（6）在主从复合句中，不要在主句前误加 and。如：

使用两个镜子能看见自己的头的后部。

误：If you use mirrors，and you can see the back of your head.

正：If you use mirrors，you can see the back of your head.

（7）某些用 and 连接的两个词，与汉语顺序相反，不要按汉语词序颠倒过来。如：

rich and poor 贫富	land and water 水陆
right and left 左右	north and south 南北
food and drink 饮食	food and clothing 衣食

（8）比较以下各组句子有无连词 and 的差别：

天气晴朗，我们出去散了步。

正：The weather being fine，we went out for a walk.

正：The weather was fine，and we went out for a walk.

教室里包括老师有 5 个人。

正：In the classroom there are five people，the teacher included.

正：In the classroom there are five people，and the teacher was included.

他有两个小孩，都很顽皮。

正：He has two children，both of whom are naughty.

正：He has two children，and both of them are naughty.

16.3 从属连词的用法

16.3.1 引导时间状语从句的从属连词

1. 表示“当……时候”或“每当”的时间连词

这类连词主要有：when，while，as，whenever。如：

Don’t talk while you’re eating. 吃饭时不要说话。

Vegetables are best when they are fresh. 蔬菜新鲜时最好吃。

He came just as I was leaving. 我正要走时他来了。

2. 表示“在……之前（或之后）”的时间连词

这类连词主要有：before，after。如：

Try to finish your work before you leave. 离开前设法把工作做完。

After we have finished tea，we will sit on the grass. 喝完茶之后我们将坐在草地上。

3. 表示“自从”或“直到”的时间连词

这类连词主要有：since，until，till。如：

She’s been playing tennis since she was eight. 她从八岁起就打网球了。

Hold on until I fetch help. 坚持一下，等我找人来帮忙。

Never trouble trouble till trouble troubles you.（谚）不要无事惹事。

带有 until 状语从句的主句谓语有何特点，请看看这道题：

We ___________ until he came.

A. stopped　　B. arrived　　C. left　　D. waited

此题应选 D。选项 A，B，C 都有可能被误选。要弄清此题需弄清以下几点：

（1）until 意为“一直到……”，其相应主句的谓语只能是持续性的，而不能是终止性的。它表示的是：主句动作一直持续到从句动作发生时为止。以上一题的 A，B，C 选项是错的，主要是因为其含义逻辑不通：

若选 A，句意为：我们一直在停止，直到他来就不停止了。

若选 B，句意为：我们一直在到达，直到他来就不到达了。

若选 C，句意为：我们一直在离开，直到他来就不离开了。

以上各句的意思显然不通。选 D 是对的，因为其意为：我们一直在等，直到他来就不等了（即我们一直等到他来）。

（2）与 until 从句连用的主句谓语不能是终止性动词，但是若这个谓语是否定的，则可以是终止性动词，因为终止性动词一旦被否定，即成为状态，而状态都是可以持续的（注：not...until...意为：直到……才……）：

误：We stopped until he came.

正：We didn’t stop until he came. 直到他来我们才停止。

误：We started until the rain stopped.

正：We didn’t start until the rain stopped. 直到雨停我们才开始。

误：He finished it until it was dark.

正：He didn’t finish it until it was dark. 直到天黑他才完成。

4. 表示“一……就”的时间连词

这类连词主要有：as soon as，the moment，the minute，the second，the instant，immediately，directly，instantly，once，no sooner…than，hardly…when 等。如：

I’ll let you know as soon as I hear from her. 我一接她的信就通知你。

The moment I have finished I’ll give you a call. 我一干完就给你打电话。

I came immediately I heard the news. 我一听到这个消息，马上就来了。

Once you begin you must continue. 你一旦开始，便不可停下来。

5. 表示“上次”“下次”“每次”等的时间连词

这类连词主要有：every time（每次），each time（每次），（the）next time（下次），any time（随时），（the）last time（上次），the first time（第一次）。如：

I’ll tell him about it（the）next time I see him. 我下一次见到他时，我就把这个情况告诉他。

We lose a few skin cells every time we wash our hands. 每当我们洗手的时候，我们都要损失一些皮肤细胞。

You can call me any time you want to. 你随时都可以给我打电话。

注意：every time，each time，any time 前不用冠词，（the）next time，（the）last time 中的冠词可以省略，而 the first time 中的冠词通常不能省略。

6. as 用作连词时的用法

（1）表示伴随，意为“随着”。如：

As time passed，things seemed to get worse. 随着时间的推移，情况似乎变得更糟了。

若其后不接从句，而接名词，则用介词 with 表示“随着”。如：

With the development of modern agriculture and industry，more and more waste is produced.

随着现代工农业的发展，污染越来越严重了。

（2）表示让步，意为“虽然”“尽管”，要用于倒装句（相当于 though，但语气稍弱）。如：

Boy as he was，he behaved like a girl. 他虽然是个男孩，但举止却像个女孩。

Much as I like you，I couldn’t live with you. 我尽管很喜欢你，却不能和你一起生活。

Try as he would [might]，he couldn’t open the door. 他试过多次了，却仍打不开门。

（3）表示时间，意为“当……时候”。如：

He dropped the glass as he stood up. 他站起来时，把杯子摔了。

As I was coming here，I met your brother. 我来这里时碰到了你的弟弟。

注意，as 引导时态状语从句时，其谓语动词通常只能是动作动词，而不能是静态或状态动词。如：

她出生后不久父母双亡，是由姑母抚养大的。

误：Her parents died as she was a baby and she was brought up by her aunt.

正：Her parents died when she was a baby and she was brought up by her aunt.

（4）表示原因，引导原因状语从句时，其谓语动词可以是动作动词，也可以是状态动词。如：

As you weren’t there I left a message. 因为你不在那里，我留了个信儿。

另外，引导原因状语从句，可用以下这样的倒装语序。如：

Tired as she was，I decided not to disturb her. 因为她累了，我就决定不打扰她了。

Writing hurriedly as she was，she didn’t notice the spelling errors. 因为写得仓促，她没有注意其中的拼写错误。

16.3.2　引导条件状语从句的从属连词

这类连词主要有 if，unless，as（so）long as，in case 等。如：

Do you mind if I open the window? 我开窗你不介意吧?

Don’t come unless I telephone. 除非我打电话，否则你别来。

As long as you’re happy，it doesn’t matter what you do. 只要你高兴，你做什么都没关系。

In case it rains they will stay at home. 万一下雨，他们就待在家里。

注意：在条件状语从句中，通常要用一般现在时表示将来意义，而不能直接使用将来时态。不过，有时表示条件的 if 之后可能用 will，但那不是将来时态，而是表示意愿或委婉的请求（will 为情态动词）。如：

If you will sit down for a few moments，I’ll tell the manager you’re here. 请稍坐，我这就通知经理说您来了。

1. if 与 whether 的用法区别

两者在表示“是否”时的用法区别如下：

（1）互换的场合。

引导宾语从句表示“是否”时，两者常可互换。如：

He asked if/whether we wanted a drink. 他问我们是否想喝一杯。
He didn't tell me if/whether he would come. 他没有告诉我他是否会来。
注：若是引导条件状语从句，则只能用 if（意为"如果"）。
（2）通常用 if 的场合。
当引导一个否定的宾语从句时，通常用 if 而不用 whether。如：
I don't care if it doesn't rain. 我不在乎天是否下雨。
注：在个别词语（如 wonder，not sure 等）后的从句否定式有时也可能用 whether 来引导。如：
I wonder if/whether he isn't mistaken. 我想知道他是否错了。
（3）通常用 whether 的场合。
① 引导主语从句且放在句首时。如：
Whether he will come is still a question. 他是否会来还是个问题。
注：若在句首使用形式主语 it，而将主语从句放在句末，则有时也可用 if 来引导。如：
It was not known whether/if he would come. 不知他是否会来。
② 引导表语从句时。如：
The question is whether we should go on with the work. 问题是我们是否应该继续进行这项工作。
注：引导表语从句偶尔也用 if（很不正式），但远不如用 whether 常见。
③ 引导宾语从句且放在句首时。如：
Whether he is single I don't know. 他是否单身，我不知道。
④ 引导让步状语从句时。如：
Whether he agrees or not，I shall do that. 不管他同意与否，我都要那样做。
⑤ 与 or 连用分别引导两个从句时。如：
I don't know whether he is wrong or she is wrong. 我不知道是他错了，还是她错了。
注：or 若不是引导两个从句，而是连接两个词或短语，则也可用 if（但不如用 whether 常见）。如：
He didn't know if/whether we should write or phone. 他不知道我们是写信好还是打电话好。
⑥ 用于不定式之前时。如：
I'm not sure whether to stay or leave. 我不知是留还是去。
I didn't know whether to laugh or to cry. 我真是哭笑不得。
⑦ 用于介词之后时。如：
It depends on whether the letter arrives in time. 这取决于信是否来得及时。
I worry about whether I hurt her feelings. 我担心是否伤了她的感情。
⑧ 直接与 or not 连用时。如：
I will write to you whether or not I can come. 我能不能来，我将写信告诉你。
注：若不是直接与 or not 用在一起，则有时也可用 if。如：
I don't know whether/if he will win or not. 我不知他是否能赢。
⑨ 在某些动词后（如 discuss 等）通常只用 whether。如：
We discussed whether we should hold a meeting. 我们讨论了是否要开一个会。

2. unless 与 if...not 的用法区别

unless 和 if not 均可表示"如果不"，有时用法相同，有时不同，请看题：
You'll miss the train __________ you hurry up.
A. unless　　　　B. as　　　　C. if not　　　　D. until
此题应选 A。容易选 C。其实 C 只是词序不对，若改为...if you don't hurry up 也是对的。在许多情况下，连词 until 与 if...not 同义，且可换用（表示一种否定的条件）。

要是不下雨，我们就去。

正：We shall go unless it rains.

正：We shall go if it doesn't rain.

我不打电话给你，你就不要来。

正：Don't come unless I phone you.

正：Don't come if I don't phone you.

从以上两例可以看出，unless 有时可以与 if not 换用，但 if not 中的 not 必须位于从句谓语中，而不能直接与 if 连用在一起。但是注意，即使如此，两者也并不是永远可以换用的。一般说来，两者互换的场合只限于：当我们要去结束一个已经存在的想法或状态时（而不是去开始一种新的想法或状态）。试体会：

I'll stay at home unless I am invited（=if I am not invited）to the party. 要是不邀请我去参加晚会，我就待在家里。（即"邀请我参加晚会"会结束"我将待在家里"这一现在的打算）

若要表示所述条件会导致一种新的想法或情况，通常要用 if...not，而不用 unless。试体会：

I'll be angry if I'm not invited to the party. 如果不邀请我参加晚会，我会生气的。（即"不邀请我去参加晚会"会导致一种新情况——"我会生气"）

16.3.3 引导目的状语从句的从属连词

这类连词主要有 in order that，so that，in case，for fear 等。如：

He raised his voice so that everyone could hear. 他提高了嗓音，以便每个人都能听见。

Take your umbrella（just）in case it rains. 带上雨伞，以防下雨。

She repeated the instructions slowly in order that he should understand. 她把那些指示慢慢重复了一遍好让他听明白。

in case 用作连词时有以下两个用法：

（1）表示条件，意为"如果""万一"。如：

In case it rains，do not expect me. 如果下雨，就不要等我了。

In case you see him，ask him about it. 如果你见着他，问问他这事。

In case I forget，please remind me of my promise. 如果我忘了，请提醒我的诺言。

In case he arrives before I get back，please ask him to wait. 如果他在我回来之前到，请让他等等我。

（2）表示目的，意为"以防""生怕"。如：

I'm shy of buying shares in case I lose money. 我不敢买股票，怕赔钱。

Take warm clothes in case the weather is cold. 带些暖和的衣服，以防天气变冷。

I'll keep a seat for you in case you should change your mind. 我给你留一个座位，以防你会改变主意。

We took our swimming things in case we happened to find a pool. 我们带上游泳用品，以备万一能找到一个水池。

注：有时中间的谓语由 should 构成，强调偶然性，可译为"万一"。如：

I wrote down her address in case I should forget it. 我写下了她的地址，以防万一我忘了。

I always slept by the phone in case he should ring during the night. 我总是睡在电话机旁边，怕万一他夜间打电话来。

16.3.4 引导结果状语从句的从属连词

这类连词主要有 so that，so…that，such…that 等。如：

I went to the lecture early so that I got a good seat. 我去听演讲去得很早，所以我找个好座位。

I had so many falls that I was black and blue all over. 我摔了许多跤，以致全身都是青一块紫一块的。
He shut the window with such force that the glass broke. 他关窗子用力很大，结果玻璃震破了。

16.3.5 引导原因状语从句的从属连词

这类连词主要有 because，as，since，seeing（that），now（that），considering（that）等。如：
He distrusted me because I was new. 他不信任我，因为我是新来的。
As you are sorry，I'll forgive you. 既然你悔悟了，我就原谅你。
Since we've no money，we can't buy it. 由于我们没钱，我们无法购买它。
Seeing that he's ill he's unlikely to come. 因为他病了，他大概不会来了。
Now that she has apologized，I am content. 既然她已经道了歉，我也就满意了。

1. 连词 because 用法详解

（1）表示原因，语气较强，可用来回答 why 提出的问题。如：
—Why do you love her? 你为什么爱她?
—Because she is kind. 因为她很善良。
（2）because 除引导原因状语从句外，还可引出表语从句或用于强调句中等。如：
It is because you're eating too much. 那是因为你吃得太多了。
It was because I wanted to buy a dictionary that I went to town yesterday. 我昨天是由于想买本字典而进城的。
（3）汉语可以说“因为……所以……”，但英语却不能用 because…so…这样的结构。如：
因为我病了半年，所以把工作丢了。
误：Because I was ill for six months，so I lost my job.
正：Because I was ill for six months，I lost my job.
正：I was ill for six months，so I lost my job.
（4）汉语可以说“之所以……是因为……”，英语可以用以下这样的句型（用 that 比用 because 普通）。如：
The reason（why）I'm late is that/because I missed the bus.
我迟到的原因是因为我没有赶上公共汽车。
传统语法认为这类句型不能用 because，但在现代英语中用 because 的情形已很普遍。
（5）在 not…because…这一结构中，not 有时否定主句，有时否定从句，具体视语境而定。一般说来，若 not 否定主句，最好在 because 之前用逗号，否则会引起歧义，如下句在没有特定上下文时就有两种解释：I didn't go because I was afraid. 这个句子既可理解为“我没有去是因为怕”，也可理解为“我不是因为怕才去”。但是，如果 because 之前有副词 just 修饰，一般认为 not 是否定从句而不是主句。如：
You shouldn't get angry just because some people speak ill of you. 你不要因为有人说你坏话而生气。
（6）有时可引导一个句子作主语，此时通常采用 just because 这样的形式，并且主句谓语动词通常为 mean。如：
Just because you speak English doesn't mean you can teach it. 你会说英语并不意味着你能教英语。
Just because you're old doesn't mean you have to be idle. 你年纪大了并不意味着你就应该懒散不活动。
Because you have words with your wife is no reason to smash up things. 你和你妻子吵架并不能成为摔东西的理由。
（7）用于构成复合介词 because of，其后可接名词、代词、动名词、what 从句（但不能是 that 从句或没有引导词的从句）等。如：

He is here because of you（that）. 他为你（那事）而来这里。

We said nothing about it，because of his wife's being there. 因为他妻子在那儿，我们对此只字未提。

He left the company because of what the boss said at the meeting. 他离开了这家公司，是因为老板在会上讲的话。

（8）because of 通常用来引导状语，而不用于引导表语（引导表语时可用 due to）。如：

误：His absence is because of the rain.

正：His absence is due to the rain. 他因为下雨而没有来。

但是，若主语是代词（不是名词），则它引出的短语也可用作表语。如：

It is because of hard work. 那是因为辛苦工作的原因。

It will be because of money. 那将都是因为钱的原因。

2. because，since，as，for 的用法区别

四者均可用来表示原因，区别如下：

（1）关于 because：语气最强，表示直接原因，可用于回答 why 提出的问题、引导表语从句、用于强调句等，而其余三者均不行。如：

"Why didn't he come?" "Because he was ill." "他为什么没来?" "因为他病了。"

My stomach hurts because I have eaten too many apples. 我肚子痛，因为苹果吃得太多。

It is because he is honest that I like him. 是因为他诚实我才喜欢他。

（2）关于 since 与 as。

① 两者表示的原因都是人们已知的，即对已知事实提供理由，而不是表示直接原因。since 比 as 语气稍强，且比 as 略为正式，它们引导的从句通常放在主句之前，有时也放在主句之后。如：

As you weren't there，I left a message. 由于你不在那儿，我留了个口信。

Since you are wrong，you should apologize. 你既然错了，就应该道歉。

② since 可用于省略句，而其他三者不行。如：

Since so，I have nothing to say. 既然如此，我无话可说。

（3）关于 for：for 是并列连词（其余三者为从属连词），它有时可表示因果关系（通常要放在主句之后，且可与 because 换用）；有时不表示因果关系，而是对前面分句内容的解释或推断（也要放在主句之后，但不能与 because 换用）。比较：

The ground is wet，for（=because）it rained last night. 地面是湿的，因为昨晚下过雨。

It must have rained last night，for the ground is wet this morning. 昨晚一定下过雨，你看今天早上地面是湿的。（此句不能用 because 代替 for）

in that 引导从句的用法：

（1）如果是作为自由搭配 in that，那么它的意思需视上下文而定。如：

Put the bookcase in that corner. 把书柜放在那个角落里。

You ought on no account to take part in that. 你千万别参与那事。

It is expensive to stay in that hotel. 住那家旅馆很贵。

（2）如果用 in that 引导从句，则它是一个习语，意思是"因为""由于"，与从属连词 because 意思相同。如：She was fortunate in that she had friends to help her. 她很幸运，有一些朋友帮助她。

The situation is rather complicated in that we have two managing directors. 由于我们有两位总经理，所以情况很复杂。

I'm in a slightly awkward position，in that he's not arriving until the 10th. 我的处境有点难堪，因为他要 10 号才来。

16.3.6　引导让步状语从句的从属连词

这类连词主要的有 although，though，even though，even if，while，however，whatever，whoever，whenever，wherever 等。如：

Although they are twins，they look entirely different. 他们虽是孪生，但是相貌却完全不同。

I like her even though she can be annoying. 尽管她有时很恼人，但我还是喜欢她。

You won't move that stone，however strong you are. 不管你力气多大，也休想搬动那块石头。

Whatever we have achieved，we owe to your support. 我们取得的一切成就都归功于你们的支持。

Whoever you are，you can't pass this way. 不管你是谁，你都不能从这里通过。

Whenever I see him I speak to him. 每当我见到他，我都和他讲话。

1. although 与 though 用法辨析

（1）用作连词时表示“虽然”，两者大致同义，可换用，只是 although 比 though 更为正式。如：

Though/Although they're expensive，people buy them. 虽然它们很昂贵，人们还是买。

（2）although 一般不用作副词，而 though 可用作副词，表示“可是”“不过”。如：

I expect you're right—I'll ask him，though. 我认为你说得对——我去问问他也好。

She promised to phone. I heard nothing，though. 她答应要打电话来。可我没听到回信儿。

这样用的 though 通常位于句末，但有时位于句首的 though 也有这样的意思。如：

他说他要付钱，然而我认为他不会付的。

正：He says he'll pay，though I don't think he will.

正：He says he'll pay；I don't think he will，though.

（3）在 as though 好像，仿佛，even though 即使，纵然等固定短语中，不能用 although 代替 though。如：

She treats me as though I were a stranger. 她待我仿佛我是一个陌生人。

He's the best teacher even though he has the least experience. 他尽管经验最少，但教得最好。

（4）两者均可用于省略句，通常见于主句与从句主语相同，且从句谓语含有动词 be 的情形。如：

Although/Though（it was）built before the war，the engine is still in perfect order.

尽管是战前制造的，这台发动机仍然处于良好状态。

Although/Though（he is）still young he is going very grey. 尽管他还年轻，他的头发却已变得灰白。

Although/Though（she was）in pain，she bravely blinked back her tears. 她虽然很疼痛，但还是硬把眼泪抑制住了。

（5）当 though 用于倒装形式时，它不能换成 although，但可换成 as。如：

Successful though/as he is，he is not proud. 他虽然成功，但不骄傲。

Much though/as I like you，I couldn't live with you. 我尽管很喜欢你，却不能和你在一起生活。

Try though/as I would，I could not make her change her mind. 不管我多努力，也不能让她改变主意。

Surrounded though/as we were by the enemy，we managed to march forward. 虽然我们被敌人包围着，但我们还是设法前进了。

Raining hard though/as it is，I'm going out for a walk. 虽然正在下着大雨，我还是要出去散步。

注意：若倒装后置于句首的是名词，其前习惯上不用冠词或其他限定词。如：

Expert though/as he was，he failed. 他虽是专家，但还是失败了。

Big puzzle though/as it was，it hadn't got the better of Jim. 虽然是个大难题，但仍没有难倒吉姆。

（6）不要按汉语“虽然……但是……”的表达习惯，在 although 后连用 but。如：

虽然他只是个业余爱好者，但却是一流的高手。

误：Although he's only an amateur，but he's a first-class player.

正：Although he’s only an amateur，he’s a first-class player.

但是在强调时，although 可与 yet，still 等副词连用。如：

Though he seems happy，yet he is worried. 虽然他看起来很幸福，但他实际上很烦恼。

注意：值得一提的是，在某些特定的语境中，although 与 but 连用的句子是可能的（注：but 引出的句子在 although 从句之前）。如：

But I didn’t know that then，although I learned it later. 但我当时的确不知道此事，尽管后来还是知道了。

He wanted to go abroad，but although he had some money he couldn’t afford it. 他想出国，尽管他有些钱，但还是负担不起。

I tried doing the accounts，but although I knew some maths I found it very difficult. 我试着算这些账，但尽管我懂点数学，仍感到很困难。

分析：此句将 but 与 although 用在一起，但并没有错误。该句从总体来看是一个以并列连词 but 连接的并列句，而该并列句的后面是一个包含让步状语从句 although I knew some maths 的复合句——这种句型就是所谓的并列复合句。此句也可改写为 I tried doing the accounts，but I found it very difficult although I knew some maths.

16.3.7　引导方式状语从句的从属连词

这类连词主要有 as，as if，as though，the way 等。如：

Why didn’t you catch the last bus as I told you to? 你怎么不听我的话赶乘末班公共汽车呢?

He bent the iron bar as if it had been made of rubber. 他将铁棍折弯，仿佛那是用橡皮做成的。

Nobody else loves you the way（=as）I do. 没有人像我这样爱你。

16.3.8　引导地点状语从句的从属连词

这类连词主要有 where，wherever，everywhere，anywhere 等。如：

The church was built where there had once been a Roman temple. 这座教堂盖在一座罗马寺庙的旧址上。

I’ll take you anywhere you like. 你想到哪儿我就带你到哪儿。

Everywhere I go，I find the same thing. 不管我走到哪里，我都发现同样的情况。

16.3.9　引导比较状语从句的从属连词

这类连词主要有 than 和 as…as。如：

She was now happier than she had ever been. 现在她比过去任何时候都快活。

I glanced at my watch. It was earlier than I thought. 我看了看表，时间比我想象的早。

He doesn’t work as hard as she does. 他工作不像她那样努力。

16.3.10　引导名词从句的从属连词

这类连词主要有 that，whether，if 等，它们用于引导主语从句、表语从句、宾语从句和同位语从句。其中 that 不仅不能充当句子成分，而且没有词义，在句子中只起连接作用；而 if，whether 虽不充当句子成分，但有词义，即表示“是否”。如：

He replied that he was going by train. 他回答说他将坐火车去。

I wonder if it’s large enough. 我不知道它是否够大。

I worry about whether I hurt her feelings. 我为是否伤了她的感情而担心。

16.4 并列连词词组的用法

16.4.1 both...and...的用法

both...and...意为"……和……都""不但……而且……""既……又……"。如：

She both speaks and writes Japanese. 她不仅会说日语，而且还会写。

He spoke with both kindness and understanding. 他说话既亲切又明事理。

注意：作为关联并列连词，它通常应连接两个相同性质的句子成分，但有时后一成分可以省略与前一成分相同的词。另外，若连接两个成分作主语时，谓语要用复数。如：

Both she and Sophia were pleased with the girl. 她和索菲娅都喜欢这姑娘。

16.4.2 either...or...的用法

（1）either...or...主要表示选择，其意为"要么……要么……""不是……就是……""或者……或者……"，用于连接两个性质相同的词或短语。如：

Either come in or go out. 要么进来，要么出去。

I want to visit either Paris or London. 我想去巴黎或伦敦游览一下。

Either he did not speak distinctly or I did not hear well. 不是他没讲清楚，就是我没听明白。

You can have either this one or that one. 你拿这个或那个都可以。

You must either go at once or wait till tomorrow. 你要么马上走，要么等到明天。

We can finish the work either this week or next week. 不是这星期就是下星期我们就可完成这项工作。

注意①：

either...or...通常应连接两个相同性质的句子成分，但有时后一成分可能省略与前一成分相同的词，若连接两个成分作主语，谓语动词通常与其靠近的主语保持一致。如：

Either you or I am to go. 你或我必须有人去。

Either he or you are right. 要么他对，要么你对。

注意②：

在非正式文体中，有时也会一律用复数谓语。如：

You can either have tea or coffee. 你喝茶也行，喝咖啡也行。

Either you or I am wrong. 不是你错，就是我错。

If either David or Janet come，they will want a drink. 大卫或珍妮特来的话，是会要喝酒的。

（2）either...or...除可连接两个词或短语外，有时也可连接两个句子。如：

Either you must improve your work or I shall dismiss you. 要么你改进工作，要么我就辞退你。

Either you'll leave this house or I'll call the police. 你要是不离开这座房子，我就叫警察来。

（3）either...or...的否定式可以是 not either...or...，也可以是 neither...nor...。如：

He didn't either write or phone.=He neither wrote nor phoned. 他既没写信又没打电话。

注意：正如不能说 either...not 一样（但可说 not…either），英语习惯上也不说 either...or...not，如不能说：Either he or his wife hasn't come. 可改为：Neither he nor his wife has come.

16.4.3 neither...nor...的用法

neither...nor...意为"既不……也不……""……和……都不"。如：

I have neither time nor money. 我既无时间又无钱。

I neither smoke nor drink. 我既不抽烟也不喝酒。

He neither knows nor cares what happened. 他对所发生的事不闻不问。

This is neither my fault nor yours. 这既不怪我，也不怪你。

注意：通常应连接两个相同性质的句子成分，但有时后一成分可能省略与前一成分相同的词。若连接两个成分作主语，其谓语通常与靠近的主语保持一致。如：

Mary neither likes maths nor (likes) history. 玛丽既不喜欢数学也不喜欢历史。

Neither Jim and Jack was at home. 吉姆和杰克都不在家。

但在非正式文体中也可一律用复数。如：

Neither Jim and Jack were at home. 吉姆和杰克都不在家。

16.4.4 not only…but also…的用法

not only…but also 表示“不但……而且……”“不仅……而且”“既……又”，用于连接两个性质相同的词或短语。如：

Not only men but also women were chosen. 不仅仅是男的，女的也有被选中的。

We were not only hungry，but also tired. 我们不但饿了，而且也累了。

She likes not only music but also sport. 她不但喜欢音乐而且喜欢运动。

She not only plays well，but also writes music. 她不仅很会演奏，而且还会作曲。

We go there not only in winter，but also in summer. 我们不仅冬天去那儿，而且夏天也去。

另外，在使用 not only…but also…时还应注意以下几点：

(1) 有时可将 but also 分开用，即将 but 视为普通的并列连词，用于连接两个句子，然后将 also 用于句中 (和谓语动词用在一起)。如：

He’s not only very fast，but he’s also got marvellous technique. 他不仅很快，而且技术高超。

(2) 该结构中的 also 有时可以省略，或将 also 换成 too，as well (置于句末)。如：

Not only is he funny，but he is witty too (as well). 他不但风趣，而且也很机智。

He not only washed the car，but polished it too (as well). 他不仅冲洗汽车，而且还擦拭了它。

His name is known not only in Japan，but in China. 他不仅在日本出名，而且在中国也出名。

(3) 有时因为语境的需要，not only…but also…也可能用于连接两个性质不同的词或短语，但这多半因为承前省略的原因。如：

He not only goes to work on weekdays，but also on weekends. 他不仅工作日去上班，周末也去上班。

句中的 not only 后接的是谓语 goes to，而 but also 后接的却是状语 on weekends，可视为 but also 后承前省略了谓语动词 goes to work。

(4) 当 not only…but also 连接两个主语时，谓语动词的数原则上与其相近的主语保持一致。如：

Not only the students but also their teacher is enjoying the film. 不仅学生们在欣赏这部影片，他们的老师也在欣赏这部影片。

(5) 为了强调，可将 not only 置于句首，此时其后的句子通常要用部分倒装的形式。如：

Not only has she been late three times，she has also done no work. 她不仅仅迟到了三次，她还没干一点活。

Not only do they need clothing，but they are also short of water. 他们不但需要衣服，而且还缺水。

注：有时也可见到不倒装的情形，此时主要见于 but also 后接省略结构的情况 (省略只剩下主语)。如：

Not only my mother was unhappy，but Marian，too. 不仅我母亲不快乐，玛丽安也不快乐。

16.4.5　not only…but also…是否一定要连接对称结构

1. 连接对称结构

not only…but also…是一对非常有用的关联连词，其意为“不仅……而且……”“不但……而且……”，通常用于连接两个相同的句子成分，即所谓的“对称结构”。如：

（1）连接主语。如：

Not only you but also I am hungry. 不只你，我也饿了呢。

Not only men but also women were chosen. 不仅仅是男的，女的也有被选中的。

Not only the students but also their teacher is enjoying the film. 不仅学生们在欣赏这部影片，他们的老师也在欣赏这部影片。

（2）连接谓语。如：

She not only plays well，but also writes music. 她不仅很会演奏，而且还会作曲。

He not only read the book，but also remembered what he read. 他不仅读过这本书，还记得内容。

She not only sings like an angel，but also dances divinely. 她不但唱歌唱得像天使一样，而且跳舞也跟天仙一般。

（3）连接表语。如：

He is not only arrogant but also selfish. 他不但傲慢，而且自私。

The place was not only cold，but also damp. 那个地方不但很冷而且很潮湿。

Certain poisons，used as medicines in small quantities，prove not only innocuous，but beneficial.

某些毒品，如少量用作药品，证明不但无毒，而且有益。

（4）连接宾语。如：

He speaks both French and English well. 他法语和英语都说得好。

She likes not only music but also sport. 她不但喜欢音乐而且喜欢运动。

If this project fails it will affect not only our department，but also the whole organization.

要是这个方案不成功，这不仅会影响我们这个部门，而且会影响整个组织。

（5）连接定语。如：

There are problems not only with the students，but also with the teachers themselves. 不但学生们有难题，教师们自己也有。

（6）连接状语。如：

We go there not only in winter，but also in summer. 我们不仅冬天去那儿，而且夏天也去。

He works not only on weekdays but on Sundays as well. 他不仅平时工作，星期日也工作。

They landed up not only having to apologize but also offering to pay. 他们最后不但同意道歉，而且还要付款。

2. 连接非对称结构

在实际运用中，该结构有时不完全遵循“连接相同句子成分”的用法而出现一些非对称结构。这类用法主要有以下几类。

（1）因承前省略而导致的不对称。如：

He not only goes to work on weekdays，but also on weekends. 他不仅工作日去上班，周末也去上班。

句中的 not only 后接的是谓语 goes to，而 but also 后接的却是状语 on weekends，可视为 but also 后承前省略了谓语动词 goes to work。

She not only plays the piano，but also the violin. 他不仅弹钢琴，而且还拉小提琴。

句中的 not only 后为谓语动词，而 but also 后接的是名词，实为动词 plays 的宾语，可视为在 but also

后承前省略了谓语动词 plays。

Her charm not only consists in her beauty but also in her self-confidence. 她的魅力不仅在于她的美貌，而且在于她的自信。

可视为 but also 后承前省略了 consists。

（2）因强调导致不对称。有时为了强调，not only...but also...连接的两个成分也可能是"不对称"的，这类用法尤其见于 not only 后接的是句子的一个部分，而 but 却用于句中连接一个句子（其后的句中可能出现 also，也可能省略 also）。如：

It's not only useless to trouble him but it is needless to do so. 去麻烦他不仅没有用而且没有必要。

He's not only very fast，but he's also got marvellous technique. 他不仅很快，而且技术高超。

His headache and fatigue not only subsided，but，what is more，his craving for alcohol disappeared. 不但他的头疼和疲劳减轻了，而且他嗜酒的毛病也消失了。

这类用法有时也可能会省略 but 后面的主语，而保留其后的谓语。如：

The film was not only amusing，but gave a valuable moral lesson. 这部电影不但逗人，而且也上了一堂有价值的道德教育课。（句子后半部分可视为 but it gave a valuable moral lesson 之省略）

She was not only the largest ship that had ever been built，but was regarded as unsinkable. 这艘轮船不仅是造船史上建造的最大的一艘船，而且也被认为是不会沉没的。（句子后半部分可视为 but she was regarded as unsinkable 之省略）

These attracted many visitors，for they were not only of great architectural interest，but contained a large number of beautifully preserved frescoes as well. 它们吸引大量游客，不仅是因为建筑风格奇特，而且还有大量保存完好的壁画。

16.5 连词总结

1. 递进型

这类连词主要有 besides（除了……之外），not only...but also（不但……而且），still（仍然），moreover（而且，此外），even（甚至），furthermore（而且）。如：

Beside English，he has to study german.

I don't like skating，moreover，the ice is too thin.

Even a child can understand the book.

2. 解释型

这类连词主要有 that is（to say）（这就是说……），in other words（换句话说）。

3. 转折型

这类连词主要有 however（然而，但是），but（但是），although（尽管），yet（然而，但是），otherwise（否则），instead（代替，而不是），on the contrary（正相反）。如：

Although it was so cold，he went out without an overcoat.

Much remains yet to be done.

No way，you must buy it for me. Otherwise we divorce each other.

Can i sit here instead of my seat?

No，just on the contrary I cant get excited about my job，so I feel tired.

4. 列举型

这类连词主要有 firstly…secondly…finally，on the one hand…on the other hand（一方面……另一方面）。如：

on the one hand I have to work；on the other hand I have many visitors to see.

5. 举例型

这类连词主要有：for example（例如），for instance（例如），such as（像，例如）。如：

But is there anything you can do! For example can you study more harder with your English?

It's true. You can find any information you want to. For instance，writing，listening，oral expressions and other articles.

Yeah，it's as white as silver and its water is clear，such as the silver needle.

6. 因果型

这类连词主要有：because（因为），since（由于），therefore（因此，所以），as a result（结果，因此），thanks to（幸亏，幸好），thus（这样，因此）。如：

Because my mother's ill，I stayed at home to take care of her.

But I`m a little nervous since this is our first date。

We are all the yellow race，therefore yellow will naturally add splendor to the 2008 Olympics.

As a result，he had to leave.

Thanks to the policemen，I could not find my money again.

Thus every day I will receive cute rose and you will have sweet chocolate.

7. 让步型

这类连词主要有：though=although（尽管），in spite of（虽然，尽管）。如：

I'm doing okay，although my wife is in hospital.

In spite of you and me and the whole silly world going to pieces around us，I love you.

8. 顺序型

这类连词主要有：first…next…and…then…finally，first…then…after that…finally。

9. 并列型

这类连词主要有：and，or，also，as well as（也，除了……之外也）

Great，I was able to do some sight seeing as well as meet the new clients.

10. 总结型

这类连词主要有：in conclusion（最后，综上所述），in a word（总而言之），to sum up（综括起来），in short（简而言之）。如：

In conclusion，please accept my best wishes for your family.

In a word we have abnormal weather all over the world this year.

This is a fantastic hotel.

In short，it keeps us asleep.

【例题精析】

【例题 1】

—I don't like chicken ___ fish.

—I don't like chicken, ___ I like fish very much.

A. and; and　　B. and; but　　C. or; but　　D. or; and

【解析】本题考查 and 和 or 的区别，否定句中表并列用 or，but 表转折。故选择 C。

【例题 2】

—Would you like to come to dinner tonight?

—I'd like to, ___ I'm too busy.

A. and　　B. so　　C. as　　D. but

【解析】but 与前面形成转折，符合语意。而表并列的 and，表结果的 so，表原因的 as 都不符合句意。故选择 D。

【例题 3】

Information technology is taught in most schools, ______we have entered the information society.

A. so　　B. while　　C. still　　D. for

【解析】因为句中的并列连词 for 表示原因，是对前面分句所述内容的解释或补充说明。故选择 D。

【随堂测验】

一、用 when, before, after, until, as soon as, if, as, because, though, than, since, so…that 填空。

1. I haven't heard from him _______ he left home.
2. He was _______ tired _______ he couldn't go on working.
3. I was cooking ______ she knocked at the door.
4. He didn't go to bed ______ he finished his homework.
5. The soldiers set off to the front ______ they received the officer's order.
6. She went to bed _______ the TV play was over.
7. I won't believe it _______ I hear with my own ears.
8. We should strike _______ the iron is hot.
9. Take the medicine _______ you go to bed.
10. They couldn't send their children to school _______ life was very hard in those days.
11. _______ this method doesn't work, let's try another.
12. We're leaving for Shenzhen _______ it is fine today.
13. I knew nothing about it _______ he told me.
14. The singer was _______ pleased _______ he couldn't say a word.
15. Please work harder _______ all of you can pass the final exam.
16. Army and people are as inseparable（不可分的）_______ fish and water.
17. The harvest of this year is much better ______ that of last year.
18. _______ the story is short and there are no new words in it, it is difficult to understand.

二、用适当的连词完成改写后的句子，使其与第一个句子的意思相同或相近。

1. We can't finish the work in time without your help.
   We can't finish the work in time _______ you don't help me.
2. Now shop blowing, and the glass will be clear again.

_______ you now stop blowing, the glass will be clear again.

3. If we don't hurry, we'll be late for the film.
   Let's hurry, ______ we'll be late for the film.
4. The girl is too young to go to school.
   The girl is ______ young ______ she can't go to school.
5. Jenny got up even earlier the next morning in order to get to school on time.
   Jenny got up even earlier the next morning _______ she could get to school on time.
6. Jack hasn't seen the new film. I haven't seen it, either.
   ______ Jack ______ I have seen the new film.
7. Wei Hua is a League member. Han Meimei is a League member, too.
   ______ Wei Hua ______ Han Meimei are League members.
8. The little boy speaks English very well. He speaks Russian very well, too.
   The little boy speaks ______ English ______ Russian very well.
9. Xiao Ming was born in 1988. Wang Lin was born in 1988, too.
   Xiao Ming is just as old ______ Wang Lin.
10. Miss Gao is very kind. All the students like her.
   Miss Gao is ______ kind ______ all the students like her.

三、单项选择。

1. —Oh, I failed again. —Don't lose heart. One more effort, ________ you will succeed.
   A. so that　B. therefore　C. however　D. and
2. —How can I wake up so early? —Set the alarm at 5 o'clock, ________ you'll make it.
   A. but　B. or　C. and　D. so
3. For a person with reading habits, a printed page contains not only words _____ ideas, thoughts and feelings.
   A. yet　B. and　C. or　D. but
4. Information technology is taught in most schools, _____we have entered the information society.
   A. so　B. while　C. still　D. for
5. English is understood all over the world ________ Turkey is spoken by only a few people outside Turkey itself.
   A. while　B. when　C. if　D. as
6. I was on the point of going to bed ________ Mr. Zhang rang.
   A. as　B. when　C. while　D. and
7. When you are learning English, use it, _______ you will oose it.
   A. but　B. or　C. then　D. and
8. I asked him whether he had done all the work himself ________ whether he had had any assistance.
   A. and　B. but　C. nor　D. or
9. I was so familiar with her that I recognized her voice ________ I picked up the phone.
   A. the moment　B. after　C. before　D. while
10. —I would like you to to talk about the Great Wall.
   —I'm sorry, but _______ Jack _______ I have been there.
   A. either; or　B. neither; nor　C. both; and　D. not only; but also

【答案及解析】

1. D。考查“祈使句/名词+and+陈述句”句型。句意为：再努力点，你就会成功的。
2. C。考查“祈使句+and+陈述句”句型，意为“如果……就……”。虽然 or 也可用于此句型，但 or

是“否则、要不然”之意，如：Work hard，or you'll fail. 努力学习，否则就会不及格。

3. D。not only…but（also）…是固定搭配。

4. D。句中的并列连词 for 表示原因，是对前面分句所述内容的解释或补充说明。

5. A。句中的并列连词 while 表示“对比或相反”。

6. B。句中的并列连词 when = just at that time，意为“这时（突然）”。

7. B。句意为，你在学英语的时候，要使用它，否则你会忘记的。本题考察了连词在语境中的用法，or 用在祈使句中，表示“否则”的意思，符合题意。

8. D。只有 or 才能表示选择，意为“（是……）还是”。

9. A。名词短语 the moment 用作连词，相当于 as soon as 引导时间状语从句，意为：一……就。类似的短语或词还有 the minute，the instance，directly，immediately 等。

10. B。由第一句“我想和你谈谈长城”及第二句的回答“很抱歉……”可知，说话人没有去过所有不能谈，故选 B。

【课后作业】

1. We bought Granny a present，_________she didn't like it.

A. but　　B. and　　C. or　　D. so

2. Run quickly，_________we'll miss the early train.

A. and　　B. but　　C. so　　D. or

3. Miss Gao has been a teacher_______1990.

A. before　　B. after　　C. since　　D. in

4. —Which would you like better，tea_________milk? —Tea，please.

A. but　　B. and　　C. or　　D. with

5. Betty didn't go to see the film yesterday__________she was ill.

A. but　　B. until　　C. if　　D. because

6. You'll learn English well_________you put your heart into it.

A. if　　B. so　　C. until　　D. or

7. I'll give the book to him________he comes back.

A. since　　B. as soon as　　C. before　　D. until

8. Don't cross the road________the light turns green.

A. when　　B. while　　C. until　　D. as

9. I like fish，______chicken，__________eggs.

A. and；and　　B. and；with　　C. /；and　　D. and；/

10. I criticized him，you know，not _________ I hate him but _________ I love him.

A. because；because　　B. because；for

C. for；because　　D. for；for

【答案及解析】

1. A。由句意可知，应选择转折连词。

2. D。or 这里应译为：否则。

3. C。因为主句为完成时，所以应用 since 表示该动作的起始点。

4. C。在疑问句与否定句中应用 or 来表示一种选择。

5. D。这里表示因果关系，所以应用 because。句意：因为她病了所以未去看电影。

6. A。本句译为：如果你将心放在学习上，你就会将英语学好。这里的语法现象是从句中用一般现在时表示将来。

7. B。as soon as 引出的时间状语从句应用一般现在时表示将来要发生的动作。

8. C。until 应译为“直到……才”，因为前面的祈使句为否定句。又如：She did not go to bed until her mother came back. 应译为“直到她妈妈回来她才睡觉”。

9. C。有若干个名词或动词出现时，每一个词之间只用逗号连接，只在最后两个词之间加 and。如：The old man passed the street，went into a shop and bought some food.

10. A。本题考查 because 引导的原因状语从句及与 for 的区别。for 不能跟 not...but 这一结构连用，句意为：我批评他不是因为我恨他而是因为我爱他。

【聚焦中考】

1.（2014 中考）Mum says ______ I do my homework now，I can watch TV for an hour tonight.

A. if　　B. though　　C. because　　D. while

2.（2011 中考）___they are very tired，they feel happy because they've finally finished their project.

A. So　　B. Although　　C. If　　D. But

3. 父亲和我都喜欢看篮球比赛。

______ my father ____ I love watching basketball matches.

4.（2012 中考）He has to earn lots of money______he can buy his children nice food and clothes.

A. so that　　B. such that　　C. that　　D. in order

5.（2013 中考）Could you say it again? I can't understand __________ you are talking about.

A. how　　B. when　　C. what　　D. which

6.（2012 中考）看电影时我们既不能大声喧哗也不能吃东西。

We should_______ talk loudly_______ eat in the theatre while watching a movie.

7.（2013 中考）踢完足球后，他太兴奋了睡不着。

After the football game，he was__________ excited_________ sleep.

8.（2014 中考）待在家里，直到你妈妈回来。

Stay in your house_______ your mother ________ _________.

9.（2010 中考）如果你晚上早些睡，早上就不会感觉疲惫。

_______you go to bed earlier at night，you won't_______ _______ in the morning.

【聚焦高考】

（2014 安徽卷）25. The meaning of the word "nice" changed a few times________it finally came to include the sense "pleasant."

A. before　　B. after　　C. since　　D. while

【考点】状语从句连词词义辨析。

【答案】A。

【解析】before 在……之前；after 在……之后；since 自从，既然；while 当……时；然而；句意：在"nice"这个词最后包括有"pleasant"的意义之前，它的意思已经变化了好几次了。本句中的副词 finally 说明最后 nice 包括有"pleasant"的意思，说明意义多次变化是之前发生的事情。根据句意可知 A 正确。

【举一反三】You can't borrow books from the school library ______ you get your student card.

A. before　　B. if　　C. while　　D. as

【答案】A。

【考点】本题考查状语从句的引导词。

【解析】句意：在你得到你的学生卡之前你不能从学校图书馆借书。所以选 before。

（2014 北京卷）21. Some animals carry seeds from one place to another, ______ plants can spread to new places.

A. so B. or C. for D. but

【考点】连词辨析。

【答案】A。

【解析】本题考察的都是常见的连词。so 于是（强调上下文因果关系）；or 或者；for 由于，因为（起补充说明作用）；but 但是（表示转折）；句意：一些动物把种子从一个地方带到另外一个地方，于是植物就传播到了新的地方生长了。上下文之间是因果关系。故 A 正确。

【试题延伸】连词辨析主要考虑上下文之间的逻辑关系，特别要注意句子结构的差别。

【举一反三】—Someone wants you on the phone. —_____nobody knows I am here.

A. Although B. And C. But D. So

【答案】C。

【考点】考察连词用法。

【解析】前半句为：有人给你打电话；后半句为：没有人知道我在这儿，根据句子意思可知前后两句明显为转折关系，因此选 C。

（2014 北京卷）29. _______ the forest park is far away, a lot of tourists visit it every year.

A. As B. When C. Even though D. In case

【考点】状语从句连词辨析。

【答案】C。

【解析】本题的状语从句连词都是常用的连词。as 由于，因为；随着；when 当……时；even though 即使，尽管；in case 以防；句意：即使那个森林公园很遥远，但是每年都有很多游客到那里参观。根据句意可知上下文之间有转折关系，所以使用 even though 表示让步转折关系。故 C 正确。

（2014 湖南卷）26. You will never gain success________you are fully devoted to your work.

A. when B. because C. after D. unless

【考点】状语从句中的连词辨析。

【答案】D。

【解析】本句主要考察连词辨析。when 当……时；because 因为；after 在……之后；unless 除非，如果……不……；句意：如果你不努力工作，你永远都成功不了。本句中的 unless 相当于 if...not...根据句义可知 D 正确。

【举一反三】It is hard for the Greek government to get over the present difficulties_________ gets more financial support from the European Union.

A. if B. unless C. because D. since

【考点】考查从句的连词。

【答案】B。

【解析】根据句意“除非有来自欧洲联盟更多的经济支持，否则希腊政府很难克服目前的困难”可知，只能选择 unless“除非”才能使句意完整。考查状语从句的连词题事实上非常简单，只要找到句中的关键词，然后根据句意排除就行，本题关键词是 hard 和 more financial support。

（2014 江苏卷）21. Lessons can be learned to face the future, ________history cannot be changed.

A. though B. as C. since D. unless

【考点】状语从句连词辨析。

【答案】A。

【解析】本题考察的是状语从句的连词辨析。though 尽管；as 随着，因为；since 自从，既然；unless 除非，如果……不……；句意：尽管历史不能改变，但是为了面对未来我们还是要从历史中学会教训。根据句意可知上下文之间存在转折关系，所以使用 though 表示让步和转折。故 A 正确。

【举一反三】It was a nice meal，_______a little expensive.

A. though　　B. whether　　C. as　　D. since

【答案】A。

【考点】考查连词。句意：那顿饭真美味，尽管有点贵。though"尽管"，引导让步状语从句，该句使用了省略形式，补全为"though it was a little expensive"。注意 as 也可以表示"尽管"，但 as 作此意时必须使用倒装结构。

（2014 江西卷）35. It was the middle of the night _____ my father woke me up and told me to watch the football game.

A. that　　B. as　　C. which　　D. when

【考点】状语从句连词辨析

【答案】D。

【解析】本句中的 when 引导的是一个时间状语从句。句意：当我的父亲把我叫醒并让我看足球赛的时候，正是半夜。本句容易错选 A 项，认为是强调句型。实际上 the middle of the night 不能单独作时间状语，如果在 the middle of the night 前面加上 in，本题就可以选择 A 项了。故 D 正确。

（2014 山东卷）2. I don't really like the author，_____I have to admit his books are very exciting.

A. although　　B. unless　　C. until　　D. once

【考点】状语从句连词辨析。

【答案】A。

【解析】本题考察的是状语从句的连词表示。although 尽管；unless 除非，如果……不……；until 直到……才……；once 一旦；句意：尽管我承认这本书很精彩，但是我并不喜欢这本书的作者。根据句意可知上下文之间存在转折关系，四个选项中只有 A 项表示上下文的转折。故 A 正确。

【试题延伸】此题主要考查连词的辨析，选择连词主要是看前后句的关系，因果关系用表因果的连词，转折关系用转折连词，并列关系用并列连词，要求考生具有一定的句子分析能力和词义辨析能力。

【举一反三】I don't believe we've met before，________I must say you do look familiar.

A. therefore　　B. although　　C. since　　D. unless

【答案】B。

【解析】句意：尽管我的确觉得你看起来很熟悉，但我相信我们以前没见过面。根据句意可知只有 although 符合题意。

（2014 陕西卷）24. The young couple，who returned my lost wallet，left _______ I could ask for their names.

A. while　　B. before　　C. after　　D. since

【考点】状语从句连词辨析。

【答案】B。

【解析】本题考察的是状语从句连词辨析。while 当……时；然而；before 在……之前；after 在……之后；since 自从；before 有多种不同的翻译方法。句意：归还我丢掉的钱包的那对年轻的夫妻在我问他们名字之前就离开了。故 B 正确。

（2014 四川卷）8. I'll be out for some time. _____anything important happens，call me up immediately.

A. In case　　B. As if　　C. Even though　　D. Now that

【考点】考察状语从句连词辨析。

【答案】A。

【解析】本题四个连词都是状语从句中常考的连词。in case 万一，以防；as if 似乎，好像；even though 即使，尽管；now that 既然，由于（now 有时可以省略）。句意：我要出去一下。万一有什么重要事，请立刻打我电话。根据句义可知 A 正确。

（2014 天津卷）4._____you start eating in a healthier way，weight control will become much easier.

A. unless　　B. Although　　C. Before　　D. Once

【考点】状语从句连词辨析。

【答案】D。

【解析】unless 除非……；如果……不……；although 尽管；before 在……之前；once 一旦，曾经。句意：一旦你开始以一种健康的方式吃饭，控制体重就会变得更加容易。根据句义可知 once 表示“一旦”，引导条件状语从句。故 D 正确。

【举一反三】____they decide which college to go to，students should research the admission procedures.

A. As　　B. While　　C. Until　　D. Once

【答案】D。

【考点】本题考查连词。

【解析】此题重在句意的判断。句意：一旦学生们决定了去哪所大学读书，他们就得研究下办理入学的手续。as 当；因为……；while 作连词时强调一件事发生时另外一个动作正在进行；until 直到……；once 一旦。因此选 D。

（2014 浙江卷）15. Cathy had quit her job when her son was born ________ she could stay home and raise her family.

A. now that　　B. as if　　C. only if　　D. so that

【考点】考察状语从句连词辨析。

【答案】D。

【解析】now that 既然；as if 似乎，好像；only if 只要……；so that 以至于，结果是。句意：当 Cathy 的儿子出生时，Cathy 就辞职了以便她可以待在家里抚养孩子。根据句意可知本句中的 so that 引导的是一个目的状语从句，从句中常常会有其他动词如 can 等。根据句意可知 D 项正确。

【举一反三】One’s life has value_________one brings value to the life of others.

A. so that　　B. no matter how　　C. as long as　　D. except that

【考点】连词。

【答案】C。

【解析】as long as 意为“只要”；so that 意为“以便；因此”；no matter how 意为“不管怎样”；except that 意为“除了”。句意：只要一个人给别人的生活带来价值，那么他的生命就有价值。根据题意可知应选 C 项。

17 感叹词

17.1 感叹词的定义

感叹词是用来表示说话时喜怒哀乐等情感的词。它不是句子的语法成分，却和句意有关，后面的句子一般说明这种情绪的性质、原因。

17.2 常用感叹词的用法

（1）Oh 表示惊讶、指责、痛苦、称赞、懊恼等，可译为“哦”“哎呀”“噢”“啊”“呀”等。如：

“Oh，who was that?” Mr. Black asked. “哦，是谁？” 布莱克先生问。

“Oh，how blind you are!” he cried. “哎呀，你们真瞎！” 他大声道。

“Oh，oh!” he cried. “My stomach! My head! Oh! Oh!” “哎呀，哎哟！” 他大声道，“我的肚子！我的头！哎哟！哎哟！”

Oh，learned judge! Oh，wise young man! 噢，博学的法官！噢，聪明的年轻人！

（2）Ah 表示惊奇、高兴、讨厌、懊悔、藐视、威胁等，可译为“呀”“啊”等。如：

Ah，yes，Jeanne married a man with a lot of money. 啊，对啦，珍妮嫁给了一个很有钱的人。

“Ah，what splendid clothes!” thought the Emperor. “啊！多华丽的衣服啊！” 皇帝想。

Ah，how pitiful! 呀，多可惜！

Ah，here is the thing I am after. 哎呀，我找的东西在这儿呢。

（3）come 表示鼓励、不耐烦、引起注意、安慰等，可译为“喂”“好吧”“说吧”“得啦”等。如：

Oh，come，Mathilde. Surely you can tell an old friend. 嗨，说吧，玛蒂尔德，你对老朋友说说总是可以的吧。

Come，we must hurry. 喂，我们得赶紧啦！

Come，come，get him his change. Tod，get him his change. 好吧，好吧，快把钱找给他，托德，快把钱找给他。

Come，come! What were you really doing behind the bicycle sheds? 喂！喂！你还在车棚里磨蹭什么？

（4）dear 表示后悔、难过、怜悯、同情、吃惊、盼望等，可译为“哎呀”“天哪”等。如：

Dear me! What awful weather! 哎呀！多糟的天气！

Oh，dear，dear! Where can Harry be? 天哪，天哪，亨利会在哪儿？

Dear，dear! Where have I put my keys? 哎呀，我把钥匙放在哪啦？

“Dear me，” he said to himself，“Am I foolish or unfit for my office?” “哎呀！” 他心里嘀咕着，“我是愚蠢呢还是不称职？”

（5）well 表示快慰、让步、期望、讥讽、解释、责备、犹豫等，可译为“好吧”“不过”“好啦”“嗯”等。如：

Well，your father has found him in the garage. 好啦，你父亲在车库里找到他了。

Are you sure? Well，perhaps you are right. 你能肯定吗？嗯，也许你说得对。

Well，you must come to lunch tomorrow. 不过，你明天一定要来吃午饭。

I handed the note to him and said，“Oh，very well，I apologize.”我把那张票子递给了他，说道：“啊，好极了，我向你道歉。”

Well，why don’t you make a notice like theirs? 那么，你为什么不做个像他们那样的广告牌呢?

（6）now 表示警告、命令、请求、说明、安慰等，可译为“喂”“喏”“好了”等，有时也可不必译出。如：

Now，now，you two；don’t fight again. 喂，喂，你们俩，别再打了。

now，now，my boy! It’s all right! There’s no need to cry! 好了，好了，孩子，没事了，别哭了。

Now，let’s play basketball. 喏，咱们打篮球吧。

Now，lift me up，Doctor，lift me up. Where is he? 把我扶起来吧，医生，把我扶起来。他在哪里?

（7）there 表示得意、鼓励、同情、悲哀、不耐烦、失望、安慰、挑衅、引起注意等，可译为“哟”“瞧”“好啦”“得啦”等。如：

There! There! Never mind，you’ll soon feel better. 好啦，好啦，不要紧，你马上会好的。

There，there，you said too much. 得啦，得啦，你说得太多了。

There，I’ve filled it up again. 瞧，我又把它灌满了。

There，what’s that? 哟，那是什么?

（8）man 表示兴奋、轻蔑、不耐烦、引起注意、可译为“啊”“嗨”等。如：

“Use you knife，man!” ordered the British officer nearby. “嗨，用刀子割!”旁边的英国军官命令道。

Hurry up，man. 嗨，快点。

We have won the match，man! 啊，我们胜利了!

（9）boy 表示高兴、兴奋、惊奇等，可译为“嘿”“哇”“哼”“怎么样”等。如：

Boy，oh，boy! Our team’s going to win! How fantastic! 哇，怎么样! 我们队要赢了! 真是太好了!

Boy! This soup is good，Mama! 嘿，妈妈，这汤好得很。

Oh，boy! I just had a wonderful dream! 嘿，我刚才做了个好梦!

（10）此外还有 ha 表示惊奇、疑惑、鄙视；aha 表示得意、惊奇、嘲弄、满意；hey 表示喜悦、打招呼；sh 表示制止、引起注意；why 表示吃惊、抗议；nonsense 表示吃惊，愤怒等，常译为“胡说”；Good heavens 表示惊异、不高兴。如：

Ha! Proud as these nobles are，he is afraid to see me. 哈! 这些贵族尽管傲慢，他却害怕见到我。

The trousers are all right；now the waistcoat；aha，right again. 裤子合身；再请穿上背心试试；啊哈，也很合适。

Hey! I didn’t expect to meet you here. 嗨，我没想到会在这儿遇到你。

They were about to go down when Tum suddenly whispered. “Sh! Keep still. Don’t move!” 他们正想再下去，这时托姆突然低声道：“嘘，安静，别动!”

Why，what’s the harm? 咳，这有什么害处呢?

“Nonsense，” the king shouted. “My cook is the best cook in the world.”

“胡说!”那国王喊道，“我的厨师是世界上最好的厨师。”

“Good heavens! Listen to that silly child，” said the father. “天哪! 听听那傻孩子在瞎说些什么!”孩子的父亲说。

18　主谓一致

18.1　定　义

主谓一致是指一个句子的主语和谓语动词保持数的一致关系。句子的主语有单复数及人称的变化，其谓语动词需要根据主语的人称和数的不同而有所变化。即：谓语动词与其主语在人称和数上必须保持一致。

18.2　主谓一致的三条原则

1. 语法一致原则

语法一致原则是指谓语动词和它的主语在语法形式上必须取得一致，即主语是单数形式，谓语动词用单数形式；主语为复数形式，谓语动词也用复数形式，如：

Tom doesn't like swimming. 汤姆不喜欢游泳。

Jane and Mary look alike. 简和玛丽看起来很像。

2. 意义一致原则

意义一致原则是指谓语动词和主语的一致，由主语所表达的单数概念来决定，而不是根据主语的实际语法形式而定。有时主语的语法形式是单数，但所表达的概念是复数意义，这时动词应采用复数形式，如：

The football team are having breakfast now. 足球队员们在吃早饭。

The news was exciting. 这条消息令人振奋。

3. 就近原则

就近原则指谓语动词的人称和数要在形式上与最靠近它的那个名词或代词取得一致。当一个句子有两个主语而它们又是由 either...or…, neither…nor…, not only…but also…, or 等连接时，谓语动词与靠近它的主语保持一致，如：

Either your students or Mr Wang knows this. 你的学生们或王老师知道这件事。

Neither Jim nor his friends were interested in this film. 汤姆和他的朋友们都对这部电影不感兴趣。

18.3　主谓一致的运用

（1）如果 and 所连接的两个名词指同一人物、同一事物、同一概念时，谓语动词要用单数形式。例如：

Both bread and butter were sold out in that grocery. 那家食品杂货店出售面包和黄油。

Zhang Hua and Li Ming are good students.（指不同的人）张华和李明是好学生。

The writer and poet has come.（指同一个人）那位作家兼诗人来了。

特别提醒：英语中并列结构表示整体概念的有：

iron and steel 钢铁	law and order 治安
bread and butter 黄油面包	a watch and chain 一块带链的表
a knife and fork 刀叉	a coat and tie 配有领带的上衣
aim and end 目的	truth and honesty 真诚
bacon and eggs 咸肉和鸡蛋	

由 and 和 both…and…连接两个名词或代词作主语时，一般情况下谓语动词用复数形式。但是当两个主语为不可分的东西时，谓语动词用单数形式。例如：

Husband and wife forms a family. 夫妻组成家庭。

A watch and chain was found on the desk. 桌子上发现了有表链的表。

Bread and butter is nutritious. 奶油面包有营养。

War and peace is a constant theme in history. 战争与和平是历史上一个永恒的主题。

（2）由 every…and every…，each…and each…，many a…and many a…，no...and no…等构成复合主语时，谓语动词用单数形式。例如：

Each man and each woman is invited. 每个男人和女人都邀请了。

No boy and no girl is there now. 现在那里没有一个男孩和女孩。

Many a boy and many a girl has been invited. 很多男孩和女孩都被邀请了。

In China every boy and every girl has the right to receive education.

在中国每个男孩和女孩都有接受教育的权利。

（3）由 or，not only...but also...，not…but…，either...or，neither...nor，whether…or…连接主语时，谓语与靠近的主语一致，即就近一致的原则。例如：

He or his brothers were to blame. 应该怪他或他的弟兄们。

Either you or I am mad. 要么是你要么是我疯了。

Neither you nor he is right. 你和他都不对。

Not only the teacher but also his family were friendly to me.不仅老师，而且他的家人都对我很友好。

（4）当主语后跟有 with，along with，together with，besides，except，like，including，in addition to，as well as，rather than 等词时，谓语动词根据前面的主语变化。例如：

All but one were here just now. 除了一个，刚才其他所有的（人）都在这里。

A library with five thousand books is offered to the nation. 有着五千本书的一个图书馆供国家使用。

She as well as the other teachers is going to Nanjing. 她和其他老师都要去南京。

A farmer together with some workers is about to help us. 一个农民和几个工人即将来帮助我们。

（5）某些词结尾字母为 s，但并不是复数形式，如 physics，maths，economics（经济学），politics，news…等，它们作主语时用单数形式。但是 means，works（著作）单复同形。例如：

Physics is very important. 物理是很重要的。

Every means has been tried. 每一种方法都已经试过了。

Every possible means has been used to prevent air pollution，but the sky is still not clear.

（6）当一些由两部分构成的表示衣物或工具的名称作主语时，谓语用复数形式，如 trousers，shorts，shoes，glasses，goods，clothes，chopsticks，scissors。如果这些词由 a pair，piece，kind，type ，box+of 修饰，则用单数形式。例如：

My trousers are white and his clothes are black. 我的裤子是白色的，他的衣服是黑色的。

A pair of shoes is lying here. 一双鞋放在那里。

These kinds of glasses are popular.（kinds 为复数时，谓语动词用复数）这几种眼镜很流行。

（7）单复数同形的名词，如 sheep，deer 等作主语时，应根据主语的单复数意义确定谓语动词的形式。例如：

A deer is over there. 那儿有一只鹿。

Some deer are over there. 那儿有几只鹿。

（8）population 作主语时，通常看作单数，若 population 前有分数、百分数修饰时，则句子谓语通常用复数。例如：

The population in China is very large and 80% of the population live in rural areas.

中国人口很多，其中 80%的人住在农村。

（9）复数名词，如 people，police，public，crew，cattle 作主语时，谓语动词用复数形式。例如：

The police like to help people. 警察乐于助人。

People are talking about the news. 人们都在谈论那则新闻。

The cattle are grazing in the fields. 牛在地里吃草。

（10）集体名词，如 family，crowd，class，team，audience，committee，club，group，enemy，population，government 等，如把它们当作整体看，谓语动词用单数；如把它们当作若干个体来看，谓语动词用复数。例如：

Our family is very happy. 我们的家庭很幸福。

My family are all football fans. 我的家人都是足球迷。

（11）表示某一国人或某一民族、种族的人的名词作主语时，谓语动词用复数。例如：

The Chinese were a highly civilized people long before the Europeans. 中国人早于欧洲人很久以前就拥有高度灿烂的文明。

（12）表示距离、时间、长度、价值、金额、重量等的词，用复数形式时，谓语动词一般用单数。例如：

Two thousand dollars is a large sum. 两千美元是一大笔钱。

Two hours is enough. 两个小时就足够了。

但是算式中表示数字的主语一般视为单数，谓语动词多用单数形式。例如：

Five times six makes (make) thirty. 5 乘 6 等于 30。

Five plus/and five is/are ten. 5 加 5 等于 10。

Ten minus six leaves four. 10 减 6 等于 4。

Twenty-five divided by five equals five. 25 除以 5 等于 5。

（13）more than one+名词作主语时，谓语动词用单数；more than two，three...+名词作主语时，谓语动词用复数。例如：

More than one boy has been there. 不止一个孩子去过那里。

More than one student is going to be a lawyer in the future. 将来不止一个学生要当律师。

More than two boys have been there. 不止两个孩子去过那里。

（14）the+形容词，表示一类人，谓语动词用复数；若 the+形容词，表示一类物，谓语动词用单数。例如：

The rich are for the decision but the poor are against it. 有钱人支持这个决定，但是穷人反对它。

The green is hers. 这件绿色的东西是她的。

The beautiful lives forever. 美是永存的。

The best is yet to come. 最好的事情是会到来的。

（15）关系代词 who，that，which 等在定语从句中作主语时，其谓语动词的单复数应该与句中先行词一致。例如：

I，who am only a common worker，will retire in two years. 只是个普通工人的我两年后就要退休了。

但是 one of+复数名词+从句时，从句的谓语动词应用复数，而 the（only/very）one of+复数名词+从句时，从句的谓语动词应用单数。例如：

This is one of the most interesting questions that have been asked. 这是所问到的最有趣的问题之一。

Sarah is the only one of the girls who plays in the band.

He's the only one of the boys who was praised.

He's one of the boys who were praised.

（16）what，who，which 等作主语时，谓语动词视具体情况而定。例如：

Who is a doctor?

What is on the table?

Who are league members?

What are on the table?（what 表复数概念，故用复数动词）

Which is my seat?

Which are our seats?

（17）由 what 引导的主语从句，谓语动词一般用单数形式，但若从句谓语或从句后的表语是复数形式，则谓语动词用复数。例如：

What you said is quite to the point. 你说到点子上去了。

What we need are qualified teachers.我们需要的是合格的教师。

What I say and think are no business of his.(=What I say and what I think 为具有复数意义的并列结构）我所说的和想的不关他的事。

What I miss badly are those happy hours I spent together with them.

比较：

What she says and does do not agree.（“说”和“做”是两件事）

What she says and does does not matter much.（“说”和 “做”为一件事，总指其行为）

注意：由 and 连接两个 what 从句作主语时，谓语动词要用复数。例如：

What he said and what he did were different. 他言行不一致。

（18）whoever，whatever 和 whichever 作主语引导名词性从句时只能作单数，从句的谓语自然也采用单数形式。例如：

Whatever is left is taken away. 凡是剩下的都被拿走了。

Whichever of us fulfills his task first is asked to lend a helping hand to others. 我们之中无论谁先完成自己的任务，都被要求去帮助别人。

（19）which of+名词/代词（必须是复数）作主语时，谓语动词的形式要根据 which 短语表示的意义而定。例如：

Which of you has got a computer? 你们中的哪一位有电脑?

Which of the boys is/are Young Pioneers? 哪一个/哪几个男孩是少先队员?

但是 which of the two+名词复数作主语时，谓语动词要用单数形式。例如：

Which of those/the two boys is more diligent? 那些/那两个孩子中哪一个更勤奋?

（20）that 引导的名词性从句作主语时（that 不可省去），主句谓语动词用单数。例如：

That she is still alive is a consolation. 她还活着，这是一种安慰。

（21）when，where how，why 等引导的从句也可以作主语，这时谓语动词一般采用单数形式。例如：

When and where this took place is still unknown. 这事在何时何地发生至今还不清楚。

Why he shot her isn't important. 他为什么开枪打她并不重要。

（22）在 it 引导的强调句中，who 或 that 后的谓语动词在人称和数上应与前面被强调的名词或代词保持一致。例如：

It's I who am to blame. 该怪罪的是我。

It is you who are to blame. 该怪罪的是你。

It is the people who/that are really powerful. 真正强大是人民。

（23）as 作关系代词时，常和 such/the same/as/so 连用，as 的数可为单数，也可为复数，应与先行词

保持一致。as 引导的从句的谓语动词的数应与主句中的先行词保持一致。例如：

Don’t trust such men/a man as praise/praises you to your face.不要相信当面奉承你的人。

There are so many tools as are needed. 凡是需要的工具都有了。

（24）as 单独用作关系代词时，通常说明整个句子（用主句作先行词），作主语的 as 一般用作单数，谓语动词采用单数形式，此时 as 可以用 which 代替。例如：

He came very early this morning，as was usual. 他像往常一样，今天早晨照例来得很早。

As（不能用 which）was expected，he performed the task with success. 正如众人所望，他成功地完成了任务。

（25）由 there，here 引起的句子，主语又不止一个时，其谓语动词通常和邻近的那个词保持一致。例如：

There is a knife and some apples here.

Here are some envelopes and paper.

（26）在倒装句中，谓语动词与后面的主语一致。例如：

South of the city is a large stadium.

In front of the girl are some flowers.

On the wall hang two large portraits. 在墙上，挂着两幅巨大的肖像。

（27）分数或百分数+of+名词结构作主语时，谓语动词的单复数取决于其中的名词。例如：

Three-fourths of the surface of the earth is sea. 地球表面的四分之三是海洋。

Two-thirds of the youth support the plan. 三分之二的年轻人支持这个计划。

Tens of tons of waste goes into the air with the smoke every day. 每天得有数十吨的废物随着烟雾排放到空中。

（28）a/an+单数名词+and half 或 a+单数名词+or two 作主语时，谓语动词常用单数；one and a half+复数名词或 one or two+复数名词作主语时，谓语动词常用复数。例如：

A year and a half has passed. 已过了一年半了。

One and a half tons of rice are sold. 一吨半的大米被卖完了。

One or two days are enough for this work. 干这活一两天就够了。

A day or two is enough for this work. 干这活一两天就够了。

（29）代词 none 和 neither 作主语时，有时作单数看待，有时作复数看待，主要根据说话人的意思来决定。但是代表不可数名词时，只作单数。neither 作形容词时与单数名词连用，谓语动词用单数形式。例如：

None of them has/have arrived yet. 他们一个人也没有到。

None of this money is mine. 这钱没有一点是我的。

Neither of the students know/knows the answer. 这两个学生都不知道答案。

Neither statement was true. 这两个陈述都不真实。

有些代词尽管意义上是复数，但谓语动词要用单数形式，这类代词有：either，neither，each，another，somebody，someone，something，anything，anyone，everyone，everything，everybody，no one，nothing，nobody 等，如：

Neither likes the friends of the other. 两人都不喜欢对方的朋友。

Everything around us is matter. 我们周围所有的东西都是物质。

注意：

① 在 neither of 与 either of 的结构中，谓语动词可用单数形式也可用复数形式，如：

Neither of them was/were in good health，but both worked hard. 他们俩身体都不好，但工作却都很努力。

② each 用于单数名词前，谓语动词用单数形式，each 用于复数主语后，谓语动词用复数形式。each of，each one of 后接复数名词或代词，但谓语动词常用单数形式。如：

Each（one）of the houses was different. 每座房子都不同。

Each student has been given their own e-mail address. 每个学生都得到了一个自己的电子邮件地址。

They each have their own car. 他们每个人都有自己的车。

③ none 作主语时，谓语动词既可用单数也可用复数，这要取决于说话人的看法。如：

None of us seem to have thought of it. 似乎我们全都没有想到这一点。

None of us has got a camera.（None = Not a single one）我们都没有照相机。

④ both，（a）few，many，several 作主语时，谓语动词通常用复数形式。如：

Both（of）the instruments are not precise ones. 这两种仪器并不都是精密仪器。

⑤ all 作主语表示人时，谓语动词用复数；表示物时，谓语动词用单数。如：

All is well that ends well. 结果好一切都好。

All are eager to reach an agreement. 大家都急于达成一项协议。

⑥ either…or…；neither…or；not only；but also；or 连接两个主语时谓语通常和最邻近的主语保持一致，如：

Not only Mary but also her parents have agreed to go there. 不但玛丽而且她的父母都同意去那儿。

He or they are to blame? 他还是他们要受惩罚？

（30）the number of+复数名词的中心词是短语中的名词，故谓语动词用复数形式；而 the number of+名词的中心词是 number，故谓语动词用单数形式。例如：

A number of students were absent yesterday. 许多学生昨天缺席。

The number of pages in this book is nine hundred. 本书的页数是 900。

（31）由 every，any，some，no 构成的复合词 everyone，everybody，everything，anyone，anybody，anything，someone，somebody，something，no one，nobody，nothing 以及 each，every，either，little，much 等+名词 或代词作主语时，谓语动词用单数形式。例如：

Much has been done to solve the traffic problem. 已经为解决交通问题做了许多工作。

When he came back，nothing was the same as before. 他回来时，一切都和以前不一样了。

Everyone in the class was surprised at the news.

Listen，someone is knocking at the door.

（32）all（of），half（of），some（of）以及 the rest（of），most（of），the remainder，plenty of，a part of，a lot of，lots of 等+名词作主语时，谓语动词的单复数取决于它们所修饰的名词。例如：

Half of the food has been sent to that area. 一半的食物被送往那个地方。

Half of the students have seen the film. 一半的学生看过这个电影。

Most of his spare time was spent in reading. 这食物中有一半不能吃。

Most of the houses in this town are new. 这座城市的大多数房子是新的。

The rest of the money was locked in the safe. 剩余的钱锁在保险箱的。

The rest of the peasants were still poor. 其余的农民还很穷。

（33）this kind of+复数名词作主语时，谓语动词用单数；复数名词+of this kind 作主语时，谓语动词用复数。例如：

This kind of apples is imported from America. 这种苹果是从美国进口的。

Plants of this kind are growing in tropical areas. 这种植物生长在热带地区。

（34）the majority of+复数名词，表示“大多数……”，谓语动词用复数；the majority of+集体名词，谓语动词用单数或复数均可。例如：

The majority of doctors believe that smoking is harmful to health. 大多数医生都认为吸烟有害健康。

The majority of the population in the country lives/live in cities. 这个国家的大部分人口都住在城市里。

The majority of the committee has/have arrived. 委员会的大部分成员都到达了。

但是 the majority 单独作主语时，谓语动词用单复数皆可。例如：

The majority is/are in favor of the plan. 大多数人赞成这项计划。

The majority is/are doing its/their best. 大多数人都尽全力。

（35）a good（great，large，small）amount of+不可数名词作主语时，谓语动词用单数；large/small amounts of+不可数名词作主语时，谓语动词用复数；the amount of+不可数名词作主语时，谓语动词用单数。例如：

Only a small amount of water was left.

Large amounts of money were spent on the project.（不用 was）

The amount of work astonishes her.

（36）a quantity of，（large）quantities of+名词作主语时，其谓语动词应根据 quantity 的单复数形式而变化。例如：

A quantity of baskets was on sale. 有一批篮子待售。

Quantities of food were on the table. 桌上有大量食物。

Large quantities of water were wasted. 大量的水被浪费掉了。

（37）a variety of 作 a number of different things 解时，后面要接非人称的复数名词，此短语用作主语时应作复数对待；而当 a variety of 指 a kind of 时，其复数形式为 varieties of ，后面接复数名词，动词用复数形式；the variety of+名词作主语时，其谓语动词用单数。例如：

A good variety of flowers were on show there. 那里展出了各式各样的花。

There are a variety of apples in the shop. 商店里有各种各样的苹果。

There is a variety of fruit in the shop. 商店里有各种各样的水果。

A variety of methods are used by the teacher to present new words. 老师采用了各种各样的教学方法教授新单词。

The variety of goods on sale in that shop is surprising. 那个商店货物的品种多得惊人。

There are numerous varieties of fish in the lake. 这个湖里有无数种类的鱼。

Varieties of roses are grown here. 这儿种植各种玫瑰花。

（38）动名词、不定式、从句作主语时，谓语动词一般要用单数。例如：

To see is to believe. 眼见为实。

Reading books is a good way to become educated. 读书是变得有教养的一种好方法。

注意：Reading and fishing are his hobbies. 看书和钓鱼是他的兴趣爱好。

When he will come is not known. 他会什么时候来还不知道。

When and where to go for the on-salary holiday has not been decided yet. 何时何地去带薪休假还没有定。

（39）such，the same 起指示代词作用时，应根据其所指的内容来决定单复数。如：

Such is our plan. 我们的计划就是这样。

Such are his words. 他的话就是这样。

（40）若复数是书名、片名、剧名、格言、报名、国名、机构等形式，其谓语动词通常用单数形式。例如：

The United States celebrates the birth of its independence every Fourth of July. 每年的 7 月 4 日，美国都庆祝它的独立日。

The United Nations plays an important role in the international affairs. 联合国在国际事务中起着重要作用。

Great Expectations was written by Dickens in 1860.《远大前程》是狄更斯于 1860 年写的。

（41）以-s 结尾的山脉、群岛、海峡、湖泊等作主语时，谓语动词常用复数形式。例如：

The Straits of Gibraltar haven't lost their strategical importance. 直布罗陀海峡尚未失去其战略上的重要地位。

The Himalayas extend along the border of India and China. 喜马拉雅山脉一直延伸到中印边界上。

The Andes are in South America，and the Alps are in Europe. 安第斯山在南美洲，阿尔卑斯山在欧洲。

注意：在表示瀑布的名词之后，谓语动词用单复数均可。例如：

Niagara Falls is a stupendous sight. 尼亚加拉瀑布是一种壮观的景象。
Niagara Falls are not as high as Victoria Falls. 尼亚加拉瀑布没有维多利亚瀑布高。

18.4 技巧点拨

中考主谓一致方面的考题主要考查知识的记忆情况。考查主谓一致的常见题型有单项选择、完形填空、翻译句子、单句改错、短文改错、同义句转换、时态填空等。做这类题时，必须找出句子的真正主语，然后根据记忆的知识做出判断。同时，要遵循三个原则：语法一致、意义一致和就近原则。

【中考考例剖析】

1. Each of the students ______ a dictionary.
   A. have　　B. is　　C. are　　D. has
2. How time flies! Ten years ________ passed.
   A. have　　B. has　　C. is　　D. are
3. Not only his parents but also his brother ______to the Summer Palace. They haven't been back.
   A. have been　　B. have gone　　C. has been　　D. has gone
4. Look! There _______ playing with the tourists on Dahe Square.
   A. are a number of deer　　B. are a number of deers
   C. is a number of deer　　D. is a number of deers
5. The Smiths ______ sending e-mails _______ letters because it is faster.
   A. prefer；to writing　　B. prefer；to write　　C. prefers；to writing　　D. prefers；to write
6. Everyone except Bill and Jim ______ there when the meeting began.
   A. was　　B. is　　C. are　　D. were
7. Either Jane or Steven _____ watching TV now.
   A. were　　B. is　　C. are　　D. was
8. Since 2000，Nanchang has become a new city. Everything______.
   A. are changed　　B. was changed　　C. has changed　　D. had changed

【试题分析】

1.【解析】此题意思是“每个学生都有一本字典”，所以先排除 B、C。句中 of students 作 each 的定语，真正的主语是 each，故又排除 A。答案：D。

2.【解析】Ten years 通常被看作是一个时间整体，谓语动词用单数形式。答案：B。

3.【解析】由 not only…but also 连接两个并列主语时，其谓语动词根据就近原则同相邻的主语保持一致，谓语动词应用单数形式。根据下半句“因为他们还都没有回来”可知，只能用 has gone 而不用 has been。答案：D。

4.【解析】句子的主语是 a number of deer。当 a number of+名词作主语时，谓语用复数。因此首先排除 C、D，而 deer 单复数相同，所以 B 也不正确。答案：A。

5.【解析】姓氏名词用复数且前面加上定冠词时，表示一家人或一对夫妇。作主语时，谓语用复数。再如：The Zhous live upstairs. 姓周的那家住在楼上。因此此题答案应在 A、B 中选择，而短语 prefer…to…中的 to 是一个介词，故又排除 B。答案：A。

6.【解析】根据主、从复合句时态一般要一致的原则，本题首先可排除 B、C，而主句主语含有 except 等连接的介词短语时，其谓语的单复数取决于 except 前边的名词的单复数，所以 D 也不正确。答案：A。

7.【解析】根据就近原则，应排除 A、C，而题中单词 now 表明现在，所以 D 也不正确。答案：B。

8.【解析】根据“不定代词作主语，谓语往往用单数”这一点，首先可以排除 A。又由于 change 属于不及物动词，没有被动语态，所以 B 也不正确。由于上句中 since 引出的一个含具体过去时间的句子，主句用现在完成时，根据句意，下句也应该用现在完成时。答案：C。

【主谓一致练习题】

1. The old ____well looked after by the government in China.
   A. is　　B. are　　C. has been　　D. was
2. The secretary and manager ____very busy now.
   A. is　　B. are　　C. was　　D. were
3. Both the secretary and the manager _____agreed to attend the meeting.
   A. has　　B. have　　C. are　　D. was
4. Tom as well as two of his classmates _____invited to the party.
   A. was　　B. were　　C. have been　　D. had been
5. Either you or I _____going to the teachers' office after class.
   A. am　　B. is　　C. are　　D. will
6. Most of his spare time ____spent in reading.
   A. are　　B. were　　C. was　　D. have been
7. This is one of the best novels that ____appeared this year.
   A. have been　　B. has　　C. had been　　D. have
8. Ten thousand dollars _____quite a large sum.
   A. are　　B. is　　C. were　　D. have
9. About 20 percent of the work ____done yesterday.
   A. are　　B. is　　C. were　　D. was
10. Mr Smith，together with his children，____arrived.
    A. are　　B. has　　C. is　　D. have
11. It ____I who _____leaving for London.
    A. is; is　　B. am; is　　C. is; am　　D. am; am
12. Not only Tom but also his wife ____fond of watching television.
    A. are　　B. were　　C. be　　D. is
13. When and where to build the new factory ____yet.
    A. is not decided　　B. are not decided　　C. has not decided　　D. have not decided
14. Although the first part of the book is easy，the rest ______.
    A. are difficult　　B. has proved difficult
    C. is supposed difficult　　D. have been found difficult
15. That they were wrong in these matters _____ now clear to us all.
    A. is　　B. was　　C. are　　D. were
16. Half of his goods ____ stolen the other day.
    A. are　　B. were　　C. is　　D. was
17. Mathematics ____the language of science.

A. are B. are going to be C. is D. is to be

18. Each of the students _____ a Chinese-English dictionary.

A. have B. has C. there is D. there are

19. They each ____ a beautiful handkerchief.

A. have B. has C. there is D. there are

20. Between the two rows of trees _____the teaching building.

A. stand B. stands C. standing D. are

21. This pair of shoes ____made in Nanjing.

A. is B. are C. have been D. had been

22. No one except my parents _____anything about it.

A. know B. knows C. is knowing D. have known

23. A number of students _____from the south.

A. are B. is C. have D. has

24. The number of students from the north ____small.

A. are B. is C. have D. has

25. Writing stories and articles _____what I enjoy most.

A. is B. are C. was D. were

26. His *Selected Poems* _____first published in 1965.

A. were B. was C. has been D. are

27. Miss Smith is a friend of ______.

A. Mary's mother's B. Mary's mother C. Mother's of Mary D. Mary mother's

28. A good deal of money ____spent on books.

A. have B. has C. have been D. has been

29. On the wall _____ two large portraits.

A. hangs B. hang C. hanged D. hanging

30. _____turn green in spring.

A. Leaf B. Leafs C. Leave D. Leaves

31. Father went to his doctor for ____about his heart trouble.

A. an advice B. advice C. advices D. the advices

32. All but one ____here just now.

A. is B. was C. has been D. were

33. The number of people invited _____fifty, but a number of them _____absent for different reasons.

A. were; was B. was; was C. was; were D. were; were

34. The air in big cities _____very dirty by factories.

A. are often made B. is often made C. have often made D. has often made

35. Nobody ____to smoke in the cinema.

A. allows B. allow C. is allowed D. are allowed

36. The Chinese people _____hard-working and brave.

A. are B. is C. has been D. are being

37. ____can be done _____been done.

A. All; have B. All that; have C. All; has D. All that; has

38. John has two brothers, but either ____out of work now.

A. are B. is C. has D. have

39. The police ____the murderer everywhere when he suddenly appeared in a theatre.

A. is searching for　B. were searching for　C. are searching for　D. were searching

40. Apples of this kind ____.

A. tastes good　B. tastes well　C. taste good　D. taste well

41. Your trousers ____dirty，you must have _____washed.

A. is；it　B. are；it　C. are；them　D. is；them

42. Where ____rubbish，there are flies.

A. there are　B. there is　C. is　D. there has

43. The Olympic Games ____held every ____years.

A. is；four　B. are；four　C. is；five　D. are；five

44. Many a man _____ come to help us.

A. have　B. has　C. is　D. are

45. He is the only one of the students who _____elected.

A. are　B. have　C. has　D. is

46. Three-fourths of the homework _____today.

A. has finished　B. has been finished　C. have finished　D. have been finished

47. Those who ____ in ____compositions，please hand them in this afternoon.

A. hasn't handed；his　B. haven't handed；their

C. has handed；their　D. have handed；his

48. Jane is one of the best students in her class who _____by their teacher.

A. are praised　B. is praised　C. praised　D. praising

49. The whole class _____the teacher attentively.

A. are listening to　B. is listening to　C. are listening　D. is listening

50. The United States of America _____one of the most developed countries in the world.

A. is　B. are　C. was　D. were

【参考答案】

1—5　BABAA　6—10　CDBDB　11—15　CDABA　16—20　BCBAB

21—25　ABABA　26—30　BADBD　31—35　BDCBC　36—40　ADBBC

41—45　CBBBD　46—50　BBAAA

【高考试题解析：主谓一致】

（2011 湖南卷）26. One third of the country ______covered with trees and the majority of the citizens_______black people.

A. is；are　B. is；is　C. are；are　D. are；is

【答案】A。

【考点】考查主谓一致。

【解析】整个国家为整体，三分之一的部分当然也应用单数；而 the majority of citizens 主要指人，是可数名词，此时的谓语动词用复数，表示“大多数，大部分”。

（2011 安徽卷）27. The factory used 65 percent of the raw materials，the rest of which_____ saved for other purposes.

A. is　B. are　C. was　D. were

【答案】D。

【考点】考查主谓一致和时态。

【解析】定语从句中先行词是 the raw materials，故定语从句应与先行词数的一致，用复数，上文时态为过去式，故选 D。句意为：工厂用了这种原材料的 65%，剩余部分节省出来另作他用。

（2010 湖南）Listening to loud music at rock concerts ______ caused hearing loss in some teenagers.

A. is　　B. are　　C. has　　D. have

【答案】C。

【考点】考查主谓一致。

【解析】根据动名词短语作主语，句子的谓语动词用单数形式，可以排除 B、D 两项，根据主语与 caused 的主动关系，排除 A 项。

（2010 四川）Such poets as Shakespeare_____widely read，of whose works，however，some____difficult to understand.

A. are；are　　B. is；is　　C. are；is　　D. is；are

【答案】A。

【考点】考查主谓一致。

【解析】主句中的主语应为 poets，谓语动词用复数，其后的非限制性定语从句的主语应为 some of whose works，谓语动词也应是复数。故选 A。

（2010 全国Ⅱ）Barbara is easy to recognize as she's the only one of the women who ____ evening dress.

A. wear　　B. wears　　C. has worn　　D. have worn

【答案】B。

【考点】考查主谓一致和时态。

【解析】首先 the only one of...为先行词时，定语从句修饰的是 one，即 one 是主语，而非后面的复数 women，根据主谓一致的原则，谓语动词应该用复数，排除 A、D。另外，从"is"可以看出句子是要表示一种习惯，因此要用一般现在时，排除 C，故选 A。

（2009 辽宁）Peter's jacket looked just the same as Jack's，but it cost__________his.

A. as much twice　　B. twice as much as　　C. much as twice as　　D. as twice much as

【答案】B。

【考点】考查 as...as 同级比较前的修饰语的位置。

【解析】twice 应该放在第一个 as 之前，选 B 符合。

（2009 四川）The teacher together with the students _______ discussing *Reading Skills* that ______ newly published in America.

A. are；were　　B. is；were　　C. are；was　　D. is；was

【答案】B。

【考点】考查主谓一致。

【解析】A together with B 作主语时谓语动词与 A 的单复数保持一致；第二空为定语从句 that 指代 *Reading Skills*，由于 *Reading Skills* 是书名所以谓语动词用单数。

（2009 湖南）Either you or one of your students ______ to attend the meeting that is due tomorrow.

A. are　　B. is　　C. have　　D. be

【答案】B。

【考点】考查主谓一致的用法。

【解析】either...or...连接两个主语，按就近原则来确定谓语的单复数。One of your students 谓语应用单数形式。

（2008 陕西）—Did you go to the show last night? —Yeah. Every boy and girl in the area______invited.

A. were　　B. have been　　C. has been　　D. was

【答案】D。

【考点】考查主谓一致。

【解析】主语是 every boy and girl，表示单数概念，故谓语动词用单数，且询问昨晚的情况有明确的过去时间，所以应选择 was。

（2007 陕西）As a result of the serious flood，two-thirds of the buildings in the area______________.

A. need repairing　　B. needs to repair　　C. needs repairing　　D. need to repair

【答案】A。

【考点】考查主谓一致和非谓语动词。

【解析】分数、百分数修饰名词，谓语动词的单复数取决于名词，此处 two-thirds 修饰 buildings，故谓语动词取决于名词复数 buildings ，排除 B、C 两项，need doing=need to be done 意为 “需要被做”。

（2007 上海）A survey of the opinions of experts_____that three hours of outdoor exercise a week_____good for one’s health.

A. show；are　　B. shows；is　　C. show；is　　D. shows；are

【答案】B。

【考点】考查主谓一致。

【解析】由 a survey 可知第一个空用 shows，首先排除 A、C 两项；第二个空前的时间 three hours of outdoor exercise a week 表示抽象概念，看作单数，故其谓语动词用单数形式。

（2007 浙江）Professor James will give us a lecture on the Western culture, but when and where _____ yet.

A. hasn’t been decided　　B. haven’t decided　　C. isn’t being decided　　D. aren’t decided

【答案】A。

【考点】考查主谓一致及动词的时态。

【解析】根据句意，此处应用被动语态，不用主动语态，故排除 B；又因为 when and where 表示单数意义，故排除 D；再根据句末的 yet 可知，最好用现在完成时，故选 A 最佳。

19 名词性从句

在句子中起名词作用的句子叫名词性从句。名词性从句的功能相当于名词词组，它在复合句中能担任主语、宾语、表语、同位语、介词宾语等，因此根据它在句中不同的语法功能，名词性从句又可分别称为主语从句、宾语从句、表语从句、同位语从句、介词宾语从句等。

19.1 主语从句

19.1.1 主语从句的分类

引导主语从句的连接词主要有三类：连接词 that，whether；连接代词 what，who，whose，whatever，whichever，whoever 等；连接副词 when，where，why，how 等。

1. 连接词 that，whether 引导

That the college will take in more new students this year is true. 今年这所大学将招收更多新生是真的。
Whether he can finish his task on time is of great importance. 他是否能按时完成任务非常重要。

2. 连接代词引导

What we can’t get seems better than what we already have. 我们得不到的东西似乎比我们拥有的东西好。
who the letter was from is still unknown. 这封信是谁寄出的还不清楚。
Whichever of you gets here first will get the prize. 你们当中第一个到达这里的人将获得奖项。

3. 连接副词引导

How acupuncture reduces and relieves pain is unclear. 针灸是如何减轻和解除疼痛的还不清楚。
Why dinosaurs suddenly disappeared still remains a mystery. 恐龙为什么突然消失了还是个谜。
注意：
（1）if 不能引导主语从句。
（2）主语从句可以直接放在句首；也可用 it 作形式主语，而将从句放在句末。常见的 it 替代主语从句的句式主要有以下几种：
① It+系动词+形容词+that 从句。如：
It is quite clear that the whole project is doomed to failure. 很清楚，整个计划注定要失败。
② It+系动词+名词+that 从句。如：
It is our hope that the two sides will work towards peace. 我们的希望是双方能朝着和平的方向发展。
③ It+be+动词的 ed 形式+that 从句。如：
It is announced that the plan has been successfully carried out. 据宣布计划已经顺利实施。
此外，还有以下常用结构：

It turned out that…结果是……
It has been found that…已经发现……
It has been proved that…已经证明……
It happened/occurred that…恰好……
It is well-known that…据说……
It is said/reported that…据说/据报道……
It must be pointed out that…必须指出……
It doesn't matter whether…是否……都没关系
It makes no difference whether…是否……毫无区别

19.2 宾语从句

19.2.1 宾语从句概述

在句中起宾语作用的从句叫宾语从句。根据位置，宾语从句可分为动词的宾语从句、介词的宾语从句和形容词的宾语从句。

19.2.2 宾语从句的分类和用法

引导宾语从句的连接词主要有三类：连接词 that，whether，if 等；连接代词 what，who，whose，whatever，whichever，whoever 等；连接副词 when，where，why，how 等。

（1）作动词的宾语。如：

He doesn't know where the post office is. 他不知道邮局在哪里。

在动词 suggest，order，demand，require 等表示建议、命令、要求的宾语从句中要用虚拟语气。宾语从句的谓语用 should+动词原形，should 可省略。如：

I suggested that you（should）start right now. 我建议你马上开始。

如果宾语从句后有宾语补足语，要用形式宾语 it，而将从句放到补足语后面。如：

I thought it strange that he didn't pass the exam. 我觉得他没通过考试很奇怪。

在 think，believe，suppose，expect 等动词后的宾语从句中，如果从句谓语是否定含义，则不用否定形式，而将主句谓语动词 think 等变为否定形式。如：

I don't think you are right. 我想你是不对的。

He doesn't know where the post office is. 他不知道邮局在哪里。

在 think，believe，imagine，suppose，guess，hope 等动词以及 I'm afraid 等后，可用 so 代替一个肯定的宾语从句，还可用 not 代替一个否定的宾语从句。如：

Do you believe it will clear up? 你认为天会放晴吗?

I believe so.（I don't believe so. /I believe not.）我认为会。（我认为不会。）

（2）作介词的宾语。如：

Did she say anything about how we should do the work? 她有没有说我们应当怎样做这个工作?

that 引导的宾语从句只有在 except，in，but，besides 等少数介词后偶尔可能用到。如：

Your article is good except that it is too long. 除了太长外，你的论文很好。

有时可在介词和其宾语从句的中间加形式宾语 it。如：

I'll see to it that everything is ready. 我将负责把一切准备好。

（3）作形容词的宾语。如：

I'm afraid that I have made a mistake. 我恐怕犯了一个错误。

19.2.3 宾语从句的连接词

（1）连词 that 只起连接作用，在从句中不作句子成分，也无词汇意义，在口语中常被省略。如：

He knew（that）he should work hard.

（2）连词 if、whether 起连接作用，在从句中不作句子成分，作"是否"解，在口语中多用 if。如：

Tom don't know if/whether his grandpa liked the present.

He asked me whether or not I was coming.

whether/if 都意为"是否"。一般情况下，if 和 whether 可以互换，但以下三种情况只能用 whether。

① 在不定式前。如：

Whether to go there or not hasn't been decided.

② 在介词前。如：

It depends on（依靠）whether it is going to rain.

③ 与 or not 连用。如：

They are talking about whether to go there or not.

（3）连接代词 who，whom，whose，what，which，连接副词 when，where，why，how，它们起连接作用，作句子成分，各有自己的意义。如：

The teacher asked the new students *which* class he was in.

I wonder *where* he got so much money.

注意：由连接代词、副词引导的宾语从句可以和"疑问词+不定式"结构转化。如：

I don't know how I should do with the presents. →I don't know how to do with the presents.

19.2.4 宾语从句的语序

在宾语从句中要用陈述句语序。如：

He asked me when we could set out the next day. 他问我第二天什么时候可以出发。

Did you find out where she lost her car? 你查出她在哪里丢的车了吗?

19.2.5 宾语从句的时态

（1）当主句的谓语动词是一般现在时时，其宾语从句的时态可以是任何适当的时态。如：

She says（that）she works from Monday to Friday. 她说她周一至周五上班。（从句是一般现在时）

She says（that）she will leave a message on his desk. 她说她要在他桌子上留个便条。（从句是一般将来时）

She says（that）she has never been to Mount Emei. 她说她从来没有去过峨眉山。（从句是现在完成时）

（2）当主句的谓语动词是一般过去式时，其宾语从句的时态一般要用适当的过去时态。如：

He said there were no classes yesterday afternoon. 他说昨天下午没有课。（从句是一般过去时）

He said that he was going to take care of the baby. 他说他会去照看这个婴儿。（从句是过去将来时）

He said that they were having a meeting at that time. 他说他们那时正在开会。（从句是过去进行时）

（3）当宾语从句是表达客观真理和规律的句子时，其时态仍旧用一般现在时。如：

The teacher told us that nothing is difficult if we put our hearts into it. 老师告诉我们世上无难事，只怕有心人。

He said that light travels much faster than sound. 他说光比声音传播得快。

19.2.6 宾语从句注意事项

1. 注意引导词的正确选用

用于引导宾语从句的词语有：

（1）连词 that，whether，if 等，其中 that 没有任何意义，也不能作句子的任何成分，在非正式的场合常被省略；whether，if 虽然不作句子的任何成分，但是它们有一定的意义，不能省略。

（2）连接代词 what，which，who，whatever，whichever，whoever，whom，whose 等，它们均有自己独立的意思，且在宾语从句中充当一定的句子成分（主语、宾语、定语等）。

（3）连接副词 when，where，how，whenever，wherever，however 等。

（4）短语连接词 how much，how many，how long，how often，how soon，how far 等。

2. 注意宾语从句的语序

宾语从句的语序是陈述语序，即“连接词+主语+谓语+其他成分”。特别强调：宾语从句的主语和谓语的语序是陈述语序，而不是疑问句的倒装结构。如：

Can you tell me who（m）do we have to see?（错误）

Can you tell me who（m）we have to see?（正确）

The teacher asked the students <u>what they were doing.</u>（思考：what 在从句中的成分）

陈述句变为宾语从句时，要注意人称和时态的变化，语序不变。如：

She said，“I will leave a message on the desk.”→She said she would leave a message on the desk.

一般疑问句和特殊疑问句变为宾语从句时，也要注意人称和时态的变化，后面接陈述语序。如：

“Where are the tickets?” I asked him. →I asked him where the tickets are.

3. 注意宾语从句的时态

当主句为一般现在时的时候，从句可根据具体情况选用各种合适的时态；当主句为一般过去时的时候，从句必须要用相应的过去时。如：

Do you know why he was late this morning? 你知道他今天早晨迟到的原因吗？

I don’t know when he will leave for Shanghai. 我不知道他将什么时候去上海。

He said that he didn't see the film last night. 他说他昨晚没看那场电影。

但是，当宾语的内容表示一种永恒的客观事实或真理时，宾语从句须用一般现在时。如：

The teacher told us that the sun rises in the east and sets down in the west. 老师告诉我们说，太阳从东方升起，从西方落下。

Our fathers said that practice makes perfect. 我们的父辈们说，熟能生巧。

4. 注意宾语从句的语气

宾语从句一般用陈述语气，但是，当主句的谓语动词为 advise，insist（坚决主张），suggest（建议），require，request，order，ask（要求）等表示请求、命令、要求、主张意义的动词时，从句谓语要用虚拟语气，即用“should+动词原形”（should 往往可以省略）。如：

She insisted that he（should）go there with her. 她坚决要求他跟她一起去那儿。

The doctor suggested that she（should）take more exercise every day. 医生建议她每天多进行锻炼。

但当 insist 表示“坚持说”，suggest 表示“暗示、表明”，ask 表示“问”时，宾语从句用陈述语气。如：

He insisted that he didn't steal her watch. 他坚持说他没有偷她的手表。

His smile suggested that he did well in the interview. 他的微笑表明他面试得很好。

另外，动词 wish 后的宾语从句也要用虚拟语气，即从句谓语用过去时（针对现在情况而言）、过去完成时（针对过去情况而言）或用“would/should/could/might+动词原形”（针对将来情况而言）。如：

I wish I were a bird. 我希望我是一只鸟。

I wish we lived on the moon now. 我希望我们现在住在月亮上。

5. 注意介词后的宾语从句

一般说来，宾语从句可用于及物动词或介词之后，但是 that 所引导的宾语从句主要用于及物动词之后，一般不用于介词之后。如：

他应该勇于正视自己不再年轻这一事实。

误：He must face up to that he is no longer young.

正：He must face up to the fact that he is no longer young.

但是，介词 except 是例外，它的后面可接 that 从句作宾语。如：

I know nothing about him except that he is living in Beijing. 我只知道他一直住在北京。

6. 注意正确使用形式宾语

当宾语从句后接有宾语的补足语时，则要用 it 做形式宾语置于宾语从句处，而将真正的宾语从句移到宾语补足语的后面。如：

Do you think it possible that he will finish his task in ten minutes? 你认为他在 10 分钟内完成任务可能吗?

7. 注意否定转移

当动词 think，believe，suppose，expect，imagine 后接一个表示否定意义的宾语从句时，其否定通常转移到主句。如：

I don't think that it is worth doing. 我认为这不值得做。

I don't believe that he will help us. 我相信他不会来。

8. 注意宾语从句和状语从句的区分

句 1：I will go out tomorrow if it is fine.

句 2：I don’t know if the train has arrived.

句 1 中 if 引导的是状语从句。这个从句表示“条件”，修饰主句。整个句子的意思是如果明天天气好，我就出去。句 2 中 if 引导的是宾语从句，充当谓语动词 don’t know 的宾语。整个句子的意思是我不知道火车是否已经到达。

判断方法：

（1）从整个句式看。状语从句一般可以放在主句的前面或后面（个别除外），宾语从句只能放在主句谓语动词之后。

（2）从引导词看。if 充当宾语从句的连接词时，相当于 whether，词义为“是否”，充当状语从句的连接词时，词义为“如果”。when 充当宾语从句的连接词时，意为“什么时候”，充当状语从句的连接词时，意为“当……的时候”。

（3）从时态看。if 和 when 作连接词时，引导宾语从句要注意：从句的谓语动词的时态应根据主句的时态做相应的变化。if 和 when 充当从属连词时，引导条件和时间状语从句，若主句的谓语动词用一般将来时，则从句的时态应用一般现在时表示将来。

【实战演练】

例 1：I don’t know ________ he will come or not.

A. how　　B. whether　　C. weather　　D. when

答案：B。

提示：宾语从句中出现了 or not，故这里只能用 whether。

例 2：Can you tell me ________they will come back?

A. where　　B. when　　C. which　　D. who

答案：B。

提示：根据题意可知是在问他们何时回来，所以要用 when。

例 3：Have you seen the doctor? He asked me.（将两句合并成一句）

答案：He asked me if/whether I had seen a doctor.

提示：一般疑问句的连接词应为 if/whether。

例 4：How can we get to the science museum? Could you tell us?（将两句合并成一句）

答案：Could you tell me how we can get to the science museum?

提示：特殊疑问句，连接词就是它本身的特殊疑问词 how，将情态动词 can 放在主语 me 之后，时态取决于主句。主句 could you tell me 是委婉语气，是一般现在时，所以从句是什么时态就用什么时态。

【中考宾语从句常见错误例析】

宾语从句是中考的考点，也是英语学习中的难点。现将宾语从句的常见错误归纳、分析如下：

一、连接词的错误例子。

例 1：He asked ___ there was a bookshop in the street?

A. that　　B. what　　C. how　　D. whether

错解：A。剖析：ask 表明了宾语部分含有询问意思。而 that 不能引导疑问语气的句子。引导一般疑问句通常用 whether 或 if。正解：D。

例 2：Tell me ___ you will go with us or stay at home.

A. if　　B. whether　　C. that　　D. how

错解：A。剖析：在引导宾语从句时，if 和 whether 通常可以互换。但有些情况是不能互换的。如果

从句中提出了两种选择，或从句中有 or not 结构的时候，只能用 whether。正解：B。

【加强练习】

1. Although most of them have no doubt ____ he will pass the exam, I still wonder ___ he has really got everything ready.（08 年青岛）

A. whether; that　　B. whether; whether　　C. that; that　　D. that; whether

2. Can you tell me ___ you were born?（09 福建）

A. who　　B. what　　C. when　　D. that

3. I hear _____ your father has gone to England on business.（09 年南通）

A. when　　B. if　　C. that　　D. where

4. Do you know ____ they listened to yesterday?（09 年苏州）

A. what　　B. when　　C. why　　D. how

二、语序的错误例子。

1. He wanted to know ___.

A. when would the holiday begin　　B. that he had come back from Beijing

C. which one did I like best　　D. how he could get to the station

错解：A 或 C。剖析：宾语从句的从句部分必须用陈述句语序，而 A、C 为疑问句语序。正解：D。

2. I wonder _________.

A. who broke the window　　B. who the window broke

C. whose coat is this　　D. what is the population of China

错解：B、C 或 D。剖析：C、D 都是疑问句语序，此处需使用陈述句语序。B 貌似陈述句语序，但实际上连接词 who 同时是从句的主语，而 the window 则应是 broke 的宾语。正解：A。

3. I don't know ___.

A. which room I can live　　B. which room can I live

C. which room I can live in　　D. which room can I live in

错解：A。剖析：如果连接词在宾语从句中充当不及物动词后介词的宾语，并被放到从句句首时，不及物动词后面的介词不能少。正解：C。

三、时态运用的错误例子。

1. Long long ago, people didn't know the earth ___ round the sun.

A. moving　　B. moved　　C. moves　　D. went

错解：B 或 D。剖析：在学习宾语从句时，我们知道有一个规则：就是一般情况下主从句的时态要考虑"一致性"原则。但当宾语从句表示的是科学真理、格言、客观事实或其他不受时间限制、影响，客观存在的事物时，宾语从句的动词时态不受主句时态的限制，仍可用一般现在时。正解：C。

2. Could you tell me ___?

A. when he will come back　　B. when will he come back

C. when would he come back　　D. when he would come back

错解：D。剖析：could 在这里不表示过去时态，而是表示语气的委婉，是客气的请求。正解：A。

以上例析，基本涵盖了中考宾语从句的不同考点，希望它能给你的学习带来些许帮助。

【专题过关】

一、句型转换。

1. He won't come. I think.（变为复合句）（96 甘肃）

I ______ think he ______ come.

2. "Do you wash your clothes yourself?" Tom asked the girl next to him.（改复合句）

Tom asked the girl next to him ______ ______ ______ her clothes herself.

3. Did Peter come here yesterday? Li Lei wants to know.（改为宾从）（99 福州）

Li Lei wants to know ______ Peter ______ here yesterday.

4. Is the earth round? The little boy asked.（改为宾语从句）

The little boy asked ______ the earth ______ round.

5. "Where does he live?" Mr Hu asked.（改为复合句）

Mr Hu asked where _______ _______.

6. Tom's father saw him sitting on some eggs.（改为复合句）

Tom's father saw ______ ______ ______ sitting on some eggs.

7. Mrs White told Tom not to throw paper on the ground.（改为复合句）（99 上海）

Mrs White told Tom ______ ______ ______ throw paper on the ground.

8. Please tell me where we show our tickets.（改为简单句，保持原意）（98 广西）

Please tell me ______ ______ show our tickets.

9. Can you tell me how I can get to the post office?（改为简单句，保持原意）

Can you tell me the ______ _____ the post office?

10. Rose doesn't know when they are going to repair the watch.（改为简单句）

Rose doesn't know ______ ______ repair the watch.

11. The teacher told the boys what they should do and how they should do it.（改为简单句）

The teacher told the boys ______ ______ do and ______ _____ do it.

12. The earth moves around the sun. The teacher said.（改为宾语从句）

The teacher said ______ the earth ______ around the sun.

13. Are you hungry? My mother asked me.（改为宾语从句）

My mother asked me ______ ______ ______ hungry.

14. Why hasn't she come yet? Nobody knows.（改为宾语从句）

Nobody knows ______ ______ _______ come yet.

二、选择填空。

（2012 山东泰安）39. I don't know ______ Apple iphone4s.

A. that she is so crazy about　　B. what is she so crazy about

C. why she is so crazy about　　D. how she is so crazy about

（2012 山东菏泽）8. —Have you ever seen the movie 2012?

—Yes, but I don't believe______ the year 2012 will see the end of the world.

A. that　　B. what　　C. how　　D. if

（2012 山东烟台）30. Could you tell me______?

A. where is the headmaster　　B. whose camera it is

C. what Jack was happened　　D. how long does it take you to the aquarium

（2012 山东临沂）34. I wonder____ on April 23, World Book Day. Did you find some interesting books to read?

A. what did you do　　B. what you did　　C. what do you do　　D. what you do

（2012 河北）45. Our teachers always give us good advice. We should follow________.

A. what they say　　B. what they said　　C. which they say　　D. which they said

（2012 浙江杭州）26. —Could you tell me ________? —Of course.

A. where's there a good place to eat　　B. where there's a good place to eat
C. where is a good place to eat　　D. where a good place to eat

（2012 四川宜宾）34. I wanted to know _______ last weekend.

A. what Mary does　　B. what does Mary do　　C. what Mary did　　D. what did Mary do

（2012 江苏扬州）9. —The light in his office is still on. Do you know_______?

—In order to prepare for tomorrow's meeting.

A. if he works hard　　B. why he stays up so late
C. why is he so busy　　D. when he will stop working

（2012 江西）40. I know _______ I promised to take you dinner, but I won't finish working until ten o'clock.

A. that　　B. if　　C. what　　D. why

（2012 江苏苏州）13. We haven't discussed yet _______.

A. where we are going to put our new table　　B. where are we going to put our new table
C. what we are going to put our new table　　D. what are we going to put our new table

（2012 湖北武汉）34. —Hi, Bruce. Here's a letter for you. —Thanks. I wonder__________.

A. who that letter was from　　B. who was from that letter
C. who was that letter from　　D. who from that letter was

（2012 湖北孝感）38. —Do you know_________London for the 30th Olympic Games?

—Next month.

A. when they visited　　B. when will they visit
C. when did they visit　　D. when they will visit

（2012 湖北襄阳）40. —Could you tell me _____? —He rides his bike.

A. how does he go to work　　B. how he goes to work
C. what does he do　　D. where he goes

19.3　表语从句

19.3.1　表语从句的定义

表语：说明主语的性质、特征、状态或身份，说明主语是什么或者怎么样。表语是对主语的解释和说明，是主语具体化，并且常与连系动词一起使用。如：

This book looks expensive.（形容词作表语）

We are Chinese.（名词作表语）

表语从句：在复合句中作表语的从句，就叫作表语从句。表语从句一般放在系动词之后，结构是“主语+系动词+表语从句”。

连系动词：be 动词；表示持续的系动词（keep，remain，stay）；感官动词 look（看起来），feel（摸起来，感觉），smell（闻起来），sound（听起来），taste（尝起来，吃起来）等；表示变化的系动词（become，grow，turn，fall，get，go）；表终止的系动词 prove，turn out（结果是，证明是）；seem，appear（看起来）等。连系动词通常不用于被动语态和进行时态中。如：

He has become what he wanted to be ten years ago. 他已经成为他十年前想成为的了。

His suggestion is that we should stay calm. 他的建议是，我们应该保持冷静。

19.3.2 表语从句的引导词

1. 从属连词：that/whether/as if/as though/as/because

（1）that 引导表语从句本身没有词义，在句中只起连接作用，不充当句子成分，一般不能省略。如：

That fact is that more than seventy percent of the earth's surface is covered by water.

连接词 that 一般不能省略，但当主句中含动词 do 的某种形式时，that 可以省略。如：

What I want to do is（that）I can go up to him and thank him. 我想做的事是走到身边去感谢他。

（2）whether 引导表语从句表示“是否”，但不充当句子的成分。如：

The question is whether we can finish our work by tomorrow evening.

if 与 whether 均意为“是否”，但引导表语从句时，只能用 whether，不能用 if。

（3）as if/though“好像”，引导表语从句时要注意语态。

如果句中的情况与事实不相符，从句多用虚拟语气。如果从句表示与现在事实相反，谓语动词用一般过去式；如果从句表示与过去事实相反时，谓语动词要用“had+过去分词”；如果从句表示将来的可能性不大，用 would（might，could）+动词原形。如：

Li Lei is now in a new jacket. He looks as if he were an American boy.（与现在事实相反）

The girl is giving us a vivid description of the moon. It seems as if she had been to the moon many times.（与过去事实相反）

It looks as if it might rain.（与将来事实相反）

但是，如果 as if/though 引导的表语从句所表示的与事实相符，从句则用陈述语气。如：

The clouds are gathering. It looks as if is going to rain.

（4）as 引导表语从句。如：

He looked just as he had looked ten years before. 他看起来还与十年前一样。

（5）because 引导表语从句。常用结构：This/That/It is/was because…。如：

That is because I don't like Chinese.

2. 连接代词：who/whom/whose/what/which/whoever/whatever/whichever/whomever

连接代词在表语从句中作主语、宾语、表语和定语。如：

Tom is no longer what he used to be.（what 作表语）

The problem is who is fit for this job.（who 作主语）

This is what I want to tell you.（what 作宾语）

The problem is whose work is the best.（whose 作定语）

3. 连接副词：when/where/how/why

连接副词在表语从句中作状语。如：

The question is how he did it. 问题是他是如何做此事的。

The question is where we can live. 问题是我们能住在哪儿。

19.3.3 注意事项

（1）reason 作主语或主语中包含事件的起因时，后面的表语从句表示原因时要用 that 来引导，而不用 because；why 引导主语从句作主语时，表语从句用 that 引导，不用 because。如：

The reason is that he got up late.

Why he is late is that he got up late.

（2）that is why/because 的使用区别。

① That is why...是常用句型，其中 why 引导的从句在句中作表语，该句型通常针对前面已经说过的原因进行总结。That is the reason why...与 That is why...是同义的，意为“这就是……的原因/因此……”，但是从语法结构上讲 That is the reason why...中的 why 引导的是一个定语从句。如：

That is why she failed to pass the exam. 那就是她考试不及格的原因。（why 在表语从句中充当原因状语）

That is the reason why she failed to pass the exam. 那就是她考试不及格的原因。（why 在定语从句中充当原因状语）

② That is because 句型中从属连词 because 引导的名词性从句在此作表语，这也是个常用句型，意为“这就是因为……”。如：

That is because I got up late. 这是因为我起床迟了。

③“That is because...”与“That is why...”之间的不同在于“That is because...”指原因或理由，“That is why...”则指由于各种原因所造成的后果。如：

I was angry. That was because he didn’t understand me. 我生气是因为他不理解我。（表语从句强调原因）

That’s why he got fired from that firm. 那正是他被公司解雇的原因。（表语从句强调结果）

（3）The reason（why…/for…）is/was that… ……的原因是……如：

The reason for his absence is that he got up late.

The reason why he is absent is that he got up late. 他缺席的原因是他起床迟了。

（4）使用虚拟语气的表语从句。

在表示建议、劝告、命令、计划含义的名词后的表语从句，谓语动词需用“should+动词原形”表示虚拟语气，should 可省略。常见的词有：advice，suggestion，order，request，proposal，plan，idea 等。

【实战演练】

1. The question is _________ we will have our sports meet next week.
   A. that　B. if　C. when　D. whether
2. The reason why he failed is _________he was too careless.
   A. because　B. that　C. for　D. because of
3. Go and get your coat. It’s _________you left it.
   A. where　B. there
   C. there where　D. where there
4. The problem is __________to take the place of Ted.
   A. who can we get　B. what we can get
   C. who we can get　D. that we can get
5. What I want to know is _______ he likes the gift given by us.
   A. that　B. if　C. whether　D. /
6. The reason is__________I missed the bus.
   A. that　B. when　C. why　D. what
7. That is _____ we were late last time.
   A. that　B. when　C. why　D. what
8. She looked __________ she were ten years younger.

A. that　　B. like　　C. as　　D. as though

9. —I fell sick!

—I think it is ________ you are doing too much.

A. why　　B. when　　C. what　　D. because

10. The reason why he hasn't come is ____________.

A. because his mother is ill　　B. because of his mother's being ill

C. that his mother is ill　　D. for his mother is ill

11. —He was born here.

—That is _______ he likes the place so much.

A. that　　B. what　　C. why　　D. how

12. That is ______ Lu Xun once lived.

A. what　　B. where　　C. that　　D. why

【参考答案】

1—5　DBACC　　6—10　ACDDC　　11—12　CB

【that/what 的区别】

1. _______your father wants to know is________ getting on with your studies.

A. What；how are you　　B. That；how you are

C. How；that you are　　D. What；how you are

2. The trouble is__________we are short of tools.

A. what　　B. that　　C. how　　D. why that

3. America was __________was first called "India" by Columbus.

A. what　　B. where　　C. the place　　D. there where

4. China is becoming stronger and stronger. It is no longer_________.

A. what it used to be　　B. what it was used to being

C. what it used to being　　D. what it was used to be

5. ________he really means is ________he disagrees with us.

A. What…that　　B. That…what　　C. What…what　　D. That…what

6. The energy is ________ makes the cells able to do their work.

A. that　　B. which　　C. what　　D. such

【参考答案】

1—6　DBAAAC

【高考练习】

1（NMET1999）—I drove to Zhuhai for the air show last week.

—Is that_____ you had a few days off?

A. why　　B. what　　C. when　　D. where

2.（1998 上海）I had neither a raincoat nor an umbrella ____I got wet through.

A. It's the reason　　B. That's why　　C. There's why　　D. It's how

3.（2006 全国）See the flags on top of the building? That was ______ we did this morning.

A. when　　B. which　　C. where　　D. what

4.（2003 北京春）—Are you still thinking about yesterday's game?

—Oh，that's _____.

A. what makes me feel excited　　B. whatever I feel excited about

C. how I feel about it　　D. when I feel excited

5. What surprised me was not what he said but _______ he said it.（2004 湖北）

A. the way　　B. in the way that　　C. in the way　　D. the way which

【参考答案】

1—5　ABDAA

19.4　同位语从句

19.4.1　同位语从句概述

同位语从句是用来解释说明某一名词内容的从句，常见的可以被同位语从句修饰的名词有 belief，chance，doubt，hope，idea，news，opinion，thought，promise 等。引导同位语从句的词有连词 that，whether 和副词 how，when，where 等。

19.4.2　同位语从句点拨

（1）同位语从句是意义完整的陈述句时，用连词 that 引导。that 在从句中不充当任何成分，只起连接作用，通常不省略。如：

I got the news that he would come to see me the next week.

（2）同位语从句是疑问句时，应根据语境选用 who，when，where，how，whether（不能用 if）等词来引导。如：

The question who is the best for the job requires consideration.

（3）分隔式同位语从句：当主句的谓语较短，而同位语从句较长时，为了使句子保持平衡，常把同位语从句后置。如：

An idea came to him that he could buy her a diamond ring.

（4）后面常跟同位语的词有 doubt，fact，hope，idea，message，news，possibility，promise，question，suggestion，truth，thought，warning，wish 等。advice，order，suggestion 等表示建议、命令的词后的同位语从句中的谓语动词须用（should）+动词原形。如：

He made the suggestion that the meeting（should）be put off.

19.4.3　同位语从句与定语从句的区别

（1）所表达的内容不同：同位语从句和定语从句一般是放在某一名词后面，但同位语从句是对该名词的解释和说明，而定语从句是对该名词的修饰，说明它的性质特征。如：

The fact that he presented was a strong proof. 他所提供的事实是一个强有力的证据。（定语从句）

The fact that she hadn't said anything surprised us all. 她一言不发的事实让我们每一个人都很惊讶。（同位语从句）

（2）在句中所起的语法作用不同：引导定语从句的 that 是关系代词，它的作用是连接主句和从句，并代表先行词在从句中充当句子成分，而且 that 作宾语时可省略，指物时，可以用 which 代替。引导同位语从句的 that 是连词，只起连接主句和从句的作用，它不充当任何成分，不能省略，也不可被 which

代替。如：

We expressed the hope that Mr. and Mrs Smith would come to visit China the next year. 我们表达了希望史密斯夫妇第二年到中国来访的愿望。（同位语从句）

The news（that/which）we heard spread all over the city. 我们所听到的消息传遍了整个城市。（定语从句）

（3）所修饰的词不同：同位语从句所修饰的名词数量有限，往往是含有某种信息的词，如 message，news，fact，hope，desire，problem，idea，suggestion，advice，question，order，belief，doubt，fear，truth，thought 等，而定语从句修饰的先行词无此限制。

（4）wh-引导词引导同位语从句时，有其本身的疑问含义；引导定语从句时则没有疑问的意思。如：

I have no idea where the meeting will be held.（同位语从句）

He is the only one of these boys who can speak Franch.（定语从句）

【相关练习】

1. There is no obvious evidence_____there is life on any other planet in the solar system.

A. which　　B. that　　C. how　　D. where

解析：选 B。句意：没有确凿的证据证明太阳系的其他行星上有生命。evidence 后的同位语从句不缺少任何成分，故用 that 引导。

2. My friend showed me round the town，_____was very kind of him.

A. which　　B. that　　C. where　　D. it

解析：选 A。句意：我的朋友领我参观了这个城镇，他真好。非限制性定语从句缺少主语，所以用 which 引导，先行词是前面的整个句子。that 不能引导非限制性定语从句；where 引导定语从句在从句中作状语；it 不能引导从句。

3. Many children，_____parents are away working in big cities，are taken good care of in the village.

A. their　　B. whose　　C. of them　　D. with whom

解析：选 B。句意：许多孩子的父母远在大城市打工，这些孩子在乡村都得到了很好的照顾。根据句子结构判断，逗号后面是定语从句，从句主语 parents 前缺少定语，故用关系代词 whose 引导。their 和 of them 不能引导定语从句；with whom 不能作定语。

4. It’s helpful to put children in a situation _____ they can see themselves differently.

A. that　　B. when　　C. which　　D. where

5. Many young people in the West are expected to leave _____ could be life’s most important decision—marriage—almost entirely up to luck.

A. as　　B. that　　C. which　　D. what

解析：选 D。句意：许多西方年轻人可能会把自己一生最重要的决定——婚姻，几乎完全寄托于运气。leave 在此是及物动词，表示“把……留给某人决定”，所选项引导其宾语从句并在从句中作主语，所以选连接代词 what。as 不引导名词性从句；that 引导名词性从句不作成分；which 表示选择意义，意为“哪一个”。

【实战演练】

一、指出下列句子中的名词性从句，并说出连词的句法功能。

1. Who will write the poem has not been decided yet.
2. Don’t ask about what the meeting is for.
3. I heard it that he had gone abroad.

4. What surprised us is that he lost in the game.
5. Whatever he did is right.
6. What he left us was a large sum of money.
7. They kept it quiet that he was dead.
8. Tell me why you don't like school.
9. He had a feeling that she might not approve of the plan.
10. Whoever comes will be welcome.
11. He wasn't sure whether he ought to laugh or cry.
12. The book is where you left it.
13. I took it for granted that you would stay with us.
14. We hope that you will enjoy your stay here.
15. When he will be back depends on the weather.
16. We are certain that this is true.
17. He accepted the fact that she would never come back.
18. Where we live doesn't matter.
19. I have no doubt that you were telling the truth.
20. That is why he turned me down
21. I feel it a terrible thing that I have to get up so early.
22. The reason was that he didn't work hard.
23. New York is no longer what it was ten years ago.
24. This is where you are wrong.
25. I hate it when people speak with their mouth full.
26. That's what makes him an excellent conductor.
27. She came to the conclusion that she must act at once.
28. I appreciated it very much that he had done me a favor.
29. Our success depends on/upon how well we can cooperate with one another.
30. Nobody can explain the mystery why he suddenly disappeared.

二、单项选择题。

1. His success was because of _____ he had been working hard.
A. that　　B. the fact which　　C. the fact that　　D. the fact
2. "Is Mary from New York City?" "I don't know _____."
A. from what city does she come from　　B. from what city she come
C. what city does she come from　　D. what city she comes from
3. ________ Tom liked to eat was different from ________.
A. That; that you had expected　　B. What; that you had expected
C. That; what you had expected　　D. What; what you had expected
4. The reason why I didn't go to Shanghai was _____ a new job.
A. I got　　B. because of getting　　C. because I got　　D. that I got
5. It worried her a bit _____ her hair was turning grey.
A. while　　B. that　　C. if　　D. for
6. Henry killed the dog. I'll ask him why ______.
A. did he do that　　B. he did that　　C. he did　　D. he has done so
7. Have you seen Henry lately? My boss wants to know _____.

A. how he is getting along B. how is he getting along
C. what he is getting along D. what is he getting along

8. These computers are different from _________.
A. that we expected B. what we expected C. which we have expected D. what we expect

9. He asked me _____ with me.
A. what is the trouble B. what wrong was C. what was the matter D. what trouble it is

10. I am sure _____ he said is true.
A. that B. about that C. of that D. that what

11. When and why he came here _____ yet.
A. is not known B. are not known C. has not known D. have not bee

12 .I wonder how much _____.
A. does the watch cost B. did the watch cost
C. the watch costed D. the watch costs

13. Mary is _____ someone might recognize her.
A. afraid of B. afraid about C. afraid that D. afraid for

14. _____ is no reason for dismissing her.
A. Because she was a few minutes late B. Owing to a few minutes late
C. The fact that she was a few minutes late D. Beijing a few minutes late

15. They came to the conclusion _____ by a computer.
A. that not all things can be done B. because of not all things be done
C. being not all things can be done D. because not all things can be done

16. Why the explosion occurred was _____ the laboratory attendant had been careless.
A. for B. because C. since D. that

17. I don’t doubt _____ he’ll come.
A. that B. if C. what D. whether

18. “Why did you go to the wrong class，Mr. Wang?” “Well，I forget ____I was supposed to go to.”
A. which the room B. which room C. what was the room D. what room was it

19. Output is now six times _____ it was before liberation.
A. that B. which C. what D. of which

20. —Helen is a mere washer woman，yet she’s now buying a big house.
—Yes. Because she’s always saved _____.
A. what little she earns B. how little she earns
C. for little she earns D. with little she earns

21. _____ surprised me most was _____ such a little boy of seven could play the violin so well.
A. That；what B. What；that C. That；which D. What；which

22. Do you know _____ ?
A. what is this used for B. what this is used for
C. which this is used D. that this is used for

23. She is pleased with what you have given him and _____ you have told him.
A. that B. which C. all what D. all that

24. Excuse me，would you please tell me _____?
A. when the sports meet is taken place B. when is the sports meet going to be held
C. when is the sports meet to begin D. when the sports meet is to take place

25. Do you happen to know _____?

A. what size shoes he wears
B. how big shoes he wears
C. what is the size of his shoes
D. what number shoes are his

26. This book will show you _____ can be used in other contexts.
A. how you have observed
B. how what you have observed
C. that you have observed
D. how that you have observed

27. Where do you think _____?
A. has he gone B. has he been C. he's gone D. was he

28. Do you know ______?
A. how many populations there are in the world?
B. how much population there is in the world
C. how many the population of the world is
D. what the population of the world is

29. Would you go and see _____ outside?
A. what to take place
B. what Tom has happened
C. what is happening
D. what the matter had been

30. Last Sunday he promised ________ today, but he hasn't appeared yet.
A. that he would come
B. that he will come
C. he will come to see me
D. whether he would come

31. _____? I think he is Charles.
A. Who do you think he is
B. Do you think who he is
C. Whom do you think he is
D. Do you think who he is

32. He didn't know which room _____.
A. they lived B. they lived in C. did they live D. did they live in

33. The little boy ate _____ his mother gave him.
A. that B. which C. whatever D. no matter what

34. The city is no longer _____.
A. what it is B. that it used to be C. which it was D. what it used to be

35. My parents used _____ they had to get a new car for me.
A. which B. that C. what D. all what

36. _____ we go swimming every day _____ us a lot of good.
A. If; do B. That; do C. If; does D. That; does

37. _____ was the idea _____ the wife thought of?
A. What; that B. That; what C. How; why D. Why; how

38. We think it possible _____ the local government will be able to solve the housing problem.
A. for B. that C. when D. how

39. One of the men held the view _____ the book said was right.
A. what that B. that what C. that which D. which that

40. I have no idea _____ or not he has finished the work.
A. if B. that C. whether D. which

三、改错。

1. It's uncertain that the experiment is worth doing.
2. All what is hard is to do good all one's life and never do anything bad.
3. What the boy didn't take medicine made his mother angry.
4. You can't imagine how excited were they when they received these nice Christmas presents.
5. That we'll go camping tomorrow depends on the weather.

6. What he really means is what he disagrees with us.
7. Whom is going to do the job will be decided by the Party committee.
8. When we'll finish translating the book depend on the time.
9. Where will the house be built will be discussed at tomorrow's meeting.
10. If you come or not is up to you.
11. That is what he likes the place so much.
12. That is that Lu Xun once lived.
13. We thought strange that Tom did not come yesterday.
14. The fact which she had not said anything surprised all of us.
15. Can you tell me who is that gentleman?
16. Who leaves the room last ought to turn off the lights.
17. The energy is that makes the cells able to do their work.
18. Jack was soon told why he did was not necessary.
19. Is this what we met each other two years ago?
20. Someone is ringing the doorbell. Go and see who he is.
21. I don't care whether she has no money. I care if she is honest or not.
22. The child is always lying，so none of us will believe no matter what he says.
23. See to that the children don't catch cold.
24. He，that is playing an important part，which is well-known to us all.
25. The boy dived into the water and，after it seemed to be a long time，he came up again.

四、根据汉语用英语完成句子。

1. ________ ________ ________ ________ ________was true.
   他偷了一辆自行车是真的。
2. The important thing is ________ ________ ________，but not________ ________ ________.
   重要的是你做什么，而不是说什么。
3. ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ has not been found.
   他出生在何时何地还不知道。
4. The problem is ________ ________ ________ ________ to the little boy.
   问题是他对那个小男孩做了些什么。
5. She insisted ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ the countryside.
   她坚持不被派到农村去。
6. I don't care about ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________.
   我并不在意你是否有钱。
7. He has made ________ ________ ________ he will not give in.
   他清楚地表明他不会屈服。
8. We don't believe ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________.
   我们相信他不会赢得这场比赛。
9. Nobody knows ________ ________ ________ ________.
   没有人知道他来自哪里。
10. I couldn't understand ________ ________ ________ ________.
    我不能理解为什么被拒绝了。
11. ________ ________ ________ ________ all the museums will be reopened soon.
    据宣布所有的博物馆将在不久重新开放。

12. He insisted that he _______ in good health and _______ _______ _______ to work there.
 他坚持认为他身体健康，并且坚持要求被派到那儿去工作。
13. _______ _______ _______ _______ ______ should turn off the lights.
 无论谁最后离开房间都应该关灯。
14. It is known to us all _______ _______ _______ _______ _______， there is harm.
 众所周知，哪儿有污染，哪儿就有伤害。
15. The problem is _______ _______ _______ _______ _______ _______.
 问题在于这部电影是否值得一看。

【参考答案】

一、指出下列句子中的名词性从句，并说出连词的句法功能。

1. Who will write the poem 是主语从句，who 在从句中充当主语。
2. what the meeting is for 是宾语从句，what 在从句中充当 for 的宾语。
3. that he had gone abroad 是宾语从句，that 不充当任何成分。
4. What surprised us 是主语从句，what 在从句中充当主语。
 that he lost in the game 是表语从句，that 不充当任何成分。
5. Whatever he did 是主语从句，whatever 在从句中充当宾语。
6. What he left us 是主语从句，what 在从句中充当宾语。
7. that he was dead 是宾语从句，that 不充当任何成分。
8. why you don't like school 是宾语从句，why 在从句中充当原因状语。
9. that she might not approve of the plan. 是同位语从句，that 不充当任何成分。
10. Whoever comes 是主语从句，whoever 在从句中充当主语。
11. whether he ought to laugh or cry 是形容词 sure 的宾语从句，whether 不充当任何成分。
12. where you left it 是表语从句，where 在从句中充当地点状语。
13. that you would stay with us 是宾语从句，that 不充当任何成分。
14. that you will enjoy your stay here 是宾语从句，that 不充当任何成分。
15. When he will be back 是主语从句，when 在从句中充当时间状语。
16. that this is true 是形容词 certain 的宾语从句，that 不充当任何成分。
17 that she would never come back 是同位语从句，that 不充当任何成分。
18. Where we live 是主语从句，where 在从句中充当地点状语。
19. that you were telling the truth 是同位语从句，that 不充当任何成分。
20. why he turned me down 是表语从句，why 在从句中充当原因状语。
21. that I have to get up so early 是宾语从句，that 不充当任何成分。
22. that he didn't work hard 表语从句，that 不充当任何成分。
23. what it was ten years ago 表语从句，what 在从句中充当表语。
24. where you are wrong 是表语从句，where 在从句中充当地点状语。
25. when people speak with their mouth full. 是宾语从句，when 在从句中充当时间状语。
26. what makes him an excellent conductor. 是表语从句，what 在从句中充当主语。
27. that she must act at once 是同位语从句，that 不充当任何成分。
28. that he had done me a favor 是宾语从句，that 不充当任何成分。
29. how well we can cooperate with one another 是宾语从句，how 在从句中充当程度状语。
30. why he suddenly disappeared 是同位语从句，why 在从句中充当原因状语。

二、单项选择题。

1—5 CDDDB 6—10 BABCD 11—15 ADCCA
16—20 DABCA 21—25 BBDDA 26—30 BCDCA
31—35 ABCDC 36—40 DABBC 41—45 CCDDD
46—50 ACBAA

三、改错。

1. whether
2. All that（what）
3. That
4. how excited they were
5. Whether
6. that
7. Who
8. depends
9. will the house—the house will
10. Whether
11. why
12. where
13. it
14. that
15. who that gentleman is
16. whoever
17. what
18. Why 后加 what
19. where
20. who it is
21. if；whether
22. whatever
23. it that
24. who which
25. what

四、根据汉语用英语完成句子。

1. That he stole a bike
2. what you do what you say
3. Where and when he was born
4. what he has done
5. that she not be sent to
6. whether you have money or not
7. it clear that
8. that he will win the game
9. where he is from
10. why I was refused
11. It is announced that
12. was…should be sent
13. Whoever leaves the room last
14. that where there is pollution
15. whether the film is worth seeing

20 定语从句

20.1 概 说

在复合句中，修饰某一名词或代词，用作定语的从句叫作定语从句。被定语从句所修饰的词叫作先行词。定语从句必须放在先行词之后。引导定语从句的关联词有关系代词 who，whom，whose，which，that 和关系副词 when，where，why 等。

20.2 定语从句的种类

定语从句可以分为限定性定语从句和非限定性定语从句。

（1）限定性定语从句：它是先行词在意义上不可缺少的定语，如果去掉，主句的意思就不完整或失去意义。这种从句与主句的关系十分密切，书写时不可用逗号分开。如果关系代词在限定性定语从句中作宾语，关系代词通常可以省略。如：

Do you know the girl who just came in?

Shanghai is a city（that）I've always wanted to visit.

Her sister married a man（who/whom/that）she met on a plane.

The time when I first met Mr. White was a very difficult period of my life.

（2）非限定性定语从句：它只是对先行词做附加补充说明，如果去掉，主句的意思仍然清楚完整。这种从句与主句的关系不是很密切，书写时往往用逗号分开。非限定性定语从句一般不用 that 引导，而且不可以省略关系词。如：

The old woman，who lives on her own，has a cat for company.

Lori is going to marry Mark，whom she does not love.

Beijing，which is the capital city of China，is a very beautiful city.

限制性定语从句和非限制性定语从句的区别：

（1）形式：非限制性定语从句与先行词之间通常有逗号，而限制性定语从句与先行词之间则无逗号。如：

The teacher told me that Tom was the only person that I could depend on.

China，which was founded in 1949，is becoming more and more powerful.

（2）关系：限制性定语从句与先行词的关系非常密切，是先行词不可缺少的部分；而非限制性定语从句在意义上只是先行词的一个附加修饰语，对先行词只起进一步补充说明的作用。

（3）先行词：限制性定语从句的先行词一般为单个的名词或代词，非限制性定语从句的先行词可以是整个句子或其中的一部分。

非限制性定语从句的“四个不能”：

（1）非限制性定语从句通常不能用 that 引导。

（2）非限制性定语从句不能用 why 引导，要用 for which 代替。如：

I had told them the reason，for which I didn’t attend the meeting.

（3）由“介词+关系代词”引导时，关系代词不能用 as。

（4）指人的关系代词作宾语时用 whom，不能省略。

注意：区分以下句子的不同。

His brother who is now a doctor always encourages him to go to college.

他那当医生的哥哥常鼓励他要考上大学。（他还有其他的哥哥）

His brother，who is now a doctor，always encourages him to go to college.

他的哥哥是当医生的，常鼓励他要考上大学。（他只有一个哥哥）

20.3 关系代词和关系副词的用法

关系词常有三个作用：

（1）连接作用，引导定语从句。

（2）代替主句中的先行词，甚至可能是主句中的一部分或者整个主句。

（3）在定语从句中充当一句子成分。

注：关系代词有主语、宾语之分。一般 whom 作为宾语。关系代词在从句中作主语、宾语、表语、定语等，关系副词在从句中作地点状语、时间状语、原因状语等。

在定语从句中，关系代词起着连接主句与从句、指代先行词和在从句中作句子成分的三重作用。关系代词的选用取决于主句中的先行词以及关系代词在从句中作何种成分。关系代词和关系副词的用法详见表 20-1。

表 20-1 关系代词和关系副词的用法

关系词		先行词	从句成分	例 句
关系代词	who	人	主语，宾语	Do you know the man who is talking with your mother?
	whom	人	宾语	The boy（whom）she loved died in the war. Mr. Smith is the person with whom I am working.
	whose	人，物	定语	I like those books whose topics are about history. The boy whose father works abroad is my classmate.
	that	人，物	主语，宾语 表语	A plane is a machine that can fly. She is the pop star（that）I want to see very much. She is not the person that she used to be.
	which	物	主语，宾语	The book（which）I gave you was worth $10. The picture which was about the accident was terrible.
	as	人，物	主语，宾语	He is such a person as is respected by all of us. This is the same pen as I lost yesterday.
关系副词	when	时间	状语	I will never forget the days when we spent our holidays together.
	where	地点	状语	I know a place where we can have a picnic.
	why	原因	状语	This is the reason why he was fired.

备注：Who，whom，which 和 that 在从句中做宾语时，常可以省略，但介词提前时后面关系代词不能省略，也不可以用 that 和 who。

20.4 定语从句的特殊用法

1. 只用 that 不用 which 的情况

（1）当先行词是 all，little，few，much，something，everything，anything，nothing，none 等不定代词时。如：

Everything that happened then was like a nightmare. 当时发生的一切就像是一场噩梦。

I will tell him all that you told me at the ball. 我要把你在舞会上跟我说的话全都告诉他。

（2）当先行词被 only，any，few，little，no，all，just，very（恰好的，表示强调）等词修饰时。如：

The only thing that we could do was to wait. 我们能做的只有等待。

That's the very thing that we can do. 那正是我们能做的事。

（3）当先行词是序数词、形容词最高级或先行词被序数词或形容词最高级修饰时。例如：

The first place that we visited was the Great Wall. 我们参观的第一个地方是长城。

This is the best novel that I have ever read. 这是我看过的最好的小说。

（4）被修饰词为数词时。例如：

Yesterday I caught two fish and put them in a basin of water. Now you can see the two that are still alive. 昨天我捉到了两条鱼，把它们放在一盆水里。你可以看到那两条鱼还活着呢。

（5）主句是 There be 结构，修饰其主语的定语从句宜用 that 作关系代词修饰物。例句：

There's still a room that is free. 还有一个空房间。

（6）先行词中同时包括人和物时。例如：

We talked about the people and the villages that we remembered. 我们谈论了我们记得的人和村子。

He asked about the factories and workers that he had visited. 他问起他去过的这几家工厂和工人的情况。

（7）当主句中有 who，which 时，而定语从句中也要用到 who 或 which 时，为了避免 who...who，which...which 等重叠，定语从句要用 that 引导。例如：

Who is the man that is standing by the door? 站在门边的那个男人是谁？

Which of the two cows that you keep produces more milk? 你养的那两头奶牛中哪一个产奶多？

（8）人或物在定语从句中作表语时，用 that 引导定语从句，而 that 通常也可以省略。例如：

He is no longer the man that he was. 他不再是过去的他。

2. 修饰物时只用 which 不用 that 的情况

（1）引导非限制性定语从句时。例如：

Bamboo is hollow，which makes it light. 竹子是空心的，这使得它很轻。

（2）当关系词前有介词时。例如：

This is the room in which Chairman Mao once lived. 这就是毛主席曾经住过的地方。

（3）一个句子中有两个定语从句，其中一个定语从句的关系代词用了 that，另一个宜用 which。例如：

Let me show you the novel that I borrowed from the library which was newly open to us.
我来给你看我从新开的图书馆里借来的那本小说。

（4）当关系代词后面有插入语时。例如：

Here is the English grammar which，as I have told you，will help improve your English.
这就是我跟你说过的会有助于你学好英语的那本英语语法书。

（5）先行词为 that 时。例如：

The clock is that which can tell us the time. 钟是报时的装置。

3. 修饰人时只用 who 不用 that 的情况

（1）先行词为 one，ones，anyone，those 指代人时。如：

The person I want to learn from is one who studies hard and works well. 我最羡慕的是学习勤奋，工作出色的人。

（2）在 There be 结构中，修饰主语的定语从句宜用关系代词 who 指代人。例如：

There's a gentleman who wants to see you. 有位先生想见你。

（3）当先行词有较长的后置定语时。例如：

I met a foreigner in the park yesterday afternoon who could speak Chinese very well. 昨天下午我在公园里遇到一位中文讲得非常好的外国人。

（4）一个句子中有两个定语从句，其中一个定语从句的关系代词是 that，另一个宜用 who 以避免重复。如：

The student that was praised at yesterday's meeting is the monitor who is very modest and works very hard. 受到校长表扬的学生是位谦虚好学的班长。

注意：当关系代词前面有介词时，只能用 whom。例如：

The person to whom this letter was addressed died three years ago. 这封信的收信人三年前就去世了。

4. way 在定语从句作先行词的用法

当先行词为 way 时，定语从句的引导词可用 in which，that 或省略引导词。例如：

I don't like the way（that/in which）he looks at me. 我不喜欢他那种样子看着我。

5. 在定语从句中作状语的关系副词 when，where，why 的用法

（1）先行词表示时间时，定语从句中的谓语动词如果是不及物动词，用关系副词 when 或介词+which；如果是及物动词，用 which 或 that 都行。例如：

I still remember the days when（=on which）we lived together. 我仍然记得我们在一起的时光。

（2）先行词表示地点时，如果定语从句中谓语动词是不及物动词，用关系副词 where 或介词+which；如果是及物动词时，用 which 或 that 都可以。例如：

This is the small village where（=in which）Chairman Mao ever lived. 这就是毛主席曾经居住过的小村庄。

（3）表示原因时，why 前的先行词是表示原因的名词 reason。例如：

Can you tell me the reason why（=for which）you didn't finish your homework? 你能告诉我你没有完成作业的原因吗？

6. whose 引导的定语从句

whose 引导定语从句时，其先行词可以指人，也可以指物，当先行词指物时，可以用 the+名词+of which 的结构。例如：

He studies in a school whose buildings（=the buildings of which）are built on top of a hill.

他就读的学校其房子都建在山顶上。

7. as 作关系代词引导的定语从句

（1）引导限制性定语从句。在主句中常有 the same，so 或 such 与 as 相呼应，as 在定语从句中可作主语、宾语、主语补足语等。as 引出的定语从句带有比较意义，从句常常只写出比较部分，但 as 本身不可省略。例如：

He used such expressions as he could find in the texts. 他使用在课文中可以找到的那些词语。

They stayed for the night in the same room as they had once rented. 他们在他们曾租用过的房间过夜。

注意：在 the same…后也可用 that 引导定语从句，但含义有所不同。that 引出的从句，指的是与先行词同一的事物，而 as 引导的从句指的是与先行词同类的事物。例如：

This is the same bag as I lost yesterday.这个包和我昨天丢失的包长得一样。

This is the same bag that I lost yesterday. 这就是我昨天丢失的那个包。

（2）引导非限制性定语从句。常译为“正如……”“就像……”等，定语从句可以置于主句句首、句中或句末。as 后常接 expect，know，report，say，see 等动词的主、被动语态。例如：

As is known to everybody，the moon travels round the earth once every month. 正如大家所知道的那样，月球每月绕着地球转一圈。

He wasn’t unconscious，as could be judged from his eyes. 他并未失去知觉，这从他的眼神可以看出来。

常见结构有：

as is known to all

as is often the case

as might/could be expected

as has been said before

as has been mentioned above

as has been pointed out

as can be imagined

as can be seen（from these figures）

as often happens

as will be shown

注意：as，which 引导非限制性定语从句的区别：

（1）都可以代整个主句，相当于 and this 或 and that。

（2）as 可放在句首，而 which 不能。

（3）as 代表前面的整个主句并在从句中作主语时，从句中的谓语必须是系动词；如果为行为动词，则从句中的关系代词只能用 which。例如：

It rained hard yesterday，which prevented me from going to the park. 昨天下大雨，这使得我不能去公园。

8. of 短语作为定语从句的先行词的情况

one of the+复数名词这一结构后面的定语从句中的谓语动词，通常用复数形式，与定语从句所靠近的那个复数名词在数上保持一致。但如果 one of the+复数名词这一结构前面带有 the/only/the only 之类的限定语，从句的谓语动词则要用单数形式，此时从句在意义上修饰的是 the one。例如：

Tom is one of the boys who were late that morning. 汤姆是那天早晨迟到的男生之一。

Tom is the（only/the only）one of the boys who was late that morning. 汤姆是那天早上唯一迟到的男生。

9. that 有时可用作关系副词来代替 when

that 大用作关系副词代替 when 引导一个定语从句，修饰表示时间的名词，如 day，time，moment 等。例如：

I arrived here the day that（=when）he left. 我是在他离开的那天到达这儿的。

He worked hard the whole time that（=when）he lived here. 他在这里的这段时间工作都很努力。

10. than 和 but 也可用作关系代词引导定语从句

（1）than 用作关系代词，在定语从句中作主语或宾语。例如：

You spent more money than was intended to be spent.

你花的钱超过了预定的数额。（than 是关系代词，在句中作主语，其先行词是 money）

（2）but 作为关系代词引导定语从句时，一般同具有否定意义的主句连用，其先行词可以是人，也可以是物，但只用于限制性定语从句中。因此，在这种句子中，but 在意义上等于"that...not""who...not""which...not"。例如：

There was not a single student in my class but learnt a lot from him.（but=who did not）我班上每一个学生都从他那里学到了很多东西。

11. 定语从句中 the one 的用法

例句：

（1）Is this factory_______ your father worked last year?

（2）Is this museum______ we visited two years ago?

【解析】例句（1）（2）都是一般疑问句，学生在做题时有可能会将其中的 this factory，this museum 误认为是先行词，但如果将它们转换成陈述句，即：

This factory is（the one）______where your father worked last year.

This museum is（the one）_______we visited two years ago.

我们可以看到例（1）空格处的词既充当 is 的表语，又要作动词 worked 的状语，并且又要代替 this factory，故应填 the one。同样例（2）中，空格处的词既要充当表语，又要作 visited 的宾语，并且又要代替 this museum，而 the one 同时具备这两种功能，因此在这两个例句中用 the one 做先行词。

解题策略：将疑问句转换成陈述句

请看下面的题目：

—Is this room __________ he lived in last year?

—Is this the room __________ he lived in last year?

A. that；that　　B. the one；the one　　C. that；the one　　D. the one；that

此题应选 D，容易误选 A。为了便于分析，我们先将以上两句还原成陈述句（注意 is 的位置）。如：

（1）This room is _________ he lived in last year.

（2）This is the room ________he lived in last year.

第（1）句填 the one，用作表语，其后的（that）he lived in last year 是用以修饰 the one 的定语从句。此句若直接填 that，则不是定语从句（因为没有先行词），而是表语从句。但是由于引导表语从句的 that 不能充当句子成分，而其后的介词 in 又缺宾语，所以导致错误。

第（2）句填 that，它是关系代词，用以引导定语从句（he lived in last year）修饰 the room。

请做以下类例试题。如：

1. —Is this the book _________ you want to buy?

—Is this book _________ you want to buy?

A. that；that　　B. the one；the one　　C. that；the one　　D. the one；that

2. —Is this room ___________ he lived in 5 years ago?

—Is this the room __________ he lived in 5 years ago?

A. that；that　　B. the one；the one　　C. that；the one　　D. the one；that

答案：1. C　　2. D

20.5　定语从句与同位语从句的区别

（1）从句和先行词的关系：定语从句修饰先行词，它和先行词是修饰关系；同位语从句说明先行词的具体内容，是补充说明的关系。如：

The plane that has just taken off is for London.（定语从句）

The fact that he has been dead is clear.（同位语从句）

（2）关系词：同位语从句的连词 that 不能省略，而定语从句的关系代词 that，当其在从句中作宾语、表语时可省略，作主语也不可省略。如：

I've heard the news that he visited our factory.

I've heard the news that he told you the other day.

Word came that their army was defeated.（同位语）

We expressed to them our wish that was the same as their.（定语）

20.6 定语从句与强调句型的区别

（1）强调词 it 与先行词 it 的判别：

把 It is/was…that…去掉，如句子仍然成立则为强调句，否则不是。如：

It is on the morning of May 1st that I met Liang Wei at the airport.（强调句）

It is the factory that Mr Wang works in.（定语从句）

（2）固定句型：It is/was not until+被强调部分+that…如：

It was not until she took off her dark glasses that I realized that she was a famous star.

= Not until she took off her dark glasses did I realize that she was a famous star.

=Only when she took off her dark glasses did I realize that she was a famous star.

强调句的倒装：

强调人时，可用 who 代替 that，但若强调时间、地点、原因、方式时，不能用 when，where，why，how 代替 that。强调句型不用于强调谓语、表语、since，as 等引导的原因状语从句。如：

He is better today since he can walk around without my help.

It is better today that he is today since he can walk around without my help.（×）

It is since he can walk around without my help that he is better today.（×）

20.7 介词+关系代词的用法

当关系代词在定语从句中作介词宾语时，通常用“介词+关系代词”引导定语从句。如果指“人”，用“介词+whom”；如果指“物”，用“介词+which”。例如：

Do you know the lady with whom our manager is talking in the office?

Where is the supermarket in which you bought the laptop last week?

使用“介词+关系代词”要注意以下几点：

（1）选用介词的依据：

根据定语从句中谓语动词的搭配习惯（即固定短语）。例如：

Yesterday we visited the West Lake for which Hangzhou is famous.

根据先行词的搭配习惯（约定俗成，不一定是短语）。例如：

The old woman with whom you talked just now is a famous artist.

根据句子的意思来选择。例如：

The naughty boy made a hole in the wall through which he could see what is happening outside.

表示“所有”关系或“整体中的一部分”时，通常用介词 of。例如：

I have about 20 books，half of which were written by Bing Xin，the famous writer.

（2）在定语从句中，含介词的短语动词不可拆开使用（短语拆开后含义发生变化），如 look after，look for 等。例如：

The babies whom the nurses are looking after are very healthy.（正）

The babies after whom the nurses are looking are very healthy.（误）

（3）“of which/whom”有时可以用“whose+名词”结构来改写。例如：

The building whose roof was damaged in the earthquake has been repaired.

＝The building of which the roof was damaged in the earthquake has been repaired.

（4）当先行词为 way 并且定语从句中缺少状语时，通常用 in which 或 that 引导定语从句（in which 或 that 可省略）；如果定语从句中不缺少状语，则用关系代词引导（that 或 which 可省略）。例如：

All of us disliked the way（in which/that）Tom settled the maths problem.

I don’t understand the way（that/which）the teacher explained to me.

（5）in that 不可以引导定语从句，但可以引导原因状语从句。例如：

She didn’t attend the meeting in that/because she was seriously ill.

注：“介词+关系代词”与关系副词的转化：

（1）当先行词表示地点，定语从句中缺少地点状语时，通常用关系副词 where 引导，此时也可选用表示地点的介词+which 来代替关系副词 where。例如：

I visited the village where many children couldn’t go to school because of poverty.

＝I visited the village in which many children couldn’t go to school because of poverty.

（2）当先行词表示时间，定语从句中缺少时间状语时，通常用关系副词 when 引导，此时也可选用表示时间的介词+which 来代替关系副词 when。例如：

We’d better fix a date when we will practice speaking English next week.

＝We’d better fix a date on which we will practice speaking English next week.

（3）当先行词为 reason，定语从句中缺少表示原因状语时，通常用关系副词 why 引导，此时也可以用 for which 来代替关系副词 why。例如：

Can you tell me the reason why you were late for school?

＝Can you tell me the reason for which you were late for school?

20.8　“介词+关系代词”型定语从句五大考点

考点 1：简单介词+关系代词

知识归纳：用于此结构的关系代词指人时只能用 whom，指物时只能用 which。介词主要是根据从句中的动词、形容词、名词与介词的固定搭配而定；或者以先行词与从句中的动词关系及所表达的含义而定；或者以先行词在定语从句中的作用和含义而定，并且含有介词的短语动词不能拆开，介词仍然放在动词之后。

高考考例：

1.（2004 全国卷）The journey around the world took the old sailor nine months，________ the sailing time was 226 days.

A. of which　　B. during which　　C. from which　　D. for which

解析：关系代词 which 指代 the journey，定语从句恢复为独立的句子是：The sailing time of the journey was 226 days. 故答案选 A。

2.（2004 全国卷）The English play ____ my students acted at the New Year’s party was a great success.

A. for which　　B. at which　　C. in which　　D. on which

解析：本句主句部分应是 The English play at the New Year's party was a great success. 从句补全为独立的句子是：My students acted in the play. 故答案选 C。

3.（2004 上海卷）American women usually identify their best friend as someone ________ they can talk frequently.

A. who　　B. as　　C. about which　　D. with whom

解析：先行词为 someone，被关系代词 whom 代替在从句中作 talk with 的宾语，介词 with 可以放在关系代词之前，identify...as...意为"把……当作……"，故答案选 D。

考点 2：复杂介词+关系代词

知识归纳：用于此结构的关系代词有 which，whom，whose。常用于该结构的复杂介词有：as a result of，at the back of，because of，by means of，for want of，in front of，in case of，on account of 等。例如：

We got to a house at the back of which was a large garden.

Is there a certain test by means of which the No. 1 will be decided?

考点 3：简单介词+关系代词+名词

知识归纳：用于此结构的关系代词有 which，whose。介词的选择取决于关系代词后的名词及整个句子的含义。

高考考例：

（1995 上海）In the office，I never seem to have time until after 5:30 p.m. _______ time many people have gone home.

A. whose　　B. that　　C. on which　　D. by which

解析：介词 by 表示时间的意思是"到那时为止"。这句话的意思是"在办公室里，我似乎直到下午 5:30 才有空，那时许多人都已经回家了"。故答案选 D。

考点 4：the+名词+of+关系代词

知识归纳：用于此结构的关系代词只有 which。该结构表示所有关系，口语中常用"whose+名词"代替。非正式文体中可以用"of which the+名词"。

高考考例：

（2000 上海）Recently I bought an ancient Chinese vase，________ was very reasonable.

A. which price　　B. the price of which　　C. its price　　D. the price of whose

解析：选 B。本题是一个考查 the+名词+of+关系代词结构的典型例子。这里 the price of which 指代 the price of the vase，答案也可以是 whose price。

考点 5：表示部分的词语+of+关系代词

知识归纳：此时，指人的关系代词只能是 whom，指物的关系代词只能是 which。表示部分的词语常见的有：不定代词 all，both，none，neither，either，some，any，数词（含基数词，序数词，分数和百分数）；数词+名词；the+最高级/比较级，以及表示数目或数量的词语 many，most，few，several，enough，half a，a quarter。

高考考例：

1.（2004 湖北卷）There are two buildings，_________ stands nearly a hundred feet high.

A. the larger　　B. the larger of them　　C. the larger one that　　D. the larger of which

解析：答案为 D。the larger of which 指代 the larger of the two buildings；B 选项缺少一个连词。

2.（2004 辽宁卷）The factory produces half a million pairs of shoes every year，80% ________ are sold abroad.

A. of which　　B. which of　　C. of them　　D. of that

解析：答案为 A。80% of which 指代的是 80% of the shoes。本题意为：这家工厂每年生产的 50 万双鞋子有 80%都是销往国外的。

【定语从句基础练习】

把下面的简单句合并成含定语从句的复合句。

1. The dictionary is very useful. It is on the desk.
   The dictionary ____
2. I bought a cake this morning. It is delicious.
   The cake ____
3. I lost a pen. The pen is yellow.
   ____
4. The teaching building looks nice. The building was set up last year.
   ____
5. The man is the headmaster. The man is standing in front of the school library.
   The man ____
6. The police caught the thief. The thief is Tom's brother.
   The thief ____
7. Tina is a student. She won a prize in the writing competition.
   ____
8. Do you remember the girl? You helped her last time.
   ____
9. The desk is broken. His father bought the desk last year.
   The desk____
10. The computer is very expensive. The computer works well.
    The computer ____
11. I met the old man. The old man has three sons.
    ____
12. Mary is a student. She studies in a middle school.
    ____
13. Tom is swimming in a lake. The lake is very clean.
    ____
14. Tom is my brother. I like him very much.
    ____
15. The cow is fat. His father bought it 2 years ago.
    ____
16. His home is not far from our school. Our school is very beautiful.
    ____
17. We study many subjects. The subjects are all useful.
    ____
18. I have seen the film. The film is about a love story.
    ____

【中考范例】

1.（2004 年哈尔滨中考试题）

—Does the teacher know everybody _______ planted the trees? —Yes，he does.

A. which　　B. whose　　C. where　　D. who

【解析】答案：D。该题考查的是引导定语从句的关系代词的选择。因为先行词是人，而关系代词又在定语从句中作主语，所以只有 who 合适。

2.（2004 年常州市中考试题）

The letter _______ I received from him yesterday is very important.

A. who　　B. where　　C. what　　D. that

【解析】答案：D。该题考查的是定语从句的关系代词的选择。因为先行词是物，而关系代词在定语从句中作宾语，所以只有 that 合适。

3.（2004 年扬州市中考试题）

—Where is the scientist ________ gave us the talk yesterday? —He has gone back to Qinghua University.

A. whom　　B. who　　C. whose　　D. which

【解析】答案：B。该题考查的是引导定语从句的关系代词的选择。因为先行词是人，而关系代词又在定语从句中作主语，所以只有 who 合适。

4.（2004 年益阳市中考试题）

I hate people _______ talk much but do little.

A. whose　　B. whom　　C. which　　D. who

【解析】答案：D。该题考查的是引导定语从句的关系代词的选择。因为先行词是人，而关系代词又在定语从句中作主语，所以只有 who 合适。

【经典名题导解】

1.（NMET 2001）The film brought the hours back to me _________ I was taken good care of in that faraway village.

A. until　　B. that　　C. when　　D. where

解析：答案为 C。本题考查分隔定语从句的关系词的选择。做好本题的关键是要能辨认出该定语从句的先行词 the hours 和关系词被介词短语 to me 所分隔。定语从句的先行词是表时间的名词 hours，并且关系词在从句中用作状语，故应选择表示时间的关系副词 when。

2.（NMET 2001）________ is known to everybody，the noon travels around the earth once every month.

A. It　　B. As　　C. That　　D. What

解析：答案为 B。本题考查 as 引导的非限制定语从句。as 作“正如……”解时，引导的非限制性定语从句修饰整个句子。当 as 在从句中作主语时，常用于下列短语中：as is known，as is said，as is reported，as is announced 等。要注意掌握作关系代词引导定语从句的用法。

3.（NMET 1996）After living in Pairs for fifty years he returned to the small town ___________ he grew up as a child.

A. which　　B. where　　C. that　　D. when

解析：答案为 B。本题考查限制性定语从句中关系词的选择。定语从句的先行词是表示地点的名词短语 the small town，且关系词不作定语从句中的主语和宾语而作地点状语，因此定语从句必须用关系副词 where 引导。要注意分清先行词在从句中充当的成分，然后选择适当的关系词。

4. The English play________my students acted at the New Year’s party was a great success.

A. for which　　B. at which　　C. in which　　D. on which

解析：答案为 C。考定语从句。主句部分应是 The English play at the New Year’s party was a great success.从句补全为独立句子应是 my students acted in the play。所以应选 in which，其余介词不妥。

5. There were dirty marks on her trousers__________she had wiped her hands.

A. where　　B. which　　C. when　　D. that

解析：答案为 A。本题考地点状语从句，用 where 引导。句意是“她的裤子上有她擦过手的地方的脏痕”。此处不能用时间状语从句，排除 C，本题易被误认为考定语从句，意为“在她擦过手的裤子上有脏痕”。定语从句修饰 trousers，也只能用 where。B 和 D 可引导定语从句，但只作主、宾等成分。定语从句缺少状语，不缺主语、宾语，故不可用。

6. The journey around the world took the old sailor nine months，________the sailing time was 226 days.

A. of which　　B. during which　　C. from which　　D. for which

解析：答案为 A。本题考定语从句，关系代词 which 指代 the journey，定语从句恢复为独立句子应是：The sailing time of the journey was 226 days，故选 of which。

【备考练习】

1. Yesterday Mr. Li finally bought his own house，________ is a hospital.

A. in where　　B. to the east of which　　C. to the east of it　　D. in the east of that

2. My brother's purse，________ he put ￥1,000，was missing on the bus.

A. there　　B. which　　C. in which　　D. that

3. The football match ________ the students competed yesterday was very wonderful.

A. in which　　B. which　　C. in that　　D. that

4. The reason ________ he was late again was that he was caught in a traffic jam in the rush hour.

A. which　　B. in which　　C. for which　　D. of which

5. His glasses，________ he could see nothing，was taken away by a naughty boy.

A. which　　B. without which　　C. with which　　D. without those

6. The computer，________ he paid ￥3,000，was once owned by his uncle.

A. which　　B. for which　　C. that　　D. to that

7. In the past we lost many chances，________ we paid little attention.

A. which　　B. that　　C. in which　　D. to which

8. The pen，________ I had been writing for ten years，was broken.

A. with which　　B. with that　　C. as　　D. with it

9. Mary has two brothers，_________ are doctors.

A. both of they　　B. both of whom　　C. both of them　　D. whom of both

10. The problem ________ you argued about yesterday has been solved.

A. that　　B. what　　C. why　　D. for which

11. My aunt bought me a book，the name ________ I have forgotten.

A. of it　　B. which　　C. whose　　D. of which

12. On the way home I met my friend John，from ________ home the thief had stolen a computer.

A. whom　　B. which　　C. that　　D. whose

13. I hate the way ________ you talk to your mother.

A. by which　　B. on which　　C. in which　　D. which

14. At last we found the hole in the wall ________ the mouse got into the house last night.

A. in which　　B. which　　C. through which　　D. by which

15. There are three girls in the room，_________ is Tom's sister.

A. the tallest of which　　B. the tallest of whom

C. tallest of that　　D. tallest of which

16. I'll never forget the day _______ I bought my own guitar with my own money.

A. where　　B. on which　　C. on when　　D. that

17. She is just the girl, with _______ my brother came to visit me last month.

A. whom　　B. her　　C. that　　D. who

18. Last night we saw two movies, _______ was interesting.

A. both of which　　B. neither of which　　C. both of them　　D. neither of them

19. This is the house in _______ I was born thirty years ago.

A. it　　B. there　　C. which　　D. that

20. The reason for _______ he failed in the exam was that he was too careless.

A. which　　B. why　　C. that　　D. it

【参考答案】

1—5　BCACB　　6—10　BDABA　　11—15　DDCCB　　16—20　BABCA

【高考链接】

从 A、B、C、D 四个选项中，选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项。

1. Eric received training in computer for one year, _____ he found a job in a big company.（2007 辽宁卷）

A. after that　　B. after which　　C. after it　　D. after this

2. Many people who had seen the film were afraid to go to the forest when they remembered the scenes ______ people were eaten by the tiger.（2005 广东卷）

A. in which　　B. by which　　C. which　　D. that

3. We saw several natives advancing towards our party, and one of them came up to us, ______ we gave some bells and glasses. （2006 湖南卷）

A. to which　　B. to whom　　C. with whom　　D. with which

4. I was given three books on cooking, the first _____ I really enjoyed. （2006 浙江卷）

A. of that　　B. of which　　C. that　　D. which

5. Frank's dream was to have his own shop _____ to produce the workings of his own hands.（2005 湖南卷）

A. that　　B. in which　　C. by which　　D. how

【练习】

一、根据句子意思，在下列句子的第一个空白处填入介词，在第二个空白处填入关系代词 whom 或 which。

1. The person _________ _________ I spoke just now is the headmaster that I told you about.
2. The pencil _________ _________ he was writing is mine.
3. Hillary, _________ _________ I went to the concert, enjoyed it very much.
4. The two things _____ _____I was not sure were the grammar and some of the idioms of English.
5. Her bag, _________ _________ she put all her books, has not been found.
6. The stories about the civil war, _________ _________ this is one example, are well written.

二、选用适当的关系代词（who, which, whose, that）或关系副词（when, where, why）填空。

7. Do you know anyone _________ knows about the history of the pyramids?

8. We have visited the Museum of Chinese History，_____ Chairman Mao's life and deeds are being shown.
9. We'll never forget the day ________ my friends came to see me in hospital.
10. This is the man ________ son died in the war.
11. I don't know the reason ________ she didn't agree to our study plan.

【参考答案】

1—5 BABBB

练习：

1. to whom 2. with which 3. with whom 4. about which 5. in which 6. of which 7. who 8. where 9. when 10. whose 11. why

【历年高考真题汇练】

1.（2009 天津）11. A person ______ e-mail account is full won't be able to send or receive any e-mails.

A. who B. whom C. whose D. whoever

2.（2009 陕西）9. Gun control is a subject_____Americans have argued for a long time.

A. of which B. with which C. about which D. into which

3.（2009 四川）10. She'll never forget her stay there ________ she found her son who had gone missing two years before.

A. that B. which C. where D. when

4.（2009 浙江）13. I have reached a point in my life ___ I am supposed to make decisions of my own.

A. which B. where C. how D. why

5.（2009 安徽）1. A good friend of mine from___________I was born showed up at my home right before I left for Beijing.

A. how B. whom C. when D. which

6.（2009 安徽）2. Many children，_________parents are away working in big cities，are taken good care of in the village.

A. their B. whose C. of them D. with whom

7.（2009 湖南）5. I was born in New Orleans，Louisiana，a city________name will create a picture of beautiful trees and green grass in our mind.

A. which B. of which C. that D. whose

8.（2009 重庆）14. Life is like a long race _____we compete with others to go beyond ourselves.

A. why B. what C. that D. where

9.（2009 全国 2）15. My friend showed me round the town，______was very kind of him.

A. which B. that C. where D. it

10.（2008 福建卷）31. By nine o'clock，all the Olympic torch bearers had reached the top of Mount Qomolangma，____ appeared a rare rainbow soon.

A. of which B. on which

C. from which D. above which

11.（2008 湖南卷）31. The growing speed of a plant is influenced by a number of factors，_____ are beyond our control.

A. most of them B. most of which C. most of what D. most of that

12.（2008 江苏卷）24. The Science Museum，______ we visited during a recent trip to Britain，is one of London's tourist attractions.

A. which B. what C. that D. where

13.（2008 山东卷）26. Occasions are quite rare _______ I have the time to spend a day with my kids.

A. who B. which C. why D. when

14.（2008 江西卷）35. Later in this chapter cases will be introduced to readers_____consumer complaints have resulted in changes in the law.

A. where B. when C. who D. which

15.（2008 全国 II）16. The road conditions there turned out to be very good，_______ was more than we could expect.

A. it B. what C. which D. that

16.（2008 陕西卷）8. Tomorrow is Tom's birthday. Have you got any idea ____the party is to be held?

A. what B. which C. that D. where

17.（2008 陕西卷）13. The man pulled out a gold watch，__________ were made of small diamonds.

A. the hands of whom B. whom the hands of

C. which the hands of D. the hands of which

18.（2008 四川卷）4. For many cities in the world，there is no room to spread our further，_____ New York is an example.

A. for which B. in which C. of which D. from which

19.（2008 浙江卷）8. Yesterday she sold her car，_______ she bought a month ago.

A. whom B. where C. that D. which

20.（2008 北京卷）28. I'll give you your friend's home address，____I can be reached most evenings.

A. which B. when C. whom D. where

21.（2008 重庆卷）21. They will fly to Washington，___ they plan to stay for two or three days.

A. where B. there C. which D. when

22.（2008 上海卷）38. We went through a period ____communications were very difficult in the rural areas.

A. which B. whose C. in which D. with which

23.（2007 上海卷）His movie won several awards at the film festival，______ was beyond his wildest dream.

A. which B. that C. where D. it

24.（2007 山东卷）—Where did you get to know her? —It was on the farm _________we worked.

A. that B. there C. which D. where

25.（2007 安徽卷）Last week，only two people came to look at the house，____ wanted to buy it.

A. none of them B. both of them C. none of whom D. neither of whom

26.（2007 北京卷）We shouldn't spent our money testing so many people，most of__are healthy.

A. that B. which C. what D. whom

27.（2007 江苏卷）He was educated at the local high school，____he went on to Beijing University.

A. after which B. after that C. in which D. in that

28.（2007 江西卷）After graduation she reached a point in her career ______she heeded to decision what to do.

A. that B. what C. which D. where

29.（2007 全国卷 I）Some pre-school children go to a day care center，________they learn simple games and songs.

A. then B. there C. while D. where

30.（2007 陕西卷）Today，we'll discuss a number of cases______ beginners of English fail to use the language properly.

A. which B. as C. why D. where

31.（2007 上海卷）The thought of going back home was______ kept him happy while he was working abroad.

A. that　　B. all that　　C. all what　　D. which

32.（2007 四川卷）It is reported that two schools, ______ are being built in my hometown, will open next year.

A. they both　　B. which both

C. both of them　　D. both of which

33.（2007 天津卷）Those successful deaf dancers think that dancing is an activity ________ sight matters more than hearing.

A. when　　B. whose　　C. which　　D. where

34.（2007 浙江卷）Chan's restaurant on Baker Street, ____ used to be poorly run, is now a successful business.

A. that　　B. which　　C. who　　D. where

35.（2007 重庆卷）Human facial expressions differ from those of animals in the degree ______ they can be controlled on purpose.

A. with which　　B. to which　　C. of which　　D. for which

36.（2007 辽宁卷）Eric received training in computer for one year, _____ he found a job in a big company.

A. after that　　B. after which　　C. after it　　D. after this

【参考答案】

1—5　CCDBC　　6—10　BDDAD　　11—15　BADAC　　16—20　DDCDD

21—25　ACADD　　26—30　DADDD　　31—36　CDDBBB

【真题导航】

1.（2008 吉林）This is the question ___ we are talking about now.

A. that　　B. who　　C. where　　D. when

2.（2008 湖南长沙）What are you looking for?

I am looking for the book____ I bought yesterday.

A. who　　B. which　　C. whose

3.（2008 甘肃兰州）We all like the teachers ____class is interesting and creative.

A. which　　B. whose　　C. who　　D. that

4.（2008 甘肃定西）This is the girl_____ mother is an English teacher of our school.

A. that　　B. who　　C. whom　　D. whose

5. The man_____ lives next to us is our friend.

A. which　　B. whom　　C. who

6.（2008 河南）Shaolin Temple ____lies in the west of Zhengzhou welcomes the visitors both at home and abroad.

A. where　　B. which　　C. who　　D. what

7. Last summer I went to Lu Xun's hometown and visited the house_____ he was born.

A. that　　B. there　　C. which　　D. where

【答案解析】

1. A。考查定语从句。先行词 the question 指物，关系词在从句中作 talk about 的宾语，所以用 that。

2. B。考查定语从句。先行词 the book 指物，关系词在从句中作 bought 的宾语，所以选 which。

3. B。先行词 the teacher 指人，关系词在从句中作定语修饰 class，应该用 whose。

4. D。先行词 the girl 指人，关系词在从句中作定语修饰名词 mother，所以应选 D。

5. C。先行词 the man 指人，排除 A 项，关系代词在从句中作主语，用 who。

6. B。考查定语从句。Shaolin Temple 是地点，但先行词在从句中作主语，所以用 which 不用 where。

7. D。考查定语从句。the house 是地点，关系词在从句中作地点状语，所以用 where。

21 状语从句

状语从句指句子用作状语时，起副词作用的句子。它可以修饰谓语、非谓语动词、定语、状语或整个句子。根据其作用可分为时间、地点、原因、条件、目的、结果、让步、方式和比较等从句。状语从句一般由连词（从属连词）引导，也可以由词组引起。从句位于句首或句中时通常用逗号与主句隔开，位于句尾时可以不用逗号隔开。

21.1 时间状语从句

1. 概　述

在复合句中，由时间连接词引导的表示时间的状语从句叫作时间状语从句。在复合句中，要注意主句和从句的时态大多都要保持一致。

一般来说，时间状语从句常由连词 when，before，after，as soon as 或 until 等引导。在使用时，从句一般不用一般将来时态。若主句为一般将来时态或是含有将来的意味时，时间状语从句常用一般现在时态来代替将来时态，即“主将从现”。如：

I will go to the cinema as soon as I finish my homework. 我一完成作业就去电影院。

When I grow up，I will join the army. 当我长大了，我就要去参军。

2. 常用连接词举例

（1）when 连接的时间状语从句。

when 相当于汉语的“当……时候”。如：

When the weather is fine，many families go out for a walk. 天气好时，很多家庭都出去散步。

When I got home，I found mother cooking for me. 我到家时，发现妈妈在为我做饭。

I always go to see the doctor when I do not feel well. 我感到不舒服时总要去看医生。

Please let me know when you have trouble. 有困难时请告诉我。

（2）before/after 连接的时间状语从句。

before 表示“在……之前”，after 表示“在……这后”。如：

He telephoned that he couldn’t come before the concert began. 他打电话来说音乐会开始前来不了了。

Mother always prepares supper before I come back from school. 妈妈总是在我放学回家前把晚饭准备好。

I will go out to play basketball with you after I finish my homework. 我做完功课后就和你一起出去打篮球。

（3）as soon as 连接的时间状语从句。

as soon as 表示“一……就……”，强调动作紧密相连。如：

We start to sing as soon as it is 12 o’clock. 一到十二点，大家就开始唱起来。

We began t work as soon as we got there. 我们一到那儿，就马上开始工作。

（4）until 连接的时间状语从句。

until 表示一个动作一直持续到某一时刻，即“直到……”。如：

He waited until all the people left. 他一直等到所有人都走了。

I didn’t go to bed until Mum came back. 直到妈妈回家后我才上床睡觉。

（5）while 连接的时间状语从句。

while 连接时间状语时，表示主句的行为在从句行为过程之中发生。由于 while 从句表示一个持续的行为，所以从句中要用持续性动词或状态动词，并且持续性动词常用进行时态。如：

While they are waiting for the New Year，they listen to music，sing songs and have fun. 在等待新年到来的一段时间里，他们听音乐、唱歌、娱乐。（听音乐行为是在等待过程之中进行的）

Do not make any noise while I am recording. 我录音时不要吵闹。（在我录音的过程中你不要吵闹）

People wave flags while the parade went down the street. 游行队伍经过街道时人们挥舞旗帜。（人们挥舞旗帜的行为是在游行队伍从街道经过的过程中进行的）

（6）扩展：

① 一些词，如 the moment，the minute，the instant 等也可引导一个时间状语从句，相当于 as soon as 的意思。如：

He jumped off the couch the moment the telephone rang. 电话一响，他就从沙发上跳起来了。

② immediately，directly，instantly 也可引导时间状语。如：

They phoned me immediately they reached home. 我们刚到家电话就响了。

③ hardly…when，scarcely…when，no sooner…than 引导时间状语，相当于 as soon as 的意思。如果 hardly 或 no sooner 或 scarcely 置于句首，句子必须用部分倒装结构。主句使用过去完成时，从句使用一般过去时。如：

Hardly had I got home when it began to rain. 我一到家就下雨了。

④ 一些含有 time 的名词短语，如 every time，each time，next time，the first time 等，以及 the day，the year，the morning 等，也可引导一个时间状语从句。如：

The day he returned home，his father was already dead. 他到家那天，父亲已经去世了。

Next time you come，please bring your composition. 你下次来的时候，请把你的作文带来。

3. 几组引导词的辨析

（1）till，until 和 not…until。

① until/till 引导时间状语从句用于肯定句时，主句的动词是延续性动词，表示动作或状态一直持续到 until/till 所表示的时间，意为“某动作一直延续到某时间点才停止”。如：

We waited until he came. 我们一直等到他来。

② 用于否定句时，主句谓语动词是非延续性动词，从句为肯定，意为“某动作直到某时间才开始”。如：

I didn’t buy this book until he came. 直到他回来我才买了这本书。

③ till 不可以置于句首，而 until 可以。如：

Until you told me I had no idea of it. 直到你告诉我我才知道这件事。

④ not…until 句型中的倒装和强调说法。如：

Not until he came did I buy this book. 直到他回来我才买了这本书。

It was not until he came that I bought this book. 直到他回来我才买了这本书。

（2）when，while 和 as。

① 三者均可表示“当……的时候”，如果主句谓语动词表示的是短暂的动作，而从句表示的是一段时间，三者可以通用。例如：

I met an old friend of mine as/when/while I was walking along the street. 当我沿街散步时，我碰见了一个老朋友。

② as 和 when 引导的时间状语从句中，谓语动词可以是终止性动词；while 引导的时间状语从句中，谓语动词一般是延续性动词。例如：

It was raining hard when we got to the airport. 当我们到达机场时，天正下着大雨。（不能用 while 引导）

③ as 强调主句谓语动词与从句谓语动词表示的动作同时发生；while 强调主句谓语动词表示的动作持续于 while 从句所指的整个时间内；when 可以指主句谓语动词和从句谓语动词所表示的动作同时或先后发生。例如：

She sang as she went along. 她边走边唱。

Please listen to me carefully while I read. 我朗读的时候，请仔细听。

When he reached home，he had a little rest. 回到家以后，他休息了一会儿。

【例题】Mother was worried because little Alice was ill，especially _______ her father was away in France.（NMET 1994 全国卷）

A. as　　B. that　　C. during　　D. if

【解析】A。主从句动作先后发生常用 when；两个较长动作同时发生用 while；特别强调主从句动作同时发生用 as，译作“一边……一边”，as 还可表“随着”。另 when，while 还可用作并列连词。when 表 at that time，而 while 表“两相对照”。

（3）before 和 after。

由 before 和 after 引导的时间状语从句,注意 before 引导的从句不再用否定式的谓语，并且当 before 引导的从句位于主句之后，有时译成“就，才”。还要注意主句和从句之间的时间关系。当主句用将来时，从句总是用现在时；如果 before 引导的主句谓语用的是过去完成时，则从句动词多用一般过去时，这样以便体现动作发生的先后。after 表示主句动作发生在从句动作之后。主句和从句动作的时间关系正好与 before 引导的从句相反。例如：

It will be four days before they come back. 他们要过四天才能回来。

Einstein almost knocked me down before he saw me. 爱因斯坦几乎把我撞倒才看到我。

My father had left for Canada just before the letter arrived. 我父亲恰好在信到之前去加拿大了。

They had not been married four months before they were divorced. 他们结婚还不到四个月就离婚了。

After you think it over，please let me know what you decide. 你仔细考虑过以后，告诉我你是怎样决定的。

After we had finished the work，we went home. 完成工作之后，我们回家了。（从句用过去完成时，主句用一般过去时）

（4）几个极易混淆的时间状语从句。

① It was+时间点+when…·…时候时间是……，如：

It was 5 am when we arrived at the village.

② It was/will be+时间段+before…没过……就/过了……，才如：

It was/will be two weeks before we met/meet again.

③ It is/has been+时间段+since…自从……以来有……，如：

It is/has been 3 years since we last met.

突破点：一看 be 动词的时态，二看是时间段还是时间点。

注意：在“It is/has been+时间段+since…”句型中，从句的动词必须是短暂性的，如果是延续性的动词，时间要从从句的动作结束时算起。如：

It is 3 years since I smoked. 我戒烟有三年了。

21.2　地点状语从句

地点状语从句的引导词有：where ……的地方，wherever 任何……的地方。如：

We should go where the Party needs us most. 我们应到党最需要我们的地方去。

You are free to go wherever you like. 你愿意去哪里就去哪里。

注意区分 where 引导的定语从句与状语从句。如：

You’d better make a mark where you have any questions.（状语从句）

You’d better make a mark at the place where you have any questions.（定语从句）

where 引导的状语从句前面没有名词，即使有，也和从句无关。where 引导的定语从句前面有表示地点的名词作先行词，并在后面的定语从句中作状语。

21.3　原因状语从句

原因状语从句的引导词有：because，as，since，now that。具体用法详见表 21-1。

表 21-1　原因状态从句不同引导词的用法

项　目	位　置	内　涵	语　气	能否回答 why	能否被强调
because（因为）	主句前或后	直接因果关系	强	不能	不能
as（由于）	主句前或后	双方都知道的原因	弱	不能	不能
since/now that（既然）	主句前	双方都知道的原因	弱	不能	不能
for（因为）	句中	补充说明原因或推断的依据	弱	不能	不能

如：I was absent from the meeting because I was ill.

As it is raining，we will not go to the park.

Now that/Since everybody is here，let’s begin our meeting.

It must have rained last night，for the ground is wet.

21.4　条件状语从句

条件状语从句常见的引导词有：if，unless，as/so long as ，on condition that（条件是），in case（万一），given that（如果，倘若）等。如：

As long as you don’t lose heart，you will succeed.

Given that this is the case，why aren’t students taught to manage conflict the way they are taught to solve math problems，drive cars，or stay physically fit?

The little boy won’t go to sleep unless his mother tells him a story.

做题小窍门：unless 等于 if...not，做题时可直接把 unless 替换为 if...not 代入句中。

21.5　目的状语从句

目的状语从句常见的引导词有：so that，in order that，in case（以防），for fear that（唯恐，害怕发生某事）等。如：

I’ll speak slowly so that you can understand me.（so that 引导的从句只能置于主句之后）

我会慢慢说，以便你能懂。

In order that we might see the sunrise，we started for the peak early.（in order that 可前可后）

为了能看到日出，我们很早就出发去山顶。

Mary didn’t get out of bed for fear that she might wake her baby up. 玛丽不想起床，担心吵醒宝宝。

Take your raincoat in case it rains. 带上雨衣以防下雨。

注意：目的状语从句中多用情态动词 can，could，may，might。

21.6 结果状语从句

结果状语从句常见的引导词有：so…that，such…that，so that 等。如：

Mike is such an honest worker that we all believe him.

=Mike is so honest a worker that we all believe him.

当 so/such…that 结构中的 so 或 such 放在句首时，主句用倒装语序。如：

So proud was he that he never listened to any advice.

21.7 让步状语从句

让步状语从句常见的引导词有：though，although，as，even if/though，no matter+疑问词（不管，无论）与疑问词+ever（不管），whether…or…（不管……还是），while 等。

（1）though 与 although。如：

He is unhappy，though/although he has a lot of money.（though 和 although 意思相同，置于句首句中皆可，不和 but 连用）

though 还可用作副词，意为“可是，然而”，置于句末。如：

He said he would come；he didn't，though.

（2）as 或 though 引导让步状语从句倒装的情况。如：

Hot as/though the night air was，we slept deeply because we were so tired after the long journey.

Child as/though he is，he knows a lot about computers.

Much as/though I travel，I have never seen such a beautiful place.

Try as she might，Carolina couldn't get the door open

（3）no matter+疑问词（不管，无论）与 疑问词+ever（不管），whether…or。如：

However difficult the question is，I can work it out.

All people，whether they are old or young，rich or poor，have been trying their best to help those in need since the disaster.

所有人，无论老幼贫富，灾难之后都竭尽全力帮助那些身处困境的人。

Whoever breaks the law，he will be punished.

=No matter who breaks the law，he will be punished.

注意区分：whoever，whatever，whomever，whichever 还可以引导名词性从句。如：

Whoever breaks the law will be punished.（此时 whoever=anyone who）

（4）while 也可引导让步状语从句，相当于 although。如：

While volleyball is her main focus，she's also great at basketball.

21.8 比较状语从句

比较状语从句常见的引导词有：as…as，not so（as）…as，than，the more…the more 等。如：

The harder you work，the more progress you will make. 你越努力，取得的进步就越大。

注意：在表达倍数时，可用三种句型：

（1）A…+（more than）倍数+比较级+than B。

（2）A…+倍数+as 形容词原级 as+B。

（3）A…+倍数+the size（height，weight，length）+of B。如：

This building is more than three times taller than that one.

This building is more than three times as tall as that one.

This building is more than three times the size of that one.

三种句型变式：

（1）倍数+as many+可数名词复数+as。

（2）倍数+as much+不可数名词+as。

（3）倍数+as+形容词原级+名词+as。如：

It is reported that the United States uses twice as much energy as the whole of Europe.
据报道，美国人使用的能源是整个欧洲的两倍。

I can rent three times as big a room as yours in my city using that money.
用那些钱我能在我们的城市租一个三倍大的房间。

注意 no+形容词比较级+than =as+反义形容词原级+as。如：

She is no more diligent than you. 她不比你勤奋。

=She is as lazy as you.

21.9 方式状语从句

方式状语从句常见的引导词有：as，as if，as though 等。

注意：as if/though 引导的从句常用虚拟语气，表示非真实情况，但如果从句中陈述的情况很可能实现，也可用陈述语气。

Do as you are told to，or you'll be fired. 告诉你怎么做你就怎么做，否则你会被解雇。

The old lady treats the boy as if he were her own son. 这位老太太对待这个男孩就像是自己儿子一样。

I feel as if I have a fever. 我感觉好像发烧了。

21.10 状语从句的省略

当时间、条件、让步、方式和比较状语从句的主语与主句一致或为 it 或 there 且谓语动词含 be 动词时，从句中的主语和谓语可以一起省去。例如：

Don't speak until spoken to.（省略了 you are）

I have no money. If any，I will lend you some.（省略了 there is）

Though cold，he still wore a shirt.（省略了 it was）

Some flowers shut up at night as if to sleep.（省略了 they were）

一些常见的省略结构：if not，if so，if any，if necessary，when necessary。

21.11 各种状语从句的简化方法

（1）以 after 和 before 引导的状语从句的主语若与主句主语一致时，从句等于 after/before+doing sth. 作状语。例：

After she sang，she left the rich man’s house. = After singing，she left the rich man’s house.

（2）以 as soon as 引导的状语从句的主语若与主句主语一致时，从句等于 on+doing sth.，作状语，此时的动词为非延续性动词。例：

Mary began to operate on the wounded soldiers as soon as he arrived at the village.

= Mary began to operate on the wounded soldiers on arriving at the village.

（3）时间状语从句和条件状语从句的主语和主句主语一致时，有时可简化为不定式作状语。例：

She stopped when she saw her husband. = She stopped to see her husband.

If you want to understand the farmers，you must go to the countryside.

= To understand the farmers，you must go to the countryside.

（4）结果状语从句和目的状语从句的主语与主句主语一致时，可以简化为不定式作状语；若两者主语不一致，则应简化为不定式的复合结构作状语。例：

He was so tied that he couldn’t go any further. = He was too tied to go any further.

I came here so that I could ask some questions. = I came here（in order）to ask some questions.

（5）以 when，while 引导的时间状语从句和以 if 引导的条件状语从句的主语若与主句主语一致时，从句等于 when/while/if+doing sth.作状语，表示谓语动作发生在该状语动作的进行过程之中。例：

When he turned on the radio，he found it broken. = When turning on the radio，he found it broken.

While she was walking along the street, she was hit by a car. = While walking along the street, she was hit by a car.

（6）原因状语从句的主语与主句主语一致时，可简化为分词短语作状语。例：

Since l didn’t know Chinese, I tried to speak to her in English. = Not knowing Chinese, I tried to speak to her in English.

注意：形容词短语也可作表示原因的状语，来代替原因状语从句，放在句首、句末均可，但一般应加逗号。

例：As he was thirsty and eager to get a little rest，he went into the tea-house.

= Thirsty and eager to get a little rest，he went into the tea-house.

（7）在时间、原因、条件等状语从句中，若从句和主句主语不一致，可简化为分词复合结构作状语。有时也可简化为“with/without 名词或代词+分词（短语）”形式作状语。例：

When the film start appeared，the children got exited. = The film start appearing，the children got exited.

If all the work is done，you can have a rest. = With all the work done，you can have a rest.

Nothing can live if there is no air. = Nothing can live without air.

（8）让步状语从句的主语与主句主语一致时，可简化为分词短语作状语；不一致时，常简化为 with 或 in spite of 介词短语作状语。例：

Although he faced his death，he didn’t say anything before the enemy.

= Facing the death，he didn’t say anything before the enemy.

Although there was danger，he rushed out to carry the boy to safety.

= In spite of danger，he rushed out to carry the boy to safety.

21.12 as 引导的让步状语从句的倒装

（1）形容词+as+主语+系动词。例：

Tired as he is，he offers to help me. 尽管他已经很累了，他还是主动提出帮助我。

（2）过去分词+as+主语+系动词。例：

Well-known as the book is，the author is not satisfied and prepared to revise it. 尽管这本书写得很好，作者还是不满意并打算修改它。

（3）名词+as+主语+系动词。例：

Student as he is，he does not study hard. 他虽然是个学生，但却不努力学习。

（4）副词+as+主语+谓语部分。例：

Much as I admire his courage，I don't think he acted wisely. 我虽然钦佩他的勇气，但我认为他这样做是不明智的。

（5）动词原形+as+主语+谓语的剩余部分。例：

Try as you will，you won't be able to persuade him. 不管你怎么努力，你都说服不了他。

【练习题】

1. ______he was listening to the music，John fell asleep.

A. After　　B. Before　　C. While　　D. As soon as

2. How did you try to get to school on time______you missed the school bus.

A. when　　B. how　　C. why　　D. that

3. He was riding to school______he was hit by a car this morning.

A while　　B. when　　C. as　　D. so

4. Lucy knew nothing about it______her sister told her.

A. because　　B. until　　C. if　　D. since

5. The policeman asked the child______cross the street_____the traffic lights turned green.

A. not；when　　B. don't；before

C. not to；until　　D. not to；since

6. The book was so interesting that he had read it for three hours_____________he realized it.

A. when　　B. after　　C. until　　D. before

7. ______we had seen all the animals，we went home.

A. Then　　B. After　　C. Though　　D. While

8. She has made many friends______she came to our school.

A. before　　B. after　　C. since　　D. until

9. —How long has the weather been like this? —____________.

A. Until last night　　B. Ever since last night

C. Two days ago　　D. Two days later

10. My uncle went to Australia last year. We haven't seen him______________.

A. since almost a year　　B. from almost a year on

C. after almost a year　　D. since almost a year ago

11. He was so tired that he fell asleep______he went to bed.

A. as if　　B. even though　　C. ever since　　D. as soon as

12. I knew nothing about the accident______my friend told me yesterday.

A. because　　B. since　　C. until　　D. after

13. I didn't manage to do it______you had explained how.

A. until　　B. since　　C. while　　D. after

【参考答案】

1—5　CABBA　　6—10　DBCBD　　11—13　DCA

【练习题】

1. It was quiet ________ those big trucks started coming through the town.
   A. before　B. after　C. until　D. unless
2. It seemed only seconds ________ the boy finished washing his face.
   A. when　B. before　C. after　D. even if
3. Hardly had he reached the school gate ________ the bell rang.
   A. while　B. when　C. as　D. as soon as
4. We were told that we should follow the main road _____ we reached the central railway station.
   A. whenever　B. until　C. while　D. wherever
5. I recognized you ________ I saw you at the airport.
   A. the moment　B. while　C. after　D. once
6. He was about to go to bed ________ the doorbell rang.
   A. while　B. as　C. before　D. when
7. ________I listen to your advice，I get into trouble.
   A. Every time　B. When　C. While　D. Until
8. _____ John was watching TV，his wife was cooking.
   A. As　B. As soon as　C. While　D. Till
9. The children ran away from the orchard（果园）______ they saw the guard.
   A. the moment　B. after　C. before　D. as
10. No sooner had I arrived home _____ it began to rain.
    A. when　B. while　C. as　D. than
11. Several weeks had gone by _____ I realized the painting was missing.
    A. as　B. before　C. since　D. when
12. It _____ long before we ____ the result of the experiment.
    A. will not be；will know　B. is；will know
    C. will not be；know　D. is；know
13. —What was the party like? —Wonderful. It's years _____ I enjoyed myself so much.
    A. after　B. before　C. when　D. since
14. The new secretary is supposed to report to the manager as soon as she_____.
    A. will arrive　B. arrives　C. is going to arrive　D. is arriving
15. _____ got into the room _____ the telephone rang.
    A. He hardly had；then　B. Hardly had he；when
    C. He had not；then　D. Not had he；when
16. No sooner had he finished his talk _____ he was surrounded by the workers.
    A. as　B. then　C. than　D. when
17. —Did you remember to give Mary the money you owed her? —Yes，I gave it to her _____ I saw her.
    A. while　B. the moment　C. suddenly　D. once
18. I thought her nice and honest _____ I met her.
    A. first time　B. for the first time　C. the first time　D. by the first time
19. He will have learned English for eight years by the time he _____ from the university next year.
    A. will graduate　B. will have graduated　C. graduates　D. is to graduate
20. The moment the 28th Olympic Games _____ open，the whole world cheered.
    A. declared　B. have been declared　C. have declared　D. were declared

【参考答案】

1—5　CBBBA　　6—10　DACAD　　11—15　BCDBB　　16—20　CBCCD

【全国高考汇编之状语从句】

1.（2014 安徽卷）25. The meaning of the word “nice” changed a few times________it finally came to include the sense “pleasant”.

A. before　　B. after　　C. since　　D. while

【考点】考察状语从句连词词义辨析。

【答案】A。

【解析】before 在……之前；after 在……之后；since 自从，既然；while 当……时；然而。句意：在“nice”这个词最后包括有“pleasant”的意义之前，它的意思已经变化了好几次了。本句中的副词 finally 说明最后 nice 包括有“pleasant”的意思，说明意义多次变化是之前发生的事情。根据句义说明 A 正确。

【举一反三】You can't borrow books from the school library ______ you get your student card.

A. before　　B. if　　C. while　　D. as

【答案】A。

【考点】本题考查状语从句的引导词。

【解析】该句的意思是：在你得到你的学生卡之前你不能从学校图书馆借书。所以选 before。

2.（2014 北京卷）29. _______ the forest park is far away，a lot of tourists visit it every year.

A. As　　B. When　　C. Even though　　D. In case

【考点】考察状语从句连词辨析。

【答案】C。

【解析】本题的状语从句连词都是常用的连词。as 由于，因为；随着；when 当……时；even though 即使，尽管；in case 以防。句意：即使那个森林公园很遥远，但是每年都有很多游客到那里参观。根据句意可知上下文之间有转折关系，所以使用 even though 表示让步转折关系。故 C 正确。

3.（2014 湖南卷）21. Children，when________by their parents，are allowed to enter the stadium.

A. to be accompanied　B. to accompany　　C. accompanying　　D. accompanied

【考点】考察状语从句和省略。

【答案】D。

【解析】本题考察的是状语从句的省略：当状语从句的主语和主句主语一致且含有 be 动词的时候，可以把状语从句的主语和 be 动词一起省略。本题在 when 的后面省略了 they are。因为 children 和动词 allow 构成被动关系，所以使用过去分词表示被动。句意：当孩子有父母亲陪伴的时候，他们是被允许进入体育馆的。故 D 正确。

【试题延伸】本题考察是状语从句的省略，实际上可以把 when 也省略掉，就变成了非谓语动词中的分词作状语的用法。

【举一反三】The experiment shows that proper amounts of exercise，if______regularly，can improve our health.

A. being carried out　　B. carrying out　　C. carried out　　D. to carry out

【答案】C。

【考点】本题考查 if 条件句中的省略情况。

【解析】本句的句子的主语是 the experiment，谓语动词是 shows，that 引导宾语从句，宾语从句的主干是：proper amounts of exercise can improve our health，if_____ regularly 是插入的条件从句，从句的主语是 proper amounts of exercise，此时应用 it 代替前面提到地主语，句的主语与主句的主语一致，并且含

有 is，故省略了 it is，完整形式是：if it is carried out。句意为：这项实验表明，适当的运动，如果有规律地进行，有助于我们的身体健康。

4.（2014 湖南卷）26. You will never gain success_________you are fully devoted to your work.

A. when B. because C. after D. unless

【考点】考察状语从句中的连词辨析。

【答案】D。

【解析】本句主要考察连词辨析。when 当……时；because 因为；after 在……之后；unless 除非，如果……不……；句意：如果你不能努力工作，你永远都成功不了。本句中的 unless 相当于 if……not……根据句意说明 D 正确。

【举一反三】It is hard for the Greek government to get over the present difficulties__________ gets more financial support from the European Union.

A. if B. unless C. because D. since

【考点】考查从句的连词。

【答案】B。

【解析】根据句意可知“除非有来自欧盟更多的经济支持，否则希腊政府很难克服目前的困难”，只能选择 unless“除非”才能使句意完整。考查状语从句的连词题事实上非常简单，只要找到句中的关键词，然后从句意上去排除就行了，本题关键词是 hard 和 more financial support。

5.（2014 江苏卷）21. Lessons can be learned to face the future，_________history cannot be changed.

A. though B. as C. since D. unless

【考点】考察状语从句连词辨析。

【答案】A。

【解析】本题考察的是状语从句的连词辨析。though 尽管；as 随着，因为；since 自从，既然；unless 除非，如果……不……；句意：尽管历史不能改变，但是为了面对未来我们还是要从历史中学会教训。根据句意可知上下文之间存在着转折关系，所以使用 though 表示让步和转折。故 A 正确。

【举一反三】It was a nice meal，________a little expensive.

A. though B. whether C. as D. since

【答案】A。

【考点】考查连词。句意：那顿饭真美味，尽管有点贵。though 尽管，引导让步状语从句，该句使用了省略形式，补全为“though it was a little expensive”。注意 as 也可以表示尽管，但 as 作此意时必须使用倒装结构。

6.（2014 江西卷）35. It was the middle of the night _____ my father woke me up and told me to watch the football game.

A. that B. as C. which D. when

【考点】考察状语从句。

【答案】D。

【解析】本句中的 when 引导的是一个时间状语从句。句意：当我的父亲把我叫醒并让我看足球赛的时候，那时在半夜。本句容易错选 A 项，认为是强调句型。实际上 the middle of the night 不能单独作时间状语，如果在 the middle of the night 前面加上 in，本题就可以选择 A 项了。故 D 正确。

7.（2014 山东卷）2. I don’t really like the author，________I have to admit his books are very exciting.

A. although B. unless C. until D. once

【考点】考察状语从句连词辨析。

【答案】A。

【解析】本题考察的是状语从句的连词表示。although 尽管；unless 除非，如果……不……；until 直到……才……；once 一旦。句意：尽管我承认这本书很精彩，但是我并不喜欢这本书的作者。根据句意

可知上下文之间存在这转折关系，四个选项中只有 A 项表示上下文的转折。故 A 正确。

【试题延伸】此题主要考查连词的辨析，选择连词主要是看前后句的关系，因果关系用表因果的连词，转折关系用转折连词，并列关系用并列连词，要求考生具有一定的句子分析能力和词义辨析能力。

【举一反三】I don't believe we've met before，_______I must say you do look familiar.

A. therefore　　B. although　　C. since　　D. unless

【答案】B。

【解析】句意：尽管我真的觉得你确实看起来熟悉，但我相信我们以前没见过面。根据句意可知只有 although 符合题意。

8.（2014 陕西卷）24. The young couple，who returned my lost wallet，left ____ I could ask for their names.

A. while　　B. before　　C. after　　D. since

【考点】考察状语从句连词辨析。

【答案】B。

【解析】本题考察的是状语从句连词辨析。while 当……时；然而；before 在……之前；after 在……之后；since 自从；before 有多种不同的翻译方法。句意：归还我丢掉的钱包的那对年轻夫妻在我问他们名字之前就离开了。故 B 正确。

【举一反三】You can't borrow books from the school library ______ you get your student card.

A. before　　B. if　　C. while　　D. as

【答案】A。

【考点】本题考查状语从句的引导词。

【解析】句意：在你得到你的学生卡之前你不能从学校图书馆借书。所以选 before。

22 直接引语与间接引语

直接引语是直接引述别人的原话，原话要有引号。直接引语变间接引语实际上是转述他人的陈述、疑惑或问题，不用引号。间接引语在多数情况下构成宾语从句。

22.1 直接引语与间接引语的转换

在将直接引语转换为间接引语时，不仅句式上要有变化，而且要在时态、人称、时间、地点等方面做相应的变化。

1. 引语转换时的句式变化

不同的直接引语句式，如陈述句、疑问句、祈使句和感叹句，转换成间接引语时要遵循一定的句式转换规则，还要注意根据句意，使用适当的引述动词。

（1）陈述句的间接引语。

将陈述句转换为间接引语，通常用 that 引导的宾语从句来表达。连词 that 在不引起歧义的情况下可以省略。引述分句的动词常见的有 say 和 tell 等。如：

He said，“I caught a cold yesterday.”

他说：“我昨天感冒了。”

→ He said（that）he had caught a cold the day before.

他说他前天感冒了。

Helen said to me，“I'm tired of taking such exams.”

海伦说：“我讨厌参加这种考试。”

→ Helen told me（that）she was tired of taking such exams.

海伦说她讨厌参加这种考试。

【小贴士】

间接引语中不用 say to sb.，要用 tell sb.来引述。

【点津坊】

在下列情况下，往往要保留 that。

① that 的省略会产生歧义。如：

Linda said disappointedly that when she arrived at the station，the train had already left.

琳达很失望地说，她到达车站时火车已经开走了。（如不用 that，when 状语从句既可以理解为修饰 said，又可以理解为修饰 had left）

② 当引述动词后面不止跟一个 that 引导的从句时，第二个 that 不能省略。如：

He said（that）he was leaving for Europe the next week and that he would stay there for half a year. 他说他下周要到欧洲去并在那里待半年。（第二个 that 不能省略）

（2）疑问句的间接引语。

直接引语如果是疑问句，变成间接引语后，叫作间接问句。引述的动词常用 ask，inquire，wonder，want to know 等。间接问句的词序一般都用正常词序，句末不用问号，用句号。

① 一般疑问句的间接引语。

直接引语为一般疑问句时，用连词 whether 或 if 引导，某些表示请求的疑问句也可以转换成间接祈使句。如：

I asked him，“Are you satisfied with the results?”

我问他：“你对这结果满意吗？”

→ I asked him whether he was satisfied with the results.

我问他对这结果是否满意。

“Did you go to the British Museum yesterday?” asked Kate.

凯特问：“你昨天有没有去大英博物馆？”

Kate asked me if I had gone to the British Museum the day before.

→ 凯特问我昨天有没有去大英博物馆。

The old man said to a passer-by，“Will you tell me the way to get to the Great Wall Hotel?”

那位老人跟一位过路人说：“请问到长城饭店的路怎么走。”

→ The old man asked a passer-by to tell him the way to the Great Wall Hotel.

那位老人请一位过路人告诉他去长城饭店的路。

【小贴士】

引述词 say to oneself 常改成 wonder。如：

I said to myself，“Am I fit for the job?”

I wondered if I was fit for the job. 我不知道我是否能胜任这项工作。

② 选择疑问句的间接引语。

直接引语为选择疑问句时，用连词 whether/if...or...引导。如：

He said，“Are you interested in English or not?” 他说：“你是否对英语感兴趣?”

→ He asked（me）whether I was interested in English or not. 他问我是否对英语感兴趣。

“Do you like Chinese food or Japanese food?” he asked. 他问：“你喜欢中国食物还是日本食物？”

→ He asked whether/if I liked Chinese food or Japanese food. 他问我喜欢中国食物还是日本食物。

③ 特殊疑问句的间接引语。

直接引语为特殊疑问句，转换为间接引语时，仍用原来的疑问词引导。如：

“What do you do in your free time?” he asked me. 他问我：“你业余时间干什么？”

→ He asked me what I did in my free time. 他问我业余时间做什么。

“Why did she go to America?” Paul asked. 保罗问：“她为什么去美国？”

→ Paul asked why she had gone to AmericA. 保罗问她为什么去了美国。

【小贴士】

“What’s the matter with you?” 和 “What’s wrong with you?” 改为间接引语时词序不变。如：

He asked me what was wrong with me. 他问我出什么事了。

He asked me what was the matter with me. 他问我怎么了。

（3）祈使句的间接引语。

直接引语如果是祈使句，变成间接引语后，叫间接祈使句。

① 祈使句表示命令时，要把直接引语的动词 say 变成 command，order，tell 等动词，被转述的部分改为动词不定式。否定祈使句改为 not to do 结构。如：

“Stay where you are，” she said.她说：“待在原地。”

→ She told me to stay where I was. 她告诉我待在原地。

“Don’t smoke in the room，” he said. 他说：“别在房间里抽烟。”

→ He told me not to smoke in the room. 她叫我别在房间里抽烟。

② 祈使句表示请求时，常把直接引语的动词 say 变成 ask，beg，request，urge 等动词。如：

She said to me，“Please wait till I return，will you?”她说：“请你一直等到我回来，好吗？”

→ She begged me to wait till she returned. 她请求我一直要等到她回来。

③ 以 let's 开头的祈使句，通常将引述动词改为 suggest，然后再接 that 从句。如：

John said to Bill，“Let's go hiking tomorrow.”约翰对比尔说，“我们明天去徒步旅行吧。”

→ John suggested to Bill that they（should）go hiking the next day. 约翰向比尔提议第二天去徒步旅行。

（4）感叹句的间接引语。

直接引语是感叹句，变成间接引语后，叫作间接感叹句。间接感叹句多采用宾语从句结构，既可用 what 或 how 引导，也可用 that 引导，还可以根据句子表达的不同感情选用适当的动词和状语来转换。如：

He said，“What a beautiful view it is!”他说：“多么漂亮的景色！”

→ He said that it was a very beautiful view. 他说景色非常漂亮。

→ He cried out what a beautiful view it was. 他大声说这景色是多么的漂亮。

She often says，“What a great country China is!”她常说：“中国是一个多么伟大的国家！”

→ She often says that China is a very great country. 她常说中国是一个非常伟大的国家。

→ She often remarks with admiration（that）China is a great country. 她常常赞赏地说中国多么伟大。

（5）并列句和复合句的间接引语。

当转述的内容为并列句或复合句，或有两种以上的句子时，应根据不同的句式来选择不同的引述动词和连接词。如：

He said，“I told her to wait，but she went away.”他说：“我告诉她等一下，但她还是走了。”

→ He said（that）he had told her to wait but that she went away. 他说他已经告诉她等一下，但她还是走了。

She said，“It is cold here. Is the window shut?”她说：“这儿很冷。窗户关了吗？”

→ She said that it was cold there and asked if the window was shut. 她说那儿很冷，并问窗户是否关了。

Fenwick said to me，“Go and see Robin. He will tell you everything you want to know.” 芬威克对我说：“去看看罗宾吧，他会告诉你想要知道的事情。”

→ Fenwick advised me to go and see Robin，and said that he would tell me everything I wanted to know. 芬威克建议我去看罗宾，因为他会告诉我想要知道的事情。

22.2 引语转换时的各种相应变化

直接引语转换成间接引语除了有句式的变化外，还要掌握动词时态、人称代词、指示代词、时间状语、地点状语和词序的变化（详见表 22-1）。

表 22-1　引语转换时的各种相应变化

		直接引语要变项	间接引语
主句中的谓语动词	时态	一般现在时→	一般过去时
		一般过去时→	过去完成时
		现在完成时→	过去完成时
		现在进行时→	过去进行时
		一般将来时→	过去将来时
		过去完成时→	过去完成时
	情态动词	can/may→	could/might
		shall/will→	should/would
		must→	had to（must）

续表

	直接引语要变项	间接引语
指示代词	this/these→	that/those
地点状语	here→	there
方向性动词	come/bring→	go/take
时间状语	now 现在→	then 那时
	today 今天→	that day 那天
	tonight 今晚→	that night 那天晚上
	tomorrow 明天→	the next（following）day
	yesterday 昨天→	the day before 前一天
	last night（week）昨晚、上周→	the night（week）before
	next week/month 下周，下个月→	the next week/month
	ago……前→	before
	the day before yesterday 前天→	two days before
	the day after tomorrow 后天→	in tow day’s time

1. 动词时态的变化

（1）如果引述动词为现在时态，间接引语的动词可以保持原来的时态。如：

He says,“I have been writing a novel.” 他说：“我一直在写一本小说。”

→ He says that he has been writing a novel. 他说他一直在写一本小说。

（2）如果引述动词为过去时态，间接引语中的时间就要往后推，即现在时间推至过去时间，过去时间推至过去的过去，将来时间推至过去将来时间。具体变化见表 22-2。

表 22-2　动词时态的变化

直接引语时态	间接引语时态
一般现在时	一般过去时
现在进行时	过去进行时
现在完成时	过去完成时
现在完成进行时	过去完成进行时
一般过去时	过去完成时
过去完成时	过去完成时
一般将来时	过去将来时
将来进行时	过去将来进行时

The teacher said,“You are doing OK.” 老师说：“你们干得很不错。”

→ The teacher said we were doing OK. 老师说我们干得很不错。（现在进行时变为过去进行时）

I asked her,“Where have you spent your holiday?” 我问她：“你去哪里度假了？”

→ I asked her where she had spent her holiday. 我问她去哪里度假了。（现在完成时变为过去完成时）

She said,“I went to Shanghai.” 她说：“我去过上海。”

→ She said that she had gone to Shanghai. 她说她去过上海。（过去时变为过去完成时）

He said，“I had finished my work before 10 o’clock.” 他说：“我在十点钟前就完成工作了。”

→ He said that he had finished his work before 10 o’clock.

他说他在十点钟前就完成工作了。（过去完成时不变）

The mayor said：“The people of Beijing will be preparing to light the Olympic torch to welcome athletes and fans from all over the world.” 这位市长说：“北京人民将准备点燃奥运火炬来迎接来自全世界的运动员和运动迷。”

→ The mayor said that the people of Beijing would be preparing to light the Olympic torch to welcome athletes and fans from all over the world. 这位市长说北京人民将准备点燃奥运火炬来迎接来自全世界的运动员和运动迷。（将来进行时变为过去将来进行时）

2. 情态动词的变化

在间接引语中，有些情态动词没有过去式，转换为间接引语时仍用原来的形式，或用其他表示法（见表 22-3）。

表 22-3　情态动词的变化

直接引语	间接引语
must（必然）（推测）	must
mustn’t（禁止）	mustn’t
must（必须）	had to/would have to
shall	should
should	should
will	would
would	would
may	might
might	might
can	could
could	could
dare	dared
need	need
ought to	ought to

He said，“I really must go.” 他说：“我一定得走了。”

→ He said that he really must go. 他说他一定得走了。

“Must we hand in our exercise this afternoon?” he asked.他问：“我们得今天下午交作业吗？”

→ He asked if they had to hand in the exercise that afternoon. 他问他们是否那天下午得交作业。

“You need not take an umbrella with you，” he said. 他说：“你不用带雨伞。”

→ He said that I need not take an umbrella with me. 他说我不用带雨伞。

【点津坊】

因为人称发生了变化，在直接引语中可用 shall 或 should，而在间接引语中则用 would。如：

“I should be glad to come.”“我会很愿意来的。”

→ He said he would be glad to come. 他说他会很愿意来。

3. 人称代词的变化

人称代词要以转述者的立场做适当的改变。改变方式通常与汉语基本相同，即第一、三人称转换成第三人称；第二人称转换成第一、三人称。如：

"I'm fond of surfing the Internet," he said. 他说："我喜欢网上冲浪。"

→ He said he was fond of surfing the Internet. 他说他喜欢网上冲浪。

"You should pay more attention to your pronunciation," the teacher said.老师说："你应该更注意你的发音。"

→ The teacher said that I should pay more attention to my pronunciation. 老师说我应该更注意我的发音。

【小贴士】

如果说话人引述自己的话，人称代词不必改动。如：

I said, "I had a good time at the party." 我说："我在晚会上玩得很开心。"

I said that I had had a good time at the party. 我说我在晚会上玩得很开心。

4. 指示代词的变化

在间接引语中，指示代词 this 转换成 that，these 转换成 those。如：

He said, "Please show me this one." 他说："请拿这个给我看一下。"

→ He asked me to show him that one. 他要我拿那个给他看一下。

He said, "I'd like to see these sunglasses." 他说："我想看这些太阳镜"

→ He said that he wanted to see those sunglasses. 他说他想看那些太阳镜。

5. 时间状语和地点状语的变化

根据转述时间和地点的不同，时间状语和地点状语存在较多的变化（详见表 22-4）。

表 22-4　时间状语和地点状语的变化

直接引语	间接引语
today	that day
this morning/afternoon/evening	that morning/afternoon/evening
yesterday	the day before, the previous day
yesterday morning/afternoon etc.	the previous morning/afternoon etc. the morning before, the afternoon before
the day before yesterday	two days before
tomorrow	the next day, the following day
the day after tomorrow	in two days' time, two days after
next week/month/year etc.	the next week/month/year, etc. the following week/month/year etc.
last night/month/year, etc.	the previous night/month/year etc. the night before, the month before etc.
two weeks/months/years ago	the weeks before, two months before
now	then
so far	by then
in 1990	in 1990
here	there

“We’ll leave here tomorrow,” he said. 他说：“我们明天离开这里。”

→ He said that they would leave there the next day. 他说他们将在第二天离开那里。

“I met him the day before yesterday,” she said. 她说：“我前天遇见过他。”

→ She said that she had met him two days before. 她说她前两天遇见过他。

6. 间接引语的词序变化

直接引语为疑问句时，间接引语要把倒装词序变为正常词序。如：

He asked, “How did these differences come about?” 他问：“这些不同之处是如何产生的？”

→ He asked how those differences had come about. 他问那些不同之处是如何产生的。

“What is adventure travel?” he asked. 他问：“冒险旅游是什么？”

→ He asked what adventure travel was. 他问什么是冒险旅游。

【试题播报】

No one can be sure__________ in a million years.

A. what man will look like　　B. what will man look like

C. man will look like what　　D. what look will man like

【分析】本题考查宾语从句的词序。宾语从句引导词为 what，充当介词 like 的宾语，先排除 C 项。B 和 D 的词序仍是疑问句的倒装词序。故本题正确答案是 A。

22.3　引语转换应注意的事项

直接引语转换成间接引语要遵循一些最基本的规则，特别是时态的前后呼应及人称代词、时间状语、地点状语的变化。掌握好一些“变化”和“不变化”的规则，有助于准确地进行交际。

1. 时态不用变化

如果引述动词为过去时，间接引语中动词的形式则在下列情况下不用变化：

（1）直接引语如果是表达客观真理、格言时。如：

He said, “Well done **is** better than well said.” 他说：“说得好不如做得好。”

→ He said that well done **is** better than well said.他说说得好不如做得好。

（2）直接引语中谓语动词如是虚拟语气，变成间接引语后仍用原来形式。如：

“I advise that you stop smoking,” the doctor said. 医生说：“我劝你戒烟。”

→ The doctor advised that he stop smoking. 医生劝他戒烟。

（3）直接引语中的谓语动词与具体时间状语连用时，间接引语时态可不变。如：

He told me, “*Jurassic Park* was made by Spielberg in 1993.” 他告诉我：“《侏罗纪公园》是斯皮尔伯格于 1993 年拍摄的。”

→ He told me that *Jurassic Park* was made by Spielberg in 1993.

他告诉我《侏罗纪公园》是斯皮尔伯格于 1993 年拍摄的。

（4）直接引语中的时间状语为过去时形式，引语中状语从句的谓语动词时态通常不变。如：

Mr. Smith said, “When we lived in that city, we often met each other.”

史密斯先生说：“当我们住在那个城市时，我们经常见面。”

→ Mr. Smith said that when they lived in that city they had often met each other.

史密斯先生说当他们住在那个城市时，他们经常见面。

（5）当引语表达的动作或状态现在仍然存在时，从句的谓语动词可不用变化。如：

Our teacher said，“Eco-travel is a form of travel that combines normal tourism with learning.”
我们老师说：“生态旅游是一种结合一般旅游和学习的旅游。”
→ Our teacher said that eco-travel is a form of travel that combines normal tourism with learning.
我们老师说生态旅游是一种结合一般旅游和学习的旅游。
（6）当引述动词用现在时形式时，引语中的时态不需要改动。如：
He says，“I have accepted her invitation.” 他说：“我已经接受她的邀请了。”
→ He says that he has accepted her invitation. 他说他已经接受她的邀请了。

2. 时间状语、地点状语不用变化

（1）如果说话时间和引述时间相同（如同一天，同一月等），时间状语可不变。如：
“I finished writing my paper yesterday，” he said today. 他今天说：“我昨天写完论文了。”
→ He told me today that he finished writing the paper yesterday. 他今天说他昨天写完论文了。
（2）转述的地点不变时，地点状语 here 不必改为 there。如：
He said，“I enjoy my stay here.” 他说：“我在这里逗留期间玩得很开心。”
→ He said that he enjoyed his stay here. 他说他在这里逗留期间玩得很开心。

3. 引述动词的变化

为了让表达更丰富多彩，引述动词除了常见的 tell，ask，say 外，根据不同句式还可以选用表 22-5 中的动词。

表 22-5 引述动词的变化

句式		常见的引述动词
祈使句	表请求	ask，beg，request
	表命令	command，order，tell
	表建议	suggest，advise
	表提醒	remind
	表提供帮助	offer
疑问句	一般语体	ask，wonder，want to know
	正式语体	inquire/enquire
感叹句		cry，shout，exclaim，call out，admit，wish…
陈述句	带双宾语（可用 for 改写）	bring，buy，choose，cook，do，fetch，get，leave，make，order，paint，play，reach，save，spare…
	带双宾语（可用 to 改写）	bring，deny，do，give，grant，hand，lead，offer，owe，pass，pay，permit，promise，read，refuse，return，sell，send，show，take，tell，throw，write…

The boy said to his mother，“I’ll never smoke again.” 那男孩子对他母亲说：“今后我决不再吸烟了。”
→ The boy promised his mother never to smoke again.那男孩向他母亲保证不再吸烟。
“Call the police，Sean，” he said. 他说：“肖恩，叫警察。”
→ He ordered Sean to call the police. 他命令肖恩叫警察。（表命令的祈使句）
“Don’t forget to buy me some ketchup on your way home，” said Mother. 妈妈说：“别忘了在回家的路上帮我买些番茄汁。”
→ Mother reminded me not to forget to buy her some ketchup on my way home. 妈妈提醒我别忘了在

回家路上帮她买些番茄汁。（表提醒的祈使句）

"Shall I post these letters for you?" he asked. 他问："要我帮忙把这些信寄出去吗？"

→ He offered to post those letters for me. 他提出要帮我寄出那些信。（表提供帮助的祈使句）

"Does she really mean it?" he asked. 他问："她真的是这个意思吗？"

→ He wondered/wanted to know whether/if she really meant it. 他想知道她是否真的是这意思。（疑问句）

4. 间接引语的句式变化

为了使表达更生动、更准确，在进行直接引语和间接引语转换时，可注意使用不同的句式，这对提高表达能力的档次很有帮助。如：

"Merry Christmas!" he said. 他说："圣诞快乐！"

→ He wished me a merry Christmas. 他祝我圣诞快乐。

"Help!" he cried. 他喊道："救命啊！"

→ He called for help. 他大声呼救。

Mr. Wu said to them, "You'd better make preparations for the exam." 吴老师对他们说："你们最好为考试做准备。"

→ Mr. Wu advised them to make preparations for the exam. 吴老师劝他们为考试做好准备。

He said, "I did break the window." 他说："我的确打烂了那个玻璃窗。"

→ He admitted having broken the window. 他承认打烂了那个玻璃窗。

"Don't walk on the ice. It isn't safe," Mother said to us. 妈妈对我们说："不要在冰上行走，不安全！"

→ Mother warned us not to walk on the ice since it wasn't safe. 妈妈告诫我们不要在冰上行走因为不安全。

"Have a cigarette," he said. "No, thanks," I replied. "抽支烟吧？" 他说。"不，谢谢！"我回答道。

→ He offered me a cigarette which I refused. 他给我一支烟，我谢绝了。

【训练大本营】

一、选择填空。

1. He asked _________ for the violin.
   A. did I pay how much　　B. I paid how much
   C. how much did I pay　　D. how much I paid
2. Can you make sure _______ the gold ring?
   A. where Alice has put　　B. where had Alice put
   C. where Alice had put　　D. where has Alice put
3. These photos will show you __________.
   A. what does our village look like　　B. what our village looks like
   C. how our village look like　　D. how our village looks like
4. You can't imagine _______ when they received these nice Christmas presents.
   A. how they were excited　　B. how excited they were
   C. how excited were they　　D. they were how excited
5. ______ she said suggested that she hadn't decided _________ to go or not.
   A. What; if　　B. That; whether　　C. What; whether　　D. What; whichever
6. I'll ask my parents _________.
   A. whether they will agree to go　　B. if they let me go
   C. if they will let me go　　D. whether they allow me to

7. —Do you mind if Jim will come to help?
   —I really don't know ________ a person like him can help me with.
   A. what　　B. that　　C. how　　D. if
8. He asked me if ______________.
   A. the train will late　　B. the train always arrived late
   C. the train arrives on time　　D. the train stops here
9. It is said in the book that Thomas Edison(1847—1931)____ the world leading inventor for sixty years.
   A. would be　　B. has been　　C. had been　　D. was
10. —Sorry to have interrupted you. Please go on.
    —Where was I?
    —You _______ you didn't like your father's job.
    A. had said　　B. said　　C. were saying　　D. had been saying

二、把下列直接引语变成间接引语。

1. "You have done a good job," said the teacher.
2. He said, "I'll help you with it later."
3. "Be careful with the dog," I said.
4. "Are you sure about this?" ha asked.
5. She asked, "What's the matter with you?"
6. He said, "We met in 2002. We have been friends for two years."
7. He asked, "Alice, where did you buy it?"
8. "How wonderful the journey is!" he said.
9. "Tom, don't forget to take your raincoat," he said.
10. "Why do you come so late?" Mary asked.

【参考答案】

一、

1—5　DABBC　　6—10　CAADC

二、

1. The teacher said that I had done a good job.
2. He said that he would help me with it later.
3. I warned him to be careful with the dog.
4. He asked me if I was sure about that.
5. She asked what was the matter with me.
6. He said that they met in 2002 and that they had been friends for two years.
7. He asked where Alice bought it.
8. He said that the journey was wonderful.
   He exclaimed how wonderful the journey was.
9. He reminded Tom to take his raincoat.
10. Marry wanted to know why he came so late.

【强化训练】

一、将下列直接引语变成间接引语。

1. He said, "I've left my book in my room."

2. She asked me，“Is this book yours or his?”
3. The teacher asked，“How did you repair it?”
4. She said，“He will be busy.”
5. She said to Tom，“Can you help me?”
6. The teacher said，“The earth goes round the sun.”
7. My father said，“Practice makes perfect.”
8. The boy said to us，“I usually get up at six every day.”
9. He said，“We are still students.”
10. He said to me，“I was born in 1978.”
11. He said，“I have studied English since 2000.”
12. I said to him，“I have finished it.”
13. She said to us，“I'll come here tomorrow.”
14. “Where does your chemistry teacher live，Jane?” the young man asked.
15. “I have gotten the first place in the mathematics competition，” the little boy said happily.
16. “Light travels faster than sound，” the physics teacher said to the boys and girls.
17. “Will you go to the concert with me this evening?” Mary asked me.
18. “What did you do here yesterday?” the old man asked my brother.

【参考答案】

1. He told me that he had left his book in his room.
2. She asked me whether that book was mine or his.
3. The teacher asked me how I had repaired it.
4. She said that he would be busy.
5. She asked Tom whether he can help her.
6. The teacher said that the earth goes round the sun.
7. My father said practice makes perfect.
8. The boy told us he usually gets up at six every day.
9. He said they are still students.
10. He told me that he was born in 1978.
11. He said he had studied English since 2000.
12. I told him I had finished it.
13. She told us she would come here tomorrow
14. The young man asked Jane where her chemistry teacher lived.
15. The little boy said happily that he had gained the first place in the mathematics competition.
16. The physics teacher told the boys and girls that light travels faster than sound.
17. Mary asked me if/whether I would go to the concert with her that evening.
18. The old man asked my brother what he had done there the day before.

二、单项选择。

1. He asked ________ for the computer.

A. did I pay how much　　B. I paid how much

C. how much did I pay　　D. how much I paid

2. “Have you seen the film?” he asked me. →He asked me _______.

A. had I seen the film　　B. have I seen the film

C. if I have seen the film　　D. whether I had seen the film

3. “Please close the window，” he said to me. →He ______ me _____ the window.

A. said to；to close B. told to；closing C. asked；to close D. said to；please close

4. “I am a teacher，” Jack said. →He said __________.

A. that I am a teacher B. I was a teacher C. that he is a teacher D. he was a teacher

5. He said，“Mother，the boy is very naughty.” →He _____very naughty.

A. said his mother that the boy was B. said to his mother that the boy is

C. told his mother that the boy was D. spoke to his mother that the boy was

6. “You've already got well，haven't you?” she asked. →She asked _________.

A. if I have already got well，hadn't you B. whether I had already got well

C. have I already got well D. had I already got well.

7. He asked，“Are you a Party member or a League member?” →He asked me __________.

A. am I a Party member or a League member B. was I a Party member or a League member

C. if I was a Party member or a League member D. whether was I a Party member or a League member.

8. He asked，“How are you getting along?” →He asked _______.

A. how am I getting along B. how are you getting along

C. how I was getting along D. how was I getting along

9. He asked me ________ with me.

A. what the matter is B. what the mater was

C. what's the matter D. what was the matter

10. He said，“Don't do that again.” →He _____ me _______ that again.

A. said to me；not to do B. said to me；don't do

C. told me；don't do D. told me；not to do

11. He asked me __________.

A. if she will come B. how many books I want to have

C. they would help me to do it D. how it happened

【答案与简析】

1. D。宾语从句要用陈述句语序。

2. D。一般疑问句要变成 whether 或 if 引导的宾语从句。

3. C。直接引语为祈使句，变间接引语时，主句中的谓语动词往往根据直接引语的口气换用 ask（请求），tell（告诉），order（命令），invite（邀请），warn（警告），advise（建议）等，而直接引语中的谓语动词要变成动词不等式，即 ask/tell/order/invite/warn/advise sb.（not）to do sth.。

4. D。直接引语为陈述句，变间接引语时用 that 引导（口语中常省略）。

5. C。

6. B。反义疑问句要变成 whether 或 if 引导的宾语从句。

7. C。选择疑问句要变成 whether 或 if 引导的宾语从句。

8. C。直接引语为特殊疑问句，变间接引语时，用特殊疑问词引导，并将疑问句语序变为陈述句语序。

9. D。注意时态的一致。What 作主语，the matter（=wrong）作表语。

10. D。直接引语为祈使句，变间接引语时，主句中的谓语动词往往根据直接引语的口气换用。

11. D。

三、请把下面的直接引语变成间接引语。

1. He said: “I've left my book in my room.”

He told me that ________ _________ left _______ book in _________ room.

2. She said: “He will be busy.”

She said that _______ _________ be busy.

3. She said to Tom, “Can you help me?”
   She asked Tom __________ ___________ _________ help her.
4. She asked, “Is this book yours or his?”
   She asked _______ whether _________ book __________ _________ or his.
5. The teacher asked, “How did you repair it?”
   The teacher asked me ________________________..
6. The teacher said to the students, “Don’t waste your time.”
   The teacher told the students _______________________
7. The mother said, “Tom, get up early, please.”
   The mother asked Tom____________________________.
8. The teacher said, “The earth goes round the sun.”
   The teacher said that the earth ___________round the sun.
9. My father said, “Practice makes perfect.”
   My father said _____________________.
10. The boy said to us, “ I usually get up at six every day.”
   The boy told us _______usually_______up at six every day.
11. He said, “We are still students.’
   He said ________are still students.
12. He said to me, “I was born in 1978.”
   He told me that_________ was born in 1978.
13. The engineer said, “I was at college in 1967.”
   The engineer said_________ was at college in 1967.
14. He said, “I have studied English since I was a boy.”
   He said he _______ _____________ English since __________ was a boy.
15. She said, “I read the book while I was waiting for a bus.
   She said _________ _______ ________ the book while________ was waiting for a bus.
16. Mr. Green said to them, “Joe told me all about his story when he asked for a job.”
   Mr. Green told them _______ had told _______ all about_______ story when _______ asked for a job.
17. He said, “We insisted that she start immediately.
   He said ________ insisted that she start immediately.
18. She said, “He demanded that the girl leave at once.”
   She said ________ demanded that the girl leave at once.
19. I said to him, “I have finished it.”
   I told him __________ ________ finished it.
20. She said to us,“ I’ll come here tomorrow.”
   She told us ________ __________ come here. __________ _________ __________.

23　强调、替代、省略和倒装

23.1　强　调

23.1.1　强调的定义

强调是一种修辞，是人们为了表达自己的意愿或情感而使用的一种形式。人们在交际的过程中，为了使自己的思想能为听者或读者恰当地理解，为了突出重要的内容，就需要运用强调的手段。

23.1.2　强调的构成

在现代英语中，人们可以通过语音手段、词汇手段、语法手段来进行强调。

1. 语音手段

“He speaks English well.”在口语中，人们可以根据交流的需要，通过语句重音来对不同的词语进行强调。这句话，可以通过语句重音来分别对不同的词进行强调。如：

A：We need a good student to host the evening party.
B：Well，he speaks English well.
A：He’s been living in Canada for years.
B：He speaks English well but his writing is not very good.
A：He speaks fluent French.
B：He speaks English well，too.
A：Do you think he is fit for the job?
B：Certainly. He speaks English well.

2. 词汇手段

人们常用一些形容词、副词、否定词等来加强语气。如：

This is a most interesting TV play.
Grace is tall，but Catherine is still taller.
War and peace is the best novel that l have ever read.
The last thing that a lazy student wishes is examination.
At that very moment the policemen came.
I can’t even remember the name of that old friend of mine.
Where in the world did you go just now?
What on earth are you doing?
She’s not in the least angry with me.

The president himself will chair the meeting.

3. 语法手段

（1）用 It is/was...that/who...句型表示强调。

被强调的部分通常是句子的主语、状语、宾语或宾语补足语放在 is/was 的后面，如被强调的是人，则后面可用 who，whom 等代替。如：

He met an old friend in the park yesterday.

① 强调主语。如：

It was he who/that met an old friend in the park yesterday.

② 强调宾语。如：

It was an old friend that/who he met in the park yesterday.

He met an old friend in the park yesterday.

③ 强调地点状语。如：

It was in the park that he met an old friend yesterday.

④ 强调时间状语。如：

It was yesterday that he met an old friend in he park.

（2）用助动词 do，does 或 did 来强调谓语动词。如：

Do come early.

He did send you a letter last week.

We're pleased that she does intend to come.

（3）用主语从句+be+被强调部分，主语从句常用 what 引导。如：

John wants a ball.

→What John wants is a ball.

Mary gives piano lessons every day.

→What Mary does every day is（to）give piano lessons.

4. 用修辞疑问句表示强调

疑问句转用作加强语气的陈述句时，即可称为修辞性疑问句。需要注意的是：肯定的修辞疑问句其意义相当于强调的否定陈述句；而否定的修辞疑问句其意义则相当于强调的肯定陈述句。如：

Can anyone doubt the truth of his statement? =Surely no one can/would doubt it.

谁能怀疑他陈述的真实性？

Who doesn't know the sun rises in the east? =Everyone knows...

谁不知道太阳从东方升起？

5. 改变句子结构或颠倒正常语序来进行强调

Never will China be the first to use nuclear weapons.

Only in this way can we catch up with and surpass the world's advanced level of science and technology.

Happy are those who are content. 知足常乐。

23.1.3 强调句的几种结构

（1）用助动词“do（does/did）+动词原形”来表示强调。如：

He does know the place well.他的确很熟悉这个地方。

Do write to me when you get there.你到那儿后务必给我来信。

（2）用形容词 very，only，single，such 等修饰名词或形容词来加强语气。如：

That's the very textbook we used last term. 这正是我们上学期用过的教材。

You are the only person here who can speak Chinese. 你是这里唯一会讲汉语的人。

Not a single person has been in the shop this morning. 今天上午这个商店里连一个人都没有。

How dare you buy such expensive jewels? 你怎么敢买这么贵的宝石呢？

（3）用 ever，never，very，just 等副词和 badly，highly，really 等带有-ly 的副词来进行强调。如：

Why ever did you do so?你究竟为什么要这么做？

He never said a word the whole day. 一整天，他一句话也没说。

You've got to be very，very careful. 你一定得非常非常小心。

This is just what I wanted. 这正是我所要的。

He was badly wounded. 他伤得很严重。

I really don't know what to do next. 我的确不知道下一步该怎么做。

（4）用 in the world，on earth，at all 等介词短语可以表达更强的语气（常用于疑问句）。如：

Where in the world could he be? 他到底会在哪儿？

What on earth is it? 它究竟是什么？

Do you know at all? 你到底知不知道？

（5）用感叹句来表示强烈的感情，突出说话人的情感。如：

How interesting a story it is! 这是一个多么有趣的故事啊！

Oh，what a lie! 啊，真是弥天大谎！

（6）用重复来表示强调。如：

Why! Why! The cage is empty! 啊！啊！箱子是空的。

They walked for miles and miles. 他们走了好多英里。

（7）用倒装句，也就是将要强调的句子或被强调的部分置于句首来加强语气。如：

On the table were some flowers. 桌上摆着一些花。（强调地点）

Many a time have I climbed that hill. 我多次翻过那座山。

Only in this way can we solve this problem. 只有这样，我们才能解决这个问题。

（8）用强调句型"it is（was）+被强调的部分+that（who）+原句其他部分"来强调说话人的意愿。如：

It was on Monday night that all this happened. 所有这一切发生在同一晚上。

It's me that he blame. 他怪的是我。

一般来讲，原句的谓语动词如果是现在或将来各种时态，用 It is…that（who）…；如果原句谓语动词是过去各种时态，则用 It was…that（who）…。

另外，还有下面几点需要特别注意：

① 在强调主语时，that 后的谓语动词要与被强调者保持人称和数的一致。如：

It is I who am a teacher.

② 即使被强调的主语是复数，主句中的谓语动词也用单数。如：

It is they who often help me with my lessons.

③ 在强调时间、地点、原因或方式状语时，不要用 when，where，why 或 how，而用 that。如：

It was because her mother was ill that she didn't go with us.

④ 在强调 not...until 结构中由 until 短语（或从句）表示的时间状语时，要用固定的强调句型 It is（was）not until ...that...。that 从句中的谓语动词用肯定式。如：

My father didn't come home until 12 o'clock last night.

It was not until 12 o'clock last night that my father came home.

⑤ 在强调一般疑问句中的某一成分时，主句要用一般疑问句的语序，即把 is/was 提到 it 前面。如：

Did this happen in Beijing?

Was it in Beijing that this happened?

⑥ 特殊疑问句中只有疑问词可以强调，其强调结构是“被强调部分（通常是疑问代词或疑问副词）+is/was+it+that/who+其他部分?”。如：

Where were you born?

Where was it that you were born?

⑦ not…until…句型的强调句。

句型为：It is/was not until+被强调部分+that+其他部分。

原始句：He didn’t go to bed until/till his wife came back.

强调句：It was not until his wife came back that he went to bed.

注意：此句型只用 until，不用 till。但如果不是强调句型，till，until 可通用；因为句型中 It is/was not…已经是否定句了，that 后面的从句要用肯定句，切勿再用否定句了。

⑧ It is/was…that…结构不能强调谓语，如果需要强调谓语时，用助动词 do/does 或 did。如：

Do sit down. 务必请坐。

He did write to you last week. 上周他确实给你写了信。

Do be careful when you cross the street. 过马路时，务必（千万）要小心啊！

注意：此种强调只用 do/does 和 did，没有别的形式；过去时用 did，后面的谓语动词用原形。

（9）用 if 来表示强调。

if 从句+I don’t know who/what，etc. does/is/has，etc.；主语部分也可以用 nobody does/is/has，etc. 或 every body does/is/has，etc. 来代替（这里的 if 从句往往是正话反说，反话正说）。如：

If he can’t do it，I don’t know who can.要是他做不了这件事，我不知道还有谁能做。（强调只有他能做）

If Jim is a coward，everybody is. 要是吉姆是个胆小鬼，那么人人都是胆小鬼。（强调吉姆不是胆小鬼）

if 从句+it be 主句。如

If anyone knew the truth，it was Tom. 如果说谁了解事实的真相，那便是汤姆。

If there is one thing he loves，it is money. 如果说世界上还有他爱的东西，那便是金钱。

（10）用破折号、黑体字也可以表示强调，以加强语气。如：

It’s because of hard work—ten years of hard work. 那是因为艰苦的工作——十年艰苦的工作！

He began the work in late May. 他在五月底开始的这项工作。

23.2 替　代

23.2.1 概　说

替代是英语中为了避免重复而采用的一种词汇手段。用于表示代替的词除了人称代词、物主代词、指示代词、关系代词、疑问代词、连接代词、不定代词外，还有替代词 one，ones，the one，the ones，that，those，so 以及 not，另外还有动词型替代词 do，does，did。

23.2.2 替代的种类

替代有三种：名词性替代、动词性替代和分句性替代。

（1）名词性替代常用 one，it，that，those，the same 和人称代词或物主代词。例如：

Mr. Smith gave the textbooks to all the pupils except the ones who had already taken them.

I hope there are enough glasses for each guest to have one.

I hate it when people talk with their mouths full.

—He was nearly drowned once.

—When was that?

—It was in 1998 when he was in the middle school

The houses of the rich are larger than those of the poor.

—Can I have a cup of black coffee with sugar，please?

—Give me the same，please.

（2）动词性替代常用 do，do so/it/that 等。例如：

—I told him about it.

—I did，too.

He had promised to pay，but failed to do so（it/that）.

（3）分句式替代常用 so，not。例如：

He hopes he'll win and I hope so too.

—Will it rain today?

—I believe not.（= I don't think so.）

so 用于替代宾语从句的分句，表示说话者赞同前述事实，表示看法、意见等的动词有 think，believe，expect，suppose，imagine，guess，say，hope，fear 等。think so，believe so，expect so 等变为否定形式有两种途径：用动词的否定形式；用 not 代替 so。但 be afraid so，fear so，hope so 等变为否定形式只用第二种方法。

与 so 有关的两个句型：

（1）表示说话者赞同前述事实：so+主语+连系动词（助动词或情态动词）。例如：

—It was cold yesterday.

—So it was.

（2）表示前述情况也适用于另一主语的句型：① 通用句型：So it is（was）with+另一主语。② 只用于肯定情况的句型：so+连系动词（助动词或情态动词）+另一主语；否定情况则使用：neither（nor）+连系动词（助动词或情态动词）+另一主语。例如：

He is a farmer. So it is with his brother.（= So is his brother.）

I enjoyed the book and so did my wife.（= So it was with my wife.）

She didn't come. Neither/Nor did her sister.（= So it was with her sister.）

【高考真题回放】

1.（08 卷）He has one blue pen and two red________.

A. one　　B. once　　C. one's　　D. ones

2.（92 全国卷）Mr. Zhang gave the textbooks to all the pupils except __who had already taken them.

A. the ones　　B. ones　　C. some　　D. the others

3.（95 全国卷）I hope there are enough glasses for each guest to have______.

A. it　　B. those　　C. them　　D. one

4.（00 全国卷）—Why don't we take a little break? —Didn't we just have _____?

A. it　　B. that　　C. one　　D. this

5.（02 全国卷）Meeting my uncle after all these years was an unforgettable moment，_____I will always treasure.

A. that　　B. one　　C. it　　D. what

6.（04 江苏卷）—You haven't lost the ticket，have you?

—_____. I know it's not easy to get another one at the moment.

A. I hope not　　B. Yes，I have　　C. I hope so　　D. Yes，I'm afraid so

7.（05 天津卷）I prefer a flat in Inverness to_____ in Perth，because I want to live near my Mom's.

A. one　　B. that　　C. it　　D. this

8.（05 江苏卷）I'm moving to the countryside because the air there is much fresher than ____ in the city.

A. ones　　B. one　　C. that　　D. those

9.（05 江西卷）Cars do cause us some health problems—in fact far more serious____ than mobile phones do.

A. one　　B. ones　　C. it　　D. those

10.（05 浙江卷）We've been looking at houses but haven't found_____ we like yet.

A. one　　B. ones　　C. it　　D. them

11.（06 全国卷 II）—Will you be able to finish your report today? —_______.

A. I like it　　B. I hope so　　C. I'll do so　　D. I'd love it

12.（07 江西卷）Don't take too much of the medicine；it does you more harm than good if you____.

A. do　　B. take　　C. like　　D. have

13.（07 浙江卷）—He got his first book published. It turned out to be a best-seller.

—When was _____?

—_____ was in 2000 when he was still in college.

A. that；This　　B. this；It　　C. it；This　　D. that；It

14.（08 全国卷 II）—Do you know Anna's telephone number?

—____. As a matter of fact，I don't know any Anna，either.

A. I think so　　B. I'm afraid not　　C. I hope so　　D. I'd rather not

15.（09 全国卷 I）One of the most important questions they had to consider was______of public health.

A. what　　B. this　　C. that　　D. which

16.（09 全国卷 II）The CDs are on sale! Buy one and you get_________completely free.

A. other　　B. others　　C. one　　D. ones

17.（09 四川卷）I like this house with a beautiful garden in front，but I don't have enough money to buy_____.

A. one　　B. it　　C. this　　D. that

18.（09 江苏卷）—What's the matter with Della? —Well，her parents wouldn't allow her to go to the party，but she still ______.

A. hopes to　　B. hopes so　　C. hopes not　　D. hopes for

【参考答案】

1—5　DADCB　　6—10　AACBA　　11—15　BADBC　　16—18　CBA

23.3　省略句

23.3.1　概　说

为了使话说得简明扼要，英语句子中某个单词、短语甚至从句或主句都可以省去。这种省去句子某些成分而保持句子意思不变的现象，称为省略。省略在英语运用中，尤其是在交际对话中普遍存在，因为它可以避免重复，突出关键词语，能做到言简意赅，并使上下文紧密连接。省略有词法上的省略，也有句法上的省略。

23.3.2 词法上的省略

1. 名词所有格后修饰的名词在以下情况可以省略

（1）如果名词所有格修饰的名词在前文已出现，则可以省略。如：

These are John's books and those are Mary's（books）. 这些是约翰的书，那些是玛丽的书。

（2）名词所有格后修饰的名词如果是指商店、住宅等地点时，这些名词也常常省略。如：

at the doctor's 在诊所　　　　at Mr. Green's 在格林先生家

to my uncle's 到我叔叔家　　　　at the barber's 在理发店

2. 冠词的省略

（1）为了避免重复。如：

The lightning flashed and thunder crashed. 电闪雷鸣。（thunder 前省略了定冠词 the）

（2）副词最高级前面的定冠词常可以省略。如：

She sings best in the class. 她在班上唱歌唱得最好。

（3）在某些独立主格结构中。如：

Our teacher came in，book in hand.（=Our teacher came in，with a book in his hand.）我们的老师手里拿着一本书进来了。

（4）在 as 引导的让步状语从句中，当作表语的单数名词提前时，不定冠词要省略。如：

Child as he is，he knows a lot. 虽然他还是一个孩子，却懂得很多。

3. 介词的省略

（1）both 后常跟 of 短语，其后可以接名词复数形式，也可以接代词宾格复数形式。接复数名词时，介词 of 可以省略，但接代词宾格时，of 不能省略。如：

Both（of）the films were interesting. 这两部电影都很有趣。

She invited both of us to her birthday party. 她邀请我们俩去参加她的生日派对。

（2）在现在完成时表持续和重复的句型中，一段时间前的介词 for 可以省略。如：

These shoes are worn out. They have lasted（for）a long time. 这双鞋穿破了，已经穿了很长一段时间了。

（3）和一些动词搭配构成的短语中的介词，如 consider...（as）...，prevent/stop...（from）doing...，have trouble/difficulty...（in）doing...，spend...（in/on）doing...等中的介词可以省略。如：

Trees can prevent the earth（from）being washed away. 树能阻止泥土被冲走。

Can you stop him（from）going swimming in the river? 你能阻止他下河洗澡吗？

I have some difficulty（in）answering the question. 回答这个问题我有点困难。

4. 动词不定式中的省略

（1）有些动词，如 believe，find，think，feel，consider，imagine，prove 等后作宾补的结构。to be+*n.* /*adj.* 中的 to be 可以省略。如：

I consider him（to be）lazy. 我认为他懒。

His mother found him（to be）a clever boy. 他母亲发觉他是一个很聪明的孩子。

（2）感官动词 see，hear，feel，watch，notice 等以及使役动词 let，make，have 后作宾补的动词不定式中的不定式符号 to 要省略，但变为被动结构时，to 必须保留。如：

They made the boy go to bed early. 他们强迫这个男孩早睡。

The boy was made to go to bed early. 这个男孩被迫早睡。

注：help 后作宾补的动词不定式中的 to 可以省略也可以保留。

（3）在 can not but，can not choose but，can not help but 之后的动词不定式一般不带 to；but 之前有实义动词 do 的某个形式 do，does，did，done 时，也不带 to，否则要带 to。如：

We have nothing to do now but wait. 我们现在除了等没有别的事可做。

I can not but admire his courage. 我不能不钦佩他的勇敢。

He has no choice but to accept the fact. 除了接受这个事实他别无选择。

（4）在并列结构中为了避免重复。如：

I'm really puzzled what to think or say. 我真不知道该怎么想，怎么说才好。

但两个不定式有对照或对比的意义时，则后一个 to 不能省略。如：

I came not to scold but to praise you. 我来不是责备你，而是赞美你。

（5）在 why，why not 引导的特殊问句中后跟省略 to 的动词不定式。如：

Why talk so much about it? 为什么大谈这个事呢?

Why not try it again? 为什么不再试一试呢?

（6）动词不定式中动词原形部分是否省略，主要看句子前面是否已出现过同样的动词。如果句子前面出现过同样的动词，为了避免重复，句子后面的不定式常省略动词原形，而保留不定式符号 to。如：

They may go if they wish to（go）. 如果他们想去，他们就可以去。

Don't go till I tell you to. 直到我告诉你去，你才可以去。

在一些动词，如 afford，agree，expect，forget，mean，pretend，remember，want，refuse，hope，wish，would like（love），try 等后跟动词不定式作宾语，不定式中的 to 可以承前（后）省略。如：

—Will you go to the cinema with me? 你愿和我一起去看电影吗?

—Well，I'd like to（go with you）. 我愿意。

I would do it for you，but I don't know how to（do it for you）. 我想为你做这事，但我又不知如何做。

在某些形容词，如 afraid，glad，willing，happy，eager 等后承前省略动词原形，只保留不定式符号 to。如：

—Will you join us in the game? 你愿和我们一起做这个游戏吗?

—Sure，I'll be glad to（join you in the game）. 当然，我愿意。

有些动词，如 tell，ask，allow，expect，force，invite，permit，persuade，order，warn，wish，would like，forbid 等后跟动词不定式作宾语补足语、主语补足语时，不定式承前省略动词原形，保留动词不定式符号 to。如：

He didn't come，though we had invited him to（come）. 尽管我们邀请他来，他却没来。

注：承前省略的动词不定式如果有助动词 have 或 be，则要保留 be 或 have。如：

—Are you a teacher? 你是老师吗?

—No，but I used to be（a teacher）. 不，我以前是。

23.3.3　句法上的省略

在一些简单句、并列句和复合句中，可以省略主语、谓语、宾语、表语等某一个句子成分，也可以省略多个句子成分。

1. 简单句中的省略

（1）感叹句常省略主语和谓语。如：

What a hot day（it is）! 多热的天啊!

How wonderful! 多妙啊！

（2）在一些口语中可以省略某些句子成分。如：

—（Will you）Have a smoke? 你抽烟吗？

—No. Thanks. 不，谢谢了。

（Is there）Anything else to say? 还有别的要说吗？

2. 并列句中的省略

（1）如果主语不同，而谓语动词中的一部分相同，则省略谓语动词中相同的那部分。如：

John must have been playing football and Mary（must have been）doing her homework.

约翰一定在踢球，而玛丽一定在做作业。

（2）主语相同，谓语动词也相同，则二者都可以省略。如：

His suggestions made John happy，but（his suggestions made）Mary angry.

他的建议使约翰高兴，却使玛丽很生气。

（3）主语相同，而谓语不同，则可以省略主语。如：

Old McDonald gave up smoking for a while，but（he）soon returned to his old ways.

老麦克唐纳戒了一阵子烟，可很快又抽上了。

（4）在并列复合句中，如果 that 从句从属于第二个并列句且它的谓语动词和宾语等其他一些成分与第一个并列句相同，这个 that 从句通常可以省略这些相同的部分。如：

Jack will sing at the party，but I know John won't（sing at the party）.

杰克将在晚会上唱歌，但我知道约翰不会在晚会上唱歌。

3. 复合句中的省略

（1）名词性从句中的省略。

① 作宾语的 what 从句中的谓语动词与主句相同，则 what 从句可以省略谓语，甚至主语。如：

Someone has used my bike，but I don't know who（has used it）.

有人用了我的自行车，但我不知道是谁。

He has gone，but no one knows where（he has gone）. 他走了，但没人知道他去哪儿了。

② 有时候也可以根据说话的情景来省略主句中的一些成分。如：

（I'm）Sorry I've kept you waiting so long. 对不起，让你久等了。

③ 在某些表虚拟语气的主语从句、宾语从句、表语从句和同位语从句中，从句谓语动词中的助动词 should 可以省略。如：

It's important that we（should）speak to the old politely. 我们对老人说话要有礼貌，这很重要。

（2）定语从句中的省略。

① 在限制性定语从句中，作宾语的关系代词 that，which，who（whom）常可以省略。如：

The man（who/whom）I saw is called Smith. 我见到的那个人名叫史密斯。

Where is the book（which）I bought this morning? 今天上午我买的那本书在哪儿？

② 关系副词 when，where，why 以及 that 在 the time（day，morning，afternoon，evening，night，week，month，year 等）when，the place（desk，table，room，spot，house，town，country，school 等）where，the reason why，the way that 结构中引导限制性定语从句时，在非正式场合下，可以省略关系副词 when，where，why，that。如：

I shall never forget the day（when）we first met. 我永远也不会忘记我们第一次见面的那一天。

The reason（why）he came so early is his own affair. 他来这么早是他自己的事。

The way（that）you answered the questions was admirable. 你回答这些问题的方式令人钦佩。

（3）状语从句中的省略。

当状语从句中的主语和主句的主语一致，或状语从句中的主语是 it，并且又含有 be 动词时，常可以省略从句中的主语和 be 动词。

① 在 as，before，till，once，when，while 等引导的时间状语从句中。如：

While（I was）waiting，I was reading some magazines. 我一边看杂志，一边等。

② 在 though，although 等引导的让步状语从句中。如：

Though（they were）tired，they went on working. 虽然他们累了，但他们仍继续工作。

③ 在 if，unless（=if... not）等引导的条件状语从句中。如：

You shouldn't come to his party unless（you were）invited. 除非你被邀请，否则你不应该来参加他的宴会。

④ 在 as，as if，as though 引导的让步状语从句中。如：

He did as（he had been）told. 他按照被告知的那样去做了。

He paused as if（he was）expecting her to speak. 他停下来，好像是在期待她说话。

⑤ 在 as（so）...as...，than 引导的比较状语从句中。如：

I know you can do better than he（can do）. 我知道你能比他做得更好。

This car doesn't run as fast as that one（does）. 这辆小车不及那辆跑得快。

23.4　倒装句

23.4.1　概　说

主语和谓语是句子的核心，它们之间有两种语序：一是主语在谓语之前称为自然语序；二是主语在谓语之后则称为倒装语序。

倒装语序中又有完全倒装和部分倒装。

完全倒装：又称“全部倒装”，是指将句子中的谓语全部置于主语之前。此结构通常只用于一般现在时和一般过去时。

部分倒装：指将谓语的一部分如助动词或情态动词倒装至主语之前，而谓语动词无变化。如果句中的谓语没有助动词或情态动词，则需添加助动词 do，does 或 did，并将其置于主语之前。

英语句子的倒装一是出于语法结构的需要，二是出于修辞的需要。前一种情况，倒装是必需的，否则就会出现语法错误；后一种情况，倒装是选择性的，倒装与否只会产生表达效果上的差异。

23.4.2　倒装结构的基本用法

1. 由于语法结构的需要而使用的倒装（详见表 23-1）

表 23-1　由于语法结构的需要而使用的倒装

情　况	例　　句	说　　明
疑问句中	Have you got a dictionary? Where did he go last Monday? Are you listening to the radio? Who told you the news? Which boy broke this glass?	用完全或部分倒装，但以疑问词或疑问词修饰的名词作主语的疑问句要用正常语序

续表

情况	例句	说明
“there be”结构中	There are three wells in our village. There stands a big paper making factory by the river.	
在以 here, there, now, then, in, up, away, down 等副词开头的句中	Here is a letter for you. 这儿有你一封信。 There goes the bell. 铃响了。 Now comes your turn to play. 现在轮到你玩了。 Away went the crowd one by one. Look, there he comes! 看，他来了。 Down she went. 她下来了。	使用完全倒装结构。 但如果主语是代词则用正常语序
在以 nor neither 或 no more 开头的句子中	I can't swim, nor (neither) can she. 我不会游泳，她也不会。 He hasn't been to the countryside, neither does he want to go there. He did not turn up. No more did his wife. 他没有来，他妻子也没有来。	表示……也不这样，neither 和 nor 意思相同，可以替换使用，no more 表示动作的程度并不比前面提到的稍强，意为也不……
用在 as（尽管）引导的让步状语从句中	Proud as the nobles are, he is afraid to see me. 尽管这些贵族很傲慢，他却害怕见我。 Young as he is, he knows a lot. 虽然他年轻，却知道很多东西。	从属连句 as 用于特殊语序，含义与 though, although 相同，但“as”这种结构可表示非常强烈的对照，必须用倒装(表语提前)

2. 为了加强语气而使用的倒装，使句子更加流畅、生动（见表 23-2）

表 23-2　为了加强语气而使用的倒装

情况	例句	说明
含有否定意义的副词或连词放在句首时	Never before have we seen such a sight. Little did I think that he could be back alive. Not until New Year's Day shall I give you a gift. Not only was everything that he had taken away from him, but also his German citizenship.	常用否定词有：never, not, hardly, scarcely seldom, little, not until, not only…but also, no sooner…than, hardly (scarcely) …when 等。一般主句用部分倒装结构
副词 only 放在句首时	Only then did he realize his mistakes. Only in this way can you learn maths well. Only Mother can understand me. Only three of us failed in the exam.	only 起强调作用，其句型为“only+状语+部分倒装”。如置于句首的 only 修饰主语，则不用倒装结构
虚拟语气条件从句中	Were they here, they would help us. Had I been informed earlier, I could have done something. Should you fail, take more pain and try again.	把从句中 if 省略将 were, had 或 should 放在主语的前面
直接引语的全部或一部分放在句首时	“He is a clever boy.” said the teacher. “Go, Dick, go!” cried Tom, “Go home and get help.” “What do you think of the film?” he asked. “I'm leaving for Hongkong next month,” Mary told me yesterday.	主句主语和谓语次序颠倒，用完全倒装。 但如果主句主语为代词时或谓语部分比主语长，一般不用倒装

续表

情 况	例 句	说 明
表示祝愿的句子中	May you succeed! 祝你成功。 Long live the Communist Party of China. 中国共产党万岁!	谓语动词或谓语的一部分放在主语的前面
副词 so 在句首	He is interested in pop-songs，and so am I. They will learn chemistry next term，so will I. I can drive a car，so can my younger brother.	表示前面所说的情况也适合于另一个人或另一事物的肯定句中
	—Tom won the first prize for the English competition. —So he did. ——英语竞赛汤姆获得了一等奖。 ——确实如此。 It was cold yesterday. So it was. 的确冷。	如果后面的句子只是单纯重复前句的意思，不表示也适用于另一人或事，则不用倒装结构
在频度状语 often，always，many a time 等开头的句子中	Often did we warn them not to do so. 我们曾多次警告他们不要这样做。 Many a time has she helped me with my English. 她不止一次地帮助我学习英语。	
在方式状语 thus 开头的句子中及程度状语 so 放句首	Thus ended his life. 这样结束了他的生命。 So loudly did he speak that even people in the next room could hear him. 他讲话的声音那样大，连隔壁屋子里的人都听得见。	
介词短语作状语放在句首	In the middle of the room stood a little girl. 在房间中央站着一个小女孩。 In the distance was a horse. 马在远处。	
在强调表语的句子中	Such was Albert Einstein，a simple man of great achievements. 阿尔伯特・爱因斯坦就是这样一个人，一个纯朴而又取得巨大成就的人。 Such is life. 生活就是这样。 Nearby were two canoes in which they had come to the island. 附近有两只他们来这个岛乘坐的独木船。	表语提前，不仅为了强调，而且为了使句子结构达到平衡协调，或使上下文紧密衔接

3. 完全倒装结构

（1）there be 句型，引导词 there 还可以接 appear，exist，lie，remain，seem，stand，live 等词。如：

There is a mobile phone and some books on the desk. 桌上有一个手机和一些书。

There are thousands of people gathering on the square. 广场上聚集着成千上万的人

There lived an old fisherman in the village. 村里住着一位老渔夫。

There stand two white houses by the river. 河滨矗立着两座白房子。

There existed some doubt among the students. 学生中有些怀疑。

（2）用于 here，there，now，thus，then+动词+主语的句型中（谓语动词多为 be，go，come 等）。如：

Here comes the bus. 汽车来了。

There goes the bell. 铃响了。

Now comes my turn. 轮到我了。

Then came the order to take off. 起飞的命令到了。

（3）以 out，in，up，down，off，away 等副词开头，谓语动词是表示“移动”的意思。如 go，come，leave 等。如：

Away went the crowd one by one. 人们一个一个地离去。

In came a stranger in black. 进来了一位穿黑衣的陌生人。

Down fell the leaves. 树叶掉了下来。

（4）在完全倒装的结构里，如果主语是人称代词，则用正常语序。如：

Out she went. 她走了。

Here we are. 我们到了。

（5）表示地点的介词词组位于句首，谓语动词是表示“存在”之意的 be，lie，stand，exist 等句子中。如：

South of the lake lies a big supermarket. 湖泊的南边是一个大超市。

20 miles east of our school lies a modern swimming pool.
我们学校向东 20 英里有一个现代化的游泳池。

On the floor were piles of old books，magazines and newspapers. 地上是一堆堆旧的书、杂志和报纸。

On the top of the hill stood an old castle. 山丘上有一座古堡。

4. 部分倒装结构

（1）含有否定意义的副词或连词 not，seldom，little，hardly，never，rarely，nowhere 等，放在句首时，则其后要用部分倒装。如：

Not a single word of English can he speak. 他连一个英语单词都不会说。

Little does he care about his clothes. 他不在乎穿着。

Never have I seen him before. → Never before have I seen him. 我以前没见过他。

No longer did he feel disappointed，but happy and hopeful.
他不再感到沮丧，而是高兴，充满希望。

Seldom does he go out for dinner. 他很少出去吃饭。

（2）当 not until...位于句首时，其后的主句要用倒装形式。如：

Not until yesterday did little John change his mind. 小约翰直到昨天才改变了主意。

Not until next week will the sports meet be held. 直到下周才开运动会。

Not until the child fell asleep did the mother leave the room. 孩子睡着了，妈妈才离开房间。

（3）当 not only...but also 位于句首引出句子时，not only 后的句子通常用部分倒装形式。如：

Not only did we lose our money，but we were nearly killed. 我们不但丢了钱，而且几乎丧了命。

Not only does she speak Spanish，but she also knows how to type. 她不但会说西班牙语，还会打字呢。

Not only is he a teacher，but he is also a poet. 他不仅是一位教师，而且是一位诗人。

（4）含有否定词的介词短语置于句首时，其后使用部分倒装形式。如：

At no time did he lose his self-control. 他始终没有失去控制力。

On no accounts must this switch be touched. 这个开关是绝不能触摸的。

In（Under）no circumstances will I lend money to him. 无论如何我也不会再借钱给他了。

By no means shall I give up. 我决不放弃。

注：in no time（立即，马上）位于句首时，其后无需用倒装语序。如：

In no time he worked out the problem. 他马上就算出了那道题。

（5）hardly...when；scarcely...when；no sooner...than 表示“刚……就……”的倒装形式。如：

Hardly had he started to leave when it began to rain. 他刚要离开，天就下起了雨。

Scarcely had he sat down when his mobile phone rang. 他刚坐下，手机就响了。

No sooner had he handed in his paper than he realized his mistakes.

他刚交卷就意识到出错了。

No sooner had we reached the airport than the plane took off. 我们刚到机场，飞机就起飞了。

（6）only+状语的倒装形式。

①“only+副词”位于句首。如：

Only then did I realize that I was wrong. 只是到了那时我才意识到是我错了。

The pilot reassured the passengers. Only then did I realize how dangerous the situation had been. 飞机驾驶员要乘客们放心，这时我才明白刚才的情况有多危险。

②“only+介词短语”位于句首。如：

Only by working hard can you succeed. 只有努力工作你才能成功。

Only in the reading-room can you find him. 你只有在阅览室才能找到他。

③“only+状语从句”位于句首。如：

Only after she died was I able to appreciate her. 只有到她死后我才认识到她的价值。

Only when one loses freedom does one know its value. 一个人只有在失去自由后才知道自由的可贵。

注意：若位于句首的不是 only+状语，而是 only+主语或宾语等，则通常不需要倒装。如：

Only a policeman the children saw in the street. 孩子们在街上只看到一个警察。（修饰宾语）

Only Tom watches TV at home on Sunday. 只有汤姆星期天在家看电视。（修饰主语）

（7）so 型倒装形式。

① 当副词 so 后接形容词或副词位于句首时，其后要用部分倒装。如：

He was so excited that he could not say a word.

→So excited was he that he could not say a word. 他如此激动以至于一句话都说不出来。

So cold was the weather that we had to stay at home. 天气太冷，我们只好待在家里。

So fast does light travel that we can hardly imagine its speed. 光速很快，我们几乎没法想象它的速度。

② 当要表示前面提出的某一肯定的情况也同样适合于后者，通常就要用“So+助动词+主语”这种倒装结构。如：

You are young and so am I. 你年轻，我也年轻。

He can send emails to his former classmates，so can I. 他能把电子邮件给以前的同学，我也能。

He went to the film last night，so did I. 昨天晚上他去看电影了，我也去了。

（8）such 型倒装形式。

当 such…that…结构中的 such 置于句首时，such 后的句子要用部分倒装。如：

He seemed such a nice man that we all believe him.

Such a nice man did he seem that we all believe him. 他像个很和蔼的人，所以我们都喜欢他。

They are such interesting books that we all enjoy reading them.

Such interesting books are they that we all enjoy reading them. 这些书很有趣，我们都喜欢看。

This is such an interesting book that we all enjoy reading it.

Such an interesting book is this that we all enjoy reading it. 这本书非常有趣，我们都喜欢看。

So good a girl is she that we all like her. 她是一个如此好的女孩，我们大家都喜欢她。

Such a good girl is she that we all like her. 她是一个如此好的女孩，我们大家都喜欢她。

（9）让步状语从句的五类倒装形式。

① 名词+as/though+主语+动词。如：

King as he was，he was unhappy. 他虽是国王，但他并不幸福。

Child as he is，he knows to help other. 他虽是个孩子，但知道帮助别人。

Teacher though he is，he can't know everything. 他虽然是老师，但也不可能什么都懂。

② 形容词+as/though+主语+动词。如：

Successful as he is，he is not proud. 他虽然成功，但不骄傲。

Improbable as it seems，it's true. 虽然看起来不太可能，却是真的。

Stupid as it sounds，I was so in love with her that I believed her. 尽管听起来很愚蠢，我是如此爱她，竟然相信了她的话。

Patient as he was，he didn't like waiting that long. 他虽说有耐心，也不愿等这么长。

③ 副词+as/though+主语+动词。如：

Much as I like Paris，I couldn't live there. 尽管我喜欢巴黎，但我不能住在那里。

Hard though they tried，they couldn't make her change her mind. 尽管他们做了很大努力，却没法让她改变主意。

Fast as you read，you can't finish the book in two days. 尽管你读得很快，你总不能在两天之内就读完这本书。

④ 动词原形+as/though+主语+动词。如：

Try as he might，he couldn't solve the problem. 尽管他想方设法，却未解决这个问题。

Search as they would，they would find nobody in the house.

无论怎样搜查，他们在房子里仍然没有找到一个人。

Dislike him as we may，we must acknowledge his greatness.

尽管我们不喜欢他，但必须承认他的伟大。

Lose money as I did，we got a lot of experience. 钱虽然丢了，我们却得到了许多经验。

【说明】主语后的动词通常为 may，might，would，did 等情态动词或助动词（若表示情态意义，则选用情态动词；若陈述事实，则用 did，do 等助动词）。

⑤ 分词+as/though+主语+动词。如：

Raining hard as it is，I'm going out for a walk. 虽然正在下着大雨，我还是要出去散步。

Surrounded as we were by the enemy，we managed to march forward. 虽然我们被敌人包围着，但我们还是设法前进了。

【补充说明】这类倒装的让步状语从句可用 as，though 来引导，但不能用 although 来引导；但是，未倒装的让步状语从句则可用 though，although 来引导，而不能用 as 来引导。也就是说，although 引导让步状语从句时不能倒装，as 引导让步状语从句时必须倒装，而 though 引导让步状语从句时可以倒装也可以不倒装。

（10）当虚拟条件句含有 were，should，had 时，可省略 if，将 were，should，had 置于句首的倒装形式。如：

Were I Tom（=If I were Tom），I would refuse. 如果我是汤姆，我就会拒绝。

Had I realized that（=If I had realized that），I would have done something. 我要是明白了这一点，我可能会采取某种行动

Should you require anything give me a ring. 如果需要什么，可以给我打电话。

（11）So+助动词+主语，上句所述肯定情况也适应另一主语。Neither/nor 引导的句子用倒装形式，用于对前面所说的否定内容表示同样的看法。Neither/nor+助动词+主语，“也不……”。如：

If you go to school early tomorrow，so shall I. 如果明天你上学早，我也早去。

She won't go. Neither/Nor will I. 她不走，我也不。

I cannot swim. Neither can he. 我不会游泳，他也不会。

So+主语+助动词，对上句提及的情况给予肯定。如：

—Mary is a good student. 玛丽是好学生。

—So she is. 确实如此。

（12）一些表示频率的副词，如 many a time，often 等位于句首时的倒装形式。如：

Many a time have I seen her taking a walk alone. 我多次看到她独自一人在散步。

Often did she come to my house in the past. 过去她常到我家来。

【考点聚焦】

考点一　强调句

1. —Have you seem the film *Under the Hawthorn Tree*?

—Of course，I have. It was in our village ________ it was made.

A. that　　B. where　　C. when　　D. which

【解析】答案为 A。问话人询问对方是否看过《山楂树之恋》这部电影，答话人回答说当然看过，这部电影是在自己的村庄拍摄的。本句是强调句，被强调的部分是地点状语 in our village。

2. It's not what we do once in a while _________ shapes our lives，but what we do consistently

A. which　　B. that　　C. how　　D. when

【解析】答案为 B。此句强调句子的主语（从句），原句可改写成：Not what we do once in a while but what we do consistently shapes our lives. 句意：决定我们生活的东西不是我们偶尔所做的事情而是那些我们自始至终所做的事情。

3. John's success has nothing to do with good luck. It is years of hard work _____has made him what he is today.

A. why　　B. when　　C. when　　D. that

【解析】答案为 D。题干为强调句型，被强调部分为 years of hard work，故选 D 项。

4. It was from only a few supplies that she had bought in the village______the hostess cooked such a nice dinner.

A. where　　B. that　　C. when　　D. which

【解析】答案为 B。迷惑点在于强调部分中含有一个定语从句 that she had bought in the village。本句是对 from only a few supplies 进行强调。

5. Was it on a lonely island _________ he was saved one month after the boat went down?

A. where　　B. that　　C. which　　D. what

【解析】答案为 B。此处强调的是句子的地点状语 on a lonely island，是强调句的一般疑问句句型：Was it+被强调部分+that+句子？句意：他是不是在小船沉没一个月后在一个孤岛上被营救的？

6. It is not how much we do but how much love we put into what we do _________benefits our work most.

A. who　　B. which　　C. that　　D. what

【解析】答案为 C。所填词与 it is 构成强调句型，被强调部分是 not how much we do but how much love we put into what we do，指物，用 that，故选 C 项。其余选项与题意不符。句意：不是我们做了多少，而是我们对所做的事情投入了多少爱心对我们的工作才最有利。

7. It was until last year that he ___________________________.

A. left school for a new start

B. came to realize the importance of learning English

C. worked as an English teacher at a middle school

D. set out to build a new house of his own

【解析】答案为 C。本题不含否定词 not，四个选项中只有 C 项中的动词 work 为延续性动词。

8. It was _____he came bank from Africa that wear _______he met the girl he would like to marry.

A. when；then　　B. not；until　　C. not until；that　　D. only；when

【解析】答案为 C。本题考查的是强调句型。根据 It is…that 结构可知。

9. —Where did you get to know her?

—It was on the farm _________we worked.

A. that　　B. there　　C. which　　D. where

【解析】答案为 D。本题乍一看似乎是强调句，但是补全"It was on the farm where we worked that I got to know her"以后，就可以判断出这儿省略了强调句。where 引导定语从句。

10. If you have a job，__________yourself to it and finally you'll succeed.

A. do devote　　B. don't devote　　C. devoting　　D. not devoting

【解析】答案为 A。此处应是祈使句，又有谓语动词的强调要借助助动词 do，故选 A。句意为：如果你有了一份工作，付出努力去做它，最后你定能成功。

考点二　省略句

1. —I was wondering if we could go skiing on the weekend. —________good.

A. Sound　　B. Sounded　　C. Sounding　　D. Sounds

【解析】答案为 D。Sounds good 实际上是 It Sounds good 的省略。

2. ________ a strange plant! I've never seen it before.

A. Which　　B. What　　C. How　　D. Whether

【解析】答案为 B。此处为“What+a/an+*adj*.+*n*.+it is/was”的省略结构，故 B 项正确。句意：多么奇怪的植物啊！我以前从没见过。

3. All the dishes in this menu，______ otherwise stated，will serve two to three people.

A. as　　B. if　　C. though　　D. unless

【解析】答案为 D。本题表面上看是在考查状语引导词，但实际上是在考查省略情况，把句子补全“unless it is otherwise stated”才能理解句意。句意：在这份菜单上的所有菜，除非另外说明，会够两到三个人食用。

4. Every evening after dinner，if not________from work，I will spend some time walking my dog.

A. being tired　　B. tiring　　C. tired　　D. to be tired

【解析】答案为 C。在 if 引导的条件状语从句中，从句中还原应为 if am not tired from work，根据省略的原则，所以答案为 C 项。

5. Some of you may have finished unit one. ______，you can go on to unit two.

A. If you may　　B. If you do　　C. If not　　D. If so

【解析】答案为 D。替代性省略。If so = If you have done that/so。句意：你们中的一些人可能已经完成第一单元，如果是这样的话，你们可以继续第二单元。

6. —You haven't lost the ticket，have you?

—__________. I know it's not easy to get another one at the moment.

A. I hope not　　B. Yes，I have　　C. I hope so　　D. Yes，I'm afraid so

【解析】答案为 A。替代性省略。本题 B、D 两项以 yes 开头，那就表示已经把票丢了，与后文内容不相符，不能只说再弄票不容易，而应表示着急或遗憾才对。C 项用于前句是肯定句的时候，此处若用，意思就是：我希望如此（＝我希望我已经把票丢了），显然不合理。A 项中的 not 一词替代一个与上文相同的否定句，合乎语境。

考点三　倒装句

1. The computer was used in teaching. As a result，not only______but students became more interested in the lessons.

A. saved was teachers' energy　　B. was teachers' energy saved

C. teachers' energy was saved　　D. was saved teachers' energy

【解析】选 B。“not only…but also…”放在句首作状语，句子则进行部分倒装。前一部分倒装，后一部分不倒装。

2.（2010 陕西卷）John opened the door. There________he had never seen before.

A. a girl did stand　　B. a girl stood

C. did a girl stand　　D. stood a girl

【解析】选 D。here，there，thus，then 等副词位于句首，且当句子的主语是名词时，句子用全部倒装句。

3.（2008 江西卷）It was announced that only when the fire was under control______to return to their homes.

A. the residents would be permitted　　B. had the residents been permitted

C. would the residents be permitted　　D. the residents had been permitted

4.（2008 辽宁卷）Bill wasn't happy about the delay of the report by Jason，and________.

A. 1 was neither　　B. neither was I　　C. I was either　　D. either was I

【解析】选 B。"neither+be（was）+主语 I"表示前面所说的否定情况也适用于"I"。句意：比尔对于杰森的报告推迟不高兴，我也不高兴。

5.（2009 山东卷）So sudden_____that the enemy had no time to escape.

A. did the attack　　B. the attack did　　C. was the attack　　D. the attack was

【解析】选 C。在 so…that，such…that…的句子结构中，若 so，such 和与其所修饰的词置于句首，实行部分倒装。

6.（2009 重庆卷）Unsatisfied______with the payment，he took the job just to get some work experience.

A. though was he　　B. though he was　　C. he was though　　D. was he though

【解析】选 B。though 此处引导让步状语从句，表语可放在 though 的前面，此时主谓不倒装。

特别注意以下几点：

（1）当 so 表示同意对方的观点，意为"的确如此、正是这样"时，句子不倒装。

—Father，you promised.

—Well，_________. But it was you who didn't keep your word first.

A. so was I　　B. so did I　　C. so I was　　D. so I did

【解析】选 D。

（2）使用 as/though 进行倒装时需要注意的是：

① 句首是形容词时，形容词最高级前不用 the；句首是名词时，名词不能带任何冠词。

② 句首是实义动词时，其他助动词则放在主语之后。如果实义动词有宾语和状语，则宾语和状语随实义动词一起放在主语之前。

（3）在带有倒装句的复合句（或并列句）中，可用下面的顺口溜帮助你较容易地掌握其结构形式：NB 前倒后不倒；O，NU 主倒从不倒；2N 前倒后也倒；NM 前后均不倒。

其中 NB 代表 Not only…but also 引导的并列句。not only 位于句首时，所引导的前面的分句倒装，后面的分句不倒装。故此称为"前倒后不倒"。如：

Not only did they bring snacks and drinks but they also brought cards for entertainment when they had a picnic in the forest.

O 代表 on1y+状语从句；NU 代表 Not until+状语从句。此两种结构位于句首时，倒装主句而不倒装从句，即："主倒从不倒"。No sooner...than，Hardly/Scarcely…when 等句型也属此类用法。如：

—Did Linda see the traffic accident? —No，no sooner_____than it happened.（2006 天津卷）

A. had she gone　　B. she had gone　　C. has she gone　　D. she has gone

【解析】选 A。no sooner…than 意为"刚……就"，此句相当于 She had no sooner gone than the traffic accident happened.

2N 代表 Neither…nor…所引导的并列句。2N 若位于两分句之首，则前后分句均倒装，即"前倒后也倒"如：

Neither do I know her name，nor does he.

NM 即 No matter 引导的状语从句。此时前面从句及后面主句均不倒装，即"前后均不倒"。

【英语倒装结构专练】

把下列句子改写为倒装句。

1. He was able to get back to work only when the war was over.

2. He not only liked reading stores，but also he could even write some.

3. The old woman little knew that she was seriously ill herself.

4. He had hardly sat down when the telephone rang.

5. The woman will never forget the day in 1960 when she first came to the city.

6. The students read their lessons so loudly that people could hear them out in the street.

7. The animal hardly makes any movement when it is in its hibernating state.（冬眠状态）

8. He was so frightened that he didn't dare to move an inch.

9. We seldom hear her reading aloud because she is too shy.

10. He didn't know what the Great wall was like until he visited Beijing.

11. Light travels so fast it is difficult to imagine its speed.

12. The service in that restaurant was so poor that we would no longer eat there.

13. A man named Jackson lived in the next house.

14. A tiger rushed out from among the bushes.

15. We can be able to master the language only by practising a few hours every day.

16. I have never seen such a thing in my life.

17. I knew its main idea only after I read the text once again.

【参考答案】

1. Only when the war was over was he able to get back.

2. Not only did he like reading stories but also he could even write some.

3. Little did the old man know that he was seriously ill himself.

4. Hardly had he sat down when the telephone rang.

5. Never will the woman forget the day in 1960 when she first came to the city.

6. So loudly did the students read their lessons that people could hear them out in the street.

7. Hardly does the animal make any movement when it is in its hibernating state.

8. So frightened was he that he didn't dare to move an inch.

9. Seldom do we hear her reading aloud because she is too shy.

10. Not until he visited Beijing did he know what the Great Wall was like.

11. So fast does light travel that it is difficult to imagine.

12. So poor was the service in that restaurant that we could no longer eat there.

13. In the next house lived a man named Jackson.

14. Out rushed a tiger from among the bushes.

15. Only by practising a few hours every day can we be able to master the language.

16. Never in my life have I seen such a thing.

17. Only after I read the text once again did I know its main idea.

【历届高考倒装句考点归纳与解析】

一、与 only 有关的倒装句。

1.（2004 重庆）I failed in the final examination last term and only then _______ the importance of studies.

A. I realized　　B. I had realized　　C. had I realized　　D. did I realize

2.（2001 北京）________ can you expect to get a pay rise.

A. With hard work　　B. Although work hard

C. Only with hard work　　D. Now that he works hard

3.（2005 福建）Only after my friend came ________.

A. did the computer repair　　B. he repaired the computer

C. was the computer repaired　　D. the computer was repaired

4.（2001 上海春季）Only when the war was over _____ to his hometown.

A. did the young soldier return　　B. the young soldier returned

C. returned the young soldier　　D. the young soldier did return

5.（2003 上海）Only when your identity has been checked _______.

A. you are allowed in　　B. you will be allowed in

C. will you allow in　　D. will you be allowed in

【参考答案】DCCAD

二、与 not only…but also 有关的倒装句。

1.（1991 上海卷）Not only ______ polluted，but ______ crowded.

A. was the city；were the streets　　B. the city was；the streets were

C. was the city；the streets were　　D. the city was；were the streets

2.（2002 上海春季卷）Not only____interested in football but ______beginning to show an interest.

A. the teacher himself is；all his　　B. the teacher himself is；are all

C. is the teacher himself；are all　　D. is the teacher himself；all his

3.（2004 上海卷）______ snacks and drinks，but they also brought cards for entertainment when they had a picnic in the forest.

A. Not only they bought　　B. Not only did they bring

C. Not only brought they　　D. Not only they did bring

【参考答案】CDB

三、与 neither 有关的倒装句。

1.（2004 广东卷）Of the making of good books there is no end；neither ______ any end to their influence on man's lives.

A. there is　　B. there are　　C. is there　　D. are there

2.（2004 全国卷Ⅲ）—I would never come to this restaurant again. The food is terrible. —_______.

A. Nor am I　　B. Neither would I　　C. Same with me　　D. So do I

【参考答案】CB

四、与否定副词有关的倒装句。

1.（1995 全国卷）Not until all the fish died in the river ______ how serious the pollution was.

A. did the villagers realize　　B. the villagers realized

C. the villagers did realize　　D. didn't the villagers realize

2.（2000 上海）Not a single song ______ at yesterday's party.

A. she sang　　B. sang she　　C. did she sing　　D. she did sing

3.（2000 北京卷）I finally got the job I dreamed about. Never in all my life ______ so happy.

A. did I feel　　B. I felt　　C. I had felt　　D. had I fell

4.（2003 全国卷）The old couple have been married for 40 years and never once__with each other.

A. they had quarreled　　B. they have quarreled

C. have they quarreled　　D. had they quarreled

5.（2005 上海）Never before ______ in greater need of modern public transport than it is today.

A. has this city been　　B. this city has been

C. was this city　　D. this city was

6. They have a good knowledge of English but little _____ they know about German.

A. have　　B. did　　C. had　　D. do

【参考答案】ACDCAD

五、与 as 有关的倒装句。

1.（2001 上海）______，I have never seen anyone who's as capable as John.

A. As long as I have traveled　　B. Now that I have traveled so much

C. Much as I have traveled　　D. As I have traveled so much

2.（2005 重庆）_______，he talks a lot about his favorite singers after class.

A. A quiet student as he may be　　B. Quiet student as he may be

C. Be a quiet student as he may　　D. Quiet as he may be a student

3.（2005 广东）_______，Carolina couldn't get the door open.

A. Try as she might　　B. As she might try　　C. She might as try　　D. Might she as try

【参考答案】CBA

六、与虚拟条件句有关的倒装句。

1. _______ it rain tomorrow，we would have to put off the visit to Yangpu Bridge.

A. Were　　B. Should　　C. Would　　D. Will

2. _____for the free tickets，I would not have gone to the films so often.

A. If it is not　　B. Were it not　　C. Had it not been　　D. If they were not

【参考答案】BC

七、与 so 有关的倒装句。

1.（2005 全国卷Ⅲ）Mary never does any reading in the evening，_______.

A. so does John　　B. John does too　　C. John doesn't too　　D. nor does John

2.（2005 湖北）—Father，you promised! —Well，___. But it was you who didn't keep your word first.

A. so was I　　B. so did I　　C. so 1 was　　D. so I did

3.（2005 江苏）________ about wild plants that they decided to make a trip to Madagascar for further research.

A. So curious the couple was　　B. So curious were the couple

C. How curious the couple were　　D. The couple was such curious

4. —Well I do think the rabbit is a beautiful，gentle animal which can run very fast. —_____.

A. So it is　　B. So is it　　C. So does it　　D. So it does

5. —Maggie had a wonderful time at the party. —_____，and so did I.

A. So she had　　B. So had she　　C. So she did　　D. So did she

6.（2001 上海）So difficult ______ it to live in an English-speaking country that I determined to learn English well.

A. I have felt　　B. have I felt　　C. I did feel　　D. did I feel

【参考答案】DDBACD

八、与 however 有关的倒装句。

1.（1997 全国卷）_______，mother will wait for him to have dinner together.

A. However late is he　　B. However he is late

C. However is he late D. However late he is

2. (2004 上海春季) ________, I have to put it away and focus my attention on study this week.

A. However the story is amusing B. No matter amusing the story is

C. However amusing the story is D. No matter how the story is amusing

3. You should try to get a good night's sleep _____ much work you have to do.

A. however B. no matter C. although D. whatever

4. He tried his best to solve the problem, _______difficult it was.

A. however B. no matter C. whatever D. although

【参考答案】DCAA

【倒装句中考英语专题】

1. (2013 铜仁) —I really hate to go to such a noisy place. —_____________.

A. So am I B. So do I C. So have I D. So can I

2. (2013 黄石) I can't play the piano, and _______.

A. neither can my sister B. my sister can't, too

C. so can't my sister D. can my sister, either

3. (2013 遂宁) His father likes keeping dogs and _______.

A. so is his mother B. so his mother does C. so does his mother

4. (2013 兰州) — I'm not going swimming tomorrow afternoon.

— ________. I have to clean up my bedroom.

A. So am I B. Neither am I C. Neither I am D. S o I am

5. (2013 泉州) —It's snowing so heavily! I prefer to stay at home and read a novel.

—______________. I hate going out on such a cold day!

A. So do I B. So I do C. Neither do I

6. (2013 娄底) —Lily and I will go to the old people's home this weekend. —_____________.

A. So will I B. So I will C. So do I

7. (2013 毕节) If you go to the theater this evening, so ________ I.

A. will B. should C. do D. am

8. (2013 齐齐哈尔) —Mary likes playing basketball very much. —_______________.

A. So does Amy B. So Amy is C. So Amy does

9. (2013 乌鲁木齐) —I don't like documentaries.—___________.

A. So do I B. So I do C. Neither do I D. Either do I

10. (2013 烟台) —Would you like to go to the amusement park? —If Jack does,______________.

A. I go, too B. so will I C. neither will I D. so do I

11. (2013 黔东南) —We have never been to Mexico, what about Jeff?

—___________. He hopes to visit it some day.

A. Neither has he B. Neither does he C. So has he D. So does he

12. (2013 巴中) —Tom loves his classmates and teachers. —_______________.

A. So do I B. So I do C. Neither do I

24 “there+be”结构和“it”的用法

24.1 “there+be”结构

24.1.1 概　述

there be 结构是英语中陈述事物客观存在的常用句型，表示“有”，其确切含义是“存在”。there 作为引导词，本身没有意义，用动词 be 的某些形式作为谓语动词，它的主语是一些表示泛指或不定特指的名词词组，动词 be 和主语的数必须一致。句子最后通常为表示地点和时间的状语。因此要表达“某个地方或某个时间存在什么事物或人”的时候常用“there be+名词+地点（时间）”这一句型。例如：

There is a great Italian deli across the street. 穿过街道，有一家大的意大利熟食店。

There are some students in the dormitory. 在宿舍里有一些学生。

24.1.2 there be 结构中的主谓一致

（1）当动词 be 后所接的名词是单数可数名词或不可数名词时，be 应该取单数 is；当其后所接的名词是复数的可数名词时，be 用复数 are。如：

There’s a man at the door. 门口有个人。

There is some apple juice in the bottle. 瓶子里有些苹果汁。

There are some strangers in the street. 大街上有一些陌生人。

（2）如果 there be 后面是几个并列名词作主语，动词 be 的形式和最靠近它的那个名词保持数的一致，也就是常说的“就近原则”。如：

There is an ashtray and two bottles on the shelf. 架子上有一只烟灰缸和两个瓶子。

There are two bottles and an ashtray on the shelf. 架子上有两个瓶子和一个烟灰缸。

24.1.3 there be 结构中的时态与语态

（1）there be 结构可以有一般现在时、一般过去时、将来时和完成时。如：

There are some books on the desk. 桌子上有一些书

There was an accident last night. 昨晚发生了一个事故。

There were many students at the concert. 许多学生参加了音乐会。

There have been many changes in the village recently. 最近这个村庄发生了许多变化。

There had been a fight here before he came back. 在他回来之前这儿有过一场搏斗。

There will be a good wheat crop this year. 今年小麦将有一个好收成。

There will be a good film in the cinema on next month. 下月电影院将上映一部好片子。

（2）there 可和各种助动词或情态动词连用。如：

What a pity my new computer doesn’t work.There must be something wrong with it. 很遗憾我们的计算机不能用了。肯定是坏了。

There may be a bird on the branch. 树枝上也许有一只鸟。

There must be no more time wasted. 不能再浪费时间了。

There used to be a cinema here before the war. 这里战前曾有一座电影院。

（3）there be 结构中的谓语动词可以是“be going to/seem to/happen to/used to/be likely to/…+be（原形）”。如：

There seems to be something wrong with it. 它好像有点毛病。

There happened to be a car nearby. 碰巧附近有一辆车。

There is likely to be a storm. 可能有一场暴雨。

There isn’t going to be any meeting tonight. 今天晚上没有会。

（4）there be 结构中的谓语动词有时可采用被动语态。如：

There was said to be a fairy in the forest. 据说树林里有一位仙女。

There is expected to be more discussion. 希望多讨论。

There is reported to be a number of the wounded on both sides. 据报道双方都有伤者。

24.1.4 there be 结构的否定和疑问结构

there be 结构变成否定句时，需在动词 be 后加 not（any）或 no。变成疑问句时，将动词 be 提到 there 之前，句子其余部分不变。回答用 yes 或 no，后接简单答语 Yes，there is/are. 或 No，there isn’t/aren’t.

1. there be 结构的一般疑问句

（1）Is+there+a/an+单数名词+介词短语？如：

—Is there a ball on the table? 桌子上有个球吗？

—No，there isn’t. 不，没有。

—Is there a table in the room? 屋子里有张桌子是吗？

—Yes，there is. 是的，有。

（2）Is+there+不可数名词+介词短语？如：

—Is there any water left in the mug? 杯子里剩下水了吗？

—No，there isn’t. 不，没有。

—Is there any room for the piano? 还有地方放钢琴吗？

—I’m afraid not. 恐怕没地方了。

（3）Are+there+any+复数名词+介词短语？如：

—Are there any books on the desk? 桌上有书吗？

—Yes，there are. 是的，有。

—Are there any children near the door? 门边有些孩子吗？

—Yes，there are. 是的，有。

—Are there any birds in the tree? 树上有些鸟吗？

—Yes，there have. 是的，有。

—Not，there won’t. 不，没有。

2. there be 结构的特殊疑问句

这种句型主要用来询问“某处有多少人或物”，有下列两种情况：

（1）How many+复数名词+are there+介词短语？如：

How many students are there in your class? 你们班有多少学生？

How many books are there on the desk? 桌上有多少书？

（2）How much+不可数名词+is+there+介词短语？如：

How much water is there in the glass? 杯子里有多少水？

How much sand is there on the playground? 操场上有多少沙子？

3. there be 句型的反义疑问句结构

（1）There is+a/an+单数名词+介词短语，isn’t there?

（2）There is+不可数名词+介词短语，isn’t there?

（3）There are+any+复数名词+介词短语，aren’t there?

（4）There+情态动词或助动词+名词+介词短语，情态动词或助动词的否定+there？如：

There is a book on the desk，isn’t there? 桌子上有本书，是吗？

There is some water in it，isn’t there? 那里边有些水，是吗？

There are many people in the street，aren’t there? 大街上有很多人，是吗？

There will be a new film on in the cinema，won’t there? 下周电影院上映新电影是吗？

4. there be 结构的否定

（1）There be+not+名词+介词短语。如：

There isn’t a computer in the room. 屋子里没有电脑。

There aren’t any books on the table. 桌子上没有书。

There are not any books on the desk. 桌上没有书。

（2）There+情态动词或助动词+not be+名词+介词短语。如：

There hasn’t been any rain recently. 最近没下雨。

There won’t be a meeting tonight. 今晚没有会。

（3）There be+no+名词+介词短语。如：

There is no money left. 没钱了。

There are no books on the desk. 桌子上没有书。

（4）There+情态动词或助动词+be+no+名词+介词短语。如：

There will be no one in at that moment. 那时将没人在家。

There might be no money left. 可能没剩下钱。

24.1.5　there be 结构中 be 的替代

there+be 这种结构，谓语动词除 be 之外，还可用 live，lie，exist，stand，remain，go，come 等表示“存在”意义的不及物动词。如：

There stands a tree in front of the house. 房前有一棵树。

There remains much to be done. 还有许多事要做。

There lies a river at the foot of the mountain. 山脚下有一条小河。

There goes the bell for class. 上课铃响了。

There comes the bus. 公共汽车来了。

24.1.6 “there+be”结构的非限定形式

there+be 结构的非限定形式是 there to be 和 there being 两种形式。在句中可以作主语、宾语和状语。

1. 作主语

there being 结构可以起名词的作用，直接位于句首作主语；当“there to be+名词（词组）”作主语时，通常用 it 作形式主语，并且用 for 引导。如：

There being a bus stop near the house is a great advantage. 房子旁边有个停车点，真是方便极了。

There not being an index to this book is a disadvantage. 这本书没有索引，查找很不方便。

It would be surprising for there to be no objections. 没有反对意见，这倒令人吃惊。

It is impossible for there to be any more. 不可能再有了。

2. 作宾语

（1）作动词宾语时，通常用 there to be 结构。能这样用的及物动词为数有限，常见的有 expect，like，mean，intend，want，prefer，hate 等。如：

We expect there to be no argument. 我们希望不再出现争吵。

Would you like there to be a picture on the wall? 你喜欢墙上挂幅画吗？

People don't want there to be another war. 人们不希望再有战争。

（2）在作介词的宾语时，如果介词是 for，便只能用 there to be 结构，其他介词要用 there being 结构。如：

The teacher was waiting for there to be complete silence. 老师在等着大家都安静下来。

I never dreamed of there being any chance for me to try. 我做梦也没想到有让我试试的机会。

3. 作状语

用作状语的 there be 非谓语形式，通常用 there being 结构。如：

There being nobody in the room，he didn't go in. 由于屋里没有人，他没进去。

There being no further business，the chairman closed the meeting. 没有什么事，主席宣布散会。

There being nothing else to do we went home. 没有什么事，我们就回家了。

24.1.7 there be 结构和 have 的区别与联系

（1）区别点：there be 意为存在，强调某地有某物，指没有生命的物体，不表示所属关系；have 表示所有关系，表示有生命的人或者动物，强调某人或某地有某物，这是其基本用法。如：

There are some trees in front of the house. 房前有些树。

Tom has many friends in China. 汤姆在中国有许多朋友。

（2）相同点：在表示结构上的含有时，既可以用 there be 句型，也可以用 have（has）来表示。如：

中国有许多长河。

There are many long rivers in China.

China has many long rivers.

24.2 “it”的用法

24.2.1 代词 it（见表 24-1）

表 24-1 代词 it 的用法

用 法	例 句
代替前文提到过的东西或事情，用作人称代词	This is a new dictionary. I bought it yesterday. 这是一本新词典，我昨天买的。 Tom joined the army last mouth. Do you know about it? 汤姆上月入伍了，你知道这事吗？
代替指示代词，起着 this 或 that 的作用	—Is this your car? —No，it isn't. 这是你的汽车吗？不是。 —What's that? —It's a video. 那是什么？它是一台录像机。 —Whose room is this? —It is theirs. 这是谁的房间，是他们的。
指明某人或某物的身份，还可指不明性别的婴儿	Who's there? It's me.（It's John）谁在那儿？是我。（是约翰） —Go and see who it is that rings. —It's Bill. 去看看是谁来的电话，是比尔。 The Greens have a new baby. It's lovely. 格林家有一个新生婴儿。它很可爱。
指时间、距离、自然现象（天气，气候，明暗）量度、价值等	It's Sunday today. 今天是星期天。 It's three months since he came here. 自从他来到这里，已经三个月了。 How far is it to the Great Wall? 到长城有多远？ It's getting dark.天快黑了。 —How much is the coat? —It's ninety dollars. 这件衣服多少钱？九十美元。

24.2.2 引导词 it（见表 24-2）

表 24-2 引导词 it 的用法

	用 法	例 句
形式主语	代替不定式短语	It is up to you to decide. 这事要由你决定。 It makes me happy to hear you have recovered. 听说你恢复了健康，这使我很高兴。
	代替动名词短语	It's no good smoking. 吸烟没有好处。 It's worthwhile working the whole night on the problem. 用整夜的时间来研究那个问题是值得的。
	代替主语从句	It doesn't matter what you do. 你干什么都没有关系。 It seems that everyone has known the news. 好像大家都知道这个消息。

续表

	用　法	例　句
形式宾语	代替不定式短语	I consider it better to be early. 我认为能够早一些更好。 We found it impossible to get there before July . 我们觉得，要在七月以前到达那里是不可能的。
	代替动名词短语	We thought it no use doing that. 我们认为做那事没有用。
	代替宾语从句	The teacher makes it clear that everyone should hand in his homework on time. 老师清楚地指出，每个人都应该按时交作业。

1. 用作形式主语

英语中常常见到某个句子以 it 开头，it 与其后面的动词不定式短语、动名词短语、名词性从句等相呼应，以表达一个完整的意义。这是一种习惯表达法，这样的句式可避免句子显得头重脚轻。

（1）It+is/was+形容词+（for/of sb.）+动词不定式短语。这个句型中究竟 for 还是 of，一般遵循这样的规则：如果形容词仅仅是描述事物的形容词，如 difficult，easy，hard，important，dangerous 等用 for；如果形容词是描述不定式行为者的性格、品质的，如 kind，good，nice，clever 等则用 of。如：

It is interesting to play with snow in winter. 冬季里玩雪是很有趣的。

It's important for us to keep the water clean. 保持水质清洁对我们来说是很重要的。

It's very kind of you to say so. 你这样说真是太好了。

注意：这一句式中的形容词位置也可换用名词；连系动词 be 也可换用其他连系动词，如 feel 等。如：

It's a good habit to get up early and go to bed early. 早睡早起是好习惯。

It must be great fun to fly to the moon in a spaceship. 乘宇宙飞船飞往月球一定很有趣。

It feels strange to have a twin sister. 有个孪生姐妹感觉很奇怪。

（2）It+will be/is/was+形容词+动名词短语。如：

It's bad playing in the street. 在街上玩是没好处的。

Is it any good trying again? 再试一次有用吗？

（3）It+is/was+形容词+从句。如：

It is certain that he will come. 他一定会来。

It's true that he may fall behind the other students. 他真的可能落后于其他同学。

It is strange that he should say so. 他居然这么说，真是奇怪。

（4）It+is/was+one's turn（duty，pleasure）+to do sth. 意为“该轮到某人做某事（做某事是某人的责任、愉悦的事）”。如：

It's your turn to be on duty tomorrow. 明天轮到你值日了。

（5）It takes（sb.）some time to do sth. 意为“（某人）花……时间做某事”。如：

It took me a week to finish reading the book. 我花了一周时间看完这本书。

（6）It+cost/costs+sb.+some money+to do sth. 译为“某人花多少钱做某事”。如：

It cost me 260 yuan to buy the new watch. 我买这块新手表花了 260 元。

（7）It seems/seemed+从句。译为“看起来好像……”，此结构可以转换成“seem+动词不定式”形式。如：

It seems that he is ill. ＝He seems to be ill. 看起来他好像病了。

2. 用作形式宾语

当句子的真正宾语是动词不定式、动名词或从句时，为避免句子头重脚轻，需将其放在宾语补足语之后，改用先行词 it 占据其原来的位置。it 用作形式宾语的句型为：主语+谓语+it+宾语补足语+动词不定式/动名词/从句。该句型中宾语补足语可由形容词、名词等充当。如：

He found it not easy to learn a foreign language well. 他发现学好一门外语是不容易的。

We think it no good reading in bed. 我们认为躺在床上看书无益处。

I think it necessary that we have the meeting. 我认为开这个会是必要的。

24.2.3 it 在强调结构中

强调句型：It is（was）+被强调部分+that（who）+其他。

1. 强调句型

（1）陈述句的强调句，强调陈述句中的某个成分。

为了强调句子中的有些成分，要用强调结构 It is（was）+被强调部分+that（who）+其他部分。被强调的成分可以是主语、宾语、状语，但不能是定语或谓语。这种类型的强调句主要注意以下几个方面：

① It 在这一结构中作主句的主语，所以即使被强调部分是复数名词，也要用 is 或 was。如：

Tom and Mark often come to see me.

It is Tom and Mark who often come to see me.（强调主语）

② 如果被强调部分是时间、地点、方式或原因则不用 when，where，how，why，而用 that；强调人时可用 who，也可用 that。如：

They set out the day before yesterday.

→It was the day before yesterday that they set out.（强调时间状语）

We put off the sports meet because of the rain.

→It was because of the rain that we put off the sports meet.（强调原因状语）

It was because she was ill that they didn’t ask her to do the job.（强调原因状语从句）

③ 如果被强调的代词是原句的主语，代词用主格 I，we，he，she...；如果是宾语，则用宾格代词 me，us，him，her...。如：

I am leaving for London next week.

→It was I that（who）am leaving for London next week.（强调人称代词主格）

You met me yesterday.

→It was me that you met yesterday.（强调人称代词宾格）

④ 被强调部分如果是原句的主语，who 或 that 后面谓语的人称和数应和原句的主语一致。如：

—Personally，I think it is the sales manager，rather than the salesgirls，___ to blame.

—I agree with you.

A. is　　B. that is　　C. are　　D. who are（答案 B）

（2）一般疑问句的强调句，只需把 is（was）提前。如：

Was it in 1939 that the Second World War broke out?

Is it Professor Wang who teaches you English?

—Was is two months ago____you luckily got an opportunity to spend your holiday in Canada?

—_____. John was the lucky dog.

A. when；Not I　　B. when；Not only　　C. that；Not all　　D. that; Not me（答案 D）

（3）特殊疑问句的强调句，强调特殊疑问句中的疑问词。如：

Where did you find the wallet?

Where was it that you found the wallet?

When shall we meet?

When is it that we shall meet?

从上面的例子可以看出，特殊疑问句的强调句是由“特殊疑问词+was（is）it that+陈述句”构成的。但是当含有特殊疑问词的强调句型用在宾语从句中的时候，上述句型应改为“特殊疑问词+it was（is）that+陈述句”，即采用陈述句语序。如：

—Where was it ____ the road accident happened yesterday?

—In front of the market.

A. when　　B. that　　C. which　　D. how（答案 D）

I really don’t know _____ you returned the book to me.

A. when it was that　　B. when was it　　C. when was it that　　D. when it was（答案 A）

（4）有时可用 It might be...that...和 It must have been...that...的句型表示强调。如：

It might be his father that you are looking for.

It must have been his brother that you met.

（5）强调 not...until 结构中由 until 引导的短语（或从句）表示时间状语的句型是：It is（was）not until...+that...+其他部分。如：

He didn’t marry until forty.

→It was not until forty that he married.

Mr. Yang did not leave the lab until he got everything ready for the experiment.

→It was not until he had got everything ready for the experiment that Mr. Yang left the lab.

_____ he realized it was too late to return home.

A. Not until dark　　B. It was until dark that

C. It was not until dark that　　D. It was dark that（答案 C）

注意：如果 not...until 放在句首时就要用部分倒装句式，它的语序和在 not...until 结构中由 until 引导的短语（或从句）表示时间状语的句型中的语序不同。

（6）强调词 it 与先行词 it 的区别。

强调词 it 与先行词 it 的区别可以通过恢复原句的方式来判断，即如果把 it is...that...去掉后剩下的成分仍然能组成一个完整的句子，这就是强调句型，否则就不是。如：

It is there that accidents often happen.

→ Accidents often happen there.

以上就是强调句型，被强调成分是状语，把 it is...that...去掉，还原成后来的非强调句。

It is clear that not all boys like football.

上面的句子如果去掉 it is...that...后就成了 Clear not all the boys like football.很显然这不是一个完整的句子，因此不是强调句型，而是由 it 作先行词引导的一个主语从句。

（7）其他的一些强调句型：It is/was+时间+since 从句，It+时间+before 从句，It is/was+时间+when 从句。

① It is/was+时间+since…，从……已多久了。在这个句型中，主句通常用一般现在时，since 从句用过去时，表示一个时间点。如：

It is five months since I arrived in New York. 我到纽约已经五个月了。

It is five months since I was in New York. 我离开纽约已经五个月了。

注意：例句中 five months 是作为一个整体看待的，所以用 it is。在这类句子中，终止性动词表示从动作发生时算起；如果是状态动词或持续性动词，则从动作或状态结束时算起。

② It is+时间+before…。在这个句型和上面一个句型中，时间都是时间段，如 years，five days，twenty minutes 等。不过主句的时态多用一般将来时或一般过去时，从句的时态要根据主句的时态进行变化。Before 前的主句如果是肯定的，翻译成“在……之后才……”；主句如果是否定的，翻译成“不久就……”。如：

It was long before he gave an answer. 过了好久他才答复我。

It was not long before he worked out the difficult maths problem. 不一会儿他就把那道数学题解出来了。

It will be years before he comes back. 过几年他才回来。

It was five o’clock______he came to see me.

It was at five o’clock______he came to see me.

It is five years______I left school.

It was five years______he joined the army.

A. when B. that C. before D. since

③ It was+时间+when 从句。在上述句型中 it 指时间，when 引导的是时间状语从句。如：

It was at midnight that I got back home yesterday.

It was midnight when I got back home yesterday.

第一句是强调句型，被强调的时间状语，因此用介词短语表达，而第二句是一般句型，时间以名词的方式表达，用来作表语。

2. 谓语动词的强调

it is...that...结构不能强调谓语，如果需要强调谓语，用助动词 do，did 或 does。如：

Do come here tomorrow.

He did write to you last week.

Mary does study hard now.

【要点点拨】

it 的用法在高考中也是重现率较高的语言点，尤其是 it 用于强调句。其考查方式多通过“单项填空”进行，偶尔也出现在“短文改错”和“完形填空”中。

1.（NMET98）It was only when I reread his poems recently ___ I began to appreciate their beauty.

A. until B. that C. then D. so

正确答案：B。此题考查强调句，所以用 that。

2.（NMET98）I hate____when people talk with their mouths full.

A. it B. that C. these D. them

正确答案：A。此题考查 it 作形式宾语的用法，所以选 A。

3.（MET91，短文改错）David and I did not agree and David pointed to a path which he thought it would probably lead to a village.

正确答案：去掉 it，因为定语从句中已有宾语 which。

【it 的用法考查】

在英语中，it 的使用相当广泛。它既可用作代词（如人称代词、指示代词和非人称代词），也可用作引导词（作形式主语、形式宾语及构成强调句型）。

（1）考查 it 表示上文提过的事物或心目中的人或物的用法。

上文提过的事物（单数）或事情时，常用 it 来代替；指代心目中的人或物时也常用 it 来代替。

【考例】—___will make your grandma happy if you buy a walking stick for her birthday，I guess.

—It sounds a good idea! She has some problems walking now.（2005 年湖北宜昌）

A. That B. It C. This D. What

【答案】B。

【命题立意】本题考查指代词的用法。

【试题解析】依据题干 you buy a walking stick for her birthday 可知，此处用 it 指代这件事情。

—A latest English newspaper，please!—Only one copy left. Would you like to have____，sir?（徐州）

A. it　　B. one　　C. this　　D. that

【答案】A。

【命题立意】本题考查替代词的用法。

【试题解析】it 用于指代前面提到过的名词，可以替代单数可数名词和不可数名词。

（2）考查 it 作形式主语或形式宾语。

it 作形式主语或形式宾语时，可指代动名词、动词不定式、主语从句或宾语从句。此时，it 自身无词义，位于句子主语或宾语的位置，而真正作主语或宾语的动名词、动词不定式或从句则置于句子的后面。

注意：考查 it 作形式主语或形式宾语常与 that，this，as 等一起考查。that，this，as 等均不能作形式主语或形式宾语。

【考例】My mother finds____great fun to learn to drive a car.（苏州）

A. it　　B. this　　C. the　　D. what

【答案】A。

【命题立意】本题考查“S+V+it+*adj*. to do sth.”句型的用法。

【试题解析】it 作指代词，用作形式宾语。

（3）it/that/one 用法区别。

it 主要指代前面提到的同一物；one 用来指代前面出现的单数名词，相当于 a/an+单数名词，表泛指概念，往往是同类而同一物；that 用来替代前面出现的特指的单数可数名词或特指的不可数名词，相当于 the+单数/不可数名词

【考例】

—Two Evening Papers，please! —Only one copy left. Would you like to have____，sir?（盐城）

A. one　　B. it　　C. this　　D. that

【答案】B。

【解析】句意：“请拿两份晚报!”“先生，仅剩下一份了。你想买它吗?”用 it 来代替前面提到的 one copy，故选 B。

—Where's my watch? —Sorry. I don't know. Maybe you put____on the table.（浙江台州）

A. it　　B. her　　C. him　　D. them

【答案】A。

【解析】此题考查代词的用法。it 代替前面出现的单数事物，故选 it。

I can't find the pen I was given. Have you seen __________?（徐州）

A. it　　B. one　　C. this　　D. that

【答案】A。it 指前文出现过的单数物或人；one 常用来代替上文出现的属于同一类事物的单数名词；that 多指电话中的对方或用在比较等级前替代前边的事物；this 指上文中已提到的两点中的后一点，其前一点用 that 表示。

【跟踪训练】

一、选择填空。

1. There is someone at the door，______?

A. isn't there　　B. is there　　C. isn't he　　D. is it

2. —Did you hear about the fire down the street? —There____a lot of news about it on TV last night.

A. was　B. had　C. is　D. were

3. There________a table, two computers and three chairs in the room.

A. have　B. has　C. is　D. are

4. There______two films this week in our school.

A. is　B. have　C. has been　D. have been

5. There used to be a temple here, __________?

A. usedn't it　B. used there　C. didn't it　D. didn't there

6. There_____a tall tree at the foot of the mountain.

A. lie　B. has　C. stand　D. stands

7. There______nobody in the room.

A. to be　B. happened　C. happened to be　D. happened be

8. There______a meeting tonight.

A. is going to be　B. is going to have　C. is going to　D. is going be

9. ___________, he felt lonely.

A. There is nobody else　B. Having nobody else in

C. There being nobody else in　D. There having nobody else in

10. What a pity my new computer doesn't work. ______must be something wrong with it.

A. It　B. There　C. This　D. That

11. It isn't cold enough for there ______a frost tonight, so I can leave Jim's car out safely.

A. to be　B. would be　C. being　D. was

12. —Did you hear about the fire down the street? —There_____a lot of news about it on TV last night.

A. was　B. had　C. is　D. were

13. There ______many changes in the village recently.

A. is　B. are　C. have been　D. to be

14. There ______nobody else at hand, I had to do it by myself.

A. being　B. was　C. have　D. to be

15. We have no objection to______ a meeting here.

A. there to be　B. there being　C. there is　D. there have

16. I don't expect there______ any misunderstanding.

A. is　B. to be　C. being　D. will be

17. Bill was relying on _______another chance.

A. there to be　B. there is　C. there have　D. there being

18. There ______a dictionary is very helpful to the students of English.

A. is　B. to be　C. being　D. have

19. There used to be a temple here, _______?

A. usedn't it　B. used there　C. didn't it　D. didn't there

20. There _______a meeting tonight.

A. is going be　B. is going to have　C. is going to be　D. is going to be

21. We don't want ______to be any student lagging behind.

A. it　B. that　C. there　D. this

22. For there _______so few people in the streets was unusual.

A. to be　B. is　C. was　D. being

23. There ______a time when they are good friends.

A. is coming　B. comes　C. to be　D. came

24. There's now some hope of _______a settlement of dispute.
A. to be B. there to be C. there being D. being
25. There are a lot of people _______for the bus to come.
A. waiting B. to wait C. waited D. is waiting

二、句型转换。

1. There is a woman near the house.（变复数）
____
2. There are some buses near the hill.（变单数）
____
3. There are some apples in the tree.（变一般问句）
____
4. There are some oranges in the glass.（变否定句）
____
5. Is there a baby in the room?（变复数）
____
6. There is a bookcase in my study.（变一般问句）
_____ _____ _____ _____ in your study?

三、用 some，any 填空。

1. There's ______ water in the cup. There isn't ______ tea in the cup.
2. Is there ______ bread here? Yes，there is. There's ______ on the table.
3. Are there ______ cars in front of the building? No，there aren't.
4. There isn't _____ chocolate on the table.
5. Is there ______ soap on the dressing table?

四、用 is，are 填空。

1. There ______ a spoon on the plate.
2. There ______ some milk on the table.
3. There ______ some clouds in the sky. There ______ some boats on the river.
4. There ______ some knives in the box.
5. There ______ a newspaper in the living room.
6. ______ there any books in the room? Yes，there ______.
______ there any magazines on the television? No，there _____.
7. There ______ a policeman in the kitchen.
8. There ______ 60 minutes in an hour.
9. There ______ a pencil，a ruler and 2 books on the desk.
10. There ______ 2 glasses and a cup on the table.

五、单项选择。

1.（2000 全国卷）It is the ability to do the job_______ matters not where you come from or what you are.
A. one B. that C. what D. it
2.（2006 上海春季）David said that it was because of his strong interest in literature _____ he chose the course.
A. that B. what C. why D. how
3.（2003 上海卷）It is these poisonous products _______ can cause the symptoms of the flu，such as

headache and aching muscles.

A. who　　B. that　　C. how　　D. what

4.（2004 上海卷）Why! I have nothing to confess. ________ you want me to say?

A. What is it that　　B. What it is that　　C. How is it that　　D. How it is that

5.（2004 福建卷）It was with great joy _______ he received the news that his lost daughter had been found.

A. because　　B. which　　C. since　　D. that

6.（2000 上海卷）An awful accident _______， however，occur the other day.

A. does　　B. did　　C. has to　　D. had to

7.（2006 全国 II 卷）It was not until she got home _______ Jennifer realized she had lost her keys.

A. when　　B. that　　C. where　　D. before

8.（2004 湖北卷）It was_______ black home after the experiment.

A. not until midnight did he go　　B. until midnight that he didn’t go

C. not until midnight that he went　　D. until midnight when he didn’t go

9.（2005 山东卷）—_____that he managed to get the information?—Oh，a friend of his helped him.

A. Where was it　　B. What was it　　C. How was it　　D. Why was it

10. 1）It was 20 years ago ________ the two friends met in Viet Nam.

2）It will be 20 years ________ they meet in Viet Nam.

3）It is 20 years ________ he came to live here.

4）It was 20 years ________ he spent in writing this novel.

5）It was not long ________ the people in Austria took up guns.

6）It was midnight _______ he came back home.

A. when　　B. before　　C. since　　D. That

【分析诊断】

1. B。首先判断这是强调句型，强调的是主语 the ability to do the job，所以选用 that。如果原句中谓语动词为过去范畴的时态（一般过去时、过去进行时、过去完成时、过去将来时等），则用 It was...that...。

2. A。said that 后面的是宾语从句，在这个从句里，有一个 it is…that 的强调句。整个宾语从句的意思是：正是因为他对文学有浓厚的兴趣，他才选择了这个课程。

3. B。本题强调主语 these poisonous products。

4. A。本句中强调句型对特殊疑问词 what 进行强调，去掉强调句型后句子为 What do you want me to say? 可以看到被强调的 what 是 say 的宾语。

5. D。对状语 with this joy 进行强调。

6. B。本题考查助动词 do 对动词的强调。从 the other day（那天）判断整个句子应用过去时态，A、C 两项时态错误，D 项不合题意，故选 B，did 可译为“的确，真的”。

7. B。句意：直到他到家的时候，詹尼弗才意识到钥匙丢了。until 结构用于强调句式时，要将否定词 not 移到 until 前。

8. C。本题是对强调句型与 not…until 从句的结合考查，把 not 移至被强调的部分之后，要注意句子中的动词用过去式。

9. C。根据下文的答语 a friend of his helped him 可知上文是强调方式状语。

10. 1）D，2）B，3）C，4）D，5）B，6）A。1）本句强调时间状语，故用 that；2）是 It…before…句型，时间状语从句，只用 before；3）It is a period of time since-clause 是固定结构，只用 since；4）是强调句型，因 spend 一词为及物动词，故需要宾语 that。此例也可能是定语从句，若为定语从句则 which 亦可。但强调句和定语从句的意义是不同的；5）是 It…before…句型，时间状语从句，只用 before；6）是 when 引导的时间状语从句。

六、分析 it 成分，辨清相似句型。

1. ① _____ is well know to us all that the earth is round.
   ② _____ is well known to us all，the earth is round.
   A. That　　B. As　　C. It　　D. Which
2. ① _____doesn’t matter much whether he’ll come to the party.
   ② I feel ____ an honor to be invited to speak here.
   A. this　　B. it　　C. that　　D. what
3. ① _____ no wonder that he has passed the exam.
   ② _____ no need for you to wait here.
   A. There being　　B. It was　　C. It is　　D. There is
4. ① Was it the house ____ Abraham Lincoln was born?
   ② Was it in the house ____ Abraham Lincoln was born?
   A. hat　　B. where　　C. which　　D. both A and B
5. ① It’s very kind ____ you to help us.
   ② It’s very important _____ you to keep the balance of nature.
   A. for　　B. of　　C. to　　D. with
6. ① It is no good ____ such a thing.
   ② It’s of no importance _____ such a thing.
   A. do　　B. to do　　C. doing　　D. done
7. ① It’s time that we ____ to school.
   ② It is the second time that we _____ to Beijing.
   A. go　　B. went　　C. have been　　D. have gone
8. ① It’s tomorrow ____ he is going to Beijing.
   ② It was 8 o’clock _____ he went to school.
   A. that　　B. when　　C. before　　D. since
9. ① It is 3 years ____ he joined the army.
   ② It will be 3 years ____ we meet again.
   A. before　　B. after　　C. since　　D. when

【参考答案】1. CB　2. BB　3. CD　4. BA　5. BA　6. CB　7. BC　8. AB　9. CA

七、同义句转换，每空一词。

1. It’s time for class.
   It’s time _____ _____ _____.
2. （2002 哈尔滨市）We spent twenty minutes cleaning the room yesterday.
   It _____ _____twenty minutes _____ _____ the room yesterday.
3. （2002 南京市）She seems to be worried now.
   _____ _____ that she _____ worried now.
4. （2002 南京市）It’s a long time since we met last.
   We haven’t seen each other _____ _____.

【参考答案】1. to have classes　2. took us；to clean　3. It seems；is　4. for long

25　标点符号

25.1　概　述

标点符号是书面语中一系列表停顿、节奏和语调等的符号，用以表示句子或句子成分的隔离或特指。如：China is in Asia. It is a vast and beautiful land. 中国地处亚洲。它幅员辽阔而美丽。

（句号在两句之间起隔离作用）

How calm the sea is! 大海多么平静啊！（感叹号特指惊讶或赞赏）

英语常用标点符号与汉语标点符号的比较见表 25-1。

表 25-1　英语常用标点符号与汉语标点符号的比较

英语标点符号		汉语标点符号	
符号	名称	符号	名称
.	period（full stop）	。	句号
,	comma	，	逗号
:	colon	：	冒号
;	semicolon	；	分号
?	question mark	？	问号
!	exclamation mark	！	感叹号
—	dash	—	破折号
“ ” ‘ ’	quotation marks	“ ” ‘ ’ ﹁﹂	引号
-	hyphen	无	连字线
’	apostrophe	无	省字符

注：英语标点符号除上述十种外，还有删节号（通常为...）、括号（(　)、[ ]、〈　〉、{　}等）、斜线（/或\）、星号（*）、代字号（~）、脱字号（∧）、小记号（√）、斜十字（×）、斜体字以及字下画线等。

25.2　Full stop（美式英语称 period）句号（.）

（1）句号用在一句子的末尾，表示一句话说完后的停顿。句号不但用于陈述句，亦可用于祈使句和疑问句。如：

I really don’t know. 我确实不知道。（陈述句）

Take it or leave it. 要就要，不要就算。（祈使句）

Will you weigh it，please. 请你称一称它。（不需要对方回答的疑问句）

（2）用于缩略语、编号的数字和字母后。如：

kg.公斤　a.m.上午　No. 第……　n. 名词　Mr.先生　1. A.（表示第一条，A 项）

25.3 Comma 逗号（，）

（1）在句子里面用于并列的词语之间。如：

If you keep calm，take your time，concentrate and think ahead，you'll pass your driving test.

假如你保持镇定、不慌不忙、集中精力注意前方，驾驶考试就能及格。

（2）常用于主句与状语从句或较长的词组之间。如：

When a policy holder has a loss，he or she asks for payment from the insurance company. 当投保人遭受损失后，他们要求保险公司支付损失。

（3）用于在句首非限定的或无动词的短语之后。如：

Discovered in 1789 and isolated from other elements in 1841，uranium is valued as a source of atomic energy.

铀于 1789 年被发现，1841 年从其他元素中被分离出来，它被珍视为原子能的一个来源。

（4）用以将引导性词语或转折性词语（如 therefore，however，by the way，for instance，on the contrary）与句子的其余部分隔开。如：

In the United States，for example，nodding your hand up and down means "yes". In the same parts of Green and Turkey，however，this motion can mean "no".

比如在美国，点头表示"是"或"可以"，而在希腊和土耳其的某些地区，这一动作却表示"不行"。

（5）用于插入句中的从句等成分的前后。如：

Every individual cell，whether it exists as an independent microorganism or is part of a complex creature，has its own life circle.

每个单独的细胞，不论它是作为一个独立的微生物而存在，还是作为一个复杂生物的一部分而存在，都有自己的生命周期。

（6）用于非限定性定语从句或同位短语前后，进一步说明前面的名词或句子。如：

The painter lived more than a decade in Europe，where he could be in close contact with other cubists.

（7）有时用以分隔并列复合句（尤指较长的），用于连词（如 and，as，but，for，or）之前。如：

The fragrances of many natural substances comes from oils，and this oil may be used in manufacturing perfumes. 许多自然物质的香味来自油类，因此，这样的油可以用来生产香水。

（8）用以将附加疑问句或类似词语与句中其余部分隔开。如：

He is an excellent scholar，isn't he? 他是位优秀的学者，是吗？

（9）在直接引语中作者提示"某某说"之类的词语（如 he said，she told，etc.）用逗号与引用语分开。如：

"This house is very big and beautiful，" said Fritz. "这所房子又大又漂亮，"弗里茨说。

（10）引语里面的引语用逗号隔开。如：

"When the Judge said，'Not guilty'，I could have hugged him."

"当法官宣布，'无罪'，我当时真想去拥抱他。"

（11）用于表示日期。如：

May 1，2003　2003 年 5 月 1 日

25.4 Colon 冒号（：）

（1）用以表示一些或一类事物的用语之后或用于说明性的词语（如 as follows，in the following manner）之后，用来提起下文各项。如：

I can't go on my vacation this summer. The main reasons are as follows：firstly，I have no money；second，I have no time.

今年夏天我不能去度假。主要原因如下：首先是没钱，其次是没时间。

Open-pit mining follows the same sequence of operations as underground mining：drilling，blasting，and loading and removing waste and ore.

露天采矿遵循与地下采矿相同的作业顺序：钻孔、爆破、装载并运走废料和矿石。

（2）（郑重文体）用于说明或解释主句的从句或词组之前。如：

The garden had been neglected for a long time. 那个花园长期无人照料，里面长满了杂草。

（3）用以表示时间。如：6:30p.m. 下午六点三十分

25.5　Semicolon 分号（；）

（1）用以代替逗号，隔开句中已含逗号的部分。如：

She wanted to be successful, whatever it might cost; to achieve her goal, whoever might suffer as a result. 她决意求成，不惜一切代价；为达到目的，不管谁遭殃。

（2）（郑重用法）用以隔开并列从句，尤用于无连词的句中。如：

He couldn't have gone home this weekend；I saw him at the ball game on Saturday and in the library on Sunday. 他这个周末不可能回家；我在周六的球赛中看到了他，而且周日在图书馆也看见了他。

The perfectionist is exacting for the sake of exacting; his approach has little to do with the requirements of a situation. 十全十美主义者为苛求而苛求；其方法几乎与形势的需要毫无相干。

25.6　Question mark 问号（？）

（1）用于直接问句末尾。如：

Where do you live? 你住在什么地方？

May I have a look at your photo? 我可以看你的照片吗？

（2）用于括号内表示存疑。如：

Louis（1287? —1347）路易四世（1287？—1347）

25.7　Exclamation mark（美式英语亦称作 Exclamation point）感叹（！）

（1）用于表示大怒、惊讶、欣喜或其他强烈感情，置于句子或话语的末尾。如：

What a fine day! 多好的天气啊！

（2）在不规范的用法中，有时用不止一个感叹号或一个感号加一个问号。如：

"Your wife's just given birth to triplets." "Triplets!?"

"你妻子刚生了三胞胎。""三胞胎！？"

25.8　Dash 破折号（—）

（1）（通俗用法）用以代替冒号或分号，表示对前面的话的解释、总结或结论。如：

He is modest，considerate，warm-hearted—he is a good man. 他谦逊、体谅别人、热心肠——是一个不错的人。

（2）（通俗用法）单个使用或成对使用，以隔开插入句中的附加信息、补充说明或评语。如：

The materials used—copper，stainless steel，concrete and glass—give the building a striking beauty. 这些建筑物所使用的材料——铜、不锈钢、混凝土和玻璃——使这些建筑物更具非凡的魅力。

25.9　Quotation marks（英式英语亦称作 Inverted commas）引号（‘　’“　”）

在英式英语中，引号通常用单引号，如：“Help!”。在美式英语中通常用双引号，如：“Help!”。

（1）用以表明直接引语中的所有词语和标点符号。如：

“What kind of computer did you buy?” she asked.“你买了一种什么样的计算机？”她问道。

（2）用以引起对文中某特殊词语的注意（如术语或俚语或为某种效果而使用的词语）。如：

The “Little Ice Age” was a period of unsettled weather that lasted from the mid-sixteenth to the early eighteenth century.“小冰川期” 是从 16 世纪中叶到 18 世纪早期气候变化无常的一个时期。

（3）用以表明文章、短诗歌、广播及电视节目等的名称。如：

I was watching “Soccer Night”. 我正在看《足球之夜》。

（4）用以表明短小的引语或谚语。如：

Do you know the origin of the saying “the love of money is the root of all evil”？你是否知道“爱财是万恶之源”这句谚语的出处？

25.10　Hyphen 连接号（ – ）

（1）用于复合名词：

有时用以将两个词组成复合词。如：

well-informed 有见识的；消息灵通的　　good-looking 好看的　　first-rate 第一流的

用以将前缀和专有名词组成复合词。如：

pro-America 亲美　anti-Semitism 反犹太主义

用以将两个词及夹在中间的介词组成复合词。如：

editor-in-chief 总编辑　　father-in-law 岳父　　comrade-in-arms 战友

（2）（尤用于英式英语）有时以隔开某些带前缀的词，这些前缀的尾字母与后面连接词的首字母为同一元音。如：

co-operation 共同合作　　re-elect 重选　　pre-eminent 卓越的，优秀的

（3）用于在一行位置的词的前半部之后。如：

They man who makes no mistakes does not usually make any-thing.不犯错误的人往往也就是无所作为的人。

（4）用于两个数字或日期之间，意为包括其中的所有数字或日期。如：

pp. 208—345 第 208—345 页 Queen Elizabeth I（1558—1603）伊丽莎白女王一世（1558—1603）

25.11　Apostrophe 撇号，省略号，名词所有格符号（ ’ ）

（1）与 s 连用表示所有格。如：

the cat’s tail 猫的尾巴（单数名词）the princess’s smile 公主的微笑（以 s 结尾的单数名词）

Dickens’ novels or Dickens’ novel 狄更斯的小说（以 s 结尾的专有名词）

all the students’ books 所有学生的书（以 s 结尾的复数名词）

the women’s cosmetics 女人的化妆品（不规则的复数名词）

（2）用于缩写式，表示省略了字母或数字。如：

I’m（＝I am）they’d（＝they had/would）　the spring of’98（＝1998）

（3）有时与 s 连用构成字母、数字或缩略语的复数形式。在现代用法中，在一数字或大写字母后，此号常被省去。如：during the 1990’s（during the 1990s）在 20 世纪 90 年代

附　录

附录一　构词法

按照语言一定的规律创造新词的方法叫作构词法。英语构词法主要有转化法、派生法、合成法、混合法、截短法和首尾字母结合法六种。

一、转化法

英语中，有的名词可作动词，有的形容词可作副词或动词，这种把一种词性用作另一种词性而词形不变的方法叫作转化法。

1. 动词转化为名词

很多动词可以转化为名词，且大多数意思没有多大的变化（如例 1）；有时意思有一定变化（如例 2）；有的与一个动词和不定冠词构成短语，表示一个动作（如例 3）。

例 1：Let's go out for a walk. 我们到外面去散散步吧。

例 2：He is a man of strong build. 他是一个体格健壮的汉子。

例 3：Let's have a swim. 咱们游泳吧。

2. 名词转化为动词

很多表示物件（如例 1）、身体部位（如例 2）、某类人（如例 3）的名词可以用作动词来表示动作，某些抽象名词（如例 4）也可作动词。

例 1：Did you book a seat on the plane? 你订好飞机座位了吗?

例 2：Please hand me the book. 请把那本书递给我。

例 3：She nursed her husband back to health. 她看护她丈夫，使他恢复了健康。

例 4：We lunched together. 我们在一起吃了午餐。

3. 形容词转化为动词

有少数形容词可以转化为动词。例如：

We will try our best to better our living conditions. 我们要尽力改善我们的生活状况。

4. 副词转化为动词

有少数副词可以转化为动词。例如：

Murder will out.（谚语）恶事终将败露。

5. 形容词转化为名词

表示颜色的形容词常可转化为名词（如例 1）；某些形容词如 old，young，poor，rich，wounded，injured

等与 the 连用，表示一类人，作主语时，谓语用复数（如例 2）。

例 1：You should be dressed in black at the funeral. 你在葬礼中该穿黑色衣服。

例 2：The old in our village are living a happy life. 我们村的老年人过着幸福的生活。

二、派生法

在词根前面加前缀或在词根后面加后缀构成一个与原单词意义相近或截然相反的新词叫作派生法。

1. 前 缀

除少数前缀外，前缀一般改变单词的意义，不改变词性；后缀一般改变词类，而不引起词义的变化。

（1）常用的表示否定意义的前缀有 dis-，il-，im-，in-，ir-，mis-，non-，un-等，在单词的前面加这类前缀常构成与该词意义相反的新词。例如：

appear 出现→disappear 消失

correct 正确的→incorrect 不正确的

lead 带领→mislead 领错

stop 停下→non-stop 不停

（2）常用的表示其他意义的前缀有 a-（多构成表语形容词），anti-（反对；抵抗），auto-（自动），co-（共同），en-（使），inter-（互相），re-（再；又），sub-（下面的；次；小），tele-（强调距离）等。例如：

alone 单独的　　antigas 防毒气的　　autochart 自动图表

cooperate 合作　　enjoy 使高兴　　internet 互联网

reuse 再用　　subway 地铁　　telephone 电话

2. 后 缀

英语单词不仅可以通过加前缀构成新词，也可加后缀构成新词。后缀通常会改变单词的词性，构成意义相近的其他词性；少数后缀还会改变词义，变为与原来词义相反的新词。

（1）常用的构成名词的后缀有-ence，-（e）r/-or（从事某事的人），-ese（某地人），-ess（雌性），-ful（一……），-ian（精通……的人），-ist（专业人员），-ment（性质；状态），-ness（性质；状态），-tion（动作；过程）等。例如：

differ 不同于→difference 区别

write 写→writer 作家

Japan 日本→Japanese 日本人

act 表演→actress 女演员

mouth 口→mouthful 一口

music 音乐→musician 音乐家

（2）常用的构成动词的后缀有-（e）n（多用于形容词之后），-fy（使……化），-ize（使……成为）。例如：

wide→widen 加宽

beauty→beautify 美化

pure→purify 提纯

real→realize 意识到

organ→organize 组织

（3）常用的构成形容词的后缀有-al，-able（有能力的），-（a）n（某国人的），-en（多用于表示材料的名词后），-ern（方向的），-ese（某国人的），-ful，-（ic）al，-ish，-ive，-less（表示否定），-like

（像……的），-ly，-ous，-some，-y（表示天气）等。例如：

nature 自然→natural 自然的
reason 道理→reasonable 有道理的
America 美国→American 美国的
China 中国→Chinese 中国人的
gold 金子→golden 金的
east 东→eastern 东方的
child 孩子→childish 孩子气的
snow 雪→snowy 雪的

（4）常用的构成副词的后缀有-ly（主要用于形容词之后表示方式或程度），-ward（s）（主要用于表示方位的词之后表示方向）。例如：

angry 生气的→angrily 生气地
to 到→towards 朝……，向……
east 东方→eastward 向东

（5）构成数词的后缀有-teen（十几），-ty（几十），-th（构成序数词）。例如：

six 六→sixteen 十六→sixteenth 第十六
four 四→forty 四十→fortieth 第四十

三、合成法

合成法，即两个单词连在一起合成一个新词，前一个词修饰或限定后一个词。

1. 合成名词

名词+名词：weekend 周末
名词+动词：daybreak 黎明
名词+动名词：handwriting 书法
名词+及物动词+er/or：pain-killer 止痛药
名词+介词+名词：editor-in-chief 总编辑
代词+名词：she-wolf 母狼
动词+名词：typewriter 打字机
动名词+名词：reading-room 阅览室
现在分词+名词：flying-fish 飞鱼
形容词+名词：gentleman 绅士
副词+动词：outbreak 爆发
介词+名词：afternoon 下午

2. 合成形容词

名词+形容词：snow-white 雪白的
名词+现在分词：English-speaking 讲英语的
名词+to+名词：face-to-face 面对面的
名词+过去分词：man-made 人造的
数词+名词：one-way 单行的

数词+名词+形容词：two-year-old 两岁的
数词+名词+ed：five-storeyed 五层的
动词+副词：see-through 透明的
形容词+名词 high-class 高级的
形容词+名词+ed：noble-minded 高尚的
形容词+形容词：light-blue 浅蓝色的
形容词+现在分词：good-looking 相貌好看的
副词+形容词：ever-green 常青的
副词+现在分词：hard-working 勤劳的
副词+过去分词：well-known 著名的
副词+名词：fast-food 专门提供快餐服务的
介词+名词：downhill 下坡的

3. 合成动词

名词+动词：sleep-walk 梦游
形容词+动词：white-wash 粉刷
副词+动词：overthrow 推翻

4. 合成副词

形容词+名词：hotfoot 匆忙地
形容词+副词：everywhere 到处
副词+副词：however 尽管如此
介词+名词：beforehand 事先
介词+副词：forever 永远

5. 合成代词

代词宾格+self：herself 她自己
物主代词+self：myself 我自己
形容词+名词：anything 任何东西

6. 合成介词

副词+名词：inside 在……里面
介词+副词：within 在……之内
副词+介词：into 进入

四、截短法（缩略法）

截短法，即将单词缩写，词义和词性保持不变，主要有截头、去尾、截头去尾等形式。

1. 截 头

telephone → phone
aeroplane → plane

omnibus →bus

2. 去　尾

mathematics → maths
co-operate→ co-op
examination →exam
kilogram → kilo
laboratory → lab
taxicab → taxi

3. 截头去尾

influenza →flu
refrigerator →fridge
prescription → script

五、混合法（混成法）

混合法，即将两个词混合或各取一部分紧缩而成一个新词。后半部分表示主体；前半部分表示属性。
news broadcast→newscast 新闻广播
television broadcast→telecast 电视播送
smoke and fog→smog 烟雾
helicopter airport→heliport 直升机场

六、首尾字母缩略法

首尾字母缩略法，即用单词首尾字母组成一个新词。读音主要有两种形式，即各字母分别读音；作为一个单词读音。
very important person→VIP（读字母音）重要的人；大人物
television→TV（读字母音）电视
Testing of English as a Foreign Language→TOEFL 托福

附录二　常用传统语法术语

中　文	英文全称及缩写	中　文	英文全称及缩写
名词	noun（*n.*）	时态	tense
代词	pronoun（*pron.*）	一般式	simple tense
形容词	adjective（*adj.* /*a.*）	进行式	progressive tense
动词	verb（*v.*）	完成式	perfect tense
数词	numeral（*num.*）	完成进行式	perfect progressive tense
副词	adverb（*adv.* /*ad.*）	现在时	present tense

续表

中　文	英文全称及缩写	中　文	英文全称及缩写
冠词	article（*art.*）	过去时	past tense
介词	preposition（*prep.*）	将来时	future tense
连词	conjunction（*conj.*）	过去将来时	past future tense
感叹词	interjection（*interj.*）	标点符号	punctuation mark
词法	morphology	句号（.）	period（full stop）
句法	syntax	问号（?）	question mark
句子成分	members of the sentence	惊叹号（!）	exclamation mark
主语	subject	逗号（,）	comma
谓语	predicate	分号（;）	semicolon
表语	predicative	冒号（:）	colon
宾语	object	引号（“”）	quotation marks
补语	complement	破折号（—）	dash
定语	attributive	省略号（…）	dots（ellipsis）
状语	adverbial	括号（　）	parentheses（brackets）
同位语	appositive	斜号（/）	slash
短语	phrase	顿号（、）	slight-pause mark
从句	clause	缩写号（’）	apostrophe

1. 词

<table>
<tr><td rowspan="8">名词 noun</td><td>专有名词 proper noun</td><td rowspan="6">代词 pronoun</td><td>人称代词 personal pronoun</td></tr>
<tr><td>可数名词 countable noun</td><td>物主代词 possessive pronoun</td></tr>
<tr><td>不可数名词 uncountable noun</td><td>反身代词 reflexive pronoun</td></tr>
<tr><td>单数形式 singular form</td><td>关系代词 relative pronoun</td></tr>
<tr><td>复数形式 plural form</td><td>不定代词 indefinite pronoun</td></tr>
<tr><td>抽象名词 abstract noun</td><td>物主代词 possessive pronoun</td></tr>
<tr><td>具体名词 concrete noun</td><td rowspan="2">冠词 article</td><td>定冠词 definite article</td></tr>
<tr><td>集体名词 collective noun</td><td>不定冠词 indefinite article</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="11">动词 verb</td><td>主动词 main verb</td><td rowspan="3">形容词 adjective</td><td>原级 positive</td></tr>
<tr><td>助动词 auxiliary verb</td><td>比较级 comparative</td></tr>
<tr><td>及物动词 transitive verb</td><td>最高级 superalative</td></tr>
<tr><td>不及物动词 intransitive verb</td><td rowspan="6">副词 adverb</td><td>方式副词 adverb of manner</td></tr>
<tr><td>系动词 link verb</td><td>程度副词 adverb of degree</td></tr>
<tr><td>情态动词 modal verb</td><td>时间副词 adverb of time</td></tr>
<tr><td>规则动词 regular verb</td><td>地点副词 adverb of place</td></tr>
<tr><td>不规则动词 irregular verb</td><td>疑问副词 interrogative adverb</td></tr>
<tr><td>短语动词 phrasal verb</td><td>关系副词 relative adverb</td></tr>
<tr><td>限定动词 finite verb</td><td rowspan="5">数词 numeral</td><td>基数词 cardinal numeral</td></tr>
<tr><td>限定动词 finite verb</td><td>序数词 ordinal numeral</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">介词 preposition</td><td rowspan="3">分数词 fractional numeral</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">连词 conjunction</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">感叹词 exclamation</td></tr>
</table>

2. 语法成分

主语 subject	表语 predicative
谓语 predicate	定语 attribute
同位语 appositive	状语 adverbial
宾语 object	补语 complement
双宾语 dual object	主补 subject complement
直接宾语 direct object	宾补 object complement
间接宾语 indirect object	复合宾语 complex object

3. 句　子

简单句 simple sentence	并列句 compound sentence
复合句 complex sentence	并列复合句 compound complex sentence
陈述句 declarative sentence	疑问句 interrogative sentence
一般疑问句 general question	选择疑问句 alternative question
附加/反义疑问句 tag question	

4. 从　句

名词性从句 noun clause	状语从句 adverbial clause
主语从句 subject clause	时间状语从句 adverbial clause of time
宾语从句 object clause	地点状语从句 adverbial clause of place
定语从句 attributive clause	原因状语从句 adverbial clause of cause
表语从句 predicative clause	条件状语从句 adverbial clause of condition
同位语从句 appositive clause	目的状语从句 adverbial clause of purpose
	让步状语从句 adverbial clause of concession
	比较状语从句 adverbial clause of comparison
	方式状语从句 adverbial clause of manner
	结果状语从句 adverbial clause of result

英语语法术语中英对照

语法 grammar　句法 syntax　词法 morphology　结构 structure

层次 rank　句子 sentence　从句 clause　词组 phrase

词类 part of speech　单词 word　实词 notional word　虚词 structural word

介词 preposition　连词 conjunction　感叹词 exclamation　形容词 adjective

形式 form

原形 base form　单数形式 singular form　复数形式 plural form

限定动词 finite verb form　非限定动词 non-finite verb form

从句 clause

从属句 subordinate clause　并列句 coordinate clause

真实条件状语从句 adverbial clause of real condition

非真实条件状语从句 adverbial clause of unreal condition
含蓄条件句 adverbial clause of implied condition
错综条件句 adverbial clause of mixed condition

句子 sentence

感叹疑问句 exclamatory question
修辞疑问句 rhetorical question
基本句型 basic sentence pattern
存在句 existential sentence
肯定句 positive sentence
否定句 negative sentence
祈使句 imperative sentence
省略句 elliptical sentence
感叹句 exclamatory sentence

句子成分 members of sentences

同源宾语 cognate object
宾补 object complement

句法关系 syntactic relationship

并列 coordinate
从属 subordination
修饰 modification
前置修饰 pre-modification
后置修饰 post-modification
限制 restriction
双重限制 double-restriction
非限制 non-restriction

数 number

单数形式 singular form
复数形式 plural form
规则形式 regular form
不规则形式 irregular form

格 case

普通格 common case
所有格 possessive case
主格 nominative case
宾格 objective case

性 gender

阳性 masculine
阴性 feminine
通性 common
中性 neuter

人称 person

第一人称 first person
第二人称 second person
第三人称 third person

时态 tense

过去将来时 past future tense
过去将来进行时 past future continuous tense
过去将来完成时 past future perfect tense
一般现在时 present simple tense
一般过去时 past simple tense
一般将来时 future simple tense
现在完成时 past perfect tense
过去完成时 present perfect tense
将来完成时 future perfect tense
现在进行时 present continuous tense
过去进行时 past continuous tense
将来进行时 future continuous tense
过去将来进行时 past future continuous tense
现在完成进行时 present perfect continuous tense
过去完成进行时 past perfect continuous tense

语态 voice

主动语态 active voice
被动语态 passive voice

语气 mood

陈述语气 indicative mood
祈使语气 imperative mood
虚拟语气 subjunctive mood

否定 negation

否定范围 scope of negation
全部否定 full negation
局部否定 partial negation
转移否定 shift of negation

语序 order

自然语序 natural order
倒装语序 inversion
全部倒装 full inversion
部分倒装 partial inversion
直接引语 direct speech
间接引语 indirect speech
自由直接引语 free direct speech
自由间接引语 free indirect speech

一致 agreement

主谓一致 subject-predicate agreement
语法一致 grammatical agreement
概念一致 notional agreement
就近原则 principle of proximity

语音 pronunciation

语调 tone
升调 rising tone
降调 falling tone
降升调 falling-rising tone

文体 style

正式文体 formal
非正式文体 informal
口语 spoken/oral English
套语 formulistic expression
英国英语 British English
美国英语 American English

感情色彩 emotional coloring

褒义 commendatory
贬义 derogatory
幽默 humorous
讽刺 sarcastic
挖苦 ironic
用法 usage
强调 emphasis
重复 repetition

修辞手法 figures of speech

明喻 simile
隐喻 metaphor
提喻 synecdoche
拟人 personification
夸张 hyperbole
叠言 rhetorical repetition
借代 metonymy
双关语 pun
拟声 onomatopoeia
反语 irony
矛盾修辞法 oxymoron
通感 synesthesia
头韵法 alliteration

附录三　英文字母大写规则

1. 英语文章标题大小写原则

（1）题目的第一个单词要大写；
（2）冠词都不需要大写；
（3）字母多于三个（不含三个）的介词、连词首字母要大写；
（4）名词、动词、形容词、副词、代词、感叹词首字母大写；
（5）大写所有英语中要求大写的单词。如月份、人名、地名等。

这几条原则的优先性是递减的，也就是说，如果几条原则之间出现了矛盾的情况，应优先实用前面的原则。如：如果题目的第一个单词是冠词或不多于二个字母的介词时也应该大写。

2. 英文字母大写规则

（1）句子开头的第一个字母要大写。“I（我）”在句中任何位置都要大写。例如：

What’s her name? Mary and I are teachers.

（2）地名、国名和人名等专有名词第一个字母要大写。例如：Russia（俄罗斯），Youyang（酉阳），Chengdu（成都），Jack（杰克）。

（3）一些亲属关系（如 mother，sister，mum，dad 等）用作称呼语时第一个字母要大写。例如：Thank you，Granny. 谢谢你，姥姥。

（4）人名前的称呼或头衔第一个字母应大写。例如：Mr. Smith，Dr. Wang，Miss Mary。

（5）表示语种、民族的名词或形容词第一个字母要大写。例如：Russian 俄语、俄罗斯人（的），Chinese 汉语、中国人（的）。

（6）直接引语中，句首字母要大写。例如：“Then，”I said，“You have been making a mistake，and the letter is not in the apartment.”“那么，”我说，“你准弄错了。这封信并不在那栋房子里。”

（7）星期、月份名称的第一个字母要大写，但季节第一个字母不大写。例如：Sunday 星期天，August 八月，winter 冬天，spring 春天。

（8）一些大型节日名称的第一个实词的第一字母都要大写。如：Children’s Day 儿童节，National Day 国庆节，Teachers’ Day 教师节。

（9）由普通名词构成的专有名词词组，除其中的冠词、较短的介词和连词外，每个词的第一字母都要大写。例如：the Great Wall 长城，the United States 美国。

（10）大型会议、文件、条约名称的每个实词（虚词：副词、介词、连词、助词、叹词和拟声词则不用大写）的第一个字母都要大写。书名、报刊名应大写首字母，文章标题中的每一个实词的第一个字母要大写。如：*China Daily*《中国日报》，*New York Times*《纽约时报》，*Their Class*《他们的班级》(文章标题)，*the Warsaw Treaty*《华沙条约》，*English Coaching Paper*《英语辅导报》。

（11）诗歌的每一行的第一个单词的第一个字母要大写。

（12）表示称呼语或职务的词首字母要大写。如：Mr Green 格林先生，Dr Li 李博士。

（13）大多数的缩略词要大写。如：CCTV（中国中央电视台），ID（身份证），CD（光盘）。

（14）“I”和“OK”在句中的任何位置都应大写。

Tom and I are students. 汤姆和我是学生。That’s OK. 不用谢。

附录四　不规则动词表

1. AAA 型

动词原形	过去式	过去分词	含　义
cost[kɔst]	cost[kɔst]	cost[kɔst]	花费
cut[kʌt]	cut[kʌt]	cut[kʌt]	割，切
hurt[hə:t]	hurt[hə:t]	hurt[hə:t]	受伤
hit[hɪt]	hit[hɪt]	hit[hɪt]	打，撞
let[let]	let[let]	let[let]	让
put[put]	put[put]	put[put]	放下
read[rɪ:d]	read[rɪ:d]	read[rɪ:d]	读
set[set]	set[set]	set[set]	安排，安置
spread[spred]	spread[spred]	spread[spred]	展开，传播，涂
spit[spɪt]	spit/spat[spɪt]	spit/spat[spɪt]	吐痰
shut[ʃʌt]	shut[ʃʌt]	shut[ʃʌt]	关上，闭起，停止营业

2. ABB 型

动词原形	过去式	过去分词	含　义
beat[bi:t]	beat[bi:t]	beaten['bi:tn]	打败

3. ABA 型

动词原形	过去式	过去分词	含　义
become[bɪ'kʌm]	became[bi'keim]	become[bi'kʌm]	变
come[kʌm]	came[keim]	come[kʌm]	来
run[rʌn]	ran[ræn]	run[rʌn]	跑

4. ABB 型

（1）在动词原形后加一个辅音字母 d，t 或 ed 构成过去式或过去分词。

动词原形	过去式	过去分词	含　义
burn[bə:n]	burnt[bə:nt]	burnt[bə:nt]	燃烧
deal[di:l]	dealt[delt]	dealt[delt]	解决
dream[dri:m]	dreamed/dreamt[dremt]	dreamed/dreamt[dremt]	做梦
hear[hɪə]	heard[hə:d]	heard[hə:d]	听见
hang['hæŋ]	hanged/hung[hʌŋ]	hanged/hung[hʌŋ]	绞死，悬挂
learn[lə:n]	learned/learnt[lə:nt]	learned/learnt[lə:nt]	学习
light['laɪt]	lit/lighted[lɪt]	lit/lighted[lɪt]	点燃，照亮
mean[mi:n]	meant[ment]	meant[ment]	意思
prove[pru:v]	proved	proven/proved['pru:vən]	证明，证实，试验
shine[ʃaɪn]	shone/shined	shone/shined[ʃəʊn，ʃɔn]	使照耀，使发光
show[ʃəʊ]	showed	showed/shown['ʃəʊn]	展示，给……看
smell[smel]	smelled/smelt[smelt]	smelled/smelt[smelt]	闻，嗅
speed[spi:d]	sped[sped]/speeded	sped/speeded[sped]	加速
spell[spel]	spelled/spelt[spelt]	spelled/spelt[spelt]	拼写
wake[weɪk]	waked/woke[wəʊk]	waked/woken['wəʊkən]	醒来，叫醒，激发

（2）把动词原形的最后一个辅音字母“d”改为“t”构成过去式或过去分词。

动词原形	过去式	过去分词	含　义
build[bɪld]	built[bɪlt]	built[bɪlt]	建筑
lend[lend]	lent[lent]	lent[lent]	借给
rebuild[ˌrɪ:'bɪld]	rebuilt[ˌrɪ:'bɪlt]	rebuilt[ˌrɪ:'bɪlt]	改建，重建
send[send]	sent[sent]	sent[sent]	送
spend[spend]	spent[spent]	spent[spent]	花费

（3）原形→ought→ought。

动词原形	过去式	过去分词	含　义
bring[brɪŋ]	brought[brɔ:t]	brought[brɔ:t]	带来
buy[baɪ]	bought[bɔ:t]	bought[bɔ:t]	买
fight[faɪt]	fought[fɔ:t]	fought[fɔ:t]	打架
think[θɪŋk]	thought[θɔ:t]	thought[θɔ:t]	思考，想

（4）原形→aught→aught。

动词原形	过去式	过去分词	含　义
catch[kætʃ]	caught[kɔ:t]	caught[kɔ:t]	捉，抓
teach[ti:tʃ]	taught[tɔ:t]	taught[tɔ:t]	教

（5）变其中一个元音字母。

动词原形	过去式	过去分词	含　义
dig[dɪg]	dug[dʌg]	dug[dʌg]	掘（土），挖（洞、沟等）
feed[fi:d]	fed[fed]	fed[fed]	喂
find[faɪnd]	found	found	发现，找到
get[get]	got[gɔt]	got/gotten['gɔtən]	得到
hold[həʊld]	held[held]	held[held]	拥有，握住，支持
lead[li:d]	led[led]	led[led]	引导，带领，领导
meet[mi:t]	met[met]	met[met]	遇见
sit[sɪt]	sat[sæt]	sat[sæt]	坐
shoot[ʃu:t]	shot[ʃɔt]	shot[ʃɔt]	射击
spit[spɪt]	spit/spat[spæt]	spit/spat[spæt]	吐痰
stick[stɪk]	stuck[stʌk]	stuck[stʌk]	插进，刺入，粘住
win[wɪn]	won[wʌn]	won[wʌn]	赢

（6）原形→lt/pt/ft→lt/pt/ft。

动词原形	过去式	过去分词	含　义
feel['fi:l]	felt[felt]	felt[felt]	感到
keep[ki:p]	kept[kept]	kept[kept]	保持
leave[li:v]	left[left]	left[left]	离开
sleep[sli:p]	slept[slept]	slept[slept]	睡觉
sweep[swi:p]	swept[swept]	swept[swept]	扫

（7）其他。

动词原形	过去式	过去分词	含　义
lay[leɪ]	laid[leɪd]	laid[leɪd]	下蛋，放置
pay[peɪ]	paid[peɪd]	paid[peɪd]	付
say[seɪ]	said[sed]	said[sed]	说
stand[stænd]	stood[stud]	stood[stud]	站
understand	understood[ˌʌndə'stænd]	understood[ˌʌndə'stænd]	明白
lose[lu:z]	lost[ləst，lɔ:st]	lost[ləst，lɔ:st]	失去
have[həv]	had[hæd，həd，əd]	had[hæd，həd，əd]	有
make[meɪk]	made[meɪd]	made[meɪd]	制造
sell[sel]	sold[səʊld]	sold[səʊld]	卖
tell[tel]	told[təʊld]	told[təʊld]	告诉
retell[ˌrɪ:'tel]	retold[ˌrɪ:'təʊld]	retold[ˌrɪ:'təʊld]	重讲，重复，复述

5. ABC 型

（1）原形→过去式→原形+（e）n。

动词原形	过去式	过去分词	含　义
blow[bləʊ]	blew[blu:]	blown	吹
drive[draɪv]	drove[drəʊv]	driven[drɪvən]	驾驶
draw[drɔ:]	drew[dru:]	drawn[drɔ:n]	画画
eat[i:t]	ate[et，eɪt]	eaten['i:tən]	吃
fall[fɔ:l]	fell[fel]	fallen['fɔ:lən]	落下
give[gɪv]	gave[geɪv]	given['gɪvən]	给
grow[grəʊ]	grew[gru:]	grown[grəʊn]	生长
forgive[fə'gɪv]	forgot[fə'gɔt]	forgiven	原谅，饶恕
know[nəʊ]	knew[nju:，nu:]	known	知道
mistake[mɪ'steɪk]	mistook[mɪ'stuk]	mistooken	弄错；误解，
overeat['əʊvə'ɪ:t]	overate[ˌəʊvə'reɪt]	overeaten	（使）吃过量
prove[pru:v]	proved	proven/proved	证明，证实，试验
take[teɪk]	took[tuk]	taken['teɪkn，'teɪkən]	拿
throw[θrəʊ]	threw[θru:]	thrown[θrəʊn，'θrəʊn]	抛，扔
ride[raid]	rode[rəud]	ridden['rɪdən]	骑
see[si:]	saw[sɔ:]	seen[si:n]	看见
show[ʃəʊ]	showed	showed/shown['ʃəʊn]	展示
write[raɪt]	wrote[rəʊt]	written['rɪtən]	写

（2）原形→过去式→过去式+（e）n。

动词原形	过去式	过去分词	含　义
break[breɪk]	broke[brəʊk]	broken['brəʊkən]	打破
choose[tʃu:z]	chose[tʃəʊz]	chosen['tʃəʊzən]	选择
get[get]	got[gɔt]	got/gotten['gɔtən]	得到
hide[haɪd]	hid[hɪd]	hidden['hɪdən]	隐藏
forget[fə'get]	forgot[fə'gɔt]	forgotten[fə'gɔtn]	忘记
freeze[frɪ:z]	froze[frəʊz]	frozen['frəʊzn]	冷冻，结冰，感到严寒
speak[spɪ:k]	spoke[spəʊk]	spoken['spəʊkən]	说
steal[sti:l]	stole	stolen['stəʊlən]	偷

（3）变单词在重读音节中的元音字母“i”分别为“a”（过去式）和“u”（过去分词）。

[i→a→u]

动词原形	过去式	过去分词	含　义
begin[bɪ'gɪn]	began[bɪ'gæn]	begun[bɪ'gʌn]	开始
drink[drɪŋk]	drank[dræŋk]	drunk[drʌŋk]	喝
sing[sɪŋ]	sang[sæŋ]	sung[sʌŋ]	唱
sink[sɪŋk]	sank[sæŋk]	sunk[sʌŋk]	下沉，沉没
swim[swɪm]	swam[swæm]	swum[swʌm]	游泳
ring[rɪŋ]	rang[ræŋ]	rung[rʌŋ]	打电话

（4）其他。

动词原形	过去式	过去分词	含　义
be（am，is，are）	was/were	been	是
bear[bɛə]	bore[bɔ:]	born/borne[bɔ:n]	负担，忍受
do[du:，du:]	did[dɪd]	done[dʌn]	做
fly[flaɪ]	flew[flu:]	flown[fləʊn]	飞
go[gəʊ]	went[went]	gone[gɔn]	去
lie[laɪ]	lay[leɪ]	lain[leɪn]	躺
wear[wɛə]	wore[wɔ:]	worn[wɔ:n]	穿

附录五　单词移行规则

英语单词移行有一定规则，归纳如下：

1. 移行处要用连字符号“-”，只占一个印刷符号的位置并放在该行的最后。

2. 移行时一般按照音节进行，故只可在两音节之间分开，不能把一个完整的音节分写在上下两行。例如：Octo-ber（正），Octob-er（误）。

3. 复合词要在构成该词的两部分之间移行。如：some-thing，bed-room 等。

4. 如果复合词原来就有连字符号，则就在原连字符号处分行。如：good-looking 等。

5. 两个不同的辅音字母在一起时，移行时前后各一个。如：cap-tain，ex-pose 等。

6. 当两个音节间只有一个辅音字母时，如果该辅音字母前的元音字母按重读开音节的规则发音，该辅音字母移至下一行。如：fa-ther 等。但如果元音按重读闭音节的规则发音，则该辅音字母保留在上一行末尾。例如：man-age 等。

7. 当遇到双写辅音字母时，一般把它们分成前后各一个。例如：mat-ter 等。

8. 当重读音节在后面时，元音字母前的辅音字母通常移到下一行。如：po-lite 等。

9. 单音节词不可移行。如：length，long，dance 等。

10. 前缀或后缀要保持完整，不可分开写。如：unfit，disappear 等。

11. 阿拉伯数字不分开移行书写。

12. 不论音节多少，专有名词不宜分写。例如：Nancy，Russia 等。

13. 缩写词、略写词或某些词的缩写形式不可移行书写。例如：P.R.C.（中华人民共和国），U.N.（联合国），isn’t。

14. 不能构成一个音节的词尾不分写。例如：stopped 等。

15. 字母组合或辅音连缀不可移行。例如：machine，meat 等。

参考文献

[1] RAYMOND MURPHY. English Grammar in Use [M]. 北京：外语教学与研究出版社，2001.
[2] 袁懋梓. 托福语法考点[M]. 北京：北京航空航天大学出版社，2001.
[3] 薄冰. 薄冰英语语法[M]. 2 版. 北京：开明出版社，1998.
[4] 李基安. 现代英语语法[M]. 北京：外语教学与研究出版社，2000.
[5] 孙德玉，王桂英. 现代英语解疑语法[M]. 大连：辽宁师范大学出版社；1996.
[6] 光复书局企业股份有限公司（台北）. 无敌英语语法[M]. 北京：海豚出版社；1998.
[7] 李玉堂. 英语语法 [M]. 大连：大连出版社，1993.
[8] 北京师范大学外语系编写组. 简明英语语法 [M]. 北京：北京出版社，1979.
[9] 张鑫友. 英语语法难题新探[M]. 武汉：中国地质大学出版社，1993.
[10] 王善谦，蔡鸣生. 中学英语疑难问题详解[M]. 郑州：河南教育出版社，1992.
[11] 郭启明，杨玉芝，吴放，等. 高中英语疑难解答[M]. 北京：学苑出版社，1996.
[12] 张鑫友. 历届高考英语选择题详解[M]. 北京：学苑出版社，1994.
[13] 任志鸿. 高中全程复习优化设计[M]. 北京：学苑出版社，1999.
[14] 许国璋. 许国璋英语[M]. 北京：外语教学与研究出版社，1996.
[15] 张道真. 英语语法大全[M]. 北京：首都师范大学出版社，2008.
[16] 张道真. 英语语法练习册[M]. 北京：首都师范大学出版社，2015.
[17] 张道真. 张道真初中英语语法[M]. 长春：吉林出版集团股份有限公司，2013.
[18] 张道真. 张道真高中英语语法[M]. 长春：吉林出版集团股份有限公司，2013.
[19] 马德高. 初中英语语法全解[M]. 合肥：安徽科学技术出版社，2010.